

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

**DOCUMENT 00 0101 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE**

**PROJECT MANUAL FOR:**

**OWNER:** VIRGIN ISLANDS PUBLIC BROADCASTING SYSTEM  
P.O. Box 7879  
St. Thomas, USVI 00801  
P.O. Box 808  
Christiansted, VI 00821  
Phone: (340) 718-3339, ext 223  
Attn: Tanya-Marie Singh, CEO  
Email: tsingh@wjtx.org

**ARCHITECT:** SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS, LLC  
Michael de Haas, LEED, Principal  
Jerry Traino, AIA REWC  
6346 Estate Smith Bay  
St. Thomas, USVI 00802  
Phone: (853) 437-8879  
Attn: Jerry Traino, AIA REWC  
Email: jerry.trano@novusa.com

**MEP/FP:** ENGINEERING DESIGN TECHNOLOGIES, INC.  
Zach Robertson, PE, Team Leader  
215 19th Street North, Suite 201  
Birmingham, AL 35203  
Phone: (205) 942-8630  
Attn: Zach Robertson, PE  
Email: Zachary.Robeetson@edtinc.net

**STRUCTURAL:** TOTAL ENGINEERING LTD.  
Richard Taylor, PE, Principal  
P.O. Box 8309  
Cruz Bay, St. John, VI 00831-8309  
Phone: (340) 513-2817  
Fax: (284) 494-0775  
Attn: Richard Taylor, PE  
Email: sytmeng@systemscaribbean.com

**CIVIL:** HARRIS CIVIL ENGINEERS, LLC  
Neil Wolfe, PE, Project Manager  
1200 Hillcrest Street, Suite 200  
Orlando, FL 32803  
Phone: (407) 629-4777  
Attn: Neil Wolfe  
Email: neilw@harriscivilengineers.com

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

**SURVEYOR:**

**THE GREENPIECE**

Jeffrey Bateman, PE, PLS, Principal

Christiansted, St. Croix, VI 00820

Phone: (340) 778-7474

Attn: Jeffrey Bateman

jeff@thegreenpiece.us

**DATE:**

April 26, 2024

END OF DOCUMENT 00 0101

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### DOCUMENT 00 0100 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section Number – Section Title

#### DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 0101	Project Title Page
00 0100	Table of Contents
00 3133	Calculations for Components and Cladding (Attachment)

#### DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 1000	Summary
01 2100	Allowances
01 2300	Alternates
01 2500	Substitution Procedures
01 2600	Contract Modification Procedures
01 2600	Payment Procedures
01 3100	Project Management and Coordination
01 3200	Construction Progress Documentation
01 3233	Photographic Documentation
01 3300	Submittal Procedures
01 4000	Quality Requirements
01 4200	References
01 4339	Mockups
01 5000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 6000	Product Requirements
01 7300	Execution
01 7419	Construction Waste Management and Disposal
01 7700	Closeout Procedures
01 7823	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 7839	Project Record Documents
01 7900	Demonstration and Training

#### DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 40 00	Demolition
----------	------------

#### DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 3000	Cast-in-Place Concrete
---------	------------------------

#### DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

Not Used

#### DIVISION 5 – METALS

05 1200	Structural Steel Framing
05 2100	Steel Joist Framing
05 3100	Steel Decking
05 5000	Metal Fabrications
05 5213	Pipe and Tube Railing

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### DIVISION 6 – WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

06 1053	Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry
06 2023	Interior Finish Carpentry
06 4113	Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets
06 4116	Plastic-Laminate-Clad Architectural Cabinets
06 6116	Solid Surfacing Fabrications

### DIVISION 7 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 135	Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing
07 1600	Cement Waterproofing
07 1616	Crystalline Waterproofing
07 2100	Thermal Insulation
07 2119	Foamed-in-Place Insulation
07 2600	Vapor Retarders
07 2726	Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier
07 4233	Exterior Solid Phenolic Wall Panels
07 5556	Fluid-Applied Roofing System
07 6200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
07 7100	Roof Specialties
07 7233	Roof Hatches
07 8400	Firestopping
07 9200	Joint Sealants

### DIVISION 8 – OPENINGS

08 1113	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
08 1416	Flush Wood Doors
08 3113	Access Doors and Frames
08 3523	Four-Fold Doors
08 4213	Aluminum-Framed Entrances
08 4313	Aluminum-Framed Storefront
08 4413.13	Fire-Rated Aluminum Curtainwall and Entrances
08 7100	Door Hardware
08 8000	Glazing
08 8813	Fire Rated Glazing
08 9119	Fixed Louvers

### DIVISION 9 – FINISHES

09 2116.23	Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies
09 2216	Non-Structural Metal Framing
09 2423.13	Synthetic Stucco System
09 2900	Gypsum Board
09 3013	Ceramic Tiling
09 5113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
09 5423	Exterior Linear Metal Ceilings
09 5426	Suspended Wood Ceilings
09 6513	Resilient Base and Accessories
09 6519	Resilient Tile Flooring
09 6613	Portland Cement Terrazzo Flooring
09 6723	Resinous Flooring
09 6813	Tile Carpeting



## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

09 6900	Access Flooring
09 8000	Acoustic Treatment
09 9113	Exterior Painting
09 9123	Interior Painting

### DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

10 2239.13	Folding Glass-Panel Partitions
10 2800	Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories
10 4413	Fire Protection Cabinets
10 4416	Fire Extinguishers
10 7117	Shutter System
10 7516	Ground-Set Flagpoles

### DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

Not Used

### DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12 2413	Roller Window Shades
12 3623.13	Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops
12 3661.16	Solid Surfacing Countertops
12 3661.19	Quartz Agglomerate Countertops
12 4813	Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

### DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

13 4800.13	Sound Control Window Systems
13 4800.16	Sound Control Swinging Door Systems
13 4800.19	Sound Control Sliding Door Systems

### DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING SYSTEMS

14 2400	Hydraulic Elevators
---------	---------------------

### DIVISION 21 FIRE PROTECTION

210500	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
210523	General Duty Valves for Water Based Fire Suppression Piping
210529	Hangers and Supports for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment
210548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment
210553	Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment
210800	Commissioning of Fire Suppression
211000	Water Based Fire Suppression Systems
212200	Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems
213113	Electric Drive Centrifugal Fire Pumps

### DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 0500	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 0523	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 0529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 0593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for Plumbing
22 0716	Plumbing Equipment Insulation

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

22 0719	Plumbing Piping Insulation
22 0800	Commissioning of Plumbing
22 1116	Domestic Water Piping
22 1119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
22 1316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
22 1319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
22 1319.13	Sanitary Drains
22 1323	Sanitary Waste Interceptors
22 1414	Storm Drainage Piping
22 1429	Sump Pumps
22 3200	Domestic Water Filtration Equipment
22 4200	Commercial Plumbing Fixtures
22 4700	Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers

### DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 0548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC
23 0553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 0593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
23 0713	Duct Insulation
23 0719	HVAC Piping Insulation
23 0923	Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC
23 0923.12	Control Dampers
23 0923.14	Flow Instruments
23 0923.23	Pressure Instruments
23 0923.27	Temperature Instruments
23 2300	Refrigerant Piping
23 3113	Metal Ducts
23 3300	Air Duct Accessories
23 3346	Flexible Ducts
23 3400	HVAC Fans
23 3600	Air Terminal Units
23 3713.13	Air Diffusers
23 3713.23	Registers and Grilles
23 3813	Commercial Kitchen Hoods
23 7313.16	Indoor, Semi-Custom Air Handling Units
23 8123.12	Large Capacity (7tons(25KW) and Larger), Computer Room Air Conditioners, Floor Mounted Units
23 8126	Split System Air Conditioners

### DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 0519	Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cable
26 0526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 0529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 0533.13	Conduits for Electrical Systems
26 0533.16	Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems
26 0543	Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
26 0544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
26 0548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
26 0553	Identification for Electrical Systems

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

26 0923	Lighting Control Devices
26 2213	Low Voltage Distribution Transformers
26 2416	Panelboards
26 2726	Wiring Devices
26 2813	Fuses
26 2816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
26 3213.13	Diesel Engine Driven Generator Sets
26 3353	Static Uninterruptible Power Supply
26 3600	Transfer Switches
26 4113	Lighting Protection for Structures
26 4313	Surge Protective Devices for Low Voltage Electrical Power Circuits
26 5119	LED Interior Lighting
26 5213	Emergency and Exit Lighting
26 5613	Lighting Poles and Standards
26 5619	LED Exterior Lighting

### DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 0553	Identification for Communication Systems
27 1513	Communication Copper Horizontal Cabling

### DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 4621.11	Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems
------------	--------------------------------

### DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 00 00	Earthwork
31 10 10	Site Preparation
31 23 34	Excavating and Backfilling for Utilities
31 23 35	Excavating and Backfilling for Structures
31 25 00	Erosion and Sedimentation Control
31 3116	Termite Control

### DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 05 23	Site Concrete Work
32 11 23	Coarse Aggregate
32 11 30	Subgrade Stabilization
32 12 16	Asphalt Concrete Paving
32 17 23	Pavement Markings

### DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

33 05 26	Pipe Identification
33 11 10	Potable and Reuse Water Distribution Systems
33 33 13	Sanitary Sewer Gravity Systems
33 40 00	Storm Sewer Systems

END OF DOCUMENT 00 0101

DOCUMENT 00 3133 – CALCULATIONS FOR COMPONENTS AND CLADDING

1.1 CALCULATIONS FOR COMPONENTS AND CLADDING

- A. This Document with its referenced attachment is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information.
  - 1. This Document, and its attachment, are not part of the Contract Documents.
- B. Calculations for Components and Cladding for Project prepared by Systems Engineering dated November 3, 2023 is available for viewing as appended to this Document.

END OF SECTION 00 0101

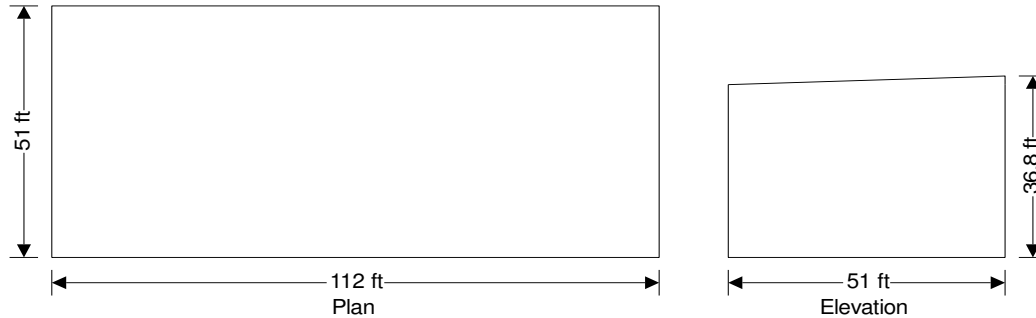
Attachment (4 pages): WTJX, Calculations for Components and Cladding; Prepared by Systems Engineering; dated November 3, 2023.

## WIND LOADING

In accordance with ASCE7-16

Using the components and cladding design method

Tedds calculation version 2.1.14



### Building data

Type of roof	Monoslope
Length of building	$b = 112.00$ ft
Width of building	$d = 51.00$ ft
Height to eaves	$H = 35.00$ ft
Pitch of roof	$\alpha_0 = 2.0$ deg
Mean height	$h = 35.00$ ft
End zone width	$a = \max(\min(0.1 \times \min(b, d), 0.4 \times h), 0.04 \times \min(b, d), 3\text{ft}) = 5.10$ ft

### General wind load requirements

Basic wind speed	$V = 165.0$ mph
Risk category	IV
Velocity pressure exponent coef (Table 26.6-1)	$K_d = 0.85$
Ground elevation above sea level	$z_{gl} = 300$ ft
Ground elevation factor	$K_e = \exp(-0.0000362 \times z_{gl}/1\text{ft}) = 0.99$
Exposure category (cl 26.7.3)	D
Enclosure classification (cl.26.12)	Enclosed buildings
Internal pressure coef +ve (Table 26.13-1)	$GC_{pi\_p} = 0.18$
Internal pressure coef -ve (Table 26.13-1)	$GC_{pi\_n} = -0.18$
Gust effect factor	$G_f = 0.85$

### Topography

Type of feature	Hill
Dist upwind of crest at half height of hill/esc.	$L_h = 425$ ft
Height of topographic feature	$H_{topo} = 315$ ft
Distance from the crest to the building site	$X_{topo} = 0$ ft
Height above ground surface at building site	$Z_{topo} = 315$ ft
Shape and max speed-up factor	$K_1 = 1.15 \times (\min(H_{topo} / L_h, 0.5)) = 0.57$
Horizontal attenuation factor	$\mu = 1.50$
Height attenuation factor	$\gamma = 4.00$
Speed-up reduction factor with distance of crest	$K_2 = \max(1 - \text{abs}(X_{topo}) / (\mu \times 2 \times H_{topo}), 0) = 1.00$
Vertical speed up reduction factor (Figure 26.8-1)	$K_3 = \exp(-\gamma \times h / (2 \times H_{topo})) = 0.80$
Topographic factor	$K_{zt} = (1 + K_1 \times K_2 \times K_3)^2 = 2.13$



**Tekla Tedds**

Systems Engineering

P.O. Box 3891

Sea Cows Bay

Tortola, BVI, VG1110

Project

WTJX

Job no.

Calcs for

C & C WALLS

Start page no./Revision

2

Calcs by

M

Calcs date

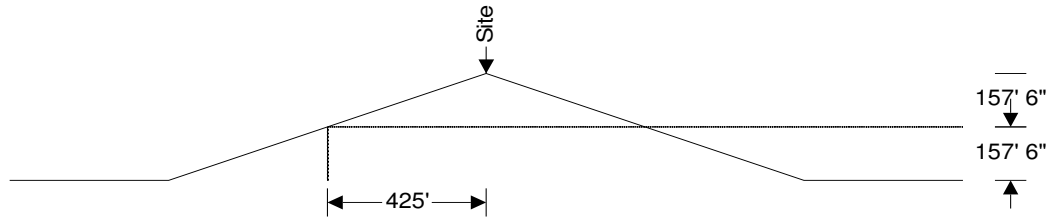
11/03/2024

Checked by

Checked date

Approved by

Approved date



Sketch showing topography

### Velocity pressure

Velocity pressure coefficient (Table 26.10-1)

$K_z = 1.19$

Velocity pressure

$q_h = 0.00256 \times K_z \times K_{zt} \times K_d \times K_e \times V^2 \times 1 \text{ psf/mph}^2 = 148.7 \text{ psf}$

### Peak velocity pressure for internal pressure

Peak velocity pressure – internal (as roof press.)

$q_i = 148.74 \text{ psf}$

### Equations used in tables

Net pressure

$p = q_h \times [GC_p - GC_{pi}]$

### Components and cladding pressures - Wall (Table 30.3-1)

Component	Zone	Length (ft)	Width (ft)	Eff. area (ft <sup>2</sup> )	+GC <sub>p</sub>	-GC <sub>p</sub>	Pres (+ve) (psf)	Pres (-ve) (psf)
<=10 sf	4	-	-	10.0	0.90	-0.99	160.6	-174.0
50 sf	4	-	-	50.0	0.79	-0.88	144.1	-157.5
200 sf	4	-	-	200.0	0.69	-0.78	129.9	-143.3
>500 sf	4	-	-	500.1	0.63	-0.72	120.5	-133.9
<=10 sf	5	-	-	10.0	0.90	-1.26	160.6	-214.2
50 sf	5	-	-	50.0	0.79	-1.04	144.1	-181.1
200 sf	5	-	-	200.0	0.69	-0.85	129.9	-152.7
>500 sf	5	-	-	500.1	0.63	-0.72	120.5	-133.9

**Tekla Tedds**

Systems Engineering

P.O. Box 3891

Sea Cows Bay

Tortola, BVI, VG1110

Project

WTJX

Job no.

Calcs for

C &amp; C WALLS

Start page no./Revision

3

Calcs by

M

Calcs date

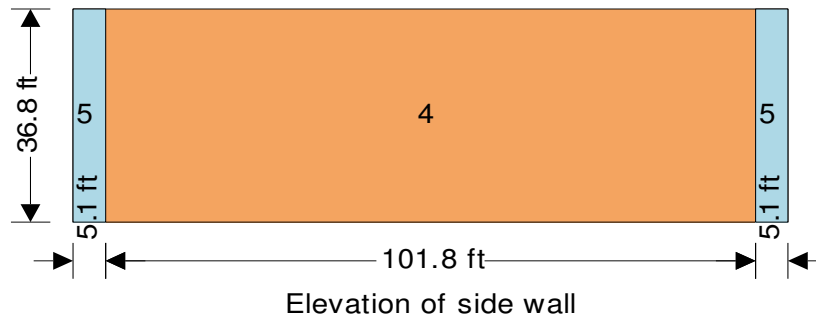
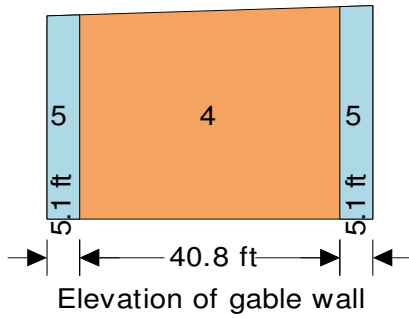
11/03/2024

Checked by

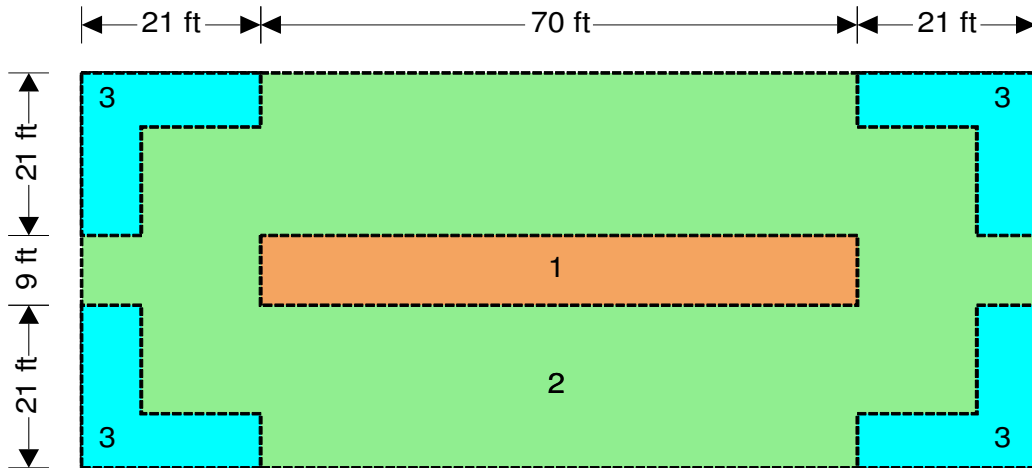
Checked date

Approved by

Approved date

**Components and cladding pressures - Roof (Figure 30.3-2A)**

Component	Zone	Length (ft)	Width (ft)	Eff. area (ft <sup>2</sup> )	+GC <sub>p</sub>	-GC <sub>p</sub>	Pres (+ve) (psf)	Pres (-ve) (psf)
<=10 sf	1	-	-	10.0	0.30	-1.70	71.4	-279.6
20 sf	1	-	-	20.0	0.27	-1.58	66.9	-261.2
50 sf	1	-	-	50.0	0.23	-1.41	61.0	-236.8
>100 sf	1	-	-	100.1	0.20	-1.29	56.5	-218.3
<=10 sf	2	-	-	10.0	0.30	-2.30	71.4	-368.9
20 sf	2	-	-	20.0	0.27	-2.14	66.9	-345.1
50 sf	2	-	-	50.0	0.23	-1.93	61.0	-313.8
>100 sf	2	-	-	100.1	0.20	-1.77	56.5	-290.0
<=10 sf	3	-	-	10.0	0.30	-3.20	71.4	-502.7
20 sf	3	-	-	20.0	0.27	-2.88	66.9	-455.3
50 sf	3	-	-	50.0	0.23	-2.46	61.0	-392.6
>100 sf	3	-	-	100.1	0.20	-2.14	56.5	-345.1



Plan on roof



## SECTION 01 1000 - SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Contractor's use of site and premises.
4. Work restrictions.
5. Specification and Drawing conventions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

#### 1.2 PROJECT INFORMATION

A. Project Identification:

1. Project Name: WJTX Broadcasting Facility.
2. Project Location: Haypiece Hill, Parcels 158A and 158 Rem, Submarine Base, St. Thomas, US Virgin Islands.

B. Owner: Virgin Islands Public Broadcasting System.

1. Owner's Representative: Tanya-Marie Singh, CEO.

C. Architect: Springline Architects

1. Architect's Representative: Jerry Traino, AIA REWC.

#### 1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. The project, WTJX Broadcasting Facility, is located on Haypiece Hill, Parcels 158A and 158 Rem, in St. Thomas on the US Virgin Islands. The new building is 3 levels. The first level includes a basement and cistern. The second level generally includes a lobby, a large 2-story studio with support rooms, and multi-purpose and multi-purpose conference rooms. The third level is typically offices. The building construction is cast-in-place concrete. The exterior walls are clad with a 2-coat synthetic stucco finish, and some exterior solid phenolic rain screen panels, with impact-resistant aluminum storefront and

curtainwall protected by a motorized storm shutter system. The roofing system is a fluid-applied protected membrane, and other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.

B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.4 OWNER-FURNISHED/OWNER-INSTALLED (OFOI) PRODUCTS

A. The Owner will furnish and install products indicated.

1. Owner-Furnished/Owner-Installed (OFOI) Products: See Drawings.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

A. Unrestricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period.

B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to Work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Limits on Use of Site: Confine construction operations to extent of project shown on design documents.
2. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.

C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.6 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated.

A. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products , alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

B. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

C. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.

1.2 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
  3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
  4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  2. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 1000

## SECTION 01 2100 - ALLOWANCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
  - 3. Quantity allowances.
  - 4. Contingency allowances.
  - 5. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
  - 2. Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
  - 3. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

#### 1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.6 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.7 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

## 1.8 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

## 1.9 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

## 1.10 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

- A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.
- B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.
- C. Costs of testing and inspection services not specifically required by the Contract Documents are Contractor responsibilities and are not included in the allowance.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

## 1.11 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, required maintenance materials, and similar margins.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
  - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs due to a change in the scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
  - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- A. Allowance No. 1: Lump-Sum Allowance: Include the sum of \$50,000 for signage including all interior signage and exterior branding sign.

END OF SECTION 01 2100



## SECTION 01 2300 - ALTERNATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### 1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

## 3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

## A. Deduct Alternates:

1. Alternate No. 1:
  - a. EVENT PATIO AND BATHROOM STRUCTURE: (REFER TO SHTS. A001 & A002) REMOVE PATIO TOILET VERT. CONSTRUCTION, PATIO SLAB, RAILINGS, PLANTERS, MEP FIXTURES/SYSTEMS, FURNISHINGS AND RELATED CONSTRUCTION FROM SCOPE.
  - b. BASE BID: INCLUDE CAST IN PLACE CONC. WALL CONSTRUCTION AT GENERATOR YARD(4 SIDES) WEST OF TLT BLDG, INCLUDE ALL RELATED PATIO RETAINING WALLS, UTILITY ROUGH-INS FOR FUTURE AND FINAL CONNECTION OF LIGHT POLES, BOLLARDS, PLUMBING FIXTURES, AND ELECT. DEVICES, LIGHTING, AND EQUIPMENT.
2. Alternate No. 2:
  - a. REAR PORCH / PATIO AND ROOF STRUCTURE: (REFER TO SHTS. A101, A110, A201) REMOVE ALL SCOPE OF WORK RELATED TO TAPERED C.I.P. CONCRETE COLUMN, ROOF OVER PATIO, +/- 225 SF OF ELEVATED PATIO STRUCTURE, RAILINGS, ETC. NOTE THAT A PORTION OF THE PATIO WILL REMAIN PLAN NORTH BEYOND THE JOG AND WILL REQUIRE THE RELATED PORCH RAILING.
3. Alternate No. 3:
  - a. SHELL PORTION OF 2ND FLOOR INTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS: (REFER TO SHTS. A104, A702) REMOVE INTERIOR WORK INCLUDING WALLS, FINISHES, CEILINGS, DOORS AND CREATE SHELL SPACE WITH ROUGH INS ONLY (RMS 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 213, 214, AND PORTION OF 201)
  - b. BASE BID: PROVIDE ALL ROUGH INS FOR POWER, PLUMBING, EQUIPMENT
4. Alternate No. 4:
  - a. REDUNDANT (N+1) GENERATOR
5. Alternate No. 5:
  - a. REDUNDANCY HVAC SYSTEMS ACCOMMODATIONS
6. Alternate No. 6:
  - a. REDUNDANT IT/ WIRELESS
7. Alternate No. 7:
  - a. LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM: (REFER TO SHTS. A110, E-701) INSTALL LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM PER ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

B. Add Alternates:

1. Alternate No. 8:
  - a. EPOXY FLOOR COATING IN GARAGE: (REFER TO SHT. A101) EPOXY COATING OVER CONCRETE SLAB THROUGHOUT GARAGE ROOM (123)
  - b. BASE BID: (SC-1) SEALED CONCRETE AS SCHED. ON FINISH PLANS
2. Alternate No. 9:
  - a. NANAWALL FOLDING GLASS WALL W/ MAN DOOR (RM 106): FOLDING GLASS WALL SYSTEM AND ALL RELATED SCOPE OF WORK INCLUDING SUPPLEMENTAL STRUCTURE ABOVE CEILING AND TRACKS PER MFR. REQUIREMENTS.
  - b. BASE BID: FOLDING GLASS WALL / STRUCTURE AND RELATED SCOPE NOT INCLUDED.

END OF SECTION 01 2300

## SECTION 01 2500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Section 01 2300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Section 01 6000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.

- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of Architects and Owner.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from IBC 2021 and all of the applicable codes.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 7 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

#### 1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  - Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 2500

## SECTION 01 2600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

#### 1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

#### 1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.



3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

#### 1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 2600

## SECTION 01 2900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  - 2. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 3. Overhead Costs: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
  - 4. Overhead Costs: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
  - 5. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
  - 6. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

## 1.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the 25th of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
  - 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment five days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  - 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.

- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
  5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  6. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  9. Copies of building permits.
  10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  11. Initial progress report.
  12. Report of preconstruction conference.
  13. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  14. Performance and payment bonds.
  15. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706.
  5. AIA Document G706A.
  6. AIA Document G707.
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 2900

## SECTION 01 3100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Digital project management procedures.
  - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

#### 1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.

2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.
8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

## 1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
  - a. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - b. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

## 1.6 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

2. Owner name.
  3. Owner's Project number.
  4. Name of Architect.
  5. Architect's Project number.
  6. Date.
  7. Name of Contractor.
  8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  9. RFI subject.
  10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  14. Contractor's signature.
  15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.



## 1.7 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

## 1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - e. Lines of communications.
    - f. Use of web-based Project software.
    - g. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - h. Procedures for RFIs.
    - i. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - k. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - l. Submittal procedures.
    - m. Sustainable design requirements.
    - n. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - o. Use of the premises.
    - p. Work restrictions.
    - q. Working hours.
    - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - t. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - u. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - v. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - w. Parking availability.
    - x. Office, work, and storage areas.

- y. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - z. First aid.
    - aa. Security.
    - bb. Progress cleaning.
  - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Possible conflicts.
    - i. Compatibility requirements.
    - j. Time schedules.
    - k. Weather limitations.
    - l. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - m. Warranty requirements.
    - n. Compatibility of materials.
    - o. Acceptability of substrates.
    - p. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - q. Space and access limitations.
    - r. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - s. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - t. Installation procedures.
    - u. Coordination with other work.
    - v. Required performance results.
    - w. Protection of adjacent work.
    - x. Protection of construction and personnel.
  - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals.

1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
  - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - 1) Review schedule for next period.
  - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
    - 1) Interface requirements.
    - 2) Sequence of operations.
    - 3) Status of submittals.
    - 4) Deliveries.
    - 5) Off-site fabrication.
    - 6) Access.
    - 7) Site use.
    - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
    - 9) Progress cleaning.
    - 10) Quality and work standards.
    - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
    - 12) Field observations.
    - 13) Status of RFIs.
    - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
    - 15) Pending changes.
    - 16) Status of Change Orders.
    - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
    - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 3100

## SECTION 01 3200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 3. Daily construction reports.
  - 4. Site condition reports.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
  - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- B. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports to contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
  - 1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
  - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
  - 3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
- C. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- D. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at bi-weekly intervals.
- E. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final Completion.
  - 1. Contract completion date to not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than required by contractor and subcontractors.

2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Coordination with existing construction.
    - b. Seasonal variations.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion .
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
1. Unresolved issues.
  2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  4. Notations on returned submittals.
  5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At bi-weekly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule 3 days before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- H. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

- I. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

#### 1.6 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.

#### 1.7 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  - 4. Equipment at Project site.
  - 5. Material deliveries.
  - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  - 7. Testing and inspection.
  - 8. Accidents.
  - 9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  - 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  - 12. Emergency procedures.
  - 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
  - 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
  - 16. Services connected and disconnected.
  - 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  - 18. Partial completions and occupancies.
  - 19. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.



**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 3200

## SECTION 01 3233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Concealed Work photographs.
  - 3. Periodic construction photographs.
  - 4. Time-lapse sequence construction photographs.
  - 5. Final Completion construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 02 4116 "Structure Demolition" for photographic documentation before structure demolition operations commence.
  - 2. Section 31 1000 "Site Clearing" for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
  - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in web-based Project management software site:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name of Contractor.
    - c. Date photograph was taken.

#### 1.3 FORMATS AND MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- B. Metadata: Record accurate date and time from camera.

#### 1.4 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points.
  - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  3. Take 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property, to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- B. Concealed Work Photographs: Before proceeding with installing work that will conceal other work, take photographs sufficient in number, with annotated descriptions, to record nature and location of concealed Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Underground utilities.
  2. Underslab services.
  3. Piping.
  4. Electrical conduit.
  5. Waterproofing and weather-resistant barriers.
- C. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs monthly. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- D. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 3233

## SECTION 01 3300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Submittal schedule requirements.
2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Contractor.
4. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
5. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
6. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
7. Category and type of submittal.
8. Submittal purpose and description.
9. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
10. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.

11. Indication of full or partial submittal.
12. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
13. Other necessary identification.
14. Remarks.
15. Signature of transmitter.

- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.

## 1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
    - a. Two opaque (bond) copies of each submittal. Architect will return one copy(ies).

- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
  4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
      - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:

- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- H. Test and Research Reports:
1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
  2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.



6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

## 1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

### 1.9 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
  - 2. Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 1 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 2 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 3300

## SECTION 01 4000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- E. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited in accordance with NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.

- F. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- G. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- H. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- I. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

### 1.3 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- B. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.6 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 2. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 3. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 4. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  2. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  3. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.
1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- I. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  1. Contractor's Responsibilities:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

## 1.8 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances specified in Section 01 2100 "Allowances," as authorized by Change Orders.
  3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
  1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 48 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  6. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.



1.9 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 7300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 4000

## SECTION 01 4200 - REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms, including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted," have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms, including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified," have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

### 1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations, List: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Abbreviations and acronyms not included in this list are to mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States." The information in this list is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; [www.aabc.com](http://www.aabc.com).
  2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; (see FGIA).
  3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; [www.aapfco.org](http://www.aapfco.org).
  4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; [www.transportation.org](http://www.transportation.org).
  5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; [www.aatcc.org](http://www.aatcc.org).
  6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; [www.americanbearings.org](http://www.americanbearings.org).
  7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; [www.abma.com](http://www.abma.com).
  8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org).
  9. ACP - American Clean Power; (Formerly: American Wind Energy Association); [www.cleanpower.org](http://www.cleanpower.org).
  10. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; [www.concretepipe.org](http://www.concretepipe.org).
  11. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); [www.aeic.org](http://www.aeic.org).
  12. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; [www.afandpa.org](http://www.afandpa.org).
  13. AGA - American Gas Association; [www.aga.org](http://www.aga.org).
  14. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; [www.aham.org](http://www.aham.org).
  15. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); [www.ahrinet.org](http://www.ahrinet.org).
  16. AI - Asphalt Institute; [www.asphaltinstitute.org](http://www.asphaltinstitute.org).
  17. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); [www.aia.org](http://www.aia.org).
  18. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; [www.aisc.org](http://www.aisc.org).
  19. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; [www.steel.org](http://www.steel.org).
  20. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; (see PLIB).
  21. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; [www.amca.org](http://www.amca.org).
  22. AMPP - Association for Materials Protection and Performance; [www.ampp.org](http://www.ampp.org).
  23. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
  24. AOSA/SCST - Association of Official Seed Analysts (The)/Society of Commercial Seed Technologists (The); [www.analyzeseeds.com](http://www.analyzeseeds.com).
  25. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).

26. APA - Architectural Precast Association; [www.archprecast.org](http://www.archprecast.org).
27. API - American Petroleum Institute; [www.api.org](http://www.api.org).
28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; [www.asphaltroofing.org](http://www.asphaltroofing.org).
29. ASA - Acoustical Society of America; [www.acousticalsociety.org](http://www.acousticalsociety.org).
30. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; [www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org).
31. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (see ASCE).
32. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org).
33. ASME - ASME International; American Society of Mechanical Engineers (The)
34. ASSE - ASSE International; (American Society of Sanitary Engineering); [www.asse-plumbing.org](http://www.asse-plumbing.org).
35. ASSP - American Society of Safety Professionals; [www.assp.org](http://www.assp.org).
36. ASTM - ASTM International; [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).
37. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; [www.atis.org](http://www.atis.org).
38. AVIXA - Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association; [www.avixa.org](http://www.avixa.org).
39. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
40. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; [www.awmac.com](http://www.awmac.com).
41. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
42. AWS - American Welding Society; [www.aws.org](http://www.aws.org).
43. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
44. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
45. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
46. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; [www.bicsi.org](http://www.bicsi.org).
47. BIFMA - Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association; [www.bifma.org](http://www.bifma.org).
48. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
49. BWF - Badminton World Federation; [www.bwfbadminton.com](http://www.bwfbadminton.com).
50. CARB - California Air Resources Board; [www.arb.ca.gov](http://www.arb.ca.gov).
51. CDA - Copper Development Association Inc.; [www.copper.org](http://www.copper.org).
52. CE - Conformite Europeenne (European Commission); [www.ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking](http://www.ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking).
53. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; [www.electricity.ca](http://www.electricity.ca).
54. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; [www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com](http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com).
55. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; [www.cfsei.org](http://www.cfsei.org).
56. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; [www.cganet.com](http://www.cganet.com).
57. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.cellulose.org](http://www.cellulose.org).
58. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
59. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; [www.cispi.org](http://www.cispi.org).
60. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
61. CPA - Composite Panel Association; [www.compositepanel.org](http://www.compositepanel.org).
62. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).
63. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org).
64. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; [www.crsi.org](http://www.crsi.org).
65. CSA - CSA Group; [www.csagroup.org](http://www.csagroup.org).
66. CSI - Cast Stone Institute; [www.caststone.org](http://www.caststone.org).
67. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); [www.csiresources.org](http://www.csiresources.org).
68. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; [www.cedarbureau.org](http://www.cedarbureau.org).
69. CTA - Consumer Technology Association; [www.cta.tech](http://www.cta.tech).

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

70. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; [www.coolingtechnology.org](http://www.coolingtechnology.org).
71. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; [www.dasma.com](http://www.dasma.com).
72. DHA - Decorative Hardwoods Association; [www.decorativehardwoods.org](http://www.decorativehardwoods.org).
73. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; [www.dhi.org](http://www.dhi.org).
74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; [www.ecianow.org](http://www.ecianow.org).
75. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; [www.eima.com](http://www.eima.com).
76. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.ejma.org](http://www.ejma.org).
77. EOS/ESD - EOS/ESD Association, Inc.; Electrostatic Discharge Association; [www.esda.org](http://www.esda.org).
78. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; [www.esta.org](http://www.esta.org).
79. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; [www.evo-world.org](http://www.evo-world.org).
80. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; [www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org](http://www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org).
81. FGIA - Fenestration and Glazing Industry Alliance; <https://fgiaonline.org>.
82. FIBA - Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); [www.fiba.com](http://www.fiba.com).
83. FIVB - Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); [www.fivb.org](http://www.fivb.org).
84. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; [www.fmapprovals.com](http://www.fmapprovals.com).
85. FM Global - FM Global; [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
86. FRSA - Florida Roofing and Sheet Metal Contractors Association, Inc.; [www.floridarooft.com](http://www.floridarooft.com).
87. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; [www.fluidsealing.com](http://www.fluidsealing.com).
88. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; [www.fscus.org](http://www.fscus.org).
89. GA - Gypsum Association; [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org).
90. GS - Green Seal; [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org).
91. HI - Hydraulic Institute; [www.pumps.org](http://www.pumps.org).
92. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (see NAAMM).
93. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; [www.iapsc.org](http://www.iapsc.org).
94. IAS - International Accreditation Service; [www.iasonline.org](http://www.iasonline.org).
95. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
96. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; [www.icea.net](http://www.icea.net).
97. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Association (The); [www.theicpa.com](http://www.theicpa.com).
98. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; [www.icri.org](http://www.icri.org).
99. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; [www.iec.ch](http://www.iec.ch).
100. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); [www.ieee.org](http://www.ieee.org).
101. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org).
102. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; [www.iest.org](http://www.iest.org).
103. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; (see FGIA).
104. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; [www.igshpa.org](http://www.igshpa.org).
105. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; [www.iliai.com](http://www.iliai.com).
106. Intertek - Intertek Group; [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
107. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); [www.isa.org](http://www.isa.org).
108. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; [www.isfanow.org](http://www.isfanow.org).
109. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
110. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; [www.itu.int](http://www.itu.int).
111. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; [www.kcma.org](http://www.kcma.org).
112. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; [www.lightning.org](http://www.lightning.org).
113. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; [www.mbma.com](http://www.mbma.com).
114. MCA - Metal Construction Association; [www.metalconstruction.org](http://www.metalconstruction.org).
115. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.maplefloor.org](http://www.maplefloor.org).

## REFERENCES

Construction Documents

01 4200 – Page 4 of 8

4/26/2024

116. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.metalframingmfg.org](http://www.metalframingmfg.org).
117. MHI - Material Handling Industry; [www.mhi.org](http://www.mhi.org).
118. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; [www.wmmpa.com](http://www.wmmpa.com).
119. MPI - Master Painters Institute; [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
120. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.; [www.msshq.org](http://www.msshq.org).
121. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; [www.naamm.org](http://www.naamm.org).
122. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); (see AMPP).
123. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; [www.nadca.com](http://www.nadca.com).
124. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.insulationinstitute.org](http://www.insulationinstitute.org).
125. NALP - National Association of Landscape Professionals; [www.landscapeprofessionals.org](http://www.landscapeprofessionals.org).
126. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; [www.nbgqa.com](http://www.nbgqa.com).
127. NBI - New Buildings Institute; [www.newbuildings.org](http://www.newbuildings.org).
128. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); [www.ncaa.org](http://www.ncaa.org).
129. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; [www.ncma.org](http://www.ncma.org).
130. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; [www.nebb.org](http://www.nebb.org).
131. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; [www.necanet.org](http://www.necanet.org).
132. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; [www.nelma.org](http://www.nelma.org).
133. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; [www.nema.org](http://www.nema.org).
134. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; [www.netaworld.org](http://www.netaworld.org).
135. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; [www.nfhs.org](http://www.nfhs.org).
136. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org).
137. NFPA - NFPA International; (see NFPA).
138. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; [www.nfrc.org](http://www.nfrc.org).
139. NGA - National Glass Association; [www.glass.org](http://www.glass.org).
140. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; [www.nhla.com](http://www.nhla.com).
141. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; [www.nlga.org](http://www.nlga.org).
142. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (see NWFA).
143. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; [www.nomma.org](http://www.nomma.org).
144. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; [www.nrca.net](http://www.nrca.net).
145. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; [www.nrmca.org](http://www.nrmca.org).
146. NSF - NSF International; [www.nsf.org](http://www.nsf.org).
147. NSI - Natural Stone Institute; [www.naturalstoneinstitute.org](http://www.naturalstoneinstitute.org).
148. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; [www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org).
149. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; [www.nssga.org](http://www.nssga.org).
150. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
151. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).
152. NWRA - National Waste & Recycling Association; [www.wasterecycling.org](http://www.wasterecycling.org).
153. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).
154. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; [www.pdionline.org](http://www.pdionline.org).
155. PLASA - PLASA; [www.plasa.org](http://www.plasa.org).
156. PLIB - Pacific Lumber Inspection Bureau; [www.plib.org](http://www.plib.org).
157. PVCPA - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; [www.uni-bell.org](http://www.uni-bell.org).
158. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; [www.boltcouncil.org](http://www.boltcouncil.org).
159. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; [www.rfci.com](http://www.rfci.com).
160. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; (see WWP).

161. SAE - SAE International; [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).
162. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; [www.scte.org](http://www.scte.org).
163. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; [www.sdi.org](http://www.sdi.org).
164. SDI - Steel Door Institute; [www.steeldoor.org](http://www.steeldoor.org).
165. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); [www.sefalabs.com](http://www.sefalabs.com).
166. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (see ASCE).
167. SIA - Security Industry Association; [www.securityindustry.org](http://www.securityindustry.org).
168. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; [www.steeljoist.org](http://www.steeljoist.org).
169. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; [www.smainfo.org](http://www.smainfo.org).
170. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
171. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; [www.smpte.org](http://www.smpte.org).
172. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; [www.sprayfoam.org](http://www.sprayfoam.org).
173. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; [www.spib.org](http://www.spib.org).
174. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; [www.spri.org](http://www.spri.org).
175. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; [www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org).
176. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; [www.ssina.com](http://www.ssina.com).
177. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; (see AMPP).
178. STI/SPFA - Steel Tank Institute/Steel Plate Fabricators Association; [www.steeltank.com](http://www.steeltank.com).
179. SWI - Steel Window Institute; [www.steelwindows.com](http://www.steelwindows.com).
180. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; [www.swpa.org](http://www.swpa.org).
181. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; [www.tilt-up.org](http://www.tilt-up.org).
182. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; [www.tcnatile.com](http://www.tcnatile.com).
183. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.kbcdco.tema.org](http://www.kbcdco.tema.org).
184. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); [www.tiaonline.org](http://www.tiaonline.org).
185. TMS - The Masonry Society; [www.masonrysociety.org](http://www.masonrysociety.org).
186. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; [www.tpinst.org](http://www.tpinst.org).
187. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; [www.turfgrasssod.org](http://www.turfgrasssod.org).
188. TRI - Tile Roofing Industry Alliance; [www.tilerroofing.org](http://www.tilerroofing.org).
189. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; [www.ul.org](http://www.ul.org).
190. UL LLC - UL LLC; [www.ul.com](http://www.ul.com).
191. USAV - USA Volleyball; [www.usavolleyball.org](http://www.usavolleyball.org).
192. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org).
193. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; [www.usitt.org](http://www.usitt.org).
194. WA - Wallcoverings Association; [www.wallcoverings.org](http://www.wallcoverings.org).
195. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; (see PLIB).
196. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; [www.wcmanet.org](http://www.wcmanet.org).
197. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; [www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com).
198. WI - Woodwork Institute; [www.woodworkinstitute.com](http://www.woodworkinstitute.com).
199. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; [www.wsrca.com](http://www.wsrca.com).
200. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; [www.wwpa.org](http://www.wwpa.org).

- C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. DIN - Deutsches Institut fur Normung e.V.; [www.din.de](http://www.din.de).
2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).



3. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CPSC - U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
2. DOC - U.S. Department of Commerce; [www.commerce.gov](http://www.commerce.gov).
3. DOD - U.S. Department of Defense; [www.defense.gov](http://www.defense.gov).
4. DOE - U.S. Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
5. DOJ - U.S. Department of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
6. DOS - U.S. Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
7. EPA - United States Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
8. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
9. GPO - U.S. Government Publishing Office; [www.gpo.gov](http://www.gpo.gov).
10. GSA - U.S. General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
11. HUD - U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
12. LBNL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Energy Technologies Area; [www.lbl.gov/](http://www.lbl.gov/).
13. NIST - National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
14. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
15. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
16. USACE - U.S. Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
17. USDA - U.S. Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
18. USDA - U.S. Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
19. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
20. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).

E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they are to mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from U.S. Government Publishing Office; [www.govinfo.gov](http://www.govinfo.gov).
2. DOD - U.S. Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/](http://www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/).
3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (see FS).
4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (see FS).
5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/](http://www.dsp.dla.mil/Specs-Standards/).
  - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
  - b. Available from U.S. General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org](http://www.wbdg.org).
6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (see DOD).
7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (see USAB).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 4200

## SECTION 01 4339 – MOCKUPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general information for construction and use of integrated exterior mock-ups.
  - 1. Refer to technical sections for more product-specific mockup requirements.
- B. The intent of mockups is to permit review of appearance, quality of workmanship, coordination, compatibility, and relationships with adjacent materials, and to provide Contractor with opportunity to coordinate Subcontractor Work.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3000 “Cast-in-Place Concrete” for exterior walls.
  - 2. Section 07 4233 “Exterior Solid Phenolic Wall Panels” for exterior wall panels.
  - 3. Section 07 2726 “Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers” for fluid-applied weather barrier.
  - 4. Section 07 9200 “Joint Sealants” for sealant.
  - 5. Section 09 2423.13 “Synthetic Stucco System” for exterior stucco cladding.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as part of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
- B. Mockups (General): Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances.
  - 1. Mockups are not Samples.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Contractor to meet with Owner, Architect, and installers of major systems whose Work is included in mockups.
  - 2. Review locations and extent of mockups.
  - 3. Review and finalize schedule for mockups, and verify availability of materials, personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to complete mockups and maintain schedule for the Work.

A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups.

1. Drawings of mockups indicating overall sizes, finishes and methods of construction and installation of each component.
2. Include dimensioned plans, elevations and sections.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Prior to construction of mockups, provide material samples as specified in respective specification sections included as part of mockups.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups shall be complete in all respects and shall represent final complete construction.

B. After award of all subcontracts for separate components and materials of exterior wall systems, and on basis of preliminary approval of materials and variations to proposed design of exterior wall systems, construct full-scale mockups for review of design and construction.

C. Do not place orders for wall components or materials, and do no fabrication until mockups are approved.

D. Where review of mockups may require revisions of designs or construction techniques, Architect will provide such revisions in writing to Contractor.

E. Mockups will serve as standards for workmanship once they have been accepted in writing by the Architect.

F. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate work of trades and schedule elements to expedite the fabricating, furnishing, and installation of mockups specified herein, in other Sections of the Specifications, and as shown in the Drawings.

B. Coordinate schedule for construction of mockups, so construction, and review of mockups do not impact Project schedule.

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Mockup Testing Performance Requirements: Perform tests using design pressures and performance criteria indicated for assemblies and products that are specified in other Sections and incorporated into integrated exterior mockups.

## 2.2 INTEGRATED EXTERIOR MOCKUPS

- A. Construct integrated exterior mockups in accordance with Drawings and in accordance with approved mockup shop drawings.
  - 1. Construct mockups to demonstrate constructability, coordination of trades, and sequencing of Work; and to ensure materials, components, subassemblies, assemblies, and interfaces integrate into a system complying with indicated performance and aesthetic requirements.
- B. Build integrated exterior mockups using installers and construction methods that will be used in completed construction.
- C. The Work of integrated exterior mockups includes, but is not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Cast-in-place concrete.
  - 2. Exterior solid phenolic wall panels.
  - 3. Fluid-applied membrane air barriers.
  - 4. Joint sealants.
  - 5. Synthetic stucco system.
- D. Photographic Documentation: Document construction of integrated exterior mockups with photographs in accordance with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Provide photographs showing details of interface of different materials and assemblies.
  - 1. Photograph modifications to component interfaces intended to correct deficiencies.
- E. Provide and document modifications to construction details and interfaces between components and systems required to properly sequence the Work, or to pass performance testing requirements.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval for modifications.
- F. Retain approved mockups constructed in place. Incorporate fully into the Work.
- G. Provide and document modifications to construction details and interfaces between components and systems required to properly sequence the Work, or to pass performance testing requirements. Obtain Architect's approval for modifications.

### 3.1 TESTING OF INTEGRATED EXTERIOR MOCKUPS

- A. Integrated Exterior Mockup Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Testing and inspecting agency will interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections, and also to observe testing for the following systems and assemblies:
  - 1. Exterior solid phenolic wall panels.
  - 2. Fluid-applied membrane air barriers.
  - 3. Synthetic stucco system.
- C. Integrated exterior mockup will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Construct mockups as indicated on Drawings and approved shop drawings.
- B. Construct mockups in time to make product and/or assembly modifications without delaying production work.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Construct mockups to duplicate actual job conditions.
- B. Provide weather protection for materials in mockups that are not exposed to weather in intended service.
- C. Mockups will establish the standard of quality of workmanship by which Work will be judged.
- D. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as standards for judging completed Work. Failure to maintain mock-ups, until directed, will be cause for rejection of Work.

END OF SECTION 01 4339

## SECTION 01 5000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.2 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities to be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use with metering. Provide connections and extensions of services and metering as required for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use with metering. Provide connections and extensions of services and metering as required for construction operations.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.

- D. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold. Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
  - 1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and requirements for replacing water-damaged Work.
  - 2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  - 3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices:
  - 1. Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.



2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- square tack and marker boards.
3. Drinking water and private toilet.
4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 degrees F.
5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 foot-candles at desk height.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  2. Heating, Cooling, and Dehumidifying Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction.
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
  1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.

- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system or private system indicated as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service:
  - 1. Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Temporary Cooling: Provide temporary cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
- F. Electric Power Service:
  - 1. Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
    - a. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, observations and inspections.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- H. Telephone Service: Install WiFi cell phone access equipment and one land-based telephone line(s) for each field office.
- I. Electronic Communication Service: Provide secure WiFi wireless connection to internet with provisions for access by Architect and Owner.

- A. Comply with the following:
1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain, including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- D. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.
- E. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- H. Waste Disposal Facilities:
1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- J. Temporary Elevator Use: Use of elevators is not permitted.

- K. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
  - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Section 31 1000 "Site Clearing."
    - a. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
    - b. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
    - c. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
    - d. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection:
  - 1. Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin and prior to commencing earthwork, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- J. Temporary Egress: Provide temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide signage directing occupants to temporary egress.
- K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- L. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.

- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.

### 3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 5000

## SECTION 01 6000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Work of This Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
1. Evaluating Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification. Manufacturer's published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product also establish salient characteristics of products for purposes of evaluating comparable products.



- C. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
  - 1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
- D. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- E. Substitution: Refer to Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

### 1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 1.5 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections are to be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.

3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
  1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
  1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
  2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
  3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.

5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
  7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
    - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
5. Samples, if requested.

B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for a comparable product. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

1. Architect's Approval of Submittal: See Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 6000

## SECTION 01 7300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Progress cleaning.
  - 6. Starting and adjusting.
  - 7. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for coordination of , Owner-performed work, and limits on use of Project site.
  - 2. Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
  - 4. Section 02 4116 "Structure Demolition" for demolition and removal of the building.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Final Property Survey: Submit 3 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

- A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  - 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.
- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
  - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.



- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.

- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
  - 1. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

- E. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- F. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- G. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, corner to corner of wall and edge to edge of ceiling. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  - 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  - 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- H. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 degrees F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, in accordance with regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces in accordance with written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

3.8 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- D. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 7300

## SECTION 01 7419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 31 1000 "Site Clearing" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials resulting from demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.

#### 1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 7 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

- A. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: Experienced firm, or individual employed and assigned by General Contractor, with a record of successful waste management coordination of projects with similar requirements.

1.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan according to requirements in this Section. Plan shall consist of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Distinguish between demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
  - 1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work in compliance with Section 02 4116 "Structure Demolition."
  - 2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - 3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - 4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - 5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
  - 6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location where materials separation will be performed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.

- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Comply with Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### 3.2 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials and legally dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- D. Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.

END OF SECTION 01 7419



## SECTION 01 7700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. List of incomplete items.
  - 3. Submittal of Project warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 3. Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

## 1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
  - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."
  - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  - 10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

## 1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list will state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

## 1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor, listed by room or space number.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.
  4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
    - a. PDF Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.

1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- C. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Warranties in Paper Form:
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
- E. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
- Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
  - Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - Vacuum and mop concrete.
  - Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions if visible soil or stains remain.
  - Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
  - Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
  - Clean strainers.
  - Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by "Correction of the Work" Article in Section 01 7300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 01 7700

## SECTION 01 7823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
- C. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

## 1.4 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
  2. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Architect.
  7. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  8. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  9. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.

- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

## 1.6 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  - 1. Type of emergency.
  - 2. Emergency instructions.
  - 3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  - 1. Fire.
  - 2. Flood.
  - 3. Gas leak.
  - 4. Water leak.
  - 5. Power failure.
  - 6. Water outage.
  - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - 8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Instructions on stopping.
  - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.



## 1.7 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  - 3. Operating standards.
  - 4. Operating procedures.
  - 5. Operating logs.
  - 6. Wiring diagrams.
  - 7. Control diagrams.
  - 8. Piped system diagrams.
  - 9. Precautions against improper use.
  - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
  - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  - 4. Equipment function.
  - 5. Operating characteristics.
  - 6. Limiting conditions.
  - 7. Performance curves.
  - 8. Engineering data and tests.
  - 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Startup procedures.
  - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
  - 5. Instructions on stopping.
  - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

## 1.8 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.
- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
    - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

- H. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.

## 1.9 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 7823

## SECTION 01 7839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

#### 1.3 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.

2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
- C. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

#### 1.4 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.

2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings where applicable.

- B. Format: Submit record specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

## 1.5 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 7839

## SECTION 01 7900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings:
  - 1. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.



- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

## 1.6 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
    - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
    - d. Product maintenance manuals.
    - e. Project Record Documents.
    - f. Identification systems.
    - g. Warranties and bonds.
    - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  - 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Startup procedures.
    - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    - d. Regulation and control procedures.
    - e. Control sequences.
    - f. Safety procedures.
    - g. Instructions on stopping.

- h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
    - a. Alignments.
    - b. Checking adjustments.
    - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
    - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
  - 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
    - a. Diagnostic instructions.
    - b. Test and inspection procedures.
  - 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
    - a. Inspection procedures.
    - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
    - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
    - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
    - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
    - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
    - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
  - 8. Repairs: Include the following:
    - a. Diagnosis instructions.
    - b. Repair instructions.
    - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
    - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
    - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## 1.7 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

## 1.8 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- D. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 01 7900

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 DESCRIPTION**

#### **A. Scope of Work:**

1. This section includes furnishing all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required for the demolition, relocation and/or disposal of all building materials and equipment to be removed from the site.
2. This specification covers all site demolition to within 5 feet of building envelopes.
3. This section provides for the complete or partial removal and disposal of specified existing foundations, slabs, piping, roadways (including surface and base courses) and miscellaneous appurtenances encountered during construction operations.
4. These specifications call attention to certain activities necessary to maintain and facilitate operation during and immediately following construction. Demolition includes:
  - a. Demolition, partial removal and cutting of existing roadways and sidewalk as required for the new construction.
  - b. Demolition of landscape area
  - c. Demolition of underground utilities.
  - d. Distribution of salvageable and excess unacceptable material as specified below.
  - e. Off-site disposal of excess and unacceptable materials.

### **1.2 RULES AND REGULATIONS**

- A. The Standard Building Codes shall control the demolition, modification or alteration of the existing buildings or structures.
- B. No blasting shall be done on site. The Contractor shall not bring or store any explosives on site.

### **1.3 DISPOSAL OF MATERIAL**

- A. Salvageable material shall become the property of the Owner, if the Owner requests any specific item. The Contractor shall dismantle all material to such a size that it can be readily handled, and deliver any of this salvageable material requested by the Owner to a designated storage area.
- B. Any materials that the Owner rejects shall become the Contractor's property and must be removed from the site.
- C. Concrete, concrete block, asphalt, unsalvageable bricks and piping shall be hauled to a waste disposal site by the Contractor.
- D. All other materials shall be hauled to a waste disposal site by the Contractor.
- E. The storage of or sale of removed items on the site will not be allowed.

---

## **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Sequence of Demolition and Removal activities. Refer to the Site Plans for items and extents of demolition. Contractor to submit a sequence of demolition activities

## **1.5 DAMAGE**

- A. Promptly repair damage caused to adjacent facilities by demolition operations as directed by the Engineer and at no cost to the Owner.

## **1.6 UTILITIES**

- A. Maintain existing utilities to remain in service and protect against damage during demolition operations.
- B. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or used facilities, except when authorized by the Engineer. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities as acceptable to the Engineer.
- C. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner to shut off utilities as required by demolition operations.
- D. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for making all necessary arrangements and for performing any necessary work involved in connection with the discontinuance or interruption of all public and private utilities or services under the jurisdiction of the utility companies.
- E. All utilities being abandoned shall be disconnected and terminated at the service mains in conformance with the requirement of the utility companies or the municipality owning or controlling them.

## **PART 2 - MATERIALS**

### **2.1 CONTAMINATED MATERIALS**

- A. Any contaminated materials identified on site are to be properly removed or disposed of by the Contractor according to EPA and governing body regulations.
  - 1. Lead Based Paint (LBP) has been identified as existing in excess amounts on the interior walls of the building to be demolished. Contractor to review testing results and dispose/remove materials as necessary.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SEQUENCE OF WORK**

- A. Contractor will prepare a Sequence of Demolition and Removal.
- B. The Sequence of Demolition and Removal of existing facilities will be in accordance with the approved Sequence of Demolition and Removal.

**3.2 REMOVAL OF EXISTING PAVING, PIPING AND APPURTENANCES**

- A. Existing non-buried valving and piping, appurtenances and asphaltic pavement shall be removed as shown or indicated on the Drawings.
- B. All piping and appurtenances shall be cleaned, flushed and drained.

**3.3 STRUCTURES TO BE COMPLETELY DEMOLISHED**

- A. Refer to Architectural plans for removal of structures.

END OF SECTION 024000

## SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.
2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-ground.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans materials subject to compliance with requirements.

- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following.

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Slag cement.
4. Blended hydraulic cement.
5. Aggregates.
6. Admixtures:

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 1– Page 1 of 26

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem a NOVUS architects company  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

- a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
7. Vapor retarders.
  8. Liquid floor treatments.
  9. Curing materials.
  10. Joint fillers.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:
  1. Mixture identification.
  2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Durability exposure class.
  4. Maximum w/cm.
  5. Calculated equilibrium unit weight, for lightweight concrete.
  6. Slump limit.
  7. Air content.
  8. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
  9. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site if permitted.
  10. Intended placement method.
  11. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
    - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
- D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:
  1. Concrete Class designation.
  2. Location within Project.
  3. Exposure Class designation.
  4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
  5. Final finish for floors.
  6. Curing process.
  7. Floor treatment if any.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 2– Page 2of 26

Construction Documents

4/26/2024



## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Curing compounds.
  - 4. Vapor retarders.
  - 5. Joint-filler strips.
- B. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
  - 1. Portland cement.
  - 2. Fly ash.
  - 3. Slag cement.
  - 4. Blended hydraulic cement.
  - 5. Aggregates.
  - 6. Admixtures:
- C. Research Reports: For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
- D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

## 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.
  - 1. Include the following information in each test report:

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 3– Page 3of 26

- a. Admixture dosage rates.
- b. Slump.
- c. Air content.
- d. Seven-day compressive strength.
- e. 28-day compressive strength.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and **ACI 301** (**ACI 301M**).

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301** (**ACI 301M**) and **ACI 305.1** (**ACI 305.1M**).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with **ACI 301** (**ACI 301M**) unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

### 2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:

- 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I/II, gray.
- 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
- 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.
- 4. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement..

- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.

- C. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.

- 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
- 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
- 3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
- 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 4- Page 4of 26

5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.

- D. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M, including all limits listed in Table 2 and the requirements of paragraph 5.4

## 2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A, except with maximum water-vapor permeance of; not less than **10 mils (0.25 mm)** thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

## 2.4 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** when dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  1. Color:
    - a. Ambient Temperature Above **85 deg F (29 deg C)**: White.
- C. Curing Paper: **8-feet- (2438-mm-)** wide paper, consisting of two layers of fibered kraft paper laminated with double coating of asphalt.
- D. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Nondissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C1315, Type 1, Class A.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: [ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber] [or] [ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork].
- B. Floor Slab Protective Covering: 8-feet- (2438-mm-) wide cellulose fabric.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
  - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
  - 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
  - 3. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass.
  - 4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, and concrete with a w/cm below 0.50.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Class A: Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.
  - 1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) W1.
  - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
  - 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
  - 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 5. Slump Flow Limit: 22 inches (550 mm), plus or minus 1.5 inches (40 mm).

## CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 6– Page 6of 26

6. Air Content:
    - a. Exposure Class F1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - b. Exposure Classes F2 and F3: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- B. Class B: Normal-weight concrete used for foundation walls.
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) W1.
  2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
  3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
  4. Slump Limit: 8 inches (200 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 3 inches (75 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture at Project site.
  5. Slump Flow Limit: 22 inches (550 mm), plus or minus 1.5 inches (40 mm).
  6. Air Content:
    - a. Exposure Class W1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- C. Class C: Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) C1.
  2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
  3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m).
  4. Slump Limit: For concrete with verified slump of 3 inches (75 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture.
  5. Slump Flow Limit: 22 inches (550 mm), plus or minus 1.5 inches (40 mm).
  6. Air Content:
    - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
  7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Class D: Normal-weight concrete used for interior suspended slabs.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 7- Page 7 of 26

1. Exposure Class: **ACI 318 (ACI 318M) C2**.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (20.7 MPa)** at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: **520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m)**.
5. Slump Limit: **8 inches (200 mm)**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)** for concrete with verified slump of **3 inches (75 mm)** plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)** before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture Project site.
6. Slump Flow Limit: **22 inches (550 mm)**, plus or minus **1.5 inches (40 mm)**.
6. Slump Flow Limit: **22 inches (550 mm)**, plus or minus **1.5 inches (40 mm)**.
7. Air Content:
  - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
8. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

E. Class E: Normal-weight concrete used for concrete toppings.

1. Exposure Class: **ACI 318 (ACI 318M) C2**.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (20.7 MPa)** at 28 days.
3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: **520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m)**.
4. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm)**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
5. Air Content:
  - a. Exposure Class F1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing **3/4-inch (19-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
6. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
  - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished toppings.
  - b. Exposure Class F1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing **3/4-inch (19-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

F. Class G: Normal-weight concrete used for building walls.

1. Exposure Class: **ACI 318 (ACI 318M) C2**.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (20.7 MPa)** at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 8– Page 8 of 26

4. Slump Limit: 8 inches (200 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 3 inches (75 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture at Project site.
5. Air Content:
  - a. Exposure Class F1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
6. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

G. Class H: Normal-weight concrete used for exterior retaining walls.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) W1.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
4. Slump Limit: 8 inches (200 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 3 inches (75 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture at Project site.
4. Slump Limit: 8 inches (200 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 3 inches (75 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture at Project site.
5. Slump Flow Limit: 22 inches (550 mm), plus or minus 1.5 inches (40 mm).
5. Slump Flow Limit: 22 inches (550 mm), plus or minus 1.5 inches (40 mm).
6. Air Content:
  - a. Exposure Class F1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - a. Exposure Class F1: 5.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than five minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
  - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 10- Page 10 of 26



2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than **6 inches (150 mm)**, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
4. Lap joints **6 inches (150 mm)** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
  - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by **6 inches (150 mm)** on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

### 3.3 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
  1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
  2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
    - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete.
  3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**. Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**. Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-)** wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-)** wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** or more than **1 inch (25 mm)** below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
- E. Doweled Joints:
1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.

2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

F. Dowel Plates: Install dowel plates at joints where indicated on Drawings.

F. Dowel Plates: Install dowel plates at joints where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.

1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.

B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.

C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.

C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.

1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 13- Page 13 of 26

4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.
  - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
  - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least **6 inches (150 mm)** into preceding layer.
  - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
  - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
  2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
  6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
  8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.5 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

#### A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

#### A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
  - a. Patch voids larger than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** wide or **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - c. Patch tie holes.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: **ACI 117 (ACI 117M)** Class B.
  - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
  - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.

B. Related Unformed Surfaces:

B. Related Unformed Surfaces:

1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Scratch Finish:

B. Scratch Finish:

1. While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied.
2. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) in one direction.
3. Apply scratch finish to surfaces to receive concrete floor toppings.
3. Apply scratch finish to surfaces to receive concrete floor toppings.

C. Float Finish:

1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
2. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 (ACI A117M) tolerances for conventional concrete.
3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.

D. Trowel Finish:

1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
2. Continue troweling passes and restraighen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.

3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
  4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
  5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
  6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
  6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
  7. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed [1/4 inch (6 mm)] [3/16 inch (4.8 mm)] [1/8 inch (3 mm)] [1/8 inch (3 mm)] and also no more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in 2 feet (610 mm)].
  7. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed [1/4 inch (6 mm)] [3/16 inch (4.8 mm)] [1/8 inch (3 mm)] [1/8 inch (3 mm)] and also no more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in 2 feet (610 mm)].
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated on Drawings where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
1. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
  2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
  2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

#### A. Filling In:

#### A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

#### B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

#### C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases **6 inches (150 mm)** high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
3. Minimum Compressive Strength: **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch (450-mm)** centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
  - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
  - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

#### D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.

1. Cast-in inserts and accessories, as shown on Drawings.
2. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.8 CONCRETE CURING

#### A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 17- Page 17 of 26

1. Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** and **ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M)** for hot-weather protection during curing.
  2. Maintain moisture loss no more than **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h)**, calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1, before and during finishing operations.
  2. Maintain moisture loss no more than **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h)**, calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1, before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with **ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M)** as follows:
1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
  2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
  3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
  4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
    - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
    - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
    - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
      - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
      - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with **ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M)** as follows:
1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
  2. Interior Concrete Floors:
    - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
      - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.



- a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than **12 inches (300 mm)**.
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
- 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than **12 inches (300 mm)**.
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:

- a) Water.
  - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Polished Finish: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches (300 mm).
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- d. Floors to Receive Chemical Stain:
  - 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install curing paper over entire area of floor.
  - 2) Install curing paper square to building lines, without wrinkles, and in a single length without end joints.
  - 3) Butt sides of curing paper tight; do not overlap sides of curing paper.
  - 4) Leave curing paper in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.
- e. Floors to Receive Urethane Flooring:
  - 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
  - 2) Rewet absorptive cover, and cover immediately with polyethylene moisture-retaining cover with edges lapped 6 inches (150 mm) and sealed in place.
  - 3) Secure polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place to prohibit air from circulating under polyethylene moisture-retaining cover.
  - 4) Leave absorptive cover and polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.
- f. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:
- f. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:

- 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
- 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
- 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer[ **unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project**].
- 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer[ **unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project**].

g. Floors to Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:

g. Floors to Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:

- 1) Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
- 3) Repeat process 24 hours later, and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.9 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to **ACI 117 (ACI 117M)**.

### 3.10 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
  2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
  2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
  3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
  4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
  5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: **[Owner will engage] [Engage]** a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
  - 1. Testing agency to be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.
  - 2. Testing agency to immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
    - a. Test reports to include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
      - 1) Project name.
      - 2) Name of testing agency.
      - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
      - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
      - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
      - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
      - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
      - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
      - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
      - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
      - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
      - 12) Field test results.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 22– Page 22of 26

- 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
  - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
- C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- D. Inspections:
1. Headed bolts and studs.
  1. Headed bolts and studs.
  2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
  1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:

3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
  - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete;.
  - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
  - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below or 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
6. Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
6. Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
  - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
  - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of three 6-inch (150 mm) by 12-inch (300 mm) or 4-inch (100 mm) by 8-inch (200 mm) cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - b. Cast, initial cure, and field cure two sets of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - b. Cast, initial cure, and field cure two sets of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
  - a. Test one set of three laboratory-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
  - b. Test one set of three field-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
  - b. Test one set of three field-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
  - c. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor to evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor to evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than **500 psi (3.4 MPa)** if specified compressive strength is **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)**, or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)**.
  11. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  12. Additional Tests:
    - a. Testing and inspecting agency to make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
    - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
      - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength to be in accordance with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**, Section 1.6.6.3.
  13. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  14. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with **ASTM E1155 (ASTM E1155M)** within 24 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with **ASTM E1155 (ASTM E1155M)** within 24 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

### 3.12 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:

#### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 25– Page 25 of 26

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem a NOVUS architects company

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

1. Protect from petroleum stains.
2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.
8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 033000

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

033000 - 26- Page 26 of 26

Construction Documents

4/26/2024



## SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Shear stud connectors, shop welded.
3. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 051213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for additional requirements for architecturally exposed structural steel.
2. Section 053100 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear stud connectors through deck.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- ##### A. Structural Steel:
- Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- ##### A. Preinstallation Conference:
- Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. Structural-steel materials.
2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
3. Shear stud connectors.
4. Anchor rods.
5. Threaded rods.
6. Forged-steel hardware.
7. Shop primer.
8. Etching cleaner.
9. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING  
Construction Documents

051200  
4/26/2024

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated on Drawings to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
  - 2. ANSI/AISC 360.
  - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
  - 1. Option 1: Connection designs have been completed and connections indicated on the Drawings.

STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING  
Construction Documents

051200  
4/26/2024

- C. Moment Connections: Type FR, fully restrained.
- D. Construction: Shear wall system.

## 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M.
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50 (Grade 345).
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36/A36M.
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

## 2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH (ASTM A563M, Class 10S), heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959/F959M, Type 325-1 (Type 8.8-1), compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. Zinc-Coated High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH (ASTM A563M, Class 10S), heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Hot-dip or mechanically deposited zinc coating.
  - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959/F959M, Type 325-1 (Type 8.8-1), compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating finish.
- C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies, consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A563, Grade DH (ASTM A563M, Class 10S), heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating.

- D. Shear Stud Connectors: ASTM A108, AISI C-1015 through C-1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.

## 2.4 RODS

- A. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
  - 1. Configuration: Straight.
  - 2. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.
- B. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, straight.
  - 1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.
- C. Threaded Rods: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.

## 2.5 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
  - 1. Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
  - 2. SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
  - 3. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

## 2.6 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.

- B. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 2.8 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Slip critical.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

## 2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
  - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

## 2.10 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
  - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
  - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
  - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  - 5. Galvanized surfaces unless indicated to be painted.
  - 6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7 (WAB)/NACE WAB-4.
  - 4. SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.

- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.038 mm)**. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
  - 1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
  - 2. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  - 3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
  - 4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear stud connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.

- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.

### 3.3 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Slip critical.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
  - 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Bolted Connections: Inspect bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  - 2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem a NOVUS architects company

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

- a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
  - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
  - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
  - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
  - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.

END OF SECTION 051200

STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING  
Construction Documents

051200  
4/26/2024



SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING; Revise this Section by deleting and inserting text to meet Project-specific requirements.

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

1. K-series steel joists.
2. K-series steel joist substitutes.
3. Steel joist accessories.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

#### A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.

#### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
2. Include joining and anchorage details; bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### A. Welding certificates.

#### B. Manufacturer certificates.

#### C. Paint compatibility certificates.

#### D. Mill Certificates: For each type of bolt.

#### E. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.

- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify field-welding procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STEEL JOISTS

- A. K-Series Steel Joist: Manufactured steel joists of type indicated in accordance with "Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
  - 1. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture in accordance with "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
- B. Primer:
  - 1. SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

### 2.2 STEEL JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging:
  - 1. Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
  - 2. Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate in accordance with SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
  - 3. Fabricate as indicated on Drawings and in accordance with SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Furnish ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction.
  - 1. Extend ends to within **1/2 inch (13 mm)** of finished wall surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, **Grade A325 (Grade A325M)**, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A563, Grade DH, (ASTM A563M, Class 10S)** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.
- D. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.

## 2.3 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories.
- B. Apply one coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction in accordance with SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
- E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Visually inspect bolted connections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY  
Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem a NOVUS architects company  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

END OF SECTION 052100

## SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof deck.
2. Noncomposite form deck.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Roof deck.
2. Noncomposite form deck.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates:

1. Welding certificates.
2. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

B. Test and Evaluation Reports:

1. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that power-actuated mechanical fasteners comply with requirements.
2. Research Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES showing compliance with the building code.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

D. Qualification Statements: For welding personnel.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Qualifications:

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with SDI QA/QC and the following welding code:

- a. AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

- ### B. FM Approvals' RoofNav Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Approvals and listed in its "RoofNav" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings. Identify materials with FM Approvals Certification markings.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ### A. Store products in accordance with SDI MOC3. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- ### A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck in accordance with AISI S100.
- ### B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from listings of another qualified testing agency.

### 2.2 ROOF DECK

- ### A. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with SDI RD and with the following:
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS), **G60 (Z180)** zinc coating.
  2. Deck Profile: As indicated.
  3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
  4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
  5. Span Condition: As indicated.
  6. Side Laps: Overlapped.

## 2.3 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite deck panels used as a form to comply with SDI NC, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS),, **G60 (Z180)** zinc coating.
  2. Profile Depth: **9/16 inch (14 mm)**.
  3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: **0.0179 inch (0.45 mm)**.
  4. Span Condition: As indicated.
  5. Side Laps: Overlapped.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, **No. 10 (4.8-mm)** minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of **33,000 psi (230 MPa)**, not less than **0.0359-inch (0.91-mm)** design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of **33,000 psi (230 MPa)**, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI standards for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, **0.0598 inch (1.52 mm)** thick, with factory-punched hole of **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** minimum diameter.
- I. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, **0.0747 inch (1.90 mm)** thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- J. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, **0.0747 inch (1.90 mm)** thick, of same material and finish as deck, with **3-inch- (76-mm-)** wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

- K. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.
- L. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories in accordance with SDI C, SDI NC, and SDI RD, as applicable; manufacturer's written instructions; and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install in accordance with deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF ROOF DECK

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** long, and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: **5/8 inch (16 mm)**, nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds **12 inches (300 mm)** apart in Zone 1 and **6 inches (150 mm)** apart in Zones 2 and 3, based on roof-area definitions in FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.



- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or **18 inches (460 mm)**, and as follows:
1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, **No. 10 (4.8-mm-)** diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  2. Fasten with a minimum of **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, with end joints as follows:
1. End Joints: Lapped **2 inches (50 mm)** minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** apart with at least one fastener at each corner.
1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and mechanically fasten.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels in accordance with deck manufacturer's written instructions. mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR DECK

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
1. Weld Diameter: **5/8 inch (16 mm)**, nominal.
  2. Weld Spacing:
    - a. Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of **16 inches (400 mm)** apart, but not more than **18 inches (460 mm)** apart.
    - b. Space and locate welds as indicated.
  3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or **36 inches (1 m)**, and as follows:

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, **No. 10 (4.8-mm-)** diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
  3. Fasten with a minimum of **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **2 inches (50 mm)**, with end joints as follows:
1. End Joints: Lapped.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure in accordance with SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, in accordance with SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

### 3.4 REPAIR

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting:
1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
  2. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck in accordance with quality-assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.
    - a. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
  2. Steel decking will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 053100

## SECTION 05 5000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Miscellaneous framing and supports.
2. Metal ladders.
3. Metal floor plate.
4. Elevator pit sump covers.
5. Metal bollards.
6. Abrasive metal nosings.
7. Gates and fences.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Fasteners.
2. Shrinkage-resisting grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Miscellaneous framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
2. Elevator machine beams and hoist beams.

3. Steel shapes for supporting elevator door sills.
4. Metal ladders.
5. Stair nosings.
6. Elevator pit sump covers.
7. Metal bollards.
8. Gates and fences.

- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors.
- D. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following welding codes:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  2. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 degrees F, ambient; 180 degrees F, material surfaces.

## A. Dumpster Enclosure Gates:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ametco Manufacturing Corporation ([www.ametco.com](http://www.ametco.com), 800-321-7042); Titan Design or comparable product approved by the Architect.
2. Description: Swinging louvered gate.
  - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - b. Style: Louver.
  - c. Size: See Drawings.
  - d. Finish: Polyester powder coated.
  - e. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## B. Site Entrance Gates:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide TyMetal Corp. ([www.tymetal.com](http://www.tymetal.com), 888-978-4283); product or comparable product approved by the Architect.
2. Description: Motorized automatic cantilevered slide access gate.
  - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - b. Size: See Drawings.
  - c. Finish: Polyester powder coated.
  - d. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## C. Fence:

1. Description: Coated galvanized chain link pipe and mesh fence.
  - a. Material: Galvanized steel.
  - b. Wire Diameter: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - c. Mesh Size: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - d. Height: See Drawings.
  - e. Finish: PVC coating.
  - f. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.
- D. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening aluminum stainless steel.
  - 2. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 3, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH3, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- C. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- D. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes recommended by partition manufacturer with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as recommended by partition manufacturer. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

## 2.8 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3 , except for elevator pit ladders.
  - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  - 1. Space siderails 16 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - 3. Rungs: 1-inch- diameter, steel bars.
  - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  - 5. Nonslip Surfaces for Steel Ladders: Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallically bonded to rung.
  - 6. Source Limitations: Obtain nonslip surfaces from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 7. Support each ladder at the top and bottom and not more than 60 inches on center with welded or bolted steel brackets.
  - 8. Prime ladders, including brackets and fasteners.

## 2.9 ELEVATOR PIT SUMP COVERS

- A. Fabricate from 3/16-inch rolled-steel floor plate with four 1-inch- diameter holes for water drainage and for lifting.
- B. Fabricate from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.
- C. Provide steel angle supports unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.



- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize and prime miscellaneous steel trim.

## 2.11 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe.
  - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- thick, steel plate with domed top.
  - 2. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
  - 3. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- thick, steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
  - 1. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
- C. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel or stainless steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch-thick, steel or stainless steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard.
- D. Prime steel bollards with primer specified in Section 09 9123 "Exterior Painting."

## 2.12 ABRASIVE METAL NOSINGS

- A. Extruded Units: Stainless steel, with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain units from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Type and Style: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
- B. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.

## 2.13 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean galvanized surfaces of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" or SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" requirements.
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF GATES AND FENCES

- A. Dumpster Enclosure Gates:
  - 1. Install in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Site Entrance Gate:
  - 1. Install in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and approved shop drawings.
- C. Fences:
  - 1. Install in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and approved shop drawings.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF METAL LADDERS

- A. Secure ladders to adjacent construction with the clip angles attached to the stringer.
- B. Install brackets as required for securing of ladders welded or bolted to structural steel or built into masonry or concrete.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ELEVATOR PIT SUMP COVERS

- A. Install tops of elevator sump pit cover plates and frames flush with finished surface. Adjust as required to avoid lippage that could present a tripping hazard.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
  - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

- B. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete, or in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 42 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than outside of bollard. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with shrinkage-resistant grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward bollard.
- C. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
  - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

### 3.7 REPAIRS

- A. Touchup Painting:
  - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
  - 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 5000

## SECTION 05 5213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Aluminum railings.
2. Stainless steel brackets.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 2023 "Interior Finish Carpentry" for wood handrail.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For delegated design professional engineer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless steel products, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tests on railings performed by a qualified testing agency, in accordance with ASTM E894 and ASTM E935.
- E. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:

1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
2. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of railings from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  2. Infill of Guards:
    - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
    - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 degrees F, ambient; 180 degrees F, material surfaces.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide type of bracket with [flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt] [predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage] and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

## 2.3 ALUMINUM RAILINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
- C. Extruded Bars and Tubing: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
- D. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B429/B429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - 1. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B210/B210M, Alloy 6063-T832.
- F. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- G. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B247, Alloy 6061-T6.
- H. Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

## 2.4 STAINLESS STEEL RAILINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Castings: ASTM A743/A743M, Grade CF 8M or CF 3M.
- C. Plate and Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 316L.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials:
  - 1. Aluminum Railing Components: Type 316 stainless steel fasteners.
  - 2. Stainless Steel Railing Components: Type 316 stainless steel fasteners.
  - 3. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction and capable of withstanding design loads.

## C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:

1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
3. Provide Phillips tamper-resistant flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

## D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193.

1. Where Stainless Steel: Alloy Group 2 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

## A. Handrail Brackets: Cast aluminum, and cast stainless steel, center of handrail 3-1/8 inches from wall.

## B. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select in accordance with AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

1. For aluminum and stainless steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.

## C. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

## D. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.

1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations, provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

## A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.



- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
  - 1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
  - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
  - 1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.
  - 1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
  - 2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded or nonwelded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 welds; ornamental quality with no evidence of a welded joint.
- I. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
  - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection, using an epoxy structural adhesive, if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- J. Form changes in direction as follows: As detailed.
- K. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- L. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.
- M. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.

- N. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- O. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work.
  - 1. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
  - 2. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- P. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- Q. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

## 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41.

## 2.9 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet and Plate Finishes:
  - 1. Directional Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480, No. 4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine wall assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

- A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.
  - 1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
  - 2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
  - 3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
  - 4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
  - 6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
  - 1. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws, using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article, whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve, extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side; fasten internal sleeve securely to one side; and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

### 3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch buildup, sloped away from post.

### 3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends to concrete with brackets on underside of rails connected to railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.
  - 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
  - 2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period, so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 5213

SECTION 06 1053 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood blocking.
2. Wood furring.
3. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater size but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Preservative-treated wood.
  2. Power-driven fasteners.
  3. Post-installed anchors.
  4. Metal framing anchors.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate concealed and required blocking with Owner provided and installed signage.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry unless otherwise indicated. items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Wood blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood blocking and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wood furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Furring.
- B. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C , in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M .
- B. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C1002, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 and ICC-ES AC193 as appropriate for the substrate.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- B. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- C. Provide blocking as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- D. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber.
  - 1. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- E. Comply with AWPAC M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- F. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- G. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.



WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- size furring horizontally and vertically at 24 inches on center.

END OF SECTION 06 1053

## SECTION 06 2023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior trim.
2. Wood handrail.
3. Plywood.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 5213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for handrail brackets.
2. Section 06 1053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
3. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for priming and backpriming of interior finish carpentry.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product.

B. Samples for Verification:

1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products with nonfactory-applied finish, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
2. For each finish system and color of lumber and panel products with factory-applied finish, 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas.

- C. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- D. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Hardwood Lumber Trim (Opaque Finish):
  - 1. Species: Poplar.
  - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 4. Face Surface: Smooth.

### 2.2 INTERIOR WOOD RAILING

- A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):
  - 1. Species: Mahogany.
  - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 4. Face Surface: Smooth.

### 2.3 PLYWOOD

- A. Hardwood Plywood (Opaque Finish):
  - 1. Species: Birch.
  - 2. Grade: AC.
  - 3. Thickness: 3/4 inches.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except those with ends exposed in finished work:
  - 1. Interior standing and running trim.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound; warped; improperly treated or finished; inadequately seasoned; too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements; or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
  - 2. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
  - 5. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available.
  - 1. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary.
  - 2. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim.
  - 3. Cope at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint.
  - 4. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
  - 5. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
  - 6. Install trim after gypsum-board joint finishing operations are completed.
  - 7. Install without splitting; drill pilot holes before fastening where necessary to prevent splitting.
  - 8. Fasten to prevent movement or warping.
  - 9. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.
  - 1. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.
- B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

## 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.
- B. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes if any.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 06 2023

## SECTION 06 4113 - WOOD-VENEER-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood cabinets for transparent finish.
2. Wood materials.
3. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
4. Miscellaneous materials.
5. Shop finishing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
2. Section 12 3661.16 "Solid Surfacing Countertops."
3. Section 12 366.1.19 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops."

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data : For each type product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For architectural cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Show large-scale details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in architectural cabinets.
5. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following:
  - 1. Lumber for Transparent Finish: Not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
  - 2. Veneer Leaves: Representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished cabinets.
  - 3. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 degrees F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CABINETS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of architectural cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

### 2.2 WOOD CABINETS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade:
  - 1. Aesthetics Grade: Custom.
  - 2. Performance Duty: Duty Level 4.
- B. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- C. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- D. Wood for Exposed Surfaces: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Blueprint Matching: Comply with veneer and other matching requirements indicated for blueprint-matched paneling.
  - 2. Cut: AS selected by Architect.
  - 3. Grain Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
  - 4. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Book match.
  - 5. Veneer Matching within Room: Provide cabinet veneers in each room or other space from a single flitch with doors, drawer fronts, and other surfaces matched in a sequenced set with continuous match where veneers are interrupted perpendicular to the grain.
- E. Semiexposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Same species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Drawer Subfronts, Backs, and Sides: Solid-hardwood lumber, same species indicated for exposed surfaces.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- F. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
- G. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints to meet performance requirements.



## 2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches wide.
  - 2. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.

## 2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Cabinet Hardware: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 100 degrees of opening , self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal , 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- F. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
  - 1. Standard Duty (Grade 1 and Grade 2): Side mount.
  - 2. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount.
    - a. Type: Full extension.
    - b. Material: Galvanized steel ball bearing slides.
    - c. Motion Feature: Push to open and soft close dampener.
- G. Door Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- H. Drawer Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- I. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, L03011.  
  
Grommets for Cable Passage: 2-inch outside diameter, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
  - 1. Color: Black.
- J. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
  - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: ANSI/BHMA 630.

- K. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges and corners to 1/16-inch radius unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

## 2.7 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Finish architectural cabinets at manufacturer's shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural cabinets, as applicable to each unit of work.
  - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of cabinets.
- C. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
  - 2. Finish: System - 9, UV-curable acrylated epoxy, polyester, or urethane.
  - 3. Staining and Sheen: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with cabinet surface.
  - 1. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
  - 4. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches on center with No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.
- E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.
  - 1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 06 4113

SECTION 06 4116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets.
2. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
3. Miscellaneous materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
2. Section 12 3623.13 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops."

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Show large-scale details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Plastic Laminates: 8 by 10 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required.
  - a. Provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.

2. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: 8 by 10 inches, for each color, pattern, and surface finish.
  - a. Provide edge banding on one edge.
3. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 degrees and 90 degrees F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade:
  - 1. Aesthetics Grade: Custom.
  - 2. Performance: Level 4.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: ISO 4586-3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wilsonart LLC; products or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Formica Corporation.
    - b. Laminart LLC.
    - c. Pionite; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.
- F. Exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Plastic-Laminate Grade: HGS.
  - 2. Edges: PVC edge banding, 3.0 mm thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
  - 3. Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
- G. Semiexposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Thermally fused laminate panels.
    - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge banding, 3.0 mm thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
    - b. Edges of Thermally Fused Laminate Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
    - c. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4586-3, grade to match exposed surface.
  - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermally fused laminate panels with PVC or polyester edge banding.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermally fused laminate panels.
- H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.

- I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4583-3, grade to match exposed surface.
- J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints to meet performance requirements.
- K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

## 2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF):
    - a. Countertops, Typical: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, MR10.
    - b. Countertops with Sinks: ANSI A208.2, MR50.
  - 2. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper.

## 2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Cabinet Hardware: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 100 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- G. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
  - 1. Standard Duty (Grade 1 and Grade 2): Side mount.
  - 2. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200):
    - a. Type: Full extension.
    - b. Material: Galvanized steel ball bearing slides.
    - c. Motion Feature: Push to open and soft close dampener.
- H. Door Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07121.



- I. Drawer Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- J. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- K. Grommets for Cable Passage: 2-inch outside diameter, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
  - 1. Color: Black.
- L. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for ANSI/BHMA finish number indicated.
  - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: ANSI/BHMA 630.
- M. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Type II water-resistant type as selected by fabricator to comply with requirements.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches on center with No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 06 4116

## SECTION 06 6116 – SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid surfacing wall panel fabrications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 12 3661.16 "Solid Surfacing Countertops" for casework countertops.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Solid Surface: Non-porous, homogeneous material maintaining the same composition throughout the part with a composition of acrylic polymer, aluminum trihydrate filler and pigment.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCES

- A. Arrange preinstallation meeting one week prior to commencing work with all parties associated with trade as designated in Contract Documents or as requested by Architect.

1. Presided over by Contractor, include Architect who may attend, Subcontractor performing work of this trade, Owner's representative, testing company's representative and consultants of applicable discipline.
2. Review Contract Documents for work included under this trade and determine complete understanding of requirements and responsibilities relative to work included, storage and handling of materials, materials to be used, installation of materials, sequence and quality control, Project staffing, restrictions on areas of work and other matters affecting construction, to permit compliance with intent of work of this Section.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For panel materials.

- B. Shop Drawings: For panels. Show materials, finishes, edge profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

- C. Test and Evaluation Reports: Submit flammability test reports.

- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Wall panel material, 6 inches square.
  - 2. Joining of two panels, 6 by 12 inches, illustrating joint. Mount on gypsum board.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Fabricator/Installer.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface panels to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.
  - 1. Submit manufacturer's care and maintenance data, including repair and cleaning instructions. Include in Project closeout documents.
  - 2. Provide a commercial care and maintenance kit and video. Review maintenance procedures and warranty details with Owner upon completion.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Installers: Provide work of this Section executed by competent installers with minimum 5 years experience in the application of Products, systems and assemblies specified and with approval and training of the Product manufacturers.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Acceptance Requirements: Deliver no components to Project site until areas are ready for installation.
- B. Storage and Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store components indoors prior to installation.
  - 2. Handle materials to prevent damage to finished surfaces.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of panels by field measurements before panel fabrication is complete.

## 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities and equipment that will penetrate panels.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard warranty for material only for period of 10 years against defects and/or deficiencies.
1. Promptly correct any defects or deficiencies that become apparent within warranty period, to satisfaction of Architect and at no expense to Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SOLID SURFACING PANELS – SS-2

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.; Corian or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Durasein Solid Surface; a brand of Relang International, LLC.
    - b. Formica Corporation.
    - c. LG Hausys, Ltd.
    - d. Wilsonart LLC;
  2. Type: Standard unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Colors, Finish and Patterns: See Finish Selections – Overall on Drawings.
- B. Description: Non-porous, homogeneous material maintaining the same composition throughout the part with a composition of acrylic polymer, aluminum trihydrate filler and pigment; not coated, laminated or of composite construction.
1. Solid Surface Material Thickness: 1/4 inch.
- C. Performance/Design Criteria for Solid Surface Based Products ((Property (Test Procedure): Requirement Minimum or Maximum)):
1. Tensile Strength (ASTM D638): 6000 psi min
  2. Tensile Modulus (ASTM D638): 1.5 x 10<sup>6</sup> psi min
  3. Tensile Elongation (ASTM D638): 0.4 percent min.
  4. Flexural Strength (ASTM D790): 10000 psi min
  5. Flexural Modulus (ASTM D790): 1.2 x 10<sup>6</sup> psi min
  6. Hardness (ASTM D785): >85-Rockwell "M" scale min.
  7. Thermal Expansion (ASTM E228): 2.2 x 10<sup>-5</sup> in./in./°F
  8. Fungi and Bacteria (ASTM G21 and ASTM G22): Does not support microbial growth.
  9. Microbial Resistance (UL 2824): Highly resistant to mold growth

10. Ball Impact (NEMA LD 3, Method 3.8): No fracture - 1/2 lb. Ball:
  - a. 6 mm slab – 36-inch drop
  - b. 12 mm slab – 144-inch drop
11. Weatherability (ASTM G155):  $\Delta E^*94 < 5$  in 1,000 hours
12. Flammability (ASTM E84, NFPA 255 and UL 723): All Colors, 6 mm and 12 mm
  - a. Flame Spread: Less than 25.
  - b. Smoke Developed: Less than 25.

D. Class: A, NFPA 101, Life Safety Code.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive for Bonding to Other Products: One component silicone to ASTM C920.
- B. Sealant: A standard mildew-resistant, recognized silicone color matched sealant or clear silicone sealants.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate components in shop to greatest extent practical to sizes and shapes indicated, in accordance with approved Shop Drawings and solid polymer manufacturer requirements. Form joints between components using manufacturer's standard joint adhesive without conspicuous joints to match existing.
- B. Provide factory cutouts for electrical components as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Rout and finish component edges to a smooth, uniform finish. Rout cutouts, then sand edges smooth. Repair or reject defective or inaccurate work.
- D. Fabrication Tolerances:
  1. Variation in Component Size: Plus/minus 1/8 inch.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  1. Examine substrates and conditions, with fabricator present for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  2. Verify actual site dimensions and location of adjacent materials prior to commencing work.
  3. Notify Architect in writing of any conditions that would be detrimental to installation.

- B. Evaluation and Assessment: Commencement of work implies acceptance of previously completed work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components plumb, level, rigid, scribed to adjacent finishes in accordance with approved Shop Drawings and Product installation details.
- B. Fabricate field joints using manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Keep components and hands clean when making joints.
  - 2. Reinforce field joints as specified herein.
  - 3. Cut and finish component edges with clean, sharp returns.
- C. Keep components and hands clean during installation. Remove adhesives, sealants and other stains. Ensure components are clean on date of Substantial Completion of the Work.

### 3.3 REPAIR

- A. Repair minor imperfections and cracked seams and replace areas of severely damaged surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's "Technical Bulletins".

### 3.4 SITE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Non-Conforming Work: Replace damaged work which cannot be satisfactorily repaired, restored or cleaned, to satisfaction of Architect at no cost to Owner.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive and sealant from visible surfaces.
- B. Clean surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's "Care and Maintenance Instructions".

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective coverings to prevent physical damage or staining following installation for duration of Project.
- B. Protect surfaces from damage until date of Substantial Completion of the Work.

END OF SECTION 06 6116

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem a NOVUS architects company  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

### SECTION 071354 - THERMOPLASTIC SHEET WATERPROOFING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. PVC sheet waterproofing for horizontal installations.
2. Drainage panels.

##### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- ###### A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ###### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- ###### B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- ###### C. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing and details of substrate joints and cracks, expansion joints, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.

1. Include layout drawings showing locations of submembrane containment strips.
2. Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.

- ###### D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ###### A. Sample warranties.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ###### A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

THERMOPLASTIC SHEET WATERPROOFING  
Construction Documents

071354 - 1  
4/26/2024



## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem a NOVUS architects company

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PVC SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. PVC Sheet: **60-mil-** (1.5-mm-) thick, PVC membrane with integral pigments, stabilizers, UV absorbers, biocide, and nonwoven fiberglass reinforcement.

### 2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Concealed Sheet Flashing: Same material, construction, and thickness as sheet waterproofing.
- C. Exposed Sheet Flashing: PVC-sheet flashing **60 mils** (1.5 mm) thick; PVC with integral pigments, stabilizers, UV absorbers, and biocide; reinforced with nonwoven fiberglass.
- D. Preformed Flashing Shapes: As needed to suit Project requirements, including, but not limited to, detail corners, level changes, stop ends, and other similar special applications
- E. Surface Conditioner: Manufacturer's standard waterborne surface treatment to bind residual surface dust and efflorescence to substrate.
- F. Bonding Adhesives: For bonding waterproofing sheets and sheet flashings to substrates.
- G. Separation Layer: Manufacturer's standard **0.16-inch-** (4.06-mm-) thick, nonwoven polypropylene fabric.
- H. Waterproofing and Sheet-Flashing Accessories: Sealants, pourable sealers, termination reglets, clamps, compression bars, tapes, preformed cone and stack flashings, and other accessories recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use.
- I. Control Test Drain: Manufacturer's standard assembly to verify the absence or presence of leaks from underside of waterproofed slab.

- J. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel or aluminum bars, prepunched, with noncorrosive fasteners.

## 2.3 DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Composite Drainage Panels: Drainage panel acceptable to waterproofing manufacturer and consisting of a nonbiodegradable core of fused, entangled filaments or a three-dimensional drainage net; with a geotextile facing on both sides. Retain this article for plaza-deck pavers installed on pedestals over waterproofing. Specify pavers installed in an aggregate, mortar, or bituminous setting bed in Section 321400 "Unit Paving."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF FULLY ADHERED SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Install self-adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
  - 2. Install laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  - 3. Install flashings concurrently with deck sheet.
  - 4. Perform hot-air welding to ensure a watertight seam installation. Inspect outside edge of seams with pointed metal probe and ensure completed laps lay flat and are free of voids, fishmouths, or wrinkles.
  - 5. Install temporary cut-offs if work is interrupted. Remove the cut-offs completely before proceeding with the installation.
  - 6. Install sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into adjoining waterproofing.
- B. Apply surface conditioner, at required rate, to substrates to receive waterproofing. Apply only at temperatures greater than 25 deg F (minus 4 deg C) and rising.
- C. Apply and firmly adhere sheets to substrate; butt adjoining sheets tightly. Apply only when the membrane, air, and substrate temperatures are greater than 40 deg F (5 deg C) and rising. Apply a minimum 8-inch- (203-mm-) wide cover strip centered over joints and lap edges; hot-air weld cover strip to deck sheet.

- D. Hot-air weld three-way overlaps or T-joints with a 4-inch- (102-mm-) round or square patch.
- E. Unless terminations and deck-sheet waterproofing perimeter are sealed with flashings, secure them with mechanically anchored metal termination bar. Seal edge of termination with sealant.
- F. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing that do not comply with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF LOOSELY LAID SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Install loosely laid sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
  - 2. Install laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  - 3. Install flashings concurrently with deck sheet.
  - 4. Perform hot-air welding to ensure a watertight seam installation. Inspect outside edge of seams with pointed metal probe and ensure completed laps lay flat and are free of voids, fishmouths, or wrinkles.
  - 5. Install temporary cut-offs if work is interrupted. Remove the cut-offs completely before proceeding with the installation.
  - 6. Install sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into adjoining waterproofing.
- B. Install geotextile leveling layer over entire area to receive deck sheet. Lap edges at least 4 inches (102 mm) and spot adhere fabric to deck as required to keep in position as waterproofing sheet is placed in position. Trim fabric using scissors or utility blades; do not use welding equipment to cut fabric.
- C. Apply deck sheet over area, lapping edges at least 3 inches (76 mm) for machine welding or at least 4 inches (102 mm) for hand welding. Hot-air weld sheets.
- D. Hot-air weld three-way overlaps or T-joints with a 4-inch- (102-mm-) round or square patch.
- E. Secure perimeter of deck sheet with manufacturer's standard metal termination bars and accessories as recommended by manufacturer for each condition.
- F. At deck drains, spread sealant bed over drain flange and lap membrane into drain flange according to membrane manufacturer's written instructions; securely seal sheets in place with clamping ring.
- G. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing that do not comply with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF COMPARTMENTED, LOOSELY LAID SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
  - 2. Install laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  - 3. Install flashings concurrently with deck sheet.
  - 4. Perform hot-air welding to ensure a watertight seam installation. Inspect outside edge of seams with pointed metal probe and ensure completed laps lay flat and are free of voids, fishmouths, or wrinkles.
  - 5. Install temporary cut-offs if work is interrupted. Remove the cut-offs completely before proceeding with the installation.
  - 6. Install sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into adjoining waterproofing.
- B. Construct a test containment grid before beginning installation. Perform manufacturer's recommended peel test on the test containment grid and on each day's completed waterproofing work before resuming the following day's installation.
- C. Install submembrane containment grid to form compartments secured by containment strips. Also, install containment strips at the base of walls, curbs, penetrations, terminations, and transitions and at the perimeter of the installation. Secure containment grid to substrate with bonding adhesive.
- D. Install geotextile leveling layer over entire area between containment strips. Lap edges at least **4 inches (102 mm)** and spot adhere fabric to deck as required to keep in position as waterproofing sheet is placed in position. Trim fabric even with edges of containment strips using scissors or utility blades; do not use welding equipment to cut fabric.
- E. Control-Test-Drain Installation: Drill **1-inch- (25-mm-)** diameter hole through the substrate at or near the low point of each compartment and install control test drain, according to manufacturer's written instructions, so as to enable verification of the absence or presence of leaks from underside of waterproofed slab.
- F. Apply deck sheet over area, lapping edges at least **3 inches (76 mm)** for machine welding or at least **4 inches (102 mm)** for hand welding. Hot-air weld the sheet to containment strips.
- G. Hot-air weld three-way overlaps or T-joints with a **4-inch- (102-mm-)** round or square patch.
- H. Install flashing at deck drains. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange, lap flashing membrane into drain flange and over containment strips according to membrane manufacturer's written instructions, and hot-air weld flashing to containment strips; securely seal flashing sheet in place with clamping ring.
- I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing that do not comply with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF SHEET FLASHING

- A. Form wall flashings exposed in final construction using exposed sheet flashing; otherwise, use concealed sheet flashing.
- B. Lap sheet flashings over deck sheet or containment strips. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with sheet flashing.
- C. Extend flashings a minimum of **8 inches (203 mm)** above the overburden unless otherwise indicated on Drawings and acceptable to waterproofing manufacturer.
- D. Hot-air weld joints with deck sheet or containment strips and end laps of overlapping sheet flashings and accessories to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Hot-air weld three-way overlaps or T-joints with a **4-inch- (102-mm-)** round or square patch.
- F. Secure flashings along top edge with mechanically anchored metal termination bar or with mechanically anchored metal reglet for subsequent metal counterflashing. Seal top of termination with sealant.
- G. Terminate deck sheet at expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints. Bridge and cover joints with sheet flashing and joint accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions for each type of joint.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Place and secure drainage panels directly over the waterproofing membrane, according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Trim drainage panels to fit closely around penetrations and at the base of drains to ensure that water flows freely from composite into drain openings.
- C. Cover cut edges of drainage panels to protect waterproofing membrane from damage.

### 3.7 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING

- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- C. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071354

## SECTION 07 1600 – CEMENT WATERPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cement-based waterproofing for inside cistern.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3000 “Cast-in-Place Concrete.”

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:
  - 1. Manufacturer's technical bulletins and safety data sheets.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Applicator Qualifications. Submit list of project references as documented in this specification under Quality Assurance Article.
  - 1. Include contact name and phone number of the person charged with oversight of each project.
- B. Quality Control Submittals: Provide protection plan of surrounding areas and non-work surfaces.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company with minimum 15 years experience in manufacturing of specified products and systems.
    - a. Manufacturer shall be ISO 9001:2015 Certified.
  - 2. Applicator Qualifications: Company with minimum of 5 years experience in application of specified products and systems on projects of similar size and scope, and is acceptable to product manufacturer.
    - a. Successful completion of a minimum of 5 projects of similar size and complexity to specified Work.
- B. Field Sample:
  - 1. Install field sample at project site or other pre-selected area of building, as directed by Architect.

2. Apply material in strict accordance with manufacturer's written application instructions.
3. Manufacturer's representative or designated representative will review technical aspects; surface preparation, application and workmanship.
4. Field sample will be standard for judging workmanship on remainder of project.
5. Maintain field sample during construction for workmanship comparison.
6. Do not alter, move or destroy field sample until work is completed and approved by architect/engineer.
7. Obtain Architect's written approval of field sample before start of material application, including approval of aesthetics, color, texture and appearance.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Transport and store in unopened containers and keep in clean, dry condition protected from rain, dew and humidity.
  1. If dry onsite storage of bags is unavailable or if project is located in a very wet, humid climate, purchase product in manufacturer's packaged metal pails.
- D. Do not stack bags more than two pallets high.
- E. Do not allow modifying admixture to freeze.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements:
  1. Do not apply in rain or when rain is expected within 24 hours.
  2. Do not apply above 90 degrees F (32 degrees C) or below 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or when temperatures are expected to fall below 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) within 24 hours.
  3. For hot and cold temperature applications, store materials and water at 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) to 70 degrees F (21 degrees C) before use.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEMENT WATERPROOFING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Master Builders Solutions ([www.master-builders-solutions.com/en-us](http://www.master-builders-solutions.com/en-us); 800-243-6739); MasterSeal 581 or comparable product approved by the Architect.

- B. Description: Portland-cement based coating, polymer-modified, for concrete that resists both air infiltration and positive and negative hydrostatic pressure, allowing interior moisture to escape without damaging coating, creating a low maintenance and highly durable waterproof barrier.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide patching material complying with the following requirements:

1. Compliances: NSF/ANSI Standard 61 for potable water contact.
2. Service Temperatures: Immersion, up to 140 degrees F (60 degrees C); cleaning water, up to 200 degrees F (93 degrees C); dry air, up to 220 degrees F (104 degrees C).
3. VOC: 0 lbs/gal (0 g/L) less water and exempt solvents.
4. Initial Set, minutes at 70 degrees F (21 degrees C), 50 percent relative humidity: 10 minutes per lab method.
5. Final Set, minutes at 70 degrees F (21 degrees C), 50 percent relative humidity: 90 minutes per lab method.
6. Density (cured): 129 pounds per foot (2,080 kg/m) per lab method.
7. Positive resistance to hydrostatic pressure, hrs, at 200 psi (1.4 MPa), 461 head feet, air cured at 70 degrees F (21 degrees C) 50 percent relative humidity: 752 (No leakage, no softening) per CRD C 48, modified.
8. Negative resistance to hydrostatic pressure, hours, at 200 psi (1.4 MPa), 461 head feet, air cured at 70 degrees F (21 degrees C) 50 percent relative humidity: 664 (Limited dampness) per CRD C 48, modified.
9. Potable water (direct contact): Suitable approved per BS6920 (British standard), NSF Standard 61.
10. Water absorption, boiling water submersion at 24 hours: 3.6 percent per ASTM C 67 (Section 7.3).
11. Compressive strength, ASTM C 109:
  - a. 7 days: 4,200 psi (29 MPa)
  - b. 28 days: 6,030 psi (42 MPa)
12. Flexural strength, ASTM C 348:
  - a. 7 days: 360 psi (2.5 MPa)
  - b. 28 days: 1,027 psi (7 MPa)
13. Tensile strength, ASTM C 190:
  - a. 7 days: 250 psi (2 MPa).
  - b. 28 days: 440 psi (3 MPa).
14. Modulus of elasticity, ASTM C 469, 28 days:  $2.72 \times 10$  to the 6th psi ( $1.87 \times 10$  to the 4th MPa).
15. Artificial weathering, hrs:
  - a. Xenon Arc: 5,000 = No failure per ASTM G 26.
  - b. Carbon Arc: 500 = No failure per ASTM G 23.
16. Adhesion strength, Test by tensile bond: 418 psi (2.9 MPa).
17. Artificial weathering, Atlas Type DMC weatherometer: No cracking, loss of adhesion, checking or other defect.
18. Freeze/thaw resistance, 200 cycles: No change per ASTM C 666 (Procedure B).
19. Salt spray resistance, 300 hours: No defect per ASTM B 117.



20. Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) per Lab Method Diffusion. Equivalent to 3/4 inch (19 mm) new concrete.
21. Permeance:
  - a. Perms: 12 (0.10698) per ASTM E 96
  - b. Metric permeability 18 x 10 to the 3rd resistance (water-vapor transmission) per Swedish standard SS-02-15-82.
22. Wind-driven rain, hours: 8 equals excellent per Fed. Spec. TT-P-0035 (Para 4.4.7).
23. Coefficient of thermal expansion in/in/degree F (mm/mm/degree C), at 28 days: 6.99 x 10 to the minus 6th (5 x 10 to the minus 7th) per ASTM C 531.
24. Impact strength (Gardener impact tester): No chipping per Fed. Spec. TT-P-0035 (Cement paints para. 3.4.8)
25. Hardness, (Barber Coleman Impressor) Requirement minimum equals 30, maximum equals 60 (para 4.4.9) Fed. Spec. TT-P-0035:
  - a. 7 days: 35.
  - b. 14 days: 47.
  - c. 21 days: 52.
26. Abrasion resistance 3,000 L sand: Passed per Fed. Spec. TT-P-141B.
27. Reflectance ASTM D 2244 using Hunterlab D-25 meter:
  - a. Gray MASTERSEAL 581: 64.2.
  - b. White MASTERSEAL 581: 8.1.
28. Fungus resistance at 21 days: No growth; meets all requirements of Fed. Spec. TT-P-29B.
29. Surface burning characteristics per ASTM E 84:
  - a. Flame Spread: 0.
  - b. Smoke developed: 5.
30. Fire Propagation Flame spread: Index equals 1.5, Class 1 per BS476: Part 6:1981, BS476: Part 7:1971.

## 2.3 MIXING

- A. Mix material per manufacturer instructions allowing material to rest 10 minutes before remixing and application.
- B. Color: Gray, standard.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION - SURFACE

- A. Ensure that substrates are sound and free of dust, dirt, laitance, paints, oils, grease, curing compounds and other contaminants.
- B. Ensure substrate has properly cured. Concrete should obtain 80 percent of design strength. If efflorescence is present, mechanically remove it before proceeding. For extreme cases where this is not adequate, contact Technical Service.

- C. Patch holes and cracks before installation.
- D. Roughen or brush blast extremely smooth surfaces to ensure good mechanical adhesion.

### 3.2 APPLICATION - GENERAL

- A. Apply coating with manufacturer recommended brush or broom or equivalent stiff fiber brush or with textured spray equipment. Spray, back-brush, or broom applications of first coat to fill voids and achieve uniformity.
- B. Completely dampen substrate with water before starting application. Do not saturate substrate. Keep substrate cool and damp throughout application.
- C. Work first coat thoroughly into substrate to completely fill and cover voids, holes and nonmoving cracks.
- D. Allow to cure 24 hours, then apply second coat and finish with vertical stroke.
- E. Allow coating to cure 7 to 10 days before immersion in water.

### 3.3 WATERPROOFING POTABLE WATER TANKS OR RESERVOIRS

- A. Install standard coating as specified in Application - General instructions.
- B. After standard coating has fully cured, wash down surface with saline solution (salt brine, one pound salt per one gallon water). Leave saline solution on entire surface for at least 24 hours. Rinse off saline solution completely. If needed, reapply saline solution until final rinse water is completely clean and clear.

### 3.4 WALL/FLOOR COVE DETAILING

- A. Cut out intersection of floor/wall and install waterstop cove seal at wall and floor junction prior to application of base coat.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean waterproofing material from tools and equipment with water. Remove cured materials mechanically.
- B. Clean up and properly dispose of debris remaining on Project site related to application.
- C. Remove temporary coverings and protection from adjacent Work areas.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

3.6 PROTECTION

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- A. Protect system from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 07 1600

## SECTION 07 1616 - CRYSTALLINE WATERPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Crystalline waterproofing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Testing Requirements: Crystalline waterproofing system shall be tested in accordance with the following standards and conditions, and the testing results shall meet or exceed the performance requirements as specified herein.
- B. Independent Laboratory: Testing shall be performed by an independent laboratory meeting the requirements of ASTM E 329-95 and certified by the United States Bureau of Standards. Testing laboratory shall obtain all concrete samples and waterproofing product samples.
- C. Crystalline Penetration: Crystallizing capability of waterproofing material shall be evidenced by independent SEM (Scanning Electron Microscope) photographs documenting penetration of crystal-forming waterproofing material to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
- D. Permeability: Independent testing shall be performed according to U.S. Army Corps
  - 1. Concrete samples (treated and untreated) to have design strength of 2000 psi (13.8 MPa) and thick- ness of 2 inches (50 mm). No admixtures permitted.
  - 2. Coatings to have maximum thickness of 0.05 inches (1 mm) per coat with up to two coats permitted.
  - 3. Samples to be pressure tested to 175 psi (405 foot head of water) or 1.2 MPa (123.4 m head of water).
  - 4. Treated samples, after crystalline growth has occurred, shall exhibit no measurable leakage.

- E. Chemical Resistance: Independent testing shall be performed according to ASTM C 267-77 “Chemical Resistance of Mortars” and ASTM C 39-86 “Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens”.
1. Concrete samples (treated and untreated) to have design strength of 4000 psi (27.6 MPa). No admixtures permitted.
  2. Coatings to have maximum thickness of 0.05 inches (1 mm) per coat with up to two coats permitted.
  3. Untreated and treated specimens to be immersed for a minimum of 84 days in following chemical solutions: hydrochloric acid (3.5 pH), brake fluid, transformer oil, ethylene glycol, toluene, caustic soda.
  4. Treated specimens shall exhibit no detrimental effects after exposure, and shall have a minimum of 14 percent increase in compressive strength versus untreated control specimens.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and installation instructions.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of waterproofing, patching, and plugging material.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product formulation, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field Quality-Control Reports: Provide copy of report from manufacturer’s representative field report confirming that the surfaces to which waterproofing material is to be applied are in a condition suitable to receive same.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer shall be ISO 9001 registered, and shall have no less than 10 years experience in manufacturing the cementitious crystalline waterproofing materials for the required work.
1. Manufacturers that cannot provide the performance test data specified herein will not be considered for the project.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying crystalline waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged waterproofing materials to project site in original undamaged containers, with manufacturer's labels and seals intact.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit crystalline waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
- C. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 degrees F or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer shall provide standard product warranty executed by authorized company official. Term of warranty shall be five years from Date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 CEMENTITIOUS CRYSTALLINE WATERPROOFING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Xypex Chemical Corporation ([www.xypex.com](http://www.xypex.com), 800-961-4477); products or comparable products by one of the following:
  - 1. AQUAFIN, Inc.
  - 2. Penetron USA, Inc.
- B. Description: Blend of portland cement, fine treated silica sand and active proprietary chemicals. When mixed with water and applied as a cementitious coating, the active chemicals cause a catalytic reaction which generates a non-soluble crystalline formation of dendritic fibers within the pores and capillary tracts of concrete. This process causes concrete to become permanently sealed against the penetration of liquids from any direction.
  - 1. Xypex Concentrate.
  - 2. Xypex Modified.
  - 3. Xypex Patch'n Plug.

- A. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; and compatible with substrate and other materials indicated.
- B. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); and compatible with substrate and other materials indicated.
- C. Water: Potable.

## 2.3 MIXES

- A. Crystalline Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Notify Architect in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
- C. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
- D. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound.

- E. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound.
  - 1. At holes and cracks 1/16 inch wide or larger in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and minimum 1 inch deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
- F. Surface Preparation: Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - 1. Clean concrete surfaces in accordance with ASTM D4258.
    - a. Smooth-Formed and Trowel-Finished Concrete: Prepare by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning in accordance with ASTM D4259.
  - 2. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
  - 1. Saturate surface with water for several hours and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
  - 2. Apply waterproofing to surfaces, and extend waterproofing onto adjacent surfaces as follows:
    - a. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including sumps.
  - 3. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability.
  - 4. Application Method: Apply to ensure that each coat fills voids and is in full contact with substrate or previous coat.
  - 5. Dampen surface between coats.
- B. Final Coat Finish: Smooth.
- C. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed application of waterproofing.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 07 1616



## SECTION 07 2100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Molded (expanded) polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 2119 "Foamed-in-Place Insulation" for spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product type.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer's Certification: Listing type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope.

1. Sign, date, and post the certification in a conspicuous location on Project site.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- C. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes less than 25 and 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.
- C. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): R-value as indicated below in accordance with ASTM C518.
  - 1. R-Value at 75 degrees mean temperature: 5.0.

## 2.2 MOLDED (EXPANDED) POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Molded (Expanded) Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IX: ASTM C578, Type IX, 25-psi minimum compressive strength.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Alleguard (formerly Amvic Building System).
    - b. Atlas Molded Products, a division of Atlas Roofing Corporation.
    - c. DiversiFoam Products.
    - d. Insulfoam; Carlisle Construction Materials Company.
    - e. Plymouth Foam, an Altor Solutions Company.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections or other items that may interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.

- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches on center both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Press units firmly against inside substrates.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 2100

SECTION 07 2119 - FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Closed-cell spray polyurethane foam insulation.
2. Intumescent Coating.
3. Accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation" for foam-plastic board insulation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Closed-cell spray polyurethane foam insulation.
2. Intumescent coating.
3. Accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of spray foam insulation.

1. Include details of terminations and penetrations.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by qualified testing agency.

B. Research Reports: For spray-applied polyurethane foam-plastic insulation, from an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Compatibility:

1. Submit letter from manufacturer stating that materials proposed for use are permanently chemically compatible and adhesively compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use.
2. Submit letter from manufacturer stating that cleaning materials used during installation are chemically compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing urethane foam products and systems of this section with minimum ten years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by air barrier spray foam manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.
- C. Handle materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temperature: Install closed-cell, medium density spray foam insulation within range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by manufacturer. Do not apply to a damp or wet substrate.
- B. Field Conditions: Do not install spray foam insulation when the temperature of substrate surfaces and surrounding air temperatures are below those recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. Sequencing. Do not install spray foam insulation material before the roof assembly has been sufficiently installed to prevent a buildup of water in the interior of the building.
- D. Compatibility. Do not allow closed-cell, medium density spray polyurethane foam to come in contact with chemically incompatible materials.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide manufacturer's limited product warranty, for a maximum of 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 2.1 CLOSED-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM INSULATION

- A. Closed-Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam: ASTM C1029, Type II, minimum density of 1.5 lb/cu. ft. and minimum aged R-value at 1-inch thickness of 6.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company; JM Corbond III or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle Spray Foam Insulation.
    - b. Gaco; Holcim Building Envelope.
    - c. Henry Company; a Carlisle company.
    - d. NCFI Polyurethanes; a division of Barnhardt Manufacturing Company.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
  3. Physical Properties:
    - a. Nominal Density (ASTM D1622): 2.0 lb/cu.ft.
    - b. Compressive Strength, 1 inch thickness (ASTM D1621): 36 psi.
    - c. Compressive Strength, 3 inch thickness (ASTM D1621): 30 psi.
    - d. Closed-Cell Content (ASTM D1940): Greater than 90 percent.
    - e. K-Factor (ASTM C518 initial): 0.15.
    - f. K-Factor (ASTM C1029 180-day aged): 0.16.
    - g. R-Value (ASTM C518 initial): 7.0.
    - h. R-Value (ASTM C1029 180-day aged): 7.0.
    - i. Water Absorption (ASTM D2842): 0.020 (gm/cc).
    - j. Water Vapor Transmission (ASTM E96): 0.61 perms at 1.5 inches.
    - k. Air Infiltration (ASTM E283): 75 Pa 0.001 L/S/m<sup>2</sup> (1.57 psf) (less than 0.001 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup>); 300 Pa 0.001 L/S/m<sup>2</sup> (6.24 psf) (less than 0.001 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup>).
    - l. Air Permeance (ASTM E2178): 75 Pa 0.000055 L/S.m<sup>2</sup>.Pa 0.000117 ft<sup>3</sup>/min.mw.Pa; 300 Pa 0.000024 L/./m<sup>2</sup>.Pa 0.000051 ft<sup>3</sup>/min.mw.Pa.
    - m. Sound Transmission Coefficient (STC) (ASTM E90 and ASTM E413): 36 STC; 2x4 wood stud, 16 inches on centers, 2.76 of JM Corbond III SPF, 15/32 inch exterior OSB sheeting, 1/2 inch gypsum wallboard.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: Material recommended by insulation manufacturer where required for adhesion of insulation to substrates.

- B. Thermal Barrier: Material barrier intended to prevent flame-source access to foam and delay temperature-rise of foam during a fire event.
  - 1. Thermal Barrier Coating: Fire-protective intumescent coating formulated for application over polyurethane foam plastics, compatible with insulation, and passes NFPA 275 testing as part of an approved assembly.
    - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide No-Burn, Inc.; Plus ThB or comparable product by one of the following:
      - 1) Flame Control Coatings, LLC.
      - 2) Flame Seal Products, Inc.
      - 3) TPR2 Corporation.
  - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
  - 3. Topcoat: 8- to 12-mil- thick, water-based latex-based paint recommended in writing by intumescent thermal barrier manufacturer as compatible with substrate materials.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications, and approved shop drawings.
- B. Spray insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated and fill voids.
- C. Apply in multiple passes to not exceed maximum thicknesses recommended by manufacturer. Do not spray into rising foam.
- D. Apply where as indicated on approved shop drawings.
- E. Miscellaneous Voids: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install thermal barrier material.
  - 1. Do not cover insulation prior to any required spray foam insulation inspections.

- G. Apply barrier coatings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with requirements for listing and labeling for fire-propagation characteristics and surface-burning characteristics specified.
  - 1. Use equipment and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material applied as recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - 2. Apply coatings to prepared surfaces as soon as practical after preparation and before subsequent surface soiling or deterioration.
  - 3. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect spray foam insulation installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.

END OF SECTION 07 2119



## SECTION 07 2600 - VAPOR RETARDERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Polyethylene vapor retarders.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for under-slab vapor retarders.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Polyethylene vapor retarders.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D4397, 10-mil- thick sheet, with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm.

#### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Install vapor retarders over prepared grade. Lap joints a minimum of 12 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape. Install second layer over pathways to equipment.
- B. Extend vapor retarder over footings and seal to foundation wall or grade beam with manufacturer's recommended tape.
- C. Seal around penetrations such as utilities and columns in order to create a monolithic, airtight membrane at grade surface, perimeter, and all vertical penetrations.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect vapor retarders from damage until concealed by permanent construction.

END OF SECTION 07 2600

## SECTION 07 2726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barrier.
2. Fluid flashing.
3. Accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Document 01 4339 "Mockups" for mockup requirements.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.

B. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

C. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review air barrier requirements and installation, special details, mockups, air-leakage and bond testing, air-barrier protection, and work scheduling that covers air barriers.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Air-Barrier Performance:

1. Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction to be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration.
2. Air-barrier assemblies to be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:
  - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's product data and installation guidelines, including membrane and accessory material types, technical and test data, composition, descriptions and properties, installation instructions and substrate preparation requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.
  - 1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
  - 2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
  - 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single manufacturer from a single source.
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Air barrier systems shall be manufactured and marketed by a company with minimum of five years' experience in production and sales of air barrier system.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - 1. Verification that the installer completed SWR Institute's Validated Air Barrier Training and is approved to perform work as herein specified by air barrier system manufacturer.
  - 2. List of at least three projects completed of similar scope and complexity to this project carried out by the firm and site supervisor.
- D. Mockup:
  - 1. Apply air barrier system to verify details and to demonstrate the required installation.
  - 2. See Section 01 4339 "Mockups" and Drawings for mockup requirements.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in labeled packages.
  - 1. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Protect from damage, weather, excessive temperatures and construction operations.
  - 3. Remove damaged material from site and dispose of in accordance with applicable regulations.
- B. Protect air barrier components from freezing and extreme heat.
- C. Sequence deliveries to avoid delays, and to minimize on-site storage.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content and other conditions affecting performance requirements.
- B. Weather Conditions: Perform work only when existing and forecasted weather conditions are within the limits established by the manufacturer of the materials used.
- C. Proceed with installation only when the substrate construction and preparation work are complete and in condition to receive the membrane system.
- D. Do not apply to frozen substrate. Allow adequate time for substrate to thaw if freezing conditions exist before application.
- E. Ultra-violet Exposure:
  - 1. Do not expose air barrier materials to sunlight and weather longer than as recommended by the material manufacturer.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's warranty requirements:
  - 1. Submit manufacturer's limited warranty stating:
    - a. The products have been tested in accordance with national standards for air barriers and passed those tests with effectiveness and durability indicating their suitability for performance as an air and water-resistive barrier system when properly applied.

- b. The products shall be free from defects in material for a period of five years after the substantial completion of the material application.
- c. That the products will not disintegrate and will maintain their integrity over the life of the warranty.

B. Warranty period: Five (5) years from Date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Prosoco, Inc. ([www.prosoco.com](http://www.prosoco.com), 800-255-4255); products or comparable products, as approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - 1. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
  - 2. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
  - 3. Henry Company; a Carlisle company.
  - 4. Tremco Incorporated.
- B. Description: Fluid-applied air barrier that combines silicone and polyurethane properties. Single component, Silyl-Terminated-Polymer (STP) that is roller applied to produce a highly durable, seamless, elastomeric weatherproofing membrane on CMU back-up walls. Prevents water and air penetration of the building envelope in weather up to 155 mph winds of a Category 5 hurricane.
  - 1. Product: R-Guard Cat 5, manufactured by Prosoco, Inc.
- C. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies: Less than or equal to 0.04 cfm per square foot at 1.57 psf (less than or equal to 0.2 liters s-sq.m. at 75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357.
  - 2. Air Permeance: Less than or equal to 0.004 cfm per square foot (Less than or equal to 0.02 L/s/sq m) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
  - 3. Water vapor transmission: 18 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96 (Wet Cup).
  - 4. Total solids: 99 percent.

### 2.2 LIQUID APPLIED FILL COAT AND SEAM FILLER

- A. High-modulus, gun-grade, crack and joint filler, adhesive and detailing compound that combines the best silicone and polyurethane properties. The single-component, Silyl-Terminated-Polymer (STP) prepares open joints, seams and cracks before installing primary air and barrier system to prevent the movement of water and air through building envelopes.
  - 1. Product: R-Guard Joint & Seam Filler, manufactured by Prosoco, Inc.

B. Subject to compliance with the following physical and performance requirements:

1. Comply with national, state and district AIM VOC regulations and be 30 g/L or less.
2. Water vapor transmission: Minimum 19 perms at 20 mils when tested in accordance with ASTM E-96.
3. Tensile strength: 70 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D412.
4. Elongation at break: Greater than 180 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D412.
5. Peel strength: Greater than 25 pli when tested in accordance with ASTM D1781.
6. Total solids: 99 percent.

## 2.3 LIQUID-APPLIED FLASHING AND DETAILING MEMBRANE

A. Gun-grade, spread and tool or roller apply waterproofing, adhesive and detailing compound that combines the best of silicone and polyurethane properties. The single component, Silyl-Terminated-Polymer (STP) produces a highly durable, seamless, elastomeric should treat joints, seams, cracks and provide the flashing membrane in rough openings of structural walls and to counter-flash waterproofing and air barrier components.

1. Product: R-Guard FastFlash manufactured by Prosoco, Inc.

B. Subject to compliance with the following physical and performance requirements:

1. AAMA 714-12 Voluntary Specification for Liquid-Applied Flashing Used to Create a Water-Resistive Seal Around Exterior Wall Openings in Buildings.
2. Water vapor transmission: 21 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96.
3. Tensile strength: Greater than 150 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D412.
4. Elongation at break: Greater than 350 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D412.

## 2.4 INTERIOR SEALANT FOR WINDOWS AND DOORS

A. High performance, gun-grade waterproofing sealant that combines the silicone and polyurethane properties. Single component, Silyl-Terminated-Polymer (STP) that is that is durable, and stops the movement of moist air through cracks surrounding windows and doors.

1. Product: R-Guard AirDam, manufactured by Prosoco, Inc.

B. Subject to compliance with the following physical and performance requirements:

1. Sealant Validation from Sealant Waterproofing & Restoration Institute (SWRI).
2. Elongation at break: Greater than 1000 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D412.
3. Peel strength: 25 pli when tested in accordance with ASTM C794

C. Backer rod: In deep joints, control sealant depth by installing closed cell backer rod. Diameter of the soft-backer rod should be 25 percent greater than the joint width. Do not puncture backer rod.

### 3.1 EXAMINATION AND SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with system manufacturer's requirements for installation, and other specific conditions affecting performance of air barrier system.
- B. Verify that all surfaces are sound, clean and free of surface oxidation, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants detrimental to application. Fill or bridge damaged surfaces, voids or gaps larger than one- inch. Fill voids and gaps measuring one- inch or less with liquid applied fill coat and seam filler as necessary to ensure continuity.
  - 1. Surfaces to receive primary fluid-applied air barrier must be dry or damp, unless approved by air barrier manufacturer. Surfaces to receive (STP) fluid applied accessories must be dry, damp or wet to the touch. Brush away any standing water present before application. STP products will tolerate rain immediately after application.
- C. Refer to manufacturer's product data sheets for requirements for condition of and preparation of substrates.
  - 1. Surfaces shall be sound and free of voids, spalled areas, loose aggregate and sharp protrusions.
  - 2. Remove contaminants such as grease, oil and wax from exposed surfaces.
  - 3. Remove dust, dirt, loose stone and debris.
  - 4. Use repair materials and methods that are acceptable to manufacturer of the air and water-resistive barrier system.
  - 5. Refer to manufacturer's product data sheets and manufacturer's installation guidelines for additional information on preparing structural walls to receive the primary air and water resistive barrier.

### 3.2 LIQUID APPLIED FLASHING AT OPENINGS AND PENETRATIONS

- A. General: Comply with air barrier manufacturer's installation instructions, temperature limitations, product data and shop drawings.
- B. Apply liquid flashing membrane over surfaces to seal and waterproof rough openings per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Spread the wet product to create an opaque, monolithic flashing membrane that surrounds the rough opening and extends 4 to 6 inches over the face of the structural wall.
  - 2. Apply additional coats as needed to achieve void- and pinhole-free surface.

### 3.3 FLUID-APPLIED AIR BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with air barrier manufacturer's installation instructions, temperature limitations, product data and shop drawings.



- B. Apply air barrier to a clean, dry substrate within temperature and weather limitations per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Apply to recommended thickness.
  - 2. Allow product to cure and dry.
  - 3. Inspect membrane before covering. Repair any punctures or damaged areas by applying additional material.
  - 4. Back roll as necessary to ensure there are no pinholes, voids or gaps in the membrane. Apply fluid applied air barrier per manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 5. Apply additional coats per manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 FLUID-APPLIED FLASHING TRANSITIONS

- A. General: Comply with air barrier manufacturer's installation instructions, temperature limitations, product data and shop drawings.
- B. Apply fiber reinforced fill coat and seam filler and liquid flashing membrane as a liquid flashing membrane to waterproof the transitions in opening and between dissimilar materials per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fill any voids between the top of the flashing leg and the vertical wall with fiber reinforced fill coat and seam filler.
  - 2. Spread the wet liquid flashing membrane to create a monolithic "cap-flash" flashing membrane per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Apply additional coats as needed to achieve void- and pinhole-free surface.
  - 4. Allow treated surfaces to skin before installing other wall assembly, waterproofing or air barrier components.
- C. Apply preformed silicone sealant extrusion to provide a continuous airtight and water-tight seal between material frame and substrate per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Embed material in bead of liquid flashing membrane per manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 INTERIOR SEALANT FOR WINDOWS AND DOORS INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with air barrier manufacturer's installation instructions, temperature limitations, product data and shop drawings.
- B. Apply interior waterproofing sealant per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install Backer Rod: Compressible, closed cell rod stock as recommended by manufacturer for compatibility with sealant. Install backer rod as necessary per manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Apply interior waterproofing sealant in continuous beads without gaps or air pockets.

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials in accordance with air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 2726

## SECTION 07 4233 - EXTERIOR SOLID PHENOLIC WALL PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. High-pressure laminate panels with solid phenolic polyurethane resin panels.
2. Supporting substructure,
3. Accessories, including anchors and attachments.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Document 01 4339 "Mockups" for mockup requirements.
2. Section 07 2725 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier."

#### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Exterior Rainscreen Assembly: Solid phenolic core, fire retardant exterior grade rainscreen wall panels, aluminum substructure, attachment system components, air/vapor barrier membrane, continuous exterior insulation, and all accessories necessary for a complete rear-ventilated, weathertight exterior rainscreen wall system. Furnish fastenings and flashings as required to complete rainscreen system.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide panels that have been manufactured, fabricated and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer, without defects, damage or failure.
- B. Structural Design: Design calculations certified by a registered professional engineer licensed in the US Virgin Islands shall be submitted to verify load carrying capability of panel system using performance requirements and design criteria as indicated. Panel system shall be capable of resisting a minimum positive and negative wind load per ASCE-7 or building code, whichever is greater.
1. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3133 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."
- C. Deflection Limits: Aluminum support structure and exterior phenolic rainscreen panel system shall be designed in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommended maximum deflection when tested under positive and negative design wind gust loads and shall withstand wind gust loads with horizontal deflections no greater than the Manufacturer's allowable span, based on current wind load tables.
- D. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for enhanced protection.
1. Large-Missile Test: For wall panels located within 30 feet of grade.

- E. Thermal Movements: Exterior solid phenolic rainscreen panel system shall allow for thermal movements from ambient air, surface temperature changes and relative humidity preventing buckling, opening of joints, over-stressing of components, failure of connections and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperature changes of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime sky heat loss.
  - 1. Panel shall remain stable for temperature Change (Range): Minus 112 degrees F, ambient: 356 degrees F, material surfaces.
- F. Support Structure: Provide aluminum support structure capable of the following:
  - 1. Design and install aluminum support structure to accommodate expected construction tolerances and misalignment, deflection of building structural components, and openings in the building enclosure as designed.
- G. Vertical and Lateral Fire Propagation Test Characteristics: The exterior wall assembly may be required to comply with NFPA 285 "Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components."

#### 1.4 PREINSALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Conduct pre-installation conference at Project site prior to commencing construction of mock-up specified herein to verify Project requirements.
  - 1. Review solid phenolic rainscreen panel installation requirements including substrate surface preparation, environmental or site limitations, typical details including attachment and trims, Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures, coordination with adjacent trades, testing and inspection procedures (if any), protection of work and repair procedures.
  - 2. Ensure all sub-trades interfacing with or affected by the construction of the solid phenolic rainscreen wall panel system are present, including Architect, Contractor, solid phenolic panel Manufacturers Representative, air barrier installation contractor, electrical installer and any other installer whose work interfaces with or affects the solid phenolic rainscreen wall panels.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include:
  - 1. Manufacturer's written installation instructions, including recommendations for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, rainscreen panel technical data, material descriptions, and finishes and tested physical and performance properties.

## B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings.

1. Show fabrication and installation layouts of solid phenolic exterior rainscreen panel, details of aluminum support structure attachment and wall structure conditions, anchorages for aluminum support structure, attachment system for panels, allowances for thermal expansion, trim, closures, flashings, corner conditions, and accessories as required or specified by the architect, and all special job specific details.

## C. Samples for Verification: Submit samples for finishes, colors and textures of panel material.

## D. Delegated Design Submittal: For wall panels including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

## A. Test Reports: Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.

1. Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics and criteria and physical requirements.

## B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions.

## C. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Manufacturer's field reports specified herein.

## D. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

## A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include methods for maintaining installed products and precautions against cleaning materials and methods detrimental to finishes and performance.

## B. Warranty: Warranty documents specified herein.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

## A. Source Limitations: Obtain solid phenolic rainscreen wall panels and all auxiliary materials from a single source Manufacturer who has a minimum of 25 years of experience in the manufacturing of exterior high pressure phenolic rainscreen panels or an accessory Manufacturer who is certified by the solid phenolic rainscreen panel.

1. Manufacturer. Panels to be manufactured by a Manufacturer with ISO9001 and ISO14001 certification of standards.

## B. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.

- C. Source Quality Control: Panels shall be specifically designed for exterior rainscreen wall applications.
  - 1. Fabricated panels shall comply with all current codes and regulations for the Project.
  - 2. Panels shall have uniform thickness (plus 0.03 inch) and flatness (maximum difference of 0.03 inch) for a 10'-0" span.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Installer shall be approved by the manufacturer and have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in performing work of similar type and scope.
- E. Mockup:
  - 1. Apply install exterior solid phenolic wall panel system to verify details and to demonstrate the required installation.
  - 2. See Section 01 4339 "Mockups" and Drawings for mockup requirements.
- F. Fabricator Qualifications: A shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate solid phenolic or similar exterior rainscreen wall panel systems to those specified herein and is approved by the manufacturer.
  - 1. Fabricator shall draw and coordinate shop drawings.
- G. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions, at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written handling and storage guidelines.

## 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements:
  - 1. Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings.
  - 2. Coordinate field measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

- A. Submit Manufacturer's standard 10-year limited warranty covering defects in material or manufacturing quality, including color fastness warranty. Warranty to include labor for removal, replacement and reinstallation of defective material.
  - 1. Warranty is only available when solid phenolic rainscreen panels are installed and fabricated by an installation contractor that has been approved by the Manufacturer and has followed the recommended guidelines of the Manufacturer, and has been signed and dated by the appropriate parties listed on the warranty registration form.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOLID PHENOLIC WALL PANELS – RP-W

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide FunderMax GmBH FunderMax North America(www.fundermax.com, 704-564-3727); Max Compact Exterior F-Quality or comparable product by the following:
  - 1. Nichiha.
- B. Description: Exterior rainscreen assembly; solid phenolic core, fire retardant exterior grade rainscreen wall panels, attachment system components, and all accessories necessary for a complete rear-ventilated, weathertight exterior rainscreen wall system; furnish fastenings and flashings as required to complete rainscreen system.
  - 1. Rainscreen Panel Thickness: 10mm.
  - 2. Finish: See Finish Selections – Exterior on Drawings.
  - 3. Panel Core: Brown
  - 4. Color: See Finish Selections – Exterior on Drawings.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Flame Spread (ASTM E84): Class A fire rating.
    - a. Flame Spread Index: Less than 10.
    - b. Smoke Development Index: Less than 450.
  - 2. Surface Ignition Test (NFPA-268): Pass.
  - 3. Ignition Temperature (ASTM D1929): Greater than 650 degrees F above ambient.
  - 4. UV stable surface of Acrylic-PUR resin coating of 100 micron thickness or greater with color stability greater than 4 on Gray Scale.
  - 5. When required by code, the assembly shall meet the performance requirements of NFPA 285. Exposed fastening assemblies listed in ICC ESR #3340 or Concealed fastening assemblies with Engineering Evaluation report(s) from a nationally recognized fire protection consulting firm. Any variations must be approved by the local code official.
- D. Material: Fire-retardant solid phenolic panels with standard brown core comprised of kraft paper harvested from FSC certified forests and thermosetting resins. Dry Formed (DF) or Natural Fiber Core (NFC) products will not be accepted.
  - 1. Rainscreen Panel Surface: NT/NG/NY/NH

2. Modulus of Elasticity: 1,300,000-psi minimum.
3. Tensile Strength: 11,000-PSI, minimum.
4. Flexural Strength: 13,000-PSI, minimum.
5. Surface Impact Resistance (EN ISO 178): Less than 8
6. Scratch Resistance: Greater than 3 /4 N per EN 438:6
7. Optical Properties (ISO 4892-2, EN 20105-A02): Color Stability Gray Scale Greater than 4.
8. Panels shall be hail impact resistant with no breakage per Austrian APBIC Standard, Association of Public Building Insurance Companies. Equivalent test standard 70mm ice ball at a velocity of 30 meters/second (67.10 mph) without breakage, tearing or discoloration.
9. Panels shall be FSC Certified
10. Panels shall have an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) Report.
11. Panels shall have a Health Product Declaration (HPD)

E. Panel Tolerance:

1. Thickness: 1/32-inch, maximum.
2. Length: 1/4-inch, maximum.
3. Width: 1/4-inch, maximum.
4. Non-porous homogenous surface and edges which do not require sealing after cutting or drilling.

F. Interior Phenolic Wall Panels – PCP-1:

1. As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.2 SUPPORT STRUCTURE

A. Exterior Wall Support System:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Xkelex ([www.xkelex.com](http://www.xkelex.com), 940-323-2343); product or comparable product by one of the following:
2. Concealed bracket and rail components using extruded aluminum profiles, clips, closures and Tees as indicated on the architectural drawings.
  - a. Material: 6063T5 or 6063T6 Alloy Aluminum.
  - b. Depth: 10mm
  - c. Finish:
    - 1) Concealed Items: Mill finish.
    - 2) Exposed Items:
      - a) Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard.
      - b) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard.
  - d. Brackets to be adjustable for out of plumb conditions.

B. Interior Wall Support System: As indicated on Drawings.



- A. Fabricate solid phenolic wall panels and accessory items in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations and approved submittals.
- B. Fabricate panels with a minimum of 1mm micro bevel on the exposed face.
- C. Comply with indicated profiles and within dimensional and structural requirements.
- D. Fabricate shop drawings to comply with manufacturer's written guidelines for ventilation of the rainscreen façade.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify that substrate conditions, which have been previously installed under other sections, are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Verify that air barrier has been installed in accordance with air barrier manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and terminated properly at openings to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION – EXTERIOR WALL

- A. General: Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product installation instructions, published technical guidelines and approved shop drawings.
- B. Install wall panels plumb and level and accurately spaced in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved submittals and shop drawings.
- C. Fasten solid phenolic wall panels to supporting aluminum substructure with fasteners approved for use by solid phenolic rainscreen manufacturer for use with adjoining construction and in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- D. Accessory Items: Install corner profiles, gaskets and trim with fasteners and adhesive appropriate for use with adjoining construction as indicated on approved shop drawings and as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Do not apply sealant to solid phenolic rainscreen panel joinery unless otherwise indicated on approved shop drawings or in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended installation instructions.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 3.3 INSTALLATION – INTERIOR WALL

- A. General: Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product installation instructions, published technical guidelines and approved shop drawings.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Cleaning: Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas. Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of off site.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protection: Protect installed product and finish surfaces from damage during construction.

END OF DOCUMENT 07 4233

## SECTION 07 5556 - FLUID-APPLIED ROOFING SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Primer.
2. Cold-fluid-applied polyurethane roofing system.
3. Fiberglass reinforcement.
4. Silicone top coating system.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cold fluid applied polyurethane roofing/waterproofing system is intended to perform as a continuous barrier against liquid water and to flash or discharge to the exterior incidental water. Membrane system is expected to remain exposed and shall accommodate movements of building materials as required with accessory sealant materials at such locations such as, changes in substrate, perimeter conditions and penetrations.
- B. Installed roofing/waterproofing membrane system shall not permit the passage of water and will withstand the design pressures calculated in accordance with the most current revision of ASCE 7.
- C. Manufacturer must have completed a Cradle-To-Grave Life Cycle Analysis (LCA) and Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) according to ISO 14025:2006 for the roofing/waterproofing system.
- D. Manufacturer shall provide all primary roofing/waterproofing materials that are physically and chemically compatible when installed in accordance with manufacturers current application requirements.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Prior to scheduled commencement of the roofing installation and associated work, conduct a meeting at the project site with the installer, architect/consultant, owner, manufacturer's representative and any other persons directly involved with the performance of the Work. The Installer shall record conference discussions and to include decisions and agreements reached (or disagreements) and furnish copies of recorded discussions to each attending party. The main purpose of this meeting is to review foreseeable methods and procedures related to the Work.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Manufacturer's standard details and shop drawings for the specified system.
  - 1. Include job-specific details.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer must provide a complete Cradle-To-Grave Life Cycle Analysis (LCA) and Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) according to ISO 14025:2006 for the roofing/waterproofing system.
- B. Installer's Authorization: Installer shall provide written documentation from the manufacturer of their authorization to install the system, and eligibility to obtain the warranty specified in this section.
- C. Manufacturer' Certification: Certification showing full time quality control of production facilities and that each batch of material is tested to ensure conformance with the manufacturer's published physical properties.
- D. VOC Certification: Manufacturer's certification that all roofing/waterproofing system products meet current Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) regulations as established by the State in which they are being installed; and stating total VOC content, in grams per liter, for all system components (i.e. primers, adhesives, coatings, etc.).
- E. System Certificate: Roof system, including all components, shall be tested per Miami Dade TAS 114-95 Appendix D and FM 4474 Appendix B and achieve a minimum wind uplift of 210 psf.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: All components listed in this section shall be provided by a single manufacturer or approved by the primary roofing/waterproofing manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Manufacturer shall demonstrate qualifications to supply materials of this section by certifying the following:
  - 1. Membrane Manufacturer shall have been producing fluid-applied roofing membranes for over thirty years.
  - 2. Membrane Manufacturer shall have available an in-house technical staff to assist the contractor when necessary, in the application of the products and site review of the assembly.
- C. Installer's Qualifications: Contractor shall demonstrate qualifications to perform the Work of this Section by submitting certification or license by the roofing/waterproofing membrane manufacturer as a trained and authorized applicator of the product the installer intends to use.
- D. Materials Compatibility: All materials included in the roofing/waterproofing assembly, as well as associated materials adhered to/applied beneath the roofing/waterproofing membrane shall have been tested and verified to be compatible. Include written testing documentation if requested by Architect.

- E. Final Inspection: Manufacturer's representative shall provide to the Architect a comprehensive site visit report after the completion of the roofing/waterproofing system.
- F. Applicable Regulations: Comply with local code and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Do not exceed VOC regulations as established by the location in which they are being installed, including total VOC content, in grams per liter, for all system components (i.e. primers, adhesives, coatings, and similar items).
- G. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D1079 and the glossary of the National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA) Roofing and Waterproofing Manual for definitions of roofing terms related to this section.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver all roofing/waterproofing materials to the site in original containers, with factory seals intact.
- B. Store all goods in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry location within their specified temperature range on the product data sheet.
- C. Do not expose materials to moisture in any form before, during, or after delivery to the site. Reject delivery of materials that show evidence of contact with moisture.
- D. Remove manufacturer supplied plastic covers from materials provided with such. Use "breathable" type covers such as canvas tarpaulins to allow venting and protection from weather and moisture. Cover and protect materials at the end of each workday. Do not remove any protective tarpaulins until immediately before the material will be installed.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather: Proceed with roofing/waterproofing only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit. Membrane application can proceed when precipitation is imminent. Roofing membrane is capable of curing in immersion immediately after application. Visual marks in the form of pock marks may occur if uncured membrane is exposed to rainfall but is not considered a limiting factor in the performance of the roofing membrane. Ambient/substrate temperatures shall be above 41 degrees F (5 degrees C) when applying the roofing/waterproofing system.
- B. All surfaces to receive the roofing/waterproofing membrane shall be free from visible water, dew, frost, snow and ice. Application of roofing/waterproofing membrane shall be conducted in well ventilated areas.
- C. Roofing Membrane:
  - 1. Roofing/waterproofing membrane is not intended to be exposed or in contact with a constant temperature below minus 22 degrees F (minus 30 degrees C) or in excess of 176 degrees F (80 degrees C). See technical data sheets for limitations, i.e., hot pipes and vents or direct steam venting.

2. Specified roofing/waterproofing membrane is non-flammable and VOC compliant. Consult container, packaging labels and Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for specific safety information.
  3. Specified roofing/waterproofing membrane is resistant to gasoline, paraffin, fuel oil, mineral spirits, and moderate solutions of acids and alkalis, acid rain and detergents. Some low molecular weight alcohols can soften. Any exposure to foreign materials or chemical discharges shall be presented to membrane manufacturer for evaluation to determine any impact on the waterproof membrane assembly performance prior to installation.
- D. Contractor shall ensure adequate protection(s) during installation of the roofing/waterproofing system.
- E. Specified roofing/waterproofing membrane may be used as a temporary roofing/waterproofing barrier when applied at a wet film thickness of 15-20 mils to a properly prepared deck. When the specified roofing/waterproofing membrane is used as a temporary roofing/waterproofing barrier the roofing/waterproofing membrane does not need to be removed prior to installation of the finished roofing/waterproofing system. An approved Sikalastic RoofPro Primer will need to be applied to the approved deck prior to applying the temporary roofing/waterproofing barrier. Sika Reactivation Primer or Sika Concrete Primer Lo-VOC will be applied in between the existing temporary roofing/waterproofing barrier and finished roofing/waterproofing system after existing temporary barrier is clean, dry and sound.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard warranty. Materials warranty shall be for a minimum of one year starting at the date of Substantial Completion. System warranty shall be for the following duration in accordance with specified system.
1. Fluid-Applied Polyurethane Roofing Warranty Length: 20 years.
  2. Silicone Top Coat Warranty: 20 years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sika Corporation; products or comparable products approved by the Architect.

### 2.2 POLYURETHANE ROOFING SYSTEM

- A. Fluid-Applied Membrane System, 20 Year Warranty: Sikalastic RoofPro 20, Sika Reemat Premium:
1. Base Layer: Sikalastic 641 Lo-VOC, 50 mils wet film thickness, 32 sf/gal coverage rate approx.
  2. Top Layer: Sikalastic 641 Lo-VOC, 30 mils wet film thickness; 53 sf/gal coverage rate approx.

## 2.3 MEMBRANES AND COATINGS

- A. Base embedment coat with Reemat reinforcement shall be Sikalastic 641 Lo-VOC by Sika Corp, a single component, cold, fluid applied, moisture triggered, aliphatic, polyurethane base coat membrane.
- B. Topcoat shall be Sikalastic 641 Lo-VOC by Sika Corp, a single component, cold, fluid applied, moisture triggered, aliphatic, polyurethane topcoat membrane.
- C. Base coat and topcoat membranes shall be low in VOC's, and be a one component elastomeric polyurethane membrane that may be brush or roller applied. Membrane shall have the following physical properties:
- D. Liquid Property Requirements:
  - 1. Liquid Applied, Single-component, Moisture-Triggered, Aliphatic Polyurethane. Sikalastic-641 Lo-VOC:
    - a. VOC Content (ASTM D-2369-81): Less than 50 g/l.
    - b. Volume Solids (ASTM D2697): 89 percent minimum.
    - c. Weight Solids (ASTM D1644): 92 percent minimum.
    - d. Sag Resistance (ASTM D4400): No sag at 700 micrometers (0.028 in. / 28 mil)
- E. Film Physical Property Requirements:
  - 1. Tensile Strength (Tension) (ASTM D412): Minimum 1.86 MPa (270lb/in<sup>2</sup>)
  - 2. Elongation (ASTM D412): Minimum 200 percent
  - 3. Accelerated Weathering FL/UV – 5000 Hours (ASTM G 154): No cracking or checking.
  - 4. Water Vapor Transmission, Permeability / Permeance (ASTM E96): Maximum 8.5 gms/m<sup>2</sup>/ day (0.033 perm-inches).
  - 5. Flexibility – Mandrel Bend (ASTM D522): Pass, no cracking or flaking.
  - 6. Tear Resistance (ASTM D625): Minimum 5.8 kN/m (33 lbf/in)
  - 7. Indentation Hardness (ASTM D2240): 82 Durometer Units (plus/minus 5 units)
  - 8. Dynamic Puncture Resistance (ASTM D5635): Minimum 15 joules (357 ft.poundals)
  - 9. Static Puncture Resistance (ASTM D5602): Minimum 20.7 kg. (45.5 lbs.)

## 2.4 MEMBRANE REINFORCEMENT – FIBERGLASS

- A. Reinforcement for the roofing/waterproofing membrane system shall be Sika Reemat by Sika Corp, a conformable, random strand fiberglass mat specifically designed to provide greater impact resistance and greater resistance to excessive thermal and structural movement while maintaining elasticity and membrane film integrity.
- B. Supplemental reinforcement of the waterproofing membrane system specifically designed for local reinforcement of the waterproofing membrane at structural cracks, expansion joints and transitions between dissimilar materials shall be Sika Flexitape Heavy by Sika Corp., a nylon mesh or Sika Joint Tape SA by Sika Corp., a self-adhering polymeric rubberized tape with woven polyester facer.

## 2.5 NSF/ANSI 61 SECTION 5 POTABLE WATER APPROVED SILICONE TOP COAT SYSTEM

- A. Fluid-Applied Silicone Top Coat System, 20 Year Warranty: Total 40 mils wet (2.5 gal/100SF)
  - 1. First Coat: Sikalastic-500: 25 mils wet (1.5 gal/100 SF)
  - 2. Second Coat: Sikalastic-500: 15 mils wet (1 gal/100 SF)
- B. Liquid Property Requirements at 75 degrees F (24 degrees C) and 50 percent relative humidity.
  - 1. VOC (ASTM D2369-81): Less than 50 g/l
  - 2. Volume Solids (ASTM D2697): 92-96 percent
- C. Film Physical Property Requirements:
  - 1. Tensile Strength (ASTM D412): 700 psi
  - 2. Elongation (ASTM D412): 250 percent.
  - 3. Tear Strength (ASTM D624): Greater than 45 pli.
  - 4. Solar Reflectance Index (ASTM C1549): 112 (white)

## 2.6 FILLET BEAD AND PENETRATION SEALANT

- A. Sealant for fillet bead applications and membrane penetrations shall be Sikaflex 11FC by Sika Corp., a one-part polyurethane sealant suitable for fillet bead transition compound to be applied prior to the installation of the membrane system at changes in substrate direction, cove beads, cracks in the substrate and penetrations of the roof /waterproofing system.
- B. Exposed finish sealant shall be Sikaflex Hyflex 150 LM by Sika Corp., a one-part low modulus hybrid sealant OR Sikasil WS-295. A one-part, low-modulus, weather sealing, silicone sealant suitable for finishing terminations at saw cuts and all UV exposed sealant terminations. SikaHyflex-150 LM is also suitable for fillet bead transition, changes in substrate direction, cracks in the substrate and penetrations of the roof before installation of the RoofPro membrane system.

## 2.7 PRIMERS

- A. Polyurethane System: Concrete, roof cover boards and sealing cementitious and gypsum-based substrates shall be primed with Sika Concrete Primer Lo-VOC by Sika Corp., a single component, rapid curing, high solids, moisture cured primer or Sikalastic Primer EP / Sikalastic Primer EP Rapid by Sika Corp., a two-component, cyclo-aliphatic, amine cured material. Green and damp concrete shall be primed with Sikalastic® GDC primer by Sika Corp., a 2-component, moisture mitigating epoxy primer for Green, Damp and Dry Concrete surfaces.
- B. Silicone System: Cured polyurethane coatings, metals, wood and concrete: Sikalastic-502 Primer.



## 2.8 CONCRETE REPAIR AND PATCHING

- A. Horizontal Cementitious repair mortar to repair bug holes, spalled areas, and other non-structural surface defects, or to slope decks shall be SikaQuick 1000 by Sika Corp., a two component, polymer-modified, Portland cement, fast-setting, trowel-grade mortar. Vertical & Overhead Cementitious repair mortar to repair bug holes, spalled areas and other non- structural surface defects shall be SikaQuick VOH.
- B. Epoxy resin or urethane to fill uneven areas and birdbaths shall be Sikadur-22 Lo-Mod or Sikalastic-720.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the Work of this section. Notify Architect in writing of any discrepancies. Commencement of the Work in an area shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the substrate.
- B. Surfaces shall be sound, dry, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants. Fill voids, gaps and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints full flush.

## 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Verify that the deck is clean and smooth, free of depressions, waves, or projections, and properly sloped to drains, valleys, eaves, scuppers or gutters. Verify that all roof openings or penetrations through the roof are secured back to solid blocking. Ensure all preparatory Work is complete prior to applying membrane.
- B. All surfaces shall be blown clean using best methods to remove any remaining loose debris.
- C. All cracks and voids greater than 1/16th inch shall be routed and caulked with a polyurethane sealant. Allow to cure per roof /waterproofing membrane manufacturer's technical data sheets prior to over-coating with the specified roof /waterproofing membrane system.
- D. At all inside corners, gaps or voids at the juncture of the deck and penetrations apply a minimum 3/4-inch fillet bead of polyurethane sealant and allow to cure per roof /waterproofing membrane manufacturer's technical data sheets prior to installing the roof /waterproofing membrane system.
- E. At all moving cracks, moving joints between dissimilar materials, and similar conditions, create a minimum 1-inch wide bond break utilizing bond breaker tape, centered over the crack or joint.
- F. Membrane terminations shall be established prior to project start-up and documented in shop drawings. Terminations shall occur in raked-out mortar joints, saw cut terminations or under installed counter-flashing materials.

- G. Use tape lines to achieve a straight edge detail. Remove tape while application is still wet for clean lines.

### 3.3 SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

#### A. Structural Concrete:

1. Acceptable concrete substrates are limited to poured in place concrete decks.
2. Minimum deck thickness for structural concrete is 4 inches (10.2 cm).
3. Concrete surface to be light broom finish or equivalent.
4. Curing agents shall be checked for compatibility with specified roofing/waterproofing materials. Most curing agents shall be completely removed from the substrate by grinding, scarifying, or other mechanical means.
5. Concrete and masonry surfaces shall be low-pressure (5,000 psi or less) power-washed in accordance with ICRI Guideline No. 03732: Selecting and Specifying Concrete Surface Preparation for Sealers, Coatings, and Polymer Overlays to remove all dirt, debris or surface contamination that would compromise bonding of the specified roofing/waterproofing membrane system. Remove oil or grease with solvents, or detergent and water. Rinse surface clean of remaining cleaning agents.
6. Do not apply on substrates with moisture content greater than 4 percent by weight, measured by Tramex Concrete Moisture Encounter meter.
7. Application to Damp (moisture content greater than 4 percent) Concrete: Sikalastic GDC Primer can be applied to damp concrete as soon as surface water has dissipated after rainfall or other sources of water have ceased.
8. Application to Green Concrete: Sikalastic GDC Primer can be applied to horizontal concrete surfaces 48 hours after concrete pour (or when concrete is walkable) and vertical surfaces 24 hours after forms are removed.
9. Minimum substrate compressive strength greater than 3000 psi. at the time Sikalastic® GDC Primer is applied.

### 3.4 PRIMING

#### A. Concrete:

1. Mix and apply specified primer for concrete/masonry/wood surfaces by brush or roller at the application rate shown on the technical data sheet. Porous, rough or absorbent surfaces will decrease coverage rates.
2. Allow to cure and dry in accordance with manufacturer's technical data sheets.

### 3.5 MEMBRANE REINFORCEMENT

#### A. Reinforcement of Cracks, Plywood and Cover Board Joints, and Base/Curb Flashing Transitions:

1. For all locations where the specified membrane system is to be applied directly to the substrate surface, provide reinforcement of cracks and joints prior to applying the specified membrane system.
2. For all moving cracks and joints, create a minimum 1-inch wide bond break centered over the crack or joint by applying bond break tape centered over each crack or joint.
3. For all non-moving cracks and joints, rout and seal with Sikaflex polyurethane sealant.

4. For all horizontal-to-vertical transitions, provide a 3/4-inch by 3/4-inch Sikaflex polyurethane sealant cant.
5. Apply a minimum of a 3-inch wide strip of Sika Joint Tape SA directly and pressure roll for best adhesion. Thereafter, apply liquid roofing/waterproofing membrane saturating woven polyester facer or alternatively apply a minimum 3-inch wide strip of Sika Flexitape Heavy membrane reinforcement ~~of~~ into a bed of liquid roofing/waterproofing membrane at 40 -45 wet mils. Back roll reinforcement to fully embed reinforcement into the wet liquid polyurethane membrane. Add more liquid membrane as needed to fully saturate the embed reinforcement.
6. Ensure reinforcement is not in tension during embedment.

### 3.6 COLD FLUID APPLIED FIELD POLYURETHANE MEMBRANE APPLICATION

- A. Install roofing/waterproofing membrane system in accordance with current technical data sheets and in accordance with Part 2.
- B. Apply base embedment coat to horizontal deck and vertical wall surfaces by brush or 1/2 inch nap roller to achieve a continuous and uniform minimum wet film thicknesses as specified in Part 2. For fleece application, approximately 2/3 of the total resin shall be applied as the base embedment coat.
- C. Immediately lay specified conformable membrane reinforcement into the wet base embedment coat. Reemat reinforcement is typically precut before application.
- D. Apply pressure to the membrane reinforcement with roller to fully embed and saturate the membrane reinforcement into liquid roofing/waterproofing material. Remove air pockets from under the membrane by rolling them out.
- E. Apply additional liquid material as required to ensure the membrane reinforcement is fully embedded and has conformed to the substrate without tenting, visible pinholes, air pockets, fish mouths or wrinkles.
- F. Overlap sheets of Reemat membrane reinforcement a minimum of 2 inches in all directions.
- G. Extend membrane reinforcement vertically at adjacent wall surfaces in accordance with project details and specifications.
- H. When using fiberglass mat reinforcement, allow the base embedment coat to fully cure dry prior to the placement of topcoat or other applications of the specified roofing/waterproofing material.
- I. Apply topcoat by nap roller or brush to achieve a continuous and uniform minimum wet film thickness as specified in Part 2.
- J. Install all flashings in accordance with manufacturer's and/or project specific construction details.
- K. If any polyurethane coat is left exposed for more than 7 days, use Sikalastic Recoat Primer or Sika Reactivation Primer and allow to cure before applying the subsequent coat.

### 3.7 NSF/ANSI 61 SECTION 5 POTABLE WATER APPROVED SILICONE TOP COATING APPLICATION

- A. Apply Sikalastic-500 in 2 coats according to the rates listed above for the agreed upon system length. Coating may be applied by brush, roller, or airless spray equipment. Do not apply when temperatures are below 41 degrees F (5 degrees C) or when precipitation is in the forecast within 24 hours.
- B. Allow detail coats to cure before applying base coat.
- C. Allow base coat to cure before applying top coat.
- D. If any coat is left exposed for more than 7 days, use Sikalastic Recoat Primer or Sika Reactivation Primer and allow to cure before applying the subsequent coat.
- E. Protection: After completion of application, do not allow traffic on coated surfaces for a period of at least 48 hours at 75 degrees F and 50 percent relative humidity, or until completely cured. In areas where the roof is subject to foot traffic, it is recommended to apply walkway pads for added protection and slip resistance. Make certain that all walking pads are appropriately and adequately secured.

### 3.8 ROOF PENETRATIONS

- A. Clean, prepare and prime surfaces ready to receive membrane flashing applications. Ensure that penetrations are secured to prevent movement.
- B. Penetration flashings typically consist of two components. A vertical flashing component extends up the penetration and is torn (if Reemat reinforcement) or finger cut (if fleece reinforcement) at the bottom so that it can be extended horizontally onto the deck/substrate. A horizontal flashing component covers all of the tears/finger cuts and extends vertically up the penetration. The intent is to achieve a 2-3-inch overlap of the two flashing components.

### 3.9 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Clean, prepare and prime surfaces ready to receive membrane flashing applications. For insulated roof assemblies, wood nailers shall be installed as insulation stops prior to expansion joint flashing application.
- B. Expansion joints shall be sealed with a compressible filler such as batt insulation to prevent condensation and to provide support for the flashing bellows.
- C. Expansion joint flashings typically consist of four components. An initial reinforced membrane cradle of 6-inch wide Flexitape Heavy or Fleece is installed first, followed by a compressible foam rod under 25 percent compression, extending equally above and below the membrane level. A second reinforced membrane layer is installed over the foam rod to create a bellows. A third reinforced membrane layer is installed over the bellows. It is acceptable to use the flashing or roof / waterproofing membrane as the final layer. Refer to Manufacturers' standard expansion joint detail.

- A. Protect roofing/waterproofing Work from other trades until completion.
- B. Stage materials in such a manner that avoids foot traffic over completed roof areas.
- C. Provide temporary walkways and platforms to protect completed Work from traffic and point loading during the application process.
- D. Provide temporary membrane tie-ins and water-stops at the end of each workday and remove prior to commencement of Work the following day.

3.11 CLEAN-UP

- A. Work areas are to be kept clean, clear and free of debris at all times.
- B. Do not allow trash, waste, and/or debris to collect on the roof deck area. Trash, waste, and/or debris shall be removed from the roof on a daily basis.
- C. All tools and unused materials shall be collected at the end of each workday and stored properly off of the finished roof surface and protected from exposure to the elements.
- D. Dispose of or recycle all trash and excess material in a manner conforming to current EPA regulations and local laws.
- E. Properly clean the finished roof surface after completion, and make sure the drains and gutters are not clogged.
- F. Clean and restore all damaged surfaces to their original condition.

END OF SECTION 07 5556

## SECTION 07 6200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheet metal fabrications.
2. Miscellaneous sheet metal fabrications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 7100 "Roof Specialties" for scupper, scupper heads and downspouts.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
3. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Wall sheet metal fabrications.
2. Miscellaneous sheet metal fabrications.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.

5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of special conditions.
9. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
10. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 3 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 6 inches by 6 inches.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Fabricator.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Special warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, are to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim are not to rattle, leak, or loosen, and are to remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 degrees F, ambient; 180 degrees F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.



2. Color Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
  - b. Color Range: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - c. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
  - 1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 2. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.5 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Install fasteners , solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
  - 3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
  - 5. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  - 6. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
  - 7. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of stainless steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
  - 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
  - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant.
    - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
    - c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 degrees F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
    - d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
      - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 degrees F.
  - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter.
  - 1. Pre-tin edges of sheets with solder to width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
  - 2. Do not solder metallic-coated steel sheet.
  - 3. Do not use torches for soldering.
  - 4. Heat surfaces to receive solder, and flow solder into joint.
    - a. Fill joint completely.
    - b. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
  - 5. Stainless Steel Soldering:
    - a. Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux.
    - b. Promptly remove acid-flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering.
    - c. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.

- H. Rivets: Rivet joints where necessary for strength.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Construction: Install flashing as indicated on approved shop drawings.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 6200

## SECTION 07 7100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Scuppers.
  - 2. Scupper boxes.
  - 3. Downspouts.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
  - 2. Include details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Detail termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
  - 4. Include details of special conditions.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Include Samples of each type of roof specialty to verify finish and color selection, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of roof specialty.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: **20** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Downspouts: Plain round, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, complete with elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.063 inch thick.
- B. Parapet Scuppers: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

- C. Conductor Heads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- D. Aluminum Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, finished as follows:

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
  - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

## 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.



## D. Coil-Coated Aluminum Sheet Finishes:

1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
  - b. Concealed Surface Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## E. Aluminum Extrusion Finishes:

1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - b. Concealed Surface Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roof specialties in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and approved shop drawings. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
  - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
  - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
  - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
  - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
  - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 degrees and 70 degrees F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 degrees F.
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work. Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and approved shop drawings.

- B. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches on center.
  - 1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts at grade to direct water away from building, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers through parapet where indicated. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 1. Anchor scupper as indicated on approved shop drawings.
  - 2. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
  - 3. Seal or solder exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor top edge 1 inch below scupper discharge.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 7100

SECTION 07 7233 - ROOF HATCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Factory-fabricated roof hatches for ladder access.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product.

B. Shop Drawings: Shop drawings including profiles, accessories, location, adjacent construction interface, and dimensions.

C. Delegated Design Submittal: For roof hatch including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS.

A. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3113 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Submit executed copy of manufacturer's standard warranty.

B. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer: A minimum of 5 years experience manufacturing similar products.

B. Installer: A minimum of 2 years experience installing similar products.

C. Manufacturer's Quality System: Registered to ISO 9001 Quality Standards including in-house engineering for product design activities.

D. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products in manufacturer's original packaging.
- B. Store materials in a dry, protected, well- vented area.
- C. Inspect product upon receipt and report damaged material immediately to delivering carrier and note such damage on the carrier's freight bill of lading.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard warranty. Materials shall be free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of five years from the date of purchase. Should a part fail to function in normal use within this period, manufacturer shall furnish a new part at no charge.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide The BILCO Company ([www.BILCO.com](http://www.BILCO.com).; 800-366-6530); Type S Roof Hatch or comparable product approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Single leaf metal roof hatch for ladder access; pre-assembled from manufacturer.
  - 1. Type: S.
  - 2. Size: 36 inches (914mm) width by 30 inches (762mm) length.
    - a. Length denotes hinge side.
- C. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Cover: Reinforced to support a minimum live load of 40 psf (195kg/m<sup>2</sup>) with a maximum deflection of 1/150th of the span and a maximum design pressure of plus/minus 100 psf (488 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) with a design factor of 2 for aluminum (Type S-50) roof hatches.
  - 2. Operation of Cover: Smooth and easy with controlled operation throughout the entire arc of opening and closing.
    - a. Operation of the cover shall not be affected by temperature.
  - 3. Entire hatch shall be weather tight with fully welded corner joints on cover and curb.
  - 4. Aluminum (Type S-50) roof hatches shall have a valid Notice of Acceptance (NOA) by Miami-Dade County Product Control Section.
    - a. The hatches shall have product approval (FL) by Florida Building Council regarding compliance to Florida Building Code.
- D. Cover: Shall be 11 gauge (2.3mm) aluminum with a 3-inch (76mm) beaded flange with formed reinforcing members. Cover shall have a heavy extruded EPDM rubber gasket that is bonded to the cover interior to assure a continuous seal when compressed to the top surface of the curb.

- E. Cover Insulation: 1-inch (25mm) thick fiberglass, fully covered and protected by a metal liner of 18 gauge (1mm) aluminum.
- F. Curb: 12 inches (305mm) in height and of 11 gauge (2.3mm) aluminum.
  - 1. Curb shall be formed with a 3-1/2 inches (89mm) flange with 7/16-inch (11.1mm) holes provided for securing to the roof deck.
  - 2. Curb shall be equipped with an integral metal capflashing of the same gauge and material as the curb, fully welded at the corners, that features the Bil-Clip flashing system, including stamped tabs, 6 inches (153mm) on center, to be bent inward to hold single ply roofing membrane securely in place.
- G. Curb insulation: Rigid, high-density fiberboard of 1-inch (25mm) thickness on outside of curb.
- H. Lifting mechanisms: Compression spring operators enclosed in telescopic tubes to provide, smooth, easy, and controlled cover operation throughout the entire arc of opening and closing.
  - 1. Upper tube shall be the outer tube to prevent accumulation of moisture, grit, and debris inside the lower tube assembly.
  - 2. Lower tube shall interlock with a flanged support shoe for aluminum construction: welded to the curb assembly.
- I. Hardware
  - 1. Heavy pintle hinges shall be provided.
  - 2. Cover shall be equipped with a spring latch with interior and exterior turn handles.
  - 3. Roof hatch shall be equipped with interior and exterior padlock hasps.
  - 4. Latch Strike: A stamped component bolted to the curb assembly.
  - 5. Cover shall automatically lock in the open position with a rigid hold open arm equipped with a 1-inch (25mm) diameter red vinyl grip handle to permit easy release for closing.
  - 6. Hardware Material: Type 316 stainless steel.
  - 7. Cover Hardware: Bolted into heavy gauge channel reinforcing welded to the underside of the cover and concealed within the insulation space.
- J. Finishes: Factory finish shall be mill finish aluminum.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved submittals. Locate units level, plumb, and in proper alignment with adjacent work.
  - 1. Test units for proper function and adjust until proper operation is achieved.
  - 2. Repair finishes damaged during installation.
  - 3. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces using methods acceptable to the manufacturer which will not damage finish.

END OF SECTION 07 7233

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

SECTION 07 8400 – FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide firestop systems consisting of a material, or combination of materials installed to retain integrity of fire resistance rated construction by maintaining effective barrier against spread of flame, smoke and/or hot gases through penetrations, fire resistive joints, and perimeter openings in accordance with the requirements of the Code for this project.
- B. Firestop systems shall be used in locations including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Penetrations through fire resistance rated floor including both empty openings and openings containing penetrants.
  - 2. Penetrations through fire resistance rated wall assemblies including both empty openings and openings containing penetrants.
  - 3. Membrane penetrations in fire resistance rated wall assemblies where items penetrate one side of the barrier.
  - 4. Joints between fire resistance rated assemblies.
  - 5. Perimeter gaps between rated floors and an exterior wall assembly.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International:
  - 1. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 2. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestop Systems.
  - 3. ASTM E1966 - Standard Test Method for Resistance of Building Joint Systems.
  - 4. ASTM E1399 - Standard Test Method for Cyclic Movement and Measuring Minimum and Maximum Joint Width of Architectural Joint Systems.
  - 5. ASTM E119 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
  - 6. ASTM E2174 - Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Firestops
  - 7. ASTM E2307 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Fire Endurance of Perimeter Fire Barriers Using the Intermediate-Scale, Multi-story Test Apparatus.
  - 8. ASTM E2393 - Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistive Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barriers
- B. UL LLC (UL):
  - 1. UL Qualified Firestop Contractor Program.
  - 2. UL 263 – Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
  - 3. UL 723 – Standard Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 4. UL 1479 – Standard for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops.
  - 5. UL 2079 – Standard for Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems.



C. UL Online Certification Directory: Product IQ ([www.ul.com/apps/product-iq](http://www.ul.com/apps/product-iq)):

1. Through-Penetration Firestop Devices (XHJI)
2. Fire Resistive Ratings (BXUV)
3. Through-Penetration Firestop Systems (XHEZ)
4. Fill, Void, or Cavity Material (XHHW)

## D. Factory Mutual Research (FM):

1. FM 4991 – Approved Firestop Contractor

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Firestopping: Use of material or combination of materials in a fire-rated structure (wall or floor) where it has been breached, so as to restore the integrity of the fire rating on that wall or floor.
- B. System: Use of specific firestop material or combination of materials in conjunction with specific wall or floor construction type and specific penetrant(s).
- C. Barrier: Any bearing or non-bearing wall or floor that has an hourly fire and smoke rating.
- D. Through-Penetration: Any penetration of a fire-rated wall or floor that completely breaches the barrier.
- E. Membrane-Penetration: Any penetration in a fire-rated wall or floor/roof-ceiling assembly that breaches only one side of the barrier.
- F. Fire Resistive/Construction Joint: Any gap, joint, or opening, whether static or dynamic, between two fire rated barriers including where the top of a wall meets a floor; wall edge to wall edge applications; floor edge to floor edge configurations; floor edge to wall.
- G. Perimeter Barrier: Any gap, joint, or opening, whether static or dynamic, between a fire rated floor assembly and an exterior wall assembly.
- H. Approved Testing Agencies: Not limited to: Underwriters Laboratory (UL), Factory Mutual (FM), Warnock Hersey, and Intertek.

## 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Penetrations: Provide through-penetration and membrane-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist the spread of fire, passage of smoke and other hot gases according to requirements indicated, to restore the original fire-resistance rating of assembly penetrated.
  1. Provide and install complete penetration firestopping systems that have been tested and approved by nationally accepted testing agencies per ASTM E814 or UL 1479 fire tests in a configuration that is representative of field conditions.
  2. F-Rated Systems: Provide firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, as determined per ASTM E814 or UL 1479, but not less than one (1) hour or the fire resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated.

3. T-Rated Systems: Provide firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, as determined per ASTM E814 or UL 1479, where required by the Building Code.
  4. L- Rated Systems: Provide as required.
  5. W-Rated systems: Provide as required.
  6. For penetrations involving non-metallic, CPVC, PVC, or plastic piping, tubing or conduit, provide firestop systems that are chemically compatible in accordance with Manufacturer requirements.
  7. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
  8. For penetrations involving fire or fire/smoke dampers, only firestop products approved by the damper manufacturer shall be installed in accordance with the damper installation instructions.
- B. Fire Resistive Joints: Provide joint systems with fire resistance assembly ratings indicated, as determined by UL 2079 (ASTM E1399 and E1966), but not less than the fire resistance assembly rating of the construction in which the joint occurs. Firestopping assemblies must be capable of withstanding anticipated movements for the installed field conditions.
1. For firestopping assemblies exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that after curing do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
  2. For floor penetrations exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means, as specified by the Architect.
  3. L- Rated Systems: Provide firestop systems with L- ratings less than 5cfm/sf.
- C. Firestopping products shall have flame spread ratings less than 25 and smoke-developed ratings less than 450, as determined per ASTM E 84. Firestop products installed in plenum spaces shall have a smoke developed rating less than 50.
- D. Engineering Judgment (EJ): Where there is no specific third party tested and classified firestop system available for an installed condition, Contractor shall obtain from firestopping material manufacturer an Engineering Judgment (EJ) to be submitted to Approving Authority, Design Professional and Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval prior to installation. EJ shall follow International Firestop Council (IFC) guidelines.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each type of firestopping product selected.
- B. Design Listings: Submit system design listings, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each firestop configuration.
- C. Firestop Schedule: Submit schedule itemizing the following:
  1. Manufacturer's product reference numbers and/or drawing numbers.
  2. Listing agency's design number.
  3. Penetrating Item Description/Limits: Material, size, insulated or uninsulated, and combustibility.
  4. Maximum allowable annular space or maximum size opening.

5. Wall type construction.
6. Floor type construction.
7. Hourly Fire resistance rating of wall or floor.
8. F rating.
9. T, L, and W rating, if applicable.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instruction for each firestop assembly.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide firestopping system design listings from approved agency.
- B. Single Source Limitations: Obtain firestop systems for all conditions from a single manufacturer.
  1. Materials from different firestop manufacturers shall not be installed in the same firestop system or opening.
- C. Materials used shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's written installation instructions.

## 1.8 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Contractor Qualifications: Acceptable Firestop Contractor shall be:
  1. Licensed by State or Local Authority where applicable, or
  2. FM Research approved in accordance with FM Standard 4991, or
  3. UL Qualified Firestop Contractor, or
  4. Meet the following requirements.
    - a. Installation personnel shall be trained by approved firestop manufacturer.
    - b. Installation firm shall be experienced in installing firestop systems and fire resistive joint systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance.
    - c. Qualifications include having necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified tested and listed system requirements.
    - d. Minimum of three (3) years experiences and shown to have successfully completed not less than 5 comparable scale projects and provide references.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver firestopping products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturer's labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture/expiration, lot number, listing agency's classification marking, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.
- B. Store and handle materials per manufacturer's instructions to prevent deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

- C. Install firestop materials prior to expiration date.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Install firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are within limits permitted by the manufacturer's written instructions. Do not install firestopping when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate per manufacturers written instructions on the product's Material Safety Data Sheet.
- C. Verify condition of substrates before starting work.
- D. Care should be taken to ensure that firestopping materials are installed so as not to contaminate adjacent surfaces.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that firestopping assemblies are installed according to specified requirements. Opening shall not exceed maximum restrictions allowable for annular spacing per listing or acceptable Engineering Judgments.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.
- C. Do not conceal firestopping installations until Owner's inspection agency or Authorities Having Jurisdiction have examined each installation.
- D. Schedule firestopping after installation of penetrants and joints but prior to concealing or obstructing access to areas requiring firestopping.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 3M Company ([www.3m.com](http://www.3m.com), 800-376-0964); products or comparable products by one of the following:
  - 1. Hilti, Inc.
  - 2. Tremco Incorporated.

#### 2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

- A. Firestopping products specified in system design listings by approved testing agencies may be used providing they conform to construction type, penetrant type, annular space requirements and fire rating involved in each separate assembly.

- B. Manufacturer of firestopping products shall have been successfully producing and supplying these products for period of not less than three years and be able to show evidence of at least ten projects where similar products have been installed and accepted.
- C. Accessories: Provide components for each firestop system that is needed to install fill materials and to comply with performance requirements. Use only components specified by the firestopping manufacturer and by the approved testing agencies for the firestop systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to the following items:
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag wool fiber insulation.
    - b. Foams or sealants used to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Polyethylene/polyurethane backer rod.
    - e. Rigid polystyrene board.
  - 2. Temporary forming materials.
  - 3. Substrate primers.
  - 4. Steel sleeves

## 2.3 MIXING

- A. For products requiring mixing before application, comply with firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify that pipes, conduits, cables, and/or other items that penetrate fire-rated construction have been permanently installed prior to installation of firestops.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing firestop systems to comply with written recommendations of firestopping manufacturer and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of firestop systems.

2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

### 3.3 FIRESTOP SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install firestop systems in accordance with firestopping manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Verify that environmental conditions are safe and suitable for installation of firestop products.
- C. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire resistance ratings required.
- D. Install joint forming/damming materials and other accessories required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed firestopping material relative to joint widths that allow optimum movement capability and achieve fire resistance ratings required.
- E. Install metal framing, curtain wall insulation, mechanical attachments, safing materials and firestop materials as applicable within the system design.
- F. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  1. Fill voids, joints and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  2. Apply materials so they fully contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.
  4. Tool non-sag firestop materials after their application and prior to the time skinning begins. Use tooling agents approved by the firestopping manufacturer.
  5. On vertical pipe penetrations, lift riser clamps to permit the installation of firestopping around the entire pipe penetration. For penetrations involving fire or fire/smoke dampers, only firestop products approved by the damper manufacturer shall be installed in accordance with the damper installation instructions.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Authorities Having Jurisdiction, the Owner, or Owner's Representative shall be allowed to perform random destructive testing during inspection of firestop systems to verify compliance per listings or manufacturer's installation instructions. All areas of work must be accessible until inspection by the applicable Authorities Having Jurisdiction and inspection agencies. Contractor shall be responsible to repair tested assemblies with no cost to the owner.
- B. Proceed with enclosing firestop systems with other construction only after inspections are complete.

- C. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace firestop systems so they comply with requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings, as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by firestopping manufacturer(s) and that do not damage materials in which openings occur. Leave finished work in neat, clean condition with no evidence of spillovers or damage to adjacent surfaces.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce firestop systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 8400

## SECTION 07 9200 – JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes sealants and joint backing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Document 01 4339 “Mockups” for mockup requirements.
  - 2. Section 09 8000 “Acoustic Treatment” for acoustical sealant.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM C510 - Standard Test Method for Staining and Color Change of Single- or Multicomponent Joint Sealants.
  - 2. ASTM C661 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Elastomeric Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer.
  - 3. ASTM C719 - Standard Test Method for Adhesion and Cohesion of Elastomeric Joint Sealants Under Cyclic Movement (Hockman Cycle).
  - 4. ASTM C794 - Standard Test Method for Adhesion-in-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants
  - 5. ASTM C834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants.
  - 6. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  - 7. ASTM C1087 - Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories Used in Structural Glazing Systems.
  - 8. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
  - 9. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants.
  - 10. ASTM C1330 - Standard Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid Applied Sealants.
  - 11. ASTM D412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers—Tension.
  - 12. ASTM D2203 - Standard Test Method for Staining from Sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Standard drawings illustrating manufacturer's recommended sealant joint profiles and dimensions applicable to Project.
  - 3. Data for sealants required in each fire resistance rated assembly.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.



- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint sealant color.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Submit qualification data for qualified applicator.
- B. Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute (SWRI) Validation Certificate: For each sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.
- C. Warranty: Sample of unexecuted manufacturer and installer special warranties.
- D. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From manufacturer. Include written interpretation of reports and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation.
- E. Preconstruction field-adhesion test reports.
  - 1. Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing.
- F. Field quality control adhesion test reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company with minimum of three years experience specializing in work of this section, employing applicators trained for application of joint sealants required for this project, with record of successful completion of projects of similar scope, and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Single Source Responsibility: Provide exterior joint sealants by a single manufacturer responsible for testing of Project substrates to verify compatibility and adhesion of joint sealants.
- C. Preconstruction Manufacturer Laboratory Compatibility, Staining, and Adhesion Testing: Submit samples of each substrate or adjacent material that will be in contact with or affect joint sealants. Current manufacturer test data of products on matching substrates will be acceptable.
  - 1. Adhesion: Use ASTM C719 and ASTM C94 to determine requirements for joint preparation, including cleaning and priming.
  - 2. Compatibility: Use ASTM C1087 to determine materials forming joints and adjacent materials do not adversely affect sealant materials and do not affect sealant color.
  - 3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C510, ASTM C1248, or ASTM D2203 to verify non-staining characteristics of proposed sealants on specified substrates.

4. Pre-construction manufacturer laboratory testing is not required when sealant manufacturer can furnish data acceptable to Architect based on previous testing for materials matching those of the Work.

D. Mockup:

1. Apply joint sealants to verify details and to demonstrate the required installation.
2. See Section 01 4339 "Mockups" and Drawings for mockup requirements.

- E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Prior to installing joint sealants, field test adhesion to joint substrates using ASTM C1193 Method A. Verify adhesion is adequate. Modify joint preparation recommendations for failed joints and re-test. Submit written test report.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site in manufacturer's unopened original packaging.
- B. Store primers and sealants in dry location with ambient temperature range of 60 to 80 degrees F.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install primers or sealants when atmospheric temperatures or joint surface temperatures are less than 40 degrees. F.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule work so waterproofing, water repellents and preservative finishes are installed after sealants, unless sealant manufacturer approves otherwise in writing.
- B. Ensure sealants are cured before covering with other materials.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of joint sealants with cleaning of joint sealant substrates and other operations that may impact installation or finished joint sealant work.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which joint sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those that demonstrate deterioration or adhesive or cohesive failure under normal use within warranty period specified.
  1. Urethane Sealants:
    - a. Vertical Applications: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion
    - b. Horizontal Applications: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion

2. Silicone Sealants: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion
3. Silicone (Mildew) Sealants: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion

B. Installer's Warranty: Original statement on Installer's letterhead in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that demonstrate deterioration or failure within warranty period specified.

1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tremco, Inc., Commercial Sealants and Waterproofing Division, An RPM Company; products or comparable products by one of the following:

1. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
2. Pecora.
3. Sika Corporation.

### 2.2 MATERIALS - GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants and accessory materials that are compatible with one another, and with adjacent materials, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer using ASTM C1087 testing and related experience.

B. Joint Sealant Standard: Comply with ASTM C920 and other specified requirements for each joint sealant.

C. Stain Test Characteristics: Where sealants are required to be nonstaining, provide sealants tested per ASTM C1248 as non-staining on porous joint substrates specified.

D. Fire Resistance Rated Assemblies: Where sealants are required in fire resistance rated assemblies, provide sealants that have been tested in that assembly.

### 2.3 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Non-Staining, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT; SWRI validated.

1. Basis of Design Product: Spectrem 1.
2. Applications: Use for typical exterior conditions including sheet metal to metal detailing.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.

B. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

1. Basis of Design Product: Tremsil 200 Sanitary.
2. Applications: Use for restroom and bathrooms.

3. Color: White and clear.

## 2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Moisture-Cure, Polyurethane Joint Sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  1. Basis of Design Product: Dymonic 100.
  2. Tensile Strength (ASTM D412): 350 to 450 psi.
  3. Percent Elongation (ASTM D412): 800 to 900 percent.
  4. Modulus at 100 percent (ASTM D412): 75 to 85 psi.
  5. Tear Strength (ASTM D412): 65 to 75 psi.
  6. Smoke Development (ASTM E84): 5.
  7. Applications: Use with waterproofing systems.
  8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.
- B. Immersible, Multi-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade Polyurethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 35, Use T, O, and I.
  1. Basis of Design Product: Tremco, Inc., Vulkem 445SSL.
  2. Tensile Strength (ASTM D412): 250 psi at 100 percent elongation.
  3. Tear Strength (ASTM D412): 35 pli.
  4. Adhesion to Concrete, After Water (ASTM C 794): 28 pli.
  5. Hardness (ASTM C661): 40 durometer Shore A, minimum.
  6. Accelerated Weathering (ASTM C 93): Pass.
  7. Applications: Use for horizontal traffic conditions.
  8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.

## 2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Joint Sealant: Siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  1. Basis of Design Product: Tremflex 834.
  2. Applications: Use for typical interior applications, such as walls, floors and ceilings.
  3. Color: White, paintable.

## 2.6 JOINT SEALANT ACCESSORIES

- A. Cylindrical Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type B non-absorbent, bi-cellular material with surface skin, or Type O open-cell polyurethane, as recommended by sealant manufacturer for application.
- B. Bond Breaker Tape: Polymer tape compatible with joint sealant and adjacent materials and recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- C. Joint Substrate Primers: Substrate primer recommended by sealant manufacturer for application.
- D. Cleaners: Chemical cleaners acceptable to joint sealant manufacturer.

- E. Masking Tape: Non-staining, non-absorbent tape product compatible with joint sealants and adjacent joint surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joint profiles and surfaces to determine if work is ready to receive joint sealants.
  - 1. Verify joint dimensions are adequate for development of sealant movement capability.
  - 2. Verify joint surfaces are clean, dry, and adequately cured.
- B. Proceed with joint sealant work once conditions meet sealant manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Joint Surface Cleaning: Clean joints prior to installing joint sealants using materials and methods recommended by sealant manufacturer. Comply with ASTM C1193.
  - 1. Remove curing compounds, laitance, form-release agents, dust, and other contaminants.
  - 2. Clean nonporous and porous surfaces utilizing chemical cleaners acceptable to sealant manufacturer.
  - 3. Protect elements surrounding Work of this section from damage or disfiguration. Apply masking tape to adjacent surfaces when required to prevent damage to finishes from sealant installation.

### 3.3 SEALANT APPLICATION

- A. Sealant and Primer Installation Standard: Comply with ASTM C1193 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Backing: Select joint backing materials recommended by sealant manufacturer as compatible with sealant and adjacent materials. Install backing material at depth required to produce profile of joint sealant allowing optimal sealant movement.
  - 1. Install joint backing to maintain the following joint ratios:
    - a. Joints up to 1/2 inchwide: 1:1 width to depth ratio.
    - b. Joints greater than 1/2 inchwide: 2:1 width to depth ratio; maximum 1/2-inch joint depth.
  - 2. Install bond breaker tape over substrates when sealant backings are not used.
- C. Masking: Mask adjacent surfaces to prevent staining or damage by contact with sealant or primer.
- D. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates when recommended by sealant manufacturer or when indicated by preconstruction testing or experience. Apply recommended primer using sealant manufacturer's recommended application techniques.

- E. Liquid Sealant Application: Install sealants using methods recommended by sealant manufacturer, in depths recommended for application. Apply in continuous operation from bottom to top of joint vertically and horizontally in a single direction. Apply using adequate pressure to fill and seal joint width.
  - 1. Tool sealants immediately with appropriately shaped tool to force sealants against joint backing and joint substrates, eliminating voids and ensuring full contact.
  - 2. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags.
  - 3. Tool exposed joint surface concave using tooling agents approved by sealant manufacturer for application.
- F. Cleaning: Remove excess sealant using materials and methods approved by sealant manufacturer that will not damage joint substrate materials.
  - 1. Remove masking tape immediately after tooling joint without disturbing seal.
  - 2. Remove excess sealant from surfaces while still uncured.
- G. Installation of Acoustical Sealant: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations on both sides of assemblies with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Perform adhesion tests in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and with ASTM C1193, Method A.
  - 1. Perform 5 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate, and one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per building elevation, minimum.
  - 2. For sealant applied between dissimilar materials, test both sides of joint.
- B. Remove sealants failing adhesion test, clean substrates, reapply sealants, and re-test. Test adjacent sealants to failed sealants.
- C. Submit report of field adhesion testing to Architect indicating tests, locations, dates, results, and remedial actions taken.

END OF SECTION 07 9200

## SECTION 08 1113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior impact-rated steel doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Document 00 3133 "Calculation for Components and Cladding" for wind loading.
2. Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.

4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
8. Details of accessories.
9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

- C. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
  2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
  3. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of windborne-debris impact resistance door and thermally rated door assemblies for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- C. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.



- B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
  - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- C. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ceco Door; AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY; products or comparable products by one of the following:
  - 1. Curries, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Group.
  - 2. Republic Doors and Frames; a Allegion brand.
  - 3. Steelcraft; Allegion plc.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

- B. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for enhanced protection.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For openings located within 30 feet of grade.
- C. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3113 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."

## 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
    - g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
    - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.4 EXTERIOR IMPACT-RATED STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.13
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 14 gage, with minimum A60 coating.
      - 1) Fire Rated Doors: 14 gage minimum steel sheet thickness.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.

- g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
    - h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
    - i. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 16 gage, with minimum A60 coating.
    - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  - 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
  - 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- C. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.

- D. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- F. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
  - 1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule on Drawings, and templates.
  - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  - 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
  - 1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with square stops unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
  - 3. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
  - 4. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches on center and not more than 2 inches on center from each corner.

A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved shop drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
  1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
    - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
  2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
  3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
    - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
  4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
  5. In-Place Concrete Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.

- c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
  - 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

### 3.4 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

END OF SECTION 08 1113

## SECTION 08 1416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-core five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 8000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
2. Section 13 4800.16 "Sound Control Swinging Doors" steel doors with wood veneer.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data Submittals: For each product, including the following:

1. Door core materials and construction.
2. Door edge construction
3. Door face type and characteristics.
4. Door trim for openings.
5. Door frame construction.
6. Factory-machining criteria.
7. Factory- finishing specifications.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.

## C. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

## A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
3. Submit copy of DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

## B. Field quality-control reports.

## C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

## A. Special warranties.

## B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

## A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies complies with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:

1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

## B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies complies with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:

1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

## A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

## B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons, and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.

## C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.



## A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 degrees and 90 degrees F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during remainder of construction period.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

## A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Delamination of veneer.
  - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
  - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
2. Warranty also includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer from a single source.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door and Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

## 2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A.

## 2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

### A. Interior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply Veneer-Faced:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Masonite Architectural; CENDURA Series Standard Wood Veneer or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Lambton Doors.
  - b. Oshkosh Door Company.
  - c. VT Industries, Inc.
2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty.
3. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Quality Grade: Custom.
4. Architectural Woodwork Standards Quality Grade: Custom.
5. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
  - a. Species: White birch.
  - b. Cut: Rotary
  - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Slip match.
  - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
6. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
  - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
7. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware. follows:
8. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

## 2.5 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces .
  2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads .
- B. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
  - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
  - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
  - 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
  - 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

## 2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
  - 1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  - 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  - 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Custom.
    - a. TR-8 UV Cured Acrylated Polyester/Urethane.
  - 2. Staining and Sheen: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
  - 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08 1416

## SECTION 08 3113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Access doors and frames.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, fire ratings, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Samples: For each type of access door and frame and for each finish specified, complete assembly minimum 6 by 6 inches in size.

C. Product Schedule: For access doors and frames. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ACUDOR Products, Inc.; Universal Flush Access For, UF-5500, or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Babcock-Davis.
  - b. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
  - c. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
  - d. Nystrom, Inc.
2. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
3. Optional Features: Piano hinges.
4. Locations: Ceiling.
5. Door Size: As indicated on Drawings.
6. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
7. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
8. Latch and Lock: Cam latch, screwdriver operated.

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A879/A879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
- D. Latch and Lock Hardware:
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
    - a. Field painted. See Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects' company

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 08 3113

## SECTION 08 3523 –FOUR-FOLD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Mechanically-operated, overhead-mounted, hurricane-rated, impacted-rated four-fold metal doors, glazed and unglazed.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Document 00 3133 “Calculation for Components and Cladding” for wind loading.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE

A. Four-fold metal doors, tested and approved for High Velocity Hurricane Zones, up to 120 psf and approved by Florida Building Code.

1. Level D: #FL17136.
2. Level E: #FL32280.

B. Doors shall be designed to withstand external or internal horizontal wind loads of 120 pounds minimum per square foot.

1. The maximum allowable deflection shall not exceed 1/120 of the span.
2. Fiber stresses in main members shall be limited to 27,000 pounds per square inch.
3. Steel frames shall be designed in accordance with the AISC “Steel Construction Manual”.
4. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3133 “Calculations for Components and Cladding.”

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product including:

1. Manufacturer’s technical Product Data.
2. Manufacturer’s installation instructions for each type of door required.

B. Submittal Drawings:

1. Show fabrication and installation of four-fold metal doors including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, hardware, operating mechanism, and attachments to the other units of Work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for coordination with electrical trade.

C. Delegated Design Submittal: For four-fold doors including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.



1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates: Substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Installer Qualifications.
- C. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
  - 1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Reference list including (5) successful installations of this type of hurricane rated doors within the past two (2) years.
- B. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store delivered materials and equipment in dry locations with adequate ventilation, free from dust and water, and so as to permit access for inspection and handling.
- B. Handle materials carefully to prevent damage.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Door manufacturer shall provide a written standard limited warranty for material and workmanship.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FOUR-FOLD DOORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Door Engineering and Manufacturing ([www.doorengineering.com](http://www.doorengineering.com), 800-959-1352); FF701 Series, Glazed or Solid Sheeted Four-Fold Doors, or comparable product, approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Mechanically-operated, overhead mounted hurricane-rated, impacted rated four-fold metal doors, glazed and unglazed.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Tube: ASTM A513 and ASTM A500/A500M
- B. Steel Sheets: Steel sheets of commercial quality, complying with ASTM A1008 cold-rolled steel sheet.
- C. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard components.
- D. Fasteners: Zinc-coated steel.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Construction:
  - 1. Door Framing: Minimum 11-gage structural steel tube with 14-gauge sheet steel on exterior and interior faces.
  - 2. Sheeting shall be formed on vertical edges with no visible welds or caulked sheet edges on interior or exterior panel faces.
  - 3. Frames and framing members shall be true to dimension and square in all directions, and no door shall be bowed, warped, or out of line, in vertical or horizontal plane of door opening by more than 1/8 inch in 20 feet.
  - 4. Exposed welds and welds which interfere with installation of various parts shall be ground smooth and flush.
- B. Surface Mounted Tube Frame:
  - 1. Supply pre-hung tube frame system constructed of 6-inch by 6-inch by 1/4-inch tube steel designed to anchor to masonry or concrete construction or weld to steel structure.
  - 2. All hinges, track supports and operator supports shall be factory attached.
- C. Factory Finish:
  - 1. Operator and Operating Hardware:
    - a. Finish: Powder coated.
    - b. Color: Gray, manufacturer's standard.
  - 2. Panels, Frame and All Other Hardware:
    - a. All Exposed Steel: Manufacturer's standard zinc rich primer and polyurethane top coat, PPG Spectracron or equal.
    - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard color chart or furnish color to match.
- D. Operating Hardware:
  - 1. Hardware shall include guide tracks and brackets, trolleys, center guides, not less than three pairs of jamb and fold hinges per opening, and all bolts, nuts, fasteners, etc. necessary for complete installation and operation.
  - 2. Jamb hinges shall be dual shear and have two thrust bearings and two needle bearings.
    - a. Jamb hinges shall be gusseted.

3. Fold hinges shall be dual shear with two thrust bearings.
    - a. Fold hinges shall be stainless steel.
  4. All bearings shall be completely sealed within the hinge barrel and include grease zerks.
  5. All hinge pins shall be minimum 3/4-inch diameter hardened steel.
  6. All trolleys shall be equipped two (2) Nylatron rollers.
- E. Hinge Guards: Provide plastic guards at jamb hinges to prevent access through hinge space.
- F. Weatherstripping:
1. Material shall be adjustable and readily replaceable and provide a substantially weather-tight installation.
  2. Weatherstripping at center shall be 1/16-inch EPDM and include no exposed fasteners on the exterior side of the panel.
  3. Weatherstripping at sill shall include two 1/16-inch EPDM sweeps with an aluminum retainer. R
  4. Retainer shall be attached to the door with adhesive.
- G. Perimeter Weatherstripping: Provide full perimeter jamb and head weatherstripping.
- H. Vision Panels:
1. Level E: 11/16-inch Impact rated glazing.
  2. Level D: 9/16-inch Impact rated glazing.
  3. Level D: 1-1/4-inch Impact rated glazing.
- I. Locking System:
1. Locking bolts shall be completely concealed within the door panel.
  2. Locking bolts shall extend into the floor and into the header tube.
  3. Limit switch shall disable the operator when the locks are engaged.

## 2.4 OPERATOR

- A. Each four-fold door shall be operated by overhead mounted electro-mechanical drive unit designed for high cycle operation.
1. Operator consists of electric motor, gear reducer, and rotating drive arm.
  2. Door shall be operated with connecting rods attached to rotating drive arm on operator and to control arms attached to jamb door section and to door lintel.
  3. Connecting rods shall be positive drive, keeping door under firm control at all times.
  4. Connecting rods shall be fitted with spherical bearings and control arms shall be equipped with oil impregnated bronze bearings on polished shafts.
- B. Operator shall be instantly reversible, open and close rapidly and start and stop gradually.
1. Operator shall be adjustable to allow door to fully clear the opening.
  2. Operator shall automatically lock door in closed position.
  3. Operator shall be equipped with disengaging mechanism to convert to manual operation.

- C. Electric motor shall be of sufficient size to operate doors under normal operating conditions at no more than 75 percent of rated capacity.
  - 1. Motor shall be wound for three phase 208/260/480 VAC, 60 Hertz operation.
- D. Electric Controls: Controls shall be furnished by door manufacturer and shall be complete for each door, and built in accordance with latest NEMA standards. Incoming electrical shall be 120VAC single phase, 208VAC single phase, 208/230VAC 3-phase or 480VAC 3-phase as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Control panel assemblies shall be UL listed as per NFPA70.
  - 2. Controls shall include programmable logic controller with digital message display. Controller shall include programmable close timers and programmable inputs/outputs.
  - 3. Motor starters shall be magnetic reversing, factory wired with overload and under voltage protection, and equipped with mechanical interlocks. All control components shall be enclosed in one enclosure with wiring diagram placed on inside of cover.
  - 4. If incoming voltage is single phase, control panel shall include variable frequency drive to convert voltage to 3-phase for the motor.
  - 5. Enclosures shall be NEMA 4 with disconnect switch.
  - 6. Pushbuttons (interior) for each door shall have one momentary pressure three-button push-button station marked "OPEN", "CLOSE" and "STOP". Push button enclosure shall be NEMA 4.
  - 7. Limit switches shall be provided to stop travel of door in its fully open or fully closed position. Provide cremone bolt limit switch to be used for HVAC or exhaust removal system.
  - 8. Safety Edges: Provide monitored electric safety edges on leading edge of all doors to reverse door upon contact with obstruction.
  - 9. Photo Eyes: Provide (1) exterior, jamb mounted, light Curtain type photo eyes, NEMA 4 rated. Photo eye shall cover from floor level to 72 inches above floor.
  - 10. Presence Sensor: Provide (1) interior, overhead mounted, presence sensor BEA IS40P or equal. Doors over 16'-0" tall shall include LZR-Widescan or equal.
  - 11. Radio Controls: Provide one (1) radio receiver and (1) single button remotes per door. Remotes to open and close doors with single button.
  - 12. Timer Activation Loop Detectors (fire station applications): Provide "pulse on exit type" loop detector to activate auto close timer once loop has been activated and cleared, include hand/auto switch to deactivate timer. Contractor to coordinate installation of preformed loop with installer prior to exterior apron being poured.
  - 13. Warning Horn/Strobe: Provide warning light and strobe. Include outputs PLC to allow for activation while door is in motion both opening and closing, along with activation prior to closing. Include programmable "delay-to-close" timer which activates the warning horn for a set time, prior to the door closing.
  - 14. Wiring: Door manufacturer shall supply controls and components only.
    - a. Electrical contractor shall install controls and furnish and install conduits and wiring for jobsite power and control wiring.

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install four-fold metal doors in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings by qualified door erection crews.
- B. Door openings shall be completely prepared by Contractor prior to installation of doors.
  - 1. Permanent or temporary electric wiring shall be brought to door opening before installation is started and shall be completed so as not to delay inspection test.
- C. Doors shall be set plumb, level, and square, and with all parts properly fastened and mounted. All moving parts shall be tested and adjusted and left in good operating condition.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Inspection of doors and a complete operating test will be made by Installer in presence of Contractor or Architect as soon as erection is complete.
- B. Any defects noted shall be corrected.
- C. After door approval in above test, Contractor must assume responsibility for any damage or rough handling of doors during construction until building is turned over to Owner and final inspection is made.
- D. Clean surfaces and repaint abraded or damaged finished surfaces to match factory-applied finish.

END OF SECTION 08 3523

SECTION 08 4213 – ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Impact-resistant, wind-resistant aluminum door assemblies including glazing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 4313 "Aluminum Framed Storefront."
2. Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include:

1. Door assembly manufacturer recommended installation instructions.
2. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
3. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Include:

1. Plans, elevations, sections, details, attachment to other work and glazing details for field-glazed units.
2. Details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
3. Full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrance door systems, showing the following:
  - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.
4. Connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
5. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

- D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- E. Delegated Design Submittals: For aluminum-framed entrances including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Testing Agency.
- B. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
  - 1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.
- C. Warranty: Sample of finish warranty

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrance door systems.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025 and acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- C. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications:
  - 1. Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies to comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Ch. 7 "Means of Egress," Section "Means of Egress Components," Article "Inspection of Door Openings."
  - 2. Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies to be certified under DHI's certification program as a Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) or a Certified Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (CFDAI).
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

- E. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store and handle aluminum-framed entrances in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's warranty against deterioration of factory finishes for the period of 10 years from the date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Glass Warranty: Manufacturer's warranty against defects in material and workmanship resulting in edge separation or delamination for a period of 5 years from the date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ALUMINUM ENTRANCES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insulgard Security Products; STORMDEFEND TTH350 or comparable product, approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - 1. Capital Glass.
  - 2. Survivalite Impact Window Systems.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Factory fabricated door assembly constructed from either 6105-T5 or 6005-T5 extruded aluminum.
  - 2. Dimensions: Wide Stile Door
    - a. Stiles: 5 inches by 2-3/8 inches
    - b. Top Rail: 7 inches by 2-3/8 inches
    - c. Bottom Rail: 8-1/2 inches by 2-3/8 inches
    - d. Glazing Stops: 1-3/4 inch face
  - 3. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 GLAZING

- A. Glazing Material: Insulating Glass Clad Polycarbonate.
  - 1. Product: TOR-GARD 30 IG manufactured by Insulgard.
  - 2. Description: Wind-resistant and impact-resistant glazing.



## 2.3 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3133 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."
- B. Debris Hazard:
  - 1. ASTM E1886 - Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missiles and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials
  - 2. ASTM E1996 - Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Tolerances: All joints and connections shall be tight, providing hairline joints and true alignment of adjacent members.
- B. Door corner joinery of extruded and keyed aluminum spline with a continuous 3/8 inch diameter steel tie rod at top and bottom rails.

## 2.5 DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturer standard door hardware.
- B. See Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Fully concealed.
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer supplied EPDM gasket utilized as component of the tested assembly.

## 2.7 FINISH

- A. Factory-applied finish:
  - 1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - 2. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - 3. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    - a. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify field dimensions of opening prior to fabrication of door assemblies.
- B. Coordinate structural requirements to ensure proper attachment and support.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved shop drawings.
- B. Provide required support and securely fasten and set doors and frames plumb, square, and level without twist or bow.
- C. Apply sealant in accordance with door and sealant manufacturer's recommendations as indicated in installation instructions. Wipe off excess, and leave exposed sealant surfaces clean and smooth

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust door to provide for correct operation and weather tightness.
- B. Clean in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommended cleaning procedures using recommended cleaning agents.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect doors and glazing from damage during construction operations. If damage occurs, remove and replace as required to provide doors in their original, undamaged condition.
  - 1. In addition to breakage, damage includes but is not limited to crazing, cracking, fissures and delamination.

END OF SECTION 08 4213

SECTION 08 4313 – ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Impact-resistant, wind-resistant aluminum framed storefront.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 4213 "Aluminum Framed Entrances" for related doors.
2. Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:

1. Framing and glazing manufacturer recommended installation instructions.
2. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachment to other work and glazing details for field-glazed units.
2. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
3. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed storefronts, showing the following:
  - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.
4. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed storefronts including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Testing Agency.
- B. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
  - 1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.
- C. Warranty: Sample of finish warranty

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and that employs a qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AGM) contractors and that employs glazing technicians certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025 and acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store and handle storefront in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's warranty against deterioration of factory finishes for the period of 10 years from the date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Glass Warranty: Manufacturer's warranty against defects in material and workmanship resulting in edge separation or delamination for a period of 5 years from the date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STOREFRONT FRAMING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insulgard Security Products ([www.insulgard.com](http://www.insulgard.com), 800.624.6315); STORMDEFEND TTH600 or comparable product, approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - 1. Capital Glass.
  - 2. Survivalite Impact Window Systems.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Factory-fabricated framing constructed from either 6005-T5 or 6105-T5 extruded aluminum with integral weep design to allow water to vent to the exterior along horizontal members. Thermal separation of frame using polyamide strip.
  - 2. Dimensions:
    - a. Head, Jamb, and Sill Members: 2-1/2 inches by 6 inches.
    - b. Mullion and Intermediate Horizontal Members: 3-1/4 inch face.
  - 3. Unit to be permanently marked with certification label of the certified testing agency acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction. Label to include:
    - a. Design Pressure
    - b. Tested Pressure
  - 4. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 GLAZING

- A. Glazing Material: Insulating Glass Clad Polycarbonate.
  - 1. Product: TOR-GARD 30 IG manufactured by Insulgard.
  - 2. Description: Wind-resistant and impact-resistant glazing.

### 2.3 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3133 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."
- B. Debris Hazard:
  - 1. ASTM E1886 - Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missiles and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials
  - 2. ASTM E1996 - Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes.

## C. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:

1. NFRC Model Size: 47-1/4 by 59 inches
2. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.37 as determined according to NFRC 100.
3. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.45 as determined according to NFRC 200.
4. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 60 as determined according to NFRC 500.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Tolerances: All joints and connections shall be tight, providing hairline joints and true alignment of adjacent members

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Fully concealed in accordance with performance requirements
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer-supplied EPDM gasket utilized as component of the tested assembly.

## 2.6 FINISH

1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
2. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
3. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
  - a. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify field dimensions of opening prior to fabrication of windows.
- B. Coordinate structural requirements to ensure proper attachment and support.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install storefront in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved shop drawings.

- B. Provide required support and securely fasten and set storefront plumb, square, and level without twist or bow.
- C. Apply sealant in accordance with storefront and sealant manufacturer's recommendations as indicated in installation instructions.
  - 1. Wipe off excess, and leave exposed sealant surfaces clean and smooth.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommended cleaning procedures using recommend cleaning agents.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect windows from damage during construction operations. If damage occurs, remove and replace as required to provide windows in their original, undamaged condition.
  - 1. In addition to breakage, damage includes but is not limited to crazing, cracking, fissures and delamination.

END OF SECTION 08 4313

## SECTION 08 4413.13 - FIRE-RATED ALUMINUM CURTAINWALL AND ENTRANCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fire-resistive curtainwall assembly.
  - 1. Fire resistive curtain wall framing system.
  - 2. Fire resistive entrances, frames and doors.
  - 3. Glazing.
  - 4. Hardware.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 4213 "Impact-Rated Aluminum Framed Entrances."
  - 2. Section 08 4313 "Impact-Rated Aluminum Framed Storefront."

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
  - 2. ASTM E152 – Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
  - 3. ASTM E163 - Standard Methods for Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
  - 4. ASTM E2074 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, including Positive Pressure Testing of Side-Hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies.
  - 5. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
  - 6. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
  - 7. ASTM E330 – Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
- B. American Architectural Manufacturer's Association (AAMA):
  - 1. AAMA 501.1-05, Standard Test Method for Metal Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Dynamic Pressure.
  - 2. AAMA 501.4-09, Recommended Static Test Method for Evaluating Curtain Wall and Storefront Systems Subjects to Seismic and Wind Induced Interstory Drifts.
  - 3. AAMA 501.5-2005: Test Method for Thermal Cycling of Exterior Walls.
  - 4. AAMA 1503-1998: Voluntary Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Condensation Resistance for Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections.



## C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA 80: Fire Doors and Windows.
2. NFPA 251: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
3. NFPA 252: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
4. NFPA 257: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.

## D. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

1. UL 9: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
2. UL 10B: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
3. UL 10C: Standard for Safety of Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
4. UL 263: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.

## E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):

1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.

## F. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. ANSI Z97.1: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test.

## G. Glass Association of North America (GANA)

1. GANA – Glazing Manual.
2. FGMA – Sealant Manual.

## H. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC)

1. NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors.
2. NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.

## I. Building Code: See Drawings.

## 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

## A. Performance Requirements:

1. Fire Rating: 60 minutes.
2. Fire Resistive Wall Assembly Certifications: Must meet 60-minute fire resistive wall assemblies tested in accordance with ASTM E119, NFPA 251, UL 263 and ULC-S101.
3. Air Infiltration: Must be tested to ASTM E 283-04 at 6.24 psf.
  - a. Result: Must have no leakage.
4. Static Pressure: must be tested to ASTM E 331-00 at 20 psf.
  - a. Result: Must have no leakage.
5. Dynamic Pressure Water Resistance: must be tested to AAMA 501-1.05 at 12 psf.
  - a. Result: Must have no leakage.

6. Thermal Cycling and Condensation Evaluation: must be tested at 170 degrees F to minus 10 degrees F (exterior), 68 degrees F (interior).
  - a. Result: must have no damage or condensation.
7. Condensation Resistance Factor of Frame: Up to 68.
8. Condensation Resistance Factor of Glass: Up to 71.
9. Structural Performance: must be tested to ASTM E-330 between minus 75 psf to 60 psf.
  - a. Result: Must pass without damage.
10. NFRC 100 and NFRC 200: Must provide a finite element computer thermal modeling and calculations through NFRC CMAST. NFRC CMAST Bid Reports must be submitted at time of bid, time of product submission, and as assemblies are installed per the project documents and actual designed exterior applications for the project.
11. Testing Laboratory: Fire test must be conducted by a nationally recognized independent testing laboratory.
12. Glazing: Must have fire resistive glazing tested to ASTM E-119/UL263/ULC-S101 up to 2 hours.
  - a. All glazing in hazardous locations must meet CPSC Cat. I or II impact safety.

B. Listings and Labels:

1. Fire resistive curtain wall system shall be under current follow-up service by a nationally recognized independent laboratory approved by OSHA and maintain a current listing or certification.
  - a. Assemblies shall be labeled in accordance with limits of listings.

C. Appearance:

1. Fire resistive curtain wall assembly shall have a neat finished appearance with minimum joints at decorative cover intersections.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:

1. Latest edition of manufacturer's product data providing product descriptions, technical data and installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing elevations, layouts, profiles and product components.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire rated glass and framing must be provided by a single-source, US manufacturer.

1. Distributors of fire-rated glass and framing are not to be considered as manufacturers.
2. Materials for the project should be shipped together in the same shipment on the same truck.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Delivery: Deliver materials to specified destinations in manufacturer's or distributor's packaging undamaged, complete with installation instructions.
- C. Storage and Protection: Store off ground, under cover, protected from weather and construction activities and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.

1.7 FABRICATION DIMENSIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements for openings by field measurements before fabrication.
  - 1. Show recorded measurements on shop drawings.
  - 2. Coordinate field measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document. Manufacturer's warranty is not intended to limit other rights that the Owner may have under the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 5-year limited warranty from date of shipping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE-RESISTIVE CURTAIN WALL ASSEMBLY

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide SAFTFIRST Fire Rated Glazing Solutions; products or comparable products approved by the Architect by one of the following:
  - 1. Technical Glass Products (TPG).
  - 2. Vetrotech Saint-Gobain International AG
- B. Description: Fire-resistive rated aluminum-clad curtainwall framing with fire-resistive rated aluminum-clad entrances (doors), and fire-resistive rated glazing.

2.2 CURTAINWALL FRAMING

- A. Product: GPX Curtain Wall Framing.
- B. Fire-Resistive Rating: 60 minutes.

## C. Description and Properties:

1. Frame Width and Depth:
  - a. Large: 2-1/2 inches by 7-1/2 inches.
  - b. Small: 2-1/2 inches by 5 inches.
  - c. Locations: See Drawings.
2. Internal framing:
  - a. Internal tube steel framing shall conform to ASTM A501.
  - b. Formed steel retainers shall be galvanized conforming to ASTM A527.
3. Cladding:
  - a. Aluminum.
4. Insulation:
  - a. Framing system shall insulate against effects of fire, smoke and heat transfer from either side.
  - b. Perimeter of framing system to rough opening shall be firmly packed with mineral wool fire stop insulation or appropriately rated intumescent sealant.
5. Fasteners: Type recommended by manufacturer. No exposed fasteners allowed.
6. Glazing accessories:
  - a. Glazing material perimeter shall be separated from the perimeter framing system with approved glazing tape.
  - b. Glazing panel may be caulked continuously around the edge to the tube steel frame utilizing neutral cure silicone.
  - c. Silicone setting blocks recommended.

## 2.3 ENTRANCES - DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Product: GPX Builders Series 60 Minute Doors.
- B. Fire Resistive Rating: 60-minute temperature rise doors.
- C. Description and Properties:
  1. Door Thickness: 2-1/2 to 3 inches.
  2. Frame (Standard): 2 inches.
  3. Stile and Rails: 6 inches.
  4. Bottom Rail: 10 inches, ADA-compliant.
  5. Internal Framing and Doors: Steel.
  6. Cladding: Aluminum.

## 2.4 GLAZING

- A. Product: SuperLite II-XL 60 Glass.
- B. Testing: ASTM E 119.
  1. Meets 450 degrees F temperature rise criteria for 30 minutes.

## C. Description and Properties:

1. Thickness: 1-3/8 inches.
2. Individual lites shall be permanently identified with a listing mark.
3. Glazing material installed in "Hazardous Locations" (subject to human impact) shall be certified to meet the applicable requirements for fire rated assemblies referenced in ANSI Z97.1
  - a. Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used In Buildings and/or CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
4. Temperature rise on unexposed side of glazing material shall be limited to 250 degrees Fahrenheit when required.
5. Visible Transmittance: Varies by glazing type. Must meet:
  - a. SuperLite II-XL 60, 0.786.
6. STC/OITC: Varies by glazing type. Must meet:
  - a. SuperLite II-XL 60, STC 43/OITC 39.
7. Pressure glazing is acceptable.

## D. Logo: Each piece of fire rated glazing shall be labeled with a permanent logo.

## 2.5 DOOR HARDWARE FOR SINGLE AND PAIRED DOORS

## A. Hardware shall be supplied with the doors. Hardware selection shall be from door manufacturer's standard recommended hardware groups as specified below.

## B. Standard operating hardware for single doors.

1. Hinges:
  - a. Description: Heavy-duty Continuous Geared OKC
  - b. Material and Finish: Aluminum, clear anodized.
  - c. Manu: Pemko
2. Panic Devices:
  - a. Description: Modern Touchbar with Surface Vertical Rods
  - b. Finish: US26D
  - c. Manu: Von Duprin 9827F w/ 996, L-trim
3. Closing Devices:
  - a. Description: Heavy-duty Surface Applied Closer
  - b. Material: Aluminum
  - c. Manu: LCN 4040xp
4. Auto Door Bottoms:
  - a. Description: 420APKL
  - b. Manu: Pemko

## C. Door Hardware: See Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Assemblies shall be furnished knocked down for field assembly and will be glazed in the field.
- B. Door assemblies shall be factory prepared for field mounting of hardware.
- C. Fabrication Dimensions: Fabricate to approved dimensions.
  - 1. Contractor shall guarantee dimensions within required tolerance.
  - 2. Obtain approved shop drawings prior to fabrication.

## 2.7 FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- B. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
- C. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
  - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
  - 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data including product technical bulletins, installation instructions and approved shop drawings.

## 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions that have been previously installed under other sections, and are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Openings shall be plumb, square and within allowable tolerances.
- C. Notify Architect of any conditions that jeopardize the integrity of the proposed fire wall/door framing system.
- D. Do not proceed until such conditions are corrected.

- A. Assembly installation shall be by a licensed contractor and in strict accordance with the manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved shop drawings.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Remove such substances by method approved by manufacturer.
- B. Wash glass on both faces not more than four days prior to date schedule for inspections intended to establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass by method recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
- D. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.

END OF SECTION 08 4413.13

## SECTION 08 8000 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass products.
2. Glazing sealants.
3. Glazing tapes.
4. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 3523 "Four-Fold Doors" for assembly-specific impact-rated glazing.
2. Section 08 4213 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances" assembly-specific insulating glass clad polycarbonate.
3. Section 08 4313 "Aluminum-Framed Storefront" assembly-specific insulating glass clad polycarbonate.
4. Section 08 4413.13 "Fire-Rated Aluminum Curtain Wall and Entrances" for assembly-specific fire-resistive glazing.
5. Section 08 8813 "Fire-Rated Glazing" for fire-rated glazing.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.



1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.\
  - 2. Review manufacture's data for specific assembly glazing components.
  - 3. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturers of fabricated glass units, glass testing agency and sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved and certified by primary glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors and who employs glazing technicians certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
  - 1. Verify Installer qualifications with assembly-specific glazing requirements.

- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

## 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
  - 1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
  - 2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
  - 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 degrees F.

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Heat-Soaked Tempered Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace heat-soaked tempered glass units that spontaneously break due to nickel sulfide (NiS) inclusions at a rate exceeding 0.3 percent (3/1000) within specified warranty period. Coverage for any other cause is excluded.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined in accordance with the IBC and ASTM E1300:
  - 1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
    - a. See Document 00 3113 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."
  - 2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
  - 3. Thermal Loads: Design glazing to resist thermal stress breakage induced by differential temperature conditions and limited air circulation within individual glass lites and insulated glazing units.
- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for basic protection.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
  - 2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located between 30 feet and 60 feet above grade.
- E. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- F. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  - 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  - 4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - 5. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
  - 6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

### 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. NGA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than thickness indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

## 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
  - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
  - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 LAMINATED GLASS

- A. Laminated Glass: ASTM C1172. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
  - 3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Laminated Glass: Comply with requirements specified above for laminated glass except laminate glass with the following to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions:
1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer reinforced with polyethylene terephthalate film to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
  3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified in accordance with ASTM E2190.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
  2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction .
  3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

## 2.7 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
- B. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 100/50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.

## 2.8 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- D. Spacers: Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- E. Edge Blocks: Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## 2.10 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. Temperature Change: Temperature Change: 120 degrees F, ambient; 180 degrees F, material surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

## 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch- minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.



- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

### 3.8 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Clear Glass Type: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.

### 3.9 FIRE-RATED GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. See Section 08 8813 "Fire-Rated Glazing" for fire-rated glazing.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

3.10 ASSEMBLY-SPECIFIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. See Section 08 3523 “Four-Fold Doors” for assembly-specific impact-rated glazing.
- B. See Section 08 4213 “Aluminum-Framed Entrances” assembly-specific insulating glass clad polycarbonate.
- C. See Section 08 4313 “Aluminum-Framed Storefront” assembly-specific insulating glass clad polycarbonate.
- D. See Section 08 4413.13 “Fire-Rated Aluminum Curtain Wall and Entrances” for assembly-specific fire-resistive glazing.

END OF SECTION 08 8000

## SECTION 08 8813 - FIRE-RATED GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-protection-rated glazing.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing: Glazing that prevents spread of fire and smoke and complies with requirements for rated openings; incapable of blocking radiant heat.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Glazing: Glazing that prevents spread of fire and smoke and radiant heat and complies with requirements for rated walls and rated openings; capable of blocking radiant heat.
- C. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- D. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product; 12 inches square.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and glass testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of glass and glazing product.

- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the NGA's Certified Glass Installer Program.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install fire-resistant glazing until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

- 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Glass: For each glass type, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

## 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organization below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. NGA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, glass thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

## 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated, Quality-Q3.
  - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Laminated Glass: ASTM C1172. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer unless fire-protection or fire-resistance rating is based on another product.
  - 2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness as needed to comply with requirements.
  - 3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 FIRE-PROTECTION-RATED GLAZING

- A. General: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on positive-pressure testing in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9, including hose-stream test, and shall comply with NFPA 80.
  - 1. Fire-protection-rated glazing required to have a fire-protection rating of 20 minutes shall be exempt from hose-stream test.

- B. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-protection-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name; test standard; whether glazing is permitted to be used in doors or openings; if permitted in openings, whether glazing has passed hose-stream test; whether glazing meets 450 degrees F temperature-rise limitation; and fire-resistance rating in minutes.
- C. Fire-Protection-Rated Laminated Ceramic Glazing: Laminated glass made from two plies of clear, ceramic glass; 8-mm total thickness; complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Technical Glass Products; an Allegion brand.; FireLite Plus or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. McGrory Glass, Inc.
    - b. Schott North America, Inc.
    - c. Vetrotech Saint-Gobain.

## 2.6 GLAZING ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide glazing gaskets, glazing sealants, glazing tapes, setting blocks, spacers, edge blocks, and other glazing accessories that are compatible with glazing products and each other and are approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products with which products are used for applications and fire-protection ratings indicated.
- B. Glazing Sealants for Fire-Rated Glazing Products: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT. Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated.
  - 1. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
- C. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as primary sealant.
  - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

- C. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistance-Rated Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

## 2.8 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners, and for compliance with minimum required face and edge clearances.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate fire side and protected side. Label or mark units as needed so that fire side and protected side are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Use methods approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products.
- B. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.



- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face fire side or protected side as specified.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 08 8813

## SECTION 08 9119 - FIXED LOUVERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Document 00 3133 "Calculation for Components and Cladding" for wind loading.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).
- C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are vertical).
- D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- E. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 550.
- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.

1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed in accordance with AMCA 540 and 550 by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.
- B. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.
- C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.
- D. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
  - 1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- B. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - e. Failure of operating components.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
  2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of the building.
1. Wind Loading: See Document 00 3113 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet of grade pass enhanced protection, when tested in accordance with AMCA 540.

## D. Seismic Performance:

1. As indicated on Drawings.
2. Louvers, including attachments to other construction, withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

## E. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width in accordance with AMCA 500-L.

## F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 degrees F, ambient; 180 degrees F, material surfaces.

## G. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

## 2.3 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

## A. Horizontal, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Airline Company, LLC (The); AFG601 or comparable product approved by the Architect.
  - a. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - b. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
2. Louver Depth: 6 inches.
3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.188 inch. for blades and 0.188 inch for frames.
4. Louver Performance Ratings:
  - a. Free Area: Not less than 7.0 sq. ft. for 48-inch- wide by 48-inch- high louver.
  - b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.327-inch wg static pressure drop at 1250-fpm free-area intake velocity.
  - c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of 3 inches per hour and a wind speed of 29 mph and 8 inches per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph at a core-area intake velocity of 700 fpm.
5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
6. AMCA Rating: AMCA 540, AMCA 550.
7. AMCA Rating: AMCA 540, AMCA 550.
8. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

## A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5.

## B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  - 1. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
  - 3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory-assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing , including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
  - 1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches on center, whichever is less.
  - 1. Fully Recessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions fully recessed behind louver blades. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
  - 2. Semirecessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions partly recessed behind louver blades, so louver blades appear continuous. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with interlocking split mullions and close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and contraction.
- F. Provide extended sills for recessed louvers.
- G. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view , threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise

indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- C. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
- D. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
  - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
  - 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install louvers in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- C. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- D. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.

- E. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
  - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 08 9119



## SECTION 09 2116.23 - GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each component of gypsum board shaft wall assembly.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and support them on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with gypsum-shaftliner-board manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install finish panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, and irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.

- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by a testing and inspecting agency.

## 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Fire-Resistance Rating: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. STC Rating: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Gypsum Shaftliner Board:
  - 1. Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with paper faces, 1 inch thick, with double beveled long edges.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) American Gypsum.
      - 2) Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
      - 3) PABCO Gypsum.
      - 4) USG Corporation.
  - 2. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with ASTM D3273 mold-resistance score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274, 1 inch thick, and with double beveled long edges.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) American Gypsum.
      - 2) Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
      - 3) Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
      - 4) USG Corporation.
  - 3. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant, Fiberglass-Mat Faced: ASTM C1658/C1658M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with ASTM D3273 mold-resistance score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274, 1 inch thick, and with double beveled long edges.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) American Gypsum.
      - 2) Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
      - 3) Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
      - 4) USG Corporation.
- D. Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing, General: Complying with ASTM C645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated and complying with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  - 1. Protective Coating: Coating with equivalent corrosion resistance of ASTM A653/A653M, G40 unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Studs: Manufacturer's standard profile for repetitive, corner, and end members as follows:
  - 1. Depth: As indicated.
  - 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Runner Tracks: Manufacturer's standard J-profile track with manufacturer's standard long-leg length, but at least 2 inches long and matching studs in depth.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
- G. Finish Panels: Gypsum board as specified in Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board."
- H. Sound Attenuation Blankets: As specified in Section 09 8000 "Acoustic Treatment."

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with shaft wall manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Trim Accessories: Cornerbead, edge trim, and control joints of material and shapes as specified in Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board" that comply with gypsum board shaft wall assembly manufacturer's written instructions for application indicated.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Track Fasteners: Power-driven fasteners of size and material required to withstand loading conditions imposed on shaft wall assemblies without exceeding allowable design stress of track, fasteners, or structural substrates in which anchors are embedded.
  - 1. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
  - 2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Reinforcing: Galvanized-steel reinforcing strips with 0.033-inch minimum thickness of base metal (uncoated).
- F. Acoustical Sealant: Section 09 8000 "Acoustical Treatment."

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install gypsum board shaft wall assemblies to comply with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Do not bridge building expansion joints with shaft wall assemblies; frame both sides of expansion joints with furring and other support.
- C. Install supplementary framing in gypsum board shaft wall assemblies around openings and as required for blocking, bracing, and support of gravity and pullout loads of fixtures, equipment, services, heavy trim, furnishings, wall-mounted door stops, and similar items that cannot be supported directly by shaft wall assembly framing.
  - 1. Reinforcing: Provide where items attach directly to shaft wall assembly as indicated on Drawings; accurately position and secure behind at least one layer of face panel.
- D. Penetrations: At penetrations in shaft wall, maintain fire-resistance rating of shaft wall assembly by installing supplementary steel framing around perimeter of penetration and fire protection behind boxes containing wiring devices, elevator call buttons and floor indicators, and similar items.
- E. Isolate perimeter of gypsum panels from building structure to prevent cracking of panels while maintaining continuity of fire-rated construction.
- F. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect while maintaining fire-resistance rating of gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.
- G. Sound-Rated Shaft Wall Assemblies: Seal gypsum board shaft walls with acoustical sealant at perimeter of each assembly where it abuts other work and at joints and penetrations within each assembly.
- H. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

### 3.3 PROTECTION

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, and irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 2116.23

## SECTION 09 2216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing systems.
2. Suspension systems.
3. Grid suspension systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 2116.23 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for shaft wall framing.
2. Section 09 2116 "Gypsum Board" for gypsum board panels.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For high-strength steel studs and tracks, firestop tracks, post-installed anchors and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Evaluation Reports: Submit evaluation reports certified under an independent third-party inspection program administered by an agency accredited by IAS to ICC-ES AC98 accreditation criteria for inspection agencies.
- D. Manufacturer's Certification: Submit manufacturer's certification of product compliance with codes and standards along with product literature and data sheets for specified products.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Steel Framing Industry Association or a similar organization that provides a verifiable code-compliance program.

- B. Contractor provides effective, full-time quality control over all fabrication and erection complying with pertinent codes and regulations of government agencies having jurisdiction. Conduct preinstallation meeting to verify Project requirements, substrate conditions, and manufacturer's written installation instructions.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Notify manufacturer of damaged materials received prior to installation.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI S202, "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, in accordance with ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
  - 1. Construct fire-resistance-rated partitions in compliance with tested assembly requirements indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Rated assemblies to be substantiated from applicable testing using proposed products, by Contractor.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, in accordance with ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For non-composite wall assemblies, limited to 1/360 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Design framing systems in accordance with AISI S220, "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Nonstructural Members," unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Design Loads: As indicated on architectural Drawings or 5 lbf/sq. ft. minimum as required by the IBC.

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with AISI S220 for conditions indicated.
1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with AISI S220 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Protective Coating: Comply with AISI S220; ASTM A653/A653M, G40; or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
    - a. Coating demonstrates equivalent corrosion resistance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Basis-of-Design Coating: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; DiamondPlus Coating on ProSTUD and ProTRAK.
- B. Studs and Track: AISI S220.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; ProSTUD Drywall Framing or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
    - b. Telling Industries.
  2. Flange Size: 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: As required by performance requirements for horizontal deflection.
  4. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide the following:
1. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; MaxTrak Slotted Deflection Track or comparable product by one of the following:
      - 1) CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
      - 2) Telling Industries.
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top track manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch- thick, galvanized steel.



## G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; Furring Channel or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Marino\WARE.
  - b. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies.
  - c. Steel Construction Systems; Stone Group of Companies.
2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

## H. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; RC Deluxe or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Marino\WARE.
  - b. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies.
  - c. Steel Construction Systems; Stone Group of Companies.
2. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

## I. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch.
3. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.

## J. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 3/4 inch, minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; Z-Furring Channel or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Marino\WARE.
  - b. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies.
  - c. Steel Construction Systems; Stone Group of Companies.

## 2.3 GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

## A. Grid Suspension Systems for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions; Drywall Grid Systems or comparable product by the following:
  - a. USG Corporation.

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
  - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
  - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
  - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.

- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches on center unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches on center unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches on center unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
  - 6. Curved Partitions:
    - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
    - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches on center.

## E. Direct Furring:

1. Screw to wood framing.
2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches on center.

## F. Z-Shaped Furring Members:

1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches on center.
2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches on center.
3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.

## G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 09 2216

DOCUMENT 09 2423.13 – SYNTHETIC STUCCO SYSTEM

PART I – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. 2-coat synthetic stucco finish system with the following components:
  - a. Water-resistant adhesive and base coat.
  - b. Reinforcing mesh.
  - c. Primer.
  - d. Finish coat.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Document 01 4339 “Mockups” for mockup requirements.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists AATCC-127 Water Resistance:

1. Hydrostatic Pressure Test.

B. ASTM International: :

1. ASTM B117 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6061) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
2. ASTM C150 Standard Specification for Portland Cement
3. ASTM C297 - Standard Test Method for Flatwise Tensile Strength of Sandwich Constructions
4. ASTM D968 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6191) - Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive
5. ASTM D2247 (Federal Test Standard 141A Method 6201) - Standard Practice for Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity
6. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
7. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
8. ASTM E96 - Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
9. ASTM E2098 - Test Method for Determining Tensile Breaking Strength of Glass Fiber Reinforcing Mesh for Use in Class PB Exterior Insulation and Finish System after exposure to Sodium-Hydroxide Solution
10. ASTM E2485 (formerly EIMA Std. 101.01) - Standard Test Method for Freeze-Thaw Resistance of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems and Water-Resistive Barrier Coatings
11. ASTM E2486 (formerly EIMA Std. 101.86) - Standard Test Method for Impact Resistance of Class PB and PI Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems
12. ASTM G23 - Standard Practice for Operating Light-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) with and without Water for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

13. ASTM G53 - Practice for Operating Light- and Water-Exposure Apparatus (Fluorescent UV-Condensation Type) for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:
  1. Manufacturer's specifications, details, installation instructions and product data
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of terminations and attachments to other work.
  1. Prepare and submit project-specific details.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified, 12 by 12 inches and prepared on rigid backing.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sealant manufacturer's certificate of compliance with ASTM C1382.
- B. Prepare and submit project-specific details.
- C. Manufacturer's standard warranty

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include in operation and maintenance manual the synthetic stucco systems manufacturer's technical bulletins for maintenance and repair.

### 1.7 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Master Wall Inc. Uninsulated Finish Coatings applied over approved substrates consisting of a base coat, reinforcing mesh, primer and finish. Products are applied over an approved substrate in accordance with the Uninsulated Finish Coatings Application Details.
- B. Methods of Installation:
  1. Field Applied: The Uninsulated Finish Coatings System is applied to the substrate system in place.

## C. Design Requirements:

1. General:
  - a. Maximum deflection under full flexural design loads of substrate system shall not exceed  $L/360$ .
  - b. Substrates designed as part of a retaining wall or freestanding wall shall incorporate appropriate drainage means to prevent the transfer of water from the backside and shall be capped to prevent water entry into the wall system.
2. Substrate shall be flat within 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) in a 10'-0" (3.05 m) radius.
3. Slope of inclined surfaces shall not be less than 6:12, and length shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm).
4. Expansion Joints:
  - a. Design and location expansion joints as indicated on Drawings.
  - b. As a minimum, expansion joints shall be placed at the following locations:
    - 1) Where expansion joints occur in substrate system.
    - 2) Where building expansion joints occur.
    - 3) Where synthetic stucco system abuts dissimilar materials.
    - 4) Where substrate type changes
    - 5) Where prefabricated panels abut one another
    - 6) Where significant structural movement occurs such as changes in roofline, building shape or structural system.
5. Terminations:
  - a. Synthetic stucco system shall be held back from adjoining materials around openings and penetrations where needed such as windows, doors and mechanical equipment for sealant application in accordance with system details. Sealant joints shall be properly sized and designed for their anticipated movement. See Drawings.
  - b. System shall be terminated above finished grade or approval shall be sought from local jurisdictional building authority for any variations.
  - c. Sealants:
    - 1) See Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
    - 2) Compatible with Uninsulated Finish Coatings System materials. Refer to current Master Wall Inc. Technical Bulletin #131 for listing of sealants approved by sealant manufacturer for use with stucco systems.
    - 3) Sealant backer rod shall be of closed cell.
6. Vapor Retarders and Barriers: Use and location of vapor retarders and/or barriers within a wall assembly is the responsibility of project designer and shall comply with local building code requirements.
7. Dark Colors: Use of dark colors must be considered in relation to wall surface temperature as a function of local climatic conditions. Use of dark colors in high temperature climates can affect performance of system.
8. Flashing: Provide at all roof-wall intersections, windows, doors, decks, balconies and other areas as necessary to prevent water from entering behind synthetic stucco system and wall system. See Drawings.

## 1.8 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

## A. Uninsulated Finish Coatings System shall have been tested as follows:

1. Weather Resistance and Durability Performance (Test/Method/Criteria/Results):
  - a. Accelerated Weathering (ASTM G 153, formerly ASTM G 23) - No deleterious effects at 2000 hours when viewed under 5x magnification:
    - 1) Pass
  - b. Accelerated Weathering (ASTM G 154, formerly ASTM G 53) - No deleterious effects at 2000 hours.
    - 1) Pass
  - c. Freeze/Thaw Resistance (ASTM E 2485) - No deleterious effects at 10 cycles when viewed under 5x magnification.
    - 1) Pass
  - d. Water Penetration (ASTM E 331, modified per ICC-ES AC 235) - No water penetration beyond plane of base coat/insulation board interface after 15 minutes at 6.24 psf (299 Pa) or 20 percent of design wind pressure, whichever is greater.
    - 1) Pass at 2.86 psf (137 Pa), 6.24 psf (299 Pa), and 12.0 psf (575 Pa) consecutively
  - e. Water Resistance (ASTM D 2247) - No deleterious effects at 14-day exposure:
    - 1) Pass at 28 days
  - f. Salt Spray (ASTM B 117) - No deleterious effects\* at 300 hours:
    - 1) Pass at 300 hours
  - g. Abrasion Resistance (ASTM D 968) - No cracking or loss of film integrity at 528 quarts (500 L) of sand:
    - 1) Pass
  - h. Mildew Resistance (ASTM D 3273) - No growth supported during 28-day exposure period:
    - 1) Pass
2. Fire Performance (Test/Method/Criteria/Results):
  - a. Surface Burning (individual components) (ASTM E 84) - Individual components shall each have a flame spread of 25 or less, and smoke developed of 450 or less.
    - 1) Flame Spread: 0
    - 2) Smoke Developed: 0
3. Component Performance (Test/Method/Criteria/Results):
  - a. Alkali Resistance of Reinforcing Mesh (ASTM E2098, formerly EIMA 105.01) - Greater than 120 pli (21 dN/cm) retained tensile strength:
    - 1) Pass

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain components of synthetic stucco system from single a manufacturer or authorized distributor, from single source.
- B. Qualifications
  1. Installer: Knowledgeable in proper installation of synthetic stucco system. Additionally, Contractor shall possess a current applicator certificate issued by synthetic stucco system manufacturer.



## C. Mockup:

1. Provide a mockup for Architect approval.
2. Mock-up shall be prepared with same products, tools, equipment and techniques required for actual application. Finish used shall be from same batch that is being used on project.
3. See Documents 01 4339 "Mockups" and Drawings for mockup requirements.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials the job site in the original, unopened packages with labels intact.
  1. Verify quantities, colors, and textures against bill of lading.
- B. Inspect materials, upon arrival, for physical damage, freezing, or overheating.
  1. Questionable materials shall not be used.
- C. Store materials protected from direct exposure to weather conditions and at temperatures not less than 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or greater than 110 degrees F (43 degrees C).
- D. Supply Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) or Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for the components of the system and be available at the job site.
- E. Store materials inside under cover, and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.

## 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient air temperatures shall be 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or greater and rising at the time of installation of products and shall remain at 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or greater for at least 24 hours after application.
  1. Provide supplemental heat and protection as required when the temperature and conditions are not in accordance with installation requirements. Sufficient ventilation and time shall be provided to ensure that materials have sufficiently dried prior to removing supplemental heat.
- B. Provide adequate protection to prevent weather conditions (humidity, temperature, and precipitation) from having an effect on the curing or drying time of materials.
- C. Protect synthetic stucco system and adjacent materials during installation. Protect synthetic stucco system while curing from weather and from site damage.
- D. Coordinate installation of the synthetic stucco system with related work specified in other sections to ensure that the wall assembly is protected to prevent water from getting behind the system.
  1. The cap flashing shall be installed as soon as possible after the finish coat has been applied. If this is not possible, temporary protection shall be provided immediately in this area.

- E. Install sealant work in a timely manner. Protect open joints from water intrusion during construction with backer rod, or temporary covering, until permanently sealed.
- F. Employ sufficient manpower and equipment ensure a continuous operation, free of cold joints, scaffolding lines, and texture variations, etc.
- G. Existing Conditions: Contractor shall have access to electric power, clean water, and a clean work area at the location where the synthetic stucco system will be applied.

## 1.12 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of synthetic stucco system with other construction trades.
- B. Employ sufficient manpower and equipment ensure a continuous operation, free of cold joints, scaffolding lines, and texture variations, etc.

## 1.13 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a manufacturer's limited materials warranty against defective materials.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYNTHETIC STUCCO – ST-1 AND ST-2

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Master Wall Inc.; Uninsulated Finish Coatings System, or comparable product by the following:
  - 1. Total Wall.
- B. Description: Synthetic stucco system, for application to concrete, includes the following components:
  - 1. Water-resistant adhesive and base coat.
  - 2. Reinforcing mesh.
  - 3. Primer.
  - 4. Finish coat.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: Type I or II, meeting ASTM C 150, white or gray in color, fresh and free of lumps.
- B. Water: Potable, clean and free of foreign matter.
- C. Sealant Systems: See Section 07 9000 "Joint Sealants."
- D. Door and Window Systems: See Drawings and Specifications.

## A. Reinforcing Mesh:

1. Description: Open weave glass fiber fabric, treated for alkaline resistance and compatibility with base coats.
2. Conformance Standards: ASTM D76, ASTM D579, ASTM D5035, MIL-Y-1140.
3. Medium Impact Resistance: Minimum (50-89 in-lbs) when tested to EIMA 101.86 Impact Resistance Standards.
4. Mesh Types:
  - a. Detail Mesh.
  - b. Standard Mesh.

## B. Water Resistant Adhesive and Base Coat:

1. Description: Acrylic-based product mixed one-to-one by weight with Portland cement.
2. Product: WeatherSTOP.

## C. Primer:

1. Primecoat Primer: Acrylic-based tintable primer.
2. Sanded Primecoat Primer: Acrylic-based tintable primer with sand.

## D. Finishes:

1. Description: Acrylic-based wall coatings.
2. Textures (available): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - a. Perfect 2.0 (Perfect): Riled texture.
  - b. Fine Sand 1.0 (Spray): Sand type texture.
  - c. Medium Sand 1.5 (Desert Sand): Coarse sand texture.
  - d. Versatex 0.5 (Refinish): Fine texture used to create numerous finishes.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
4. Product: Superior Finishes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSPECTION

## A. Prior to the application of synthetic stucco system, examine the substrate for compliance with the contract documents and synthetic stucco system specifications.

1. Substrate shall have no planar irregularities greater than 1/4-inch in 10'-0" (6.4 mm in 3.05 m).
2. Advise Architect in writing of any discrepancies.
3. Work shall not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

## A. Water Resistant Adhesive and Base Coat:

1. Mix F&M at a weight ratio of 1 to 1 with Portland Type I or I/II, white or grey cement.
2. Mix using a 1/2-inch, 400-500 RPM drill motor and Wind-lock B-MTW Mixer or equivalent.
3. Let stand for 3-5 minutes and remix until desired consistency is achieved.
4. Small amounts of clean water can be added for workability.
5. Do not over mix.

## B. Finishes:

1. Mix finish coat with a Wind-lock B-MTW using a 1/2-inch, 400-500 RPM drill motor.
2. Small amounts of water can be added for workability.
3. Mix until reaching a uniform consistency.
4. It is important that the same amount of water be added to each pail to ensure a consistent color.

## C. Additives shall not be added to materials unless written approval has been received from the synthetic stucco manufacturer.

## 3.3 PREPARATION

## A. Protect contiguous work from damage during application of coatings.

1. Temporary covering may be required to prevent overspray or splattering of exterior finish coatings on other work.

## B. Protect substrate from inclement weather during installation.

1. Prevent infiltration of moisture behind the system that may affect the substrate.

## C. Apply adhesive, base coats and finishes when ambient air temperature is below 40 degrees F (5 degrees C).

1. Temperature shall remain at or above 40 degrees F (5 degrees C) during mixing, application and until materials have cured.

## D. Provide sufficient scaffolding, manpower and tools to prevent cold joints.

## E. Install flashings as required by construction documents and synthetic stucco manufacturer's details in a manner to prevent the intrusion of water behind the system.

1. All flashing materials should direct the water to the exterior face of the finished system.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

## A. Comply with the manufacturers' current published instructions, (specifications, details, data sheets and technical bulletins) for the installation of the UF Coatings.

## B. Comply with local building codes.

- A. Apply base coat to entire surface of substrate to thickness required for specified reinforcing mesh to be applied in a given area or for leveling.
  - 1. Standard and Detail Mesh requires a nominal 1/16-inch (1.6 mm).
- B. Immediately embed reinforcing mesh into wet base coat with a trowel, working from the center toward the edges, until mesh is fully covered and a smooth surface is achieved.
  - 1. Color of mesh shall not be visible but a slight mesh pattern may be visible.
- C. Lap mesh 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) minimum on all sides.
- D. Reinforcing mesh shall be continuous through all interior and exterior corners extending beyond the corner a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from both directions creating a minimum of two layers of standard reinforcing mesh on all interior and exterior corners.
- E. Allow base coat to cure a minimum of 12 hours prior to additional base coat or finish coat applications.

## 3.6 FINISH COAT APPLICATION

- A. Finish Coat Application:
  - 1. Correct surface irregularities in base coat, such as trowel marks and reinforcing mesh laps prior to finish application.
  - 2. Apply finish coat in Architect-approved color and texture with sufficient manpower and equipment to ensure a continuous operation without cold joints, scaffolding lines etc.
    - a. Texture finish shall match approved jobsite samples.
    - b. Thickness and coverage will vary depending on specified final appearance.
  - 3. Trowel Application (Perfect 2.0, Fine Sand 1.0, Medium Sand 1.5, Versatex 0.5):
    - a. Apply finish to clean, dry and cured base coat with stainless-steel trowel.
    - b. Level surface to a uniform thickness of 3/32 inch to 1/8 inch (2.4-3.2 mm).
    - c. Float finish with plastic float in a uniform motion to achieve desired texture.
      - 1) Note: Versatex 0.5 cannot be floated easily. A second application of Versatex 0.5 may be applied to create desired texture.
  - 4. Spray Application (Perfect 2.0, Fine Sand 1.0, Medium Sand 1.5, Versatex 0.5):
    - a. Prime surface with primer tinted to match selected finish color.
      - 1) Allow primer Primecoat or Roller-Flex to cure a minimum of 12 hours prior to finish coat application.
    - b. Using a conventional plaster hopper gun or a proven pump, spray finish over primed base coat to achieve desired texture using a circular overlapping pattern keeping spray gun at a 90-degree angle to surface and maintaining same distance to wall at all times.
    - c. Be cautious of flooding an area with too much finish because it may appear shinier when it dries.
  - 5. Specialty Finishes: Follow individual product data sheet application instructions.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

3.7 JOB SITE CLEANUP

- A. Clean work area in accordance with contract documents removing all excess materials, droppings and debris.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protected synthetic stucco system from inclement weather and other sources of damage until dry and permanent protection in the form of flashings, sealants, etc. are installed.

END OF SECTION 09 2423.13

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

## SECTION 09 2900 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 3013 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type Product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of gypsum panel and joint finishing material from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated in accordance with ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated in accordance with ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.3 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.4 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.



- C. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Core: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. Expansion (control) joint.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: As specified in Section 09 8000 "Acoustical Treatment.:
- E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 2600 "Vapor Retarders."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

## C. Multilayer Application:

1. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
2. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
3. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints in accordance with ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

## 3.5 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and in accordance with ASTM C840:
1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  2. Level 5: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

### 3.6 PROTECTION

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 2900

## SECTION 09 3013 - CERAMIC TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Porcelain tile.
2. Tile backing panels.
3. Setting material.
4. Grout materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of movement joints in tile surfaces.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Large Format Tile: Tile with at least one edge 15 inches or longer.
- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product type.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations, plans, and elevations, of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of movement joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces. Show thresholds.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
2. Metal flooring transitions 6-inch lengths.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product, including product use classification.
- D. Product Test Reports:
  - 1. Tile-setting and -grouting products.
  - 2. Certified porcelain tile.
  - 3. Slip-resistance test reports from qualified independent testing agency.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
  - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
  - 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Supervisor Certification.
  - 3. Installer employs only Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers for Project.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in "Referenced Standards" Article in the Evaluations and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. System Warranty: Manufacturer's non-prorated comprehensive warranty that agrees to repair and replace defective installation areas, material, and labor that fail under normal usage within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Product Purchase.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Tiling System: Obtain system products from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
- C. Accessory Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
  - 1. Backer units.
  - 2. Metal transitions.

### 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard Grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.



- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating with continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.

## 2.3 PORCELAIN TILE

### A. Porcelain Tile Type – T-1 and TB-1:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Crossville, Inc.; Moostruck or comparable products, approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - a. American Olean; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation.
  - b. Daltile; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation.
- 2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
- 3. Tile Size, Color, Glaze, and Pattern: See Finish Selections - Interior on Drawings.
- 4. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 5. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile.
  - a. Provide shapes, including base, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes.

### B. Porcelain Tile Type – T-2:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Garden State Tile; Anthem or comparable products, approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - a. American Olean; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation.
  - b. Daltile; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation.
- 2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
- 3. Tile Size, Color, Glaze, and Pattern: See Finish Selections - Interior on Drawings.
- 4. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 5. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile.
  - a. Provide shapes selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:

## 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide United States Gypsum Co.; Durock Cement Board or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Building Products.
    - b. PermaBASE Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.

3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
4. Tile Backer Board Joint Tape: 2-inch wide, coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.
5. Provide accessories and corrosion-resistant-coated steel screws as recommended by backer board manufacturer and required for complete installation.

## 2.5 TILE SETTING MATERIALS

### A. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MAPEI Corporation; Ultraflex LFT or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Custom Building Products.
  - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

## 2.6 TILE GROUT MATERIALS – TG-1

### A. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MAPEI Corporation; Kerapoxy or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Custom Building Products.
  - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
2. Grout Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

### A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting and adhesive materials for installations indicated.

### B. Metal Flooring Transitions – TR-1, TR-2 and TR-3: Profile designed specifically for flooring applications; height to match tile and setting-bed thickness.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schluter Systems L.P.; products or comparable products by one of the following:
  - a. Blanke Corporation.
  - b. Custom Building Products.
  - c. Dural USA, Inc.
  - d. Profiline Corp.
  - e. Progress Profiles America Inc.
2. Description: See Drawings.
3. Material, Finish and Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

- C. Metal Edge Trim: Profile designed for wall terminations and edge protection.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schluter Systems L.P.; products or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Blanke Corporation.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. Dural USA, Inc.
    - d. Profilitec Corp.
    - e. Progress Profiles America Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Wall Tile to Gypsum Board Termination: Rondec.
      - 1) Type: Bullnose.
      - 2) Size: 3/8-inch. .
    - b. Wall-Floor Tile Termination: Dilex: AHK
      - 1) Type: Inside corner transition.
      - 2) Size: To suit application.
  3. Material and Finish: Color-coated aluminum exposed-edge material.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
- D. Temporary Protective Coating: Formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
- E. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- F. Grout Sealer: Grout manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints that does not change color or appearance of grout.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.

3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds or other coatings, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- D. Substrate Flatness:
  1. For tile shorter than 15 inches, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to variation of 1/4 inch in 10 ft. from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 12 inches when measured from tile surface high points.
  2. For large format tile, tile with at least one edge 15 inches or longer, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to 1/8 inch in 10 ft. from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 24 inches when measured from tile surface high points.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE SYSTEM

- A. Install tile backing panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.
- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with "Referenced Standards" Article in the Evaluations and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
  1. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
  2. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

- B. Install tile in accordance with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of ANSI A108 series that are referenced in TCNA installation methods and specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
1. For the following installations, follow procedures in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
    - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
    - c. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
  2. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
  3. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
  4. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
  5. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
  6. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
- C. Movement Joints: Provide movement joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated on Drawings. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Keep joints free of dirt, debris, and setting materials prior to filling with sealants. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- D. Metal Flooring Transitions: Install at locations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Metal Wall Trim: Install at locations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.

- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile in accordance with tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
  - 1. TCNA F115A: Thinset mortar.
    - a. Ceramic Tile.
    - b. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
    - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
    - d. Joint Width: 1/16 inch.
    - e. Movement Joints: Types located on Drawings.
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Metal Studs:
  - 1. TCNA W244C: Thinset mortar on cement backer boards.
    - a. Ceramic Tile.
    - b. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
    - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
    - d. Joint Width: 1/16 inch.

END OF SECTION 09 3013

## SECTION 09 5113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical panels.
2. Metal suspension system.
3. Metal edge moldings and trim.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 8000 "Acoustic Treatment" for sound attenuation blankets and acoustical sealant.
2. Section 09 5426 "Suspended Wood Ceilings"
3. Section 09 5423 "Exterior Metal Linear Ceilings."

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including:

1. Acoustical panels.
2. Metal suspension system.
3. Metal edge moldings and trim.

B. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of sizes indicated below:

1. Acoustical Panels: Set of 6-inch- square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch- long Samples of each type, finish, and color.
3. Clips: Full-size hold-down clips.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: For seismic restraints for ceiling systems.

1. Include design calculations for seismic restraints including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
  2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
  5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Diffusers.
    - c. Grilles.
    - d. Speakers.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
    - g. Perimeter moldings.
  7. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide ceiling panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer from a single source.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
- C. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.



## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

## 1.9 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL

- A. Furnish extra materials , from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
- B. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A in accordance with ASTM E1264.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS - ACT-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions; Optima, Item No. 3152, or comparable product by the following:
  - 1. USG Corporation/Halcyon Clima-Plus
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels in accordance with ASTM E1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Classification:
  - 1. Type and Form, Type XII: Glass-fiber base with membrane-faced overlay; Form 2, cloth. Binder may not contain urea formaldehyde.
  - 2. Pattern: E (lightly textured).
- D. Color: White.
- E. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less than 0.88.
- F. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not applicable.
- G. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.95.
- H. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 190.
- I. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.
- J. Thickness: 1 inch.
- K. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches
- L. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273, ASTM D3274, or ASTM G21 and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D3274 or ASTM G21.

## 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions; Prelude, or comparable product by the following:
  - 1. USG Corporation.
- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
  - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Where indicated, provide coating tested and classified for "severe environment performance" in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.

- C. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch- wide metal caps on flanges.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) type.
  - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel.
  - 5. Cap Finish: Painted white.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M or ASTM E1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Type: Postinstalled expansion and postinstalled bonded anchors.
    - b. Corrosion Protection, Carbon Steel: Components zinc plated in accordance with ASTM B633, Class SC 1 (mild) service condition.
  - 2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- F. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.
- G. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.

- H. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions; product, or comparable product by the following:
  - 1. USG Corporation.
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
  - 1. Edge moldings to fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
  - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

## 2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 09 9800 "Acoustical Treatment."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  - 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches on center along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  - 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.

2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches on center and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
    - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
    - b. Install panels with pattern running in one direction parallel to long axis of space.
    - c. Install panels in a basket-weave pattern.
  2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
  3. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
  4. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts in accordance with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
1. Periodic inspection during the installation of suspended ceiling grids in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no panels have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
  - 2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- D. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 5113

SECTION 09 54 23 - EXTERIOR METAL LINEAR CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior linear metal ceiling system.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:

1. Manufacturer's technical data for each type of ceiling unit and suspension system required.

B. Shop Drawings: For linear metal ceilings.

1. Include reflected ceiling plans, sections, and details, drawn to scale, showing the following:
  - a. Linear ceiling patterns and joints.
  - b. Ceiling suspension members.
  - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure and locations of anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices.
  - d. Ceiling-mounted items.
  - e. Ceiling perimeter and penetrations through ceiling; trim and moldings.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Linear Metal Pans: 12 inches long by full-width Samples of each type, color, and finish and a 12-inch- long spliced section.
2. Suspension-System Members: 12-inch- long Sample of each type.
3. Exposed Molding and Trim: 12-inch- long Samples of each type, color, and finish.
4. End Caps: Full size.

D. Delegated Design Submittals: For seismic restraints for ceiling systems.

1. Include design calculations for seismic restraints including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.



## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
  - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  - 4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
  - 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Diffusers.
    - c. Grilles.
    - d. Speakers.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
    - g. Perimeter moldings.
  - 7. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- B. Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- D. Certifications: Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards.
- E. Evaluation Reports: For linear-metal-ceiling framing systems.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide ceiling panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer from a single source.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
- C. Coordination of Work: Coordinate ceiling work with installers of related work including, but not limited to light fixtures and electrical systems.

- D. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- E. Seismic Performance: System Seismic performance verified through full scale testing in accordance with ICC-ES-AC156 Acceptance Criteria for seismic Qualification Testing of Non Structural Components.
- F. Fire Performance Characteristics: Identify ceiling components with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.
  - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84 and complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A products.
    - a. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke Developed: 50 or less.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for testing indicated.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Handle ceiling units carefully to avoid damaging units in any way.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed. Packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.
  - 1. Ceiling Units: Furnish quality of full-size units equal to 5.0 percent of amount installed.
  - 2. Exposed Suspension System Components: Furnish quantity of each exposed suspension component equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. When specified linear ceiling panels and suspension system are installed as a system for exterior use are warranted to be free from defects in materials or factory workmanship, and against the occurrence of 50 percent red dust as defined by ASTM B 117 test procedures for one (1) year from the date of installation.

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" to design seismic restraints and attachment devices.
- B. Structural Performance: Exterior linear metal ceilings shall withstand exterior exposure, the effects of gravity loads, and the following loads and stresses without showing permanent deformation of ceiling system components, including pans and suspension system; noise or metal fatigue caused by vibration, deflection, and displacement of ceiling pans; or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors:
  - 1. Wind Loads: See Document 00 3113 Calculations for Components and Cladding.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 degrees F (67 degrees C), ambient; 180 degrees F (100 degrees C) material surfaces.
- D. Seismic Criteria: Provide linear metal ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.2 EXTERIOR LINEAR CEILING – ELC-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; products or comparable products approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Exterior linear ceiling system includes metal linear ceiling panels; grid suspension system and standard carrier; wire hangers, fasteners, main runners, cross tees, wall angle moldings and accessories

## 2.3 CEILINGS PANELS

- A. Metal linear ceiling panels:
  - 1. Surface Texture: Smooth, unperforated.
  - 2. Composition: Electrogalvanized steel.
  - 3. Size: 8-inch by 96-inch nominal panels, including 1-1/4 inch reveal, by 5/8-inch height.
  - 4. Edge Profile: Square with extended flange.
  - 5. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not applicable.
  - 6. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not applicable.
  - 7. Articulation Class (AC): Not applicable.
  - 8. Fire Rating: Class A.
  - 9. Light Reflectance (LR) (ASTM E1477):
    - a. White Panel: Light Reflectance: 0.77.

10. Dimensional Stability: Standard
11. Finish: Powder-coat painted both sides.
12. Color: See Finish Selections – Exterior on Drawings.
13. Product: MetalWorks Linear for Exterior Applications 5491FXMP2 manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.

## 2.4 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Carrier Suspension System: Manufacturer's standard complying with requirements in ASTM C635/C635M for applications indicated; complete with carriers, splice sections, stabilizing components, connector clips, alignment clips, leveling clips, hangers, molding, trim, retention clips, load-resisting struts, fixture adapters, and other suspension components required to support ceiling units and other ceiling-supported construction.
  1. Material: ASTM A653/A653M, hot-dip galvanized, cold-rolled sheet steel, G60 (Z180) coating designation.
  2. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.
- B. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- C. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which linear metal ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of linear metal ceilings.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling.
- B. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans.

- C. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install suspension system and panels in accordance with UL580, installation instructions, manufacturer's installation instructions for exterior applications, ASTM C636, and in compliance with the authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Replace damaged and broken panels.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces of ceilings panels, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 5423

SECTION 09 5426 - SUSPENDED WOOD CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Linear wood acoustic ceiling.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of wood ceilings and suspension systems with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For suspended wood ceilings.

1. Include reflected ceiling plans, sections, and details, drawn to scale, showing the following:
  - a. Wood ceiling patterns and joints.
  - b. Ceiling suspension members.
  - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure and locations of anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  - d. Ceiling-mounted items including, but not limited to, light fixtures, diffusers, grilles and speakers.
  - e. Ceiling perimeter and penetrations through ceiling; trim and moldings.

## C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Wood Ceilings: 12-inch- long by 12-inch- wide or full-width Samples of each type, color, and finish.
2. Suspension-System Members: 12-inch- long Sample of each type.
3. Exposed Molding and Trim: 12-inch- long Samples of each type, color, and finish.
4. Acoustic Infill Panel: 12 inches long by full width.

## D. Delegated Design Submittals: For seismic restraints for ceiling systems.

1. Include design calculations for seismic restraints including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

## A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Diffusers.
  - c. Grilles.
  - d. Speakers.
  - e. Sprinklers.
  - f. Access panels.
  - g. Perimeter moldings.
7. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.

## B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

## C. Product Test Reports: For each suspended wood ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

## D. Evaluation Reports: For suspended-wood-ceiling framing systems.

## E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

## A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for testing indicated.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver ceiling components and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they are protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
  - 1. Store materials flat and level, raised from the floor.
- B. Handle ceiling components and accessories in a manner that prevents damage.

## 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install interior ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
  - 1. Store and acclimatize wood products in the spaces where they will be installed for a minimum of 72 hours immediately before ceiling installation.

## 1.11 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Suspended-Wood-Ceiling Components: Quantity of each wood-ceiling unit, suspension-system component, accessory, and exposed molding and trim equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

## 1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to:
  - 1. Wood Grille: Defects in materials or factory workmanship.
  - 2. Grid System: Rusting and manufacturing defects.
- B. Warranty Period:
  - 1. Wood Grille: One year from date of installation.
  - 2. Grid: Ten years from date of installation.



## 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Ceiling System: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
- B. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

## 2.3 SOLID-WOOD, GRILLE-PANEL CEILINGS – LAC-1

- A. Solid-Wood Grille Panels: Manufacturer's standard kiln-dried, solid-wood rails and without finger joints, cracks, checks, and warp secured to wood panel backing that maintains equal rail spacing and prevents rail twisting and warping.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; WoodWorks Grille Tegular or comparable product by the following:
    - a. ASI Architectural.
  - 2. Wood Species: Solid wood, Poplar.
  - 3. Wood Cut: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 4. Surface Texture: Smooth.
  - 5. Rail Dimensions: 1/2 inch by 1-1/2 inches.
  - 6. Rail Spacing: 2 inches.
  - 7. Rail Profile: Square exposed, horizontal face.
  - 8. Stabilizing Backer Strips: Manufacturer's standard flat type that attaches rails together; spaced at not more than 12 inches on center.
    - a. Material and Finish: Solid wood with manufacturer's standard black finish applied on every surface.
  - 9. Panel Module: 24 by 24 inches.
  - 10. Panel Type: Lay-in installation on grid suspension system.
    - a. Attachment Clips: Panel manufacturer's standard black, corrosion-resistant, metal spring clips that allow downward access of panels.
    - b. Attachment Screws: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 11. Rail Factory Finish: Manufacturer's standard tinted UV-cured topcoat finish applied on every wood surface.

- B. Wood-Grille-Panel Accessories: Wood-grille-panel manufacturer's accessories required to provide a complete installation of ceiling in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
1. Acoustic Infill Panels: Calla Square Lay-in Panel, Item 2820BK with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 50 or less as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E84.
    - a. NRC: 0.85
    - b. CAC: 35.
  2. Wood Trim: As indicated on Drawings; in wood species and finished to match rails; with trim connectors recommended in writing by ceiling and suspension-system manufacturers.
- C. Grid Suspension System: ASTM C635/C635M; recommended in writing by ceiling and suspension-system manufacturers for applications indicated; main- and cross-runner system complete with suspension-system components required to support ceiling units and other ceiling-supported construction.
1. Material: ASTM A653/A653M, hot-dip galvanized, cold-rolled sheet steel, G60 coating designation.
  2. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  3. Face Width: 9/16 inch.
  4. Finish: Flat black.
  5. Product: Suprafine.

## 2.4 SUSPENSION-SYSTEM HANGERS, BRACES, AND TIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for 5 times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, Direct Hung, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
1. Postinstalled Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by ceiling construction as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M or ASTM E1512, as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Type: Postinstalled expansion anchors.
    - b. Corrosion Protection:
      - 1) Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (0.005 mm) for Class SC service condition (mild).
      - 2) Stainless steel components complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Group 1 Alloy 304 or 316 for bolts; Alloy 304 or 316 for anchors.
      - 3) Components fabricated from nickel-copper-alloy rods complying with ASTM B164 for UNS No. N04400 alloy.
  2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E1190 conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wire complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times the hanger design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, Direct Hung is less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.
- C. Rods and Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed from 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- E. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Grid-suspension-system manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- F. Seismic Struts: Suspension-system manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which suspended wood ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage, and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of suspended wood ceilings.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of suspended wood ceilings.
  - 1. Balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling.
  - 2. Avoid using less-than-half-width units.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED WOOD CEILINGS

- A. Comply with ASTM C636/C636M and seismic requirement indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.

2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns in 3 inches. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate to which hangers are attached and for type of hanger involved.
  5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that does not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, power-actuated fasteners, or postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors that extend through forms into concrete.
  7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches on center along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns in 1-1/2 inches. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers and without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim at perimeter of ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges and ends of wood units.
1. Screw-attach metal moldings to substrate at intervals of not more than 16 inches on center and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  2. Do not use exposed fasteners on moldings and trim.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Space main beams at 48 inches on center.
1. Install cross tees to form 24-inch square modules.
  2. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

- F. Linear-Carrier Suspension Systems: Install carriers at no more than 24 inches on center aligned and securely interlocked with one another.
  - 1. Install stabilizer channels, tees, and bars at regular intervals to stabilize carriers and at light fixtures, air-distribution equipment, access doors, and other equipment; spaced as standard with manufacturer for use indicated.
  - 2. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- G. Install wood components and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to accommodate natural expansion and contraction of wood products resulting from fluctuations in humidity.
- H. Cut wood components for accurate fit at borders and at interruptions and penetrations by other work through ceilings.
  - 1. Stiffen edges of cut wood components as required to eliminate variations in flatness.
- I. Treat field-cut edges of wood components in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations; finish exposed field cuts to match factory finish.
  - 1. Solid-Wood Planks: Use solid-wood end caps to conceal exposed field-cut edges.
- J. Install wood components in coordination with suspension system and moldings and trim.
  - 1. Install wood components in patterns indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Periodic inspection during the installation of suspended ceiling grids in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections: Testing and inspecting of completed installations of ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners to take place in successive stages, in test areas and using methods as follows. Do not proceed with installations of ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations show compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Test Areas: Test installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor when installation has reached 20 percent completion but before wood ceilings have been installed.
    - a. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
    - b. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- D. Ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage, including dented units.

END OF SECTION 09 5426

## SECTION 09 6513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermoset-rubber base.
2. Vinyl molding accessories.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.

C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 degrees F or more than 90 degrees F.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 degrees F or more than 95 degrees F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:

1. 48 hours before installation.
2. During installation.
3. 48 hours after installation.

- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 degrees F or more than 95 degrees F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RESILIENT MILLWORK WALL BASE – WB-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johnsonite, a Tarkett company; Millwork Wall Base, Mandalay, or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexco Corporation.
  - 2. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous) .
  - 2. Style: D, sculptured
- C. Height: 6 inches.
- D. Thickness: 3/8-inch.
- E. Lengths: Standard 8'-0" lengths .
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed .
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed .
- H. Colors: See Finish Selections - Interior on Drawings.

### 2.2 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE - WB-2

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johnsonite, a Tarkett company; Baseworks Wall Base or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexco Corporation.
  - 2. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 1. Style and Location:
    - a. Style B, Cove.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.



- D. Height: 6 inches.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: See Finish Selections - Interior on Drawings.

## 2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Johnsonite, a Tarkett company; products or comparable product by one of the following approved by the Architect:
  - 1. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
  - 2. VPI Corporation.
- B. Description: Rubber transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from marks, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 6513

SECTION 09 6519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Resilient floor tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient floor tile.

1. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
2. Show details of special patterns.

C. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.

D. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.

- 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 degrees F or more than 90 degrees F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 degrees F or more than 95 degrees F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:

- 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.

- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 degrees F or more than 95 degrees F.

- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.

- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.

- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

- 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 LUXURY VINYL TILE – LVT-1, LVT-2, LVT-3 AND LVT-4

- A. See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.

4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
  - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
  - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated on approved shop drawings.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated on approved shop drawings.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.

- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 6519



SECTION 09 6613 - PORTLAND CEMENT TERRAZZO FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Poured-in-place portland cement terrazzo flooring.
2. Precast terrazzo units.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed with terrazzo.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to terrazzo including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - b. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - c. Review special terrazzo designs and patterns.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include terrazzo installation requirements. Include plans, sections, component details, and relationship to other work. Show layout of the following:

1. Divider strips.
2. Control-joint strips.
3. Expansion-joint strips.
4. Accessory strips.
5. Stair treads, risers, and landings.
6. Precast terrazzo jointing and edge configurations.
7. Terrazzo patterns.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type, material, color, and pattern of terrazzo and accessory required showing the full range of color, texture, and pattern variations expected. Label each terrazzo Sample to identify manufacturer's matrix color and aggregate types, sizes, and proportions. Prepare Samples of same thickness and from same material to be used for the Work, in sizes indicated below:
1. Terrazzo: 6-inch- square Samples.
  2. Precast Terrazzo: 6-inch- square Samples.
  3. Accessories: 6-inch- long Samples of each exposed strip item required.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of terrazzo material or product.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For terrazzo to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Aggregates: Obtain each color, grade, type, and variety of granular materials from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is a contractor member of NTMA.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in supplier's original wrappings and containers, labeled with source's or manufacturer's name, material or product brand name, and lot number if any.
- B. Store materials in their original, undamaged packages and containers, inside a well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with precast terrazzo by field measurements before fabrication.
- B. Provide permanent interior lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during terrazzo installation.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during terrazzo installation and for not less than 24 hours after installation unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

- D. Control and collect water and dust produced by portland cement terrazzo grinding operations. Protect adjacent construction from detrimental effects of grinding operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NTMA Standards: Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for terrazzo type indicated unless more stringent requirements are specified.

### 2.2 PORTLAND CEMENT TERRAZZO

- A. Portland Cement Terrazzo System: Monolithic.
  - 1. Terrazzo Topping Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type 1.
    - a. Color for Terrazzo Matrix: As required by mix indicated.
  - 2. Water: Potable.
  - 3. Sand: ASTM C 33/C 33M.
  - 4. Aggregates: Comply with NTMA gradation standards for mix indicated and contain no deleterious or foreign matter.
    - a. 24-Hour Absorption Rate: Less than 0.75 percent.
    - b. Dust Content: Less than 1.0 percent by weight.
  - 5. Matrix Pigments: Pure mineral or synthetic pigments, alkali resistant, durable under exposure to sunlight, and compatible with terrazzo matrix.
  - 6. Topping Bonding Agent: Neat portland cement paste, or epoxy or acrylic bonding agents formulated for use with monolithic terrazzo.
- C. Mixes:
  - 1. Terrazzo Topping Mix: One 94-lb bag of portland cement per 200 lb of aggregate, matrix pigment if required by mix color, and sufficient water to produce a workable mix.
    - a. Mix Color and Pattern: Match precast terrazzo.

### 2.3 PRECAST TERRAZZO

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide CoveringsETC; products or comparable products approved by the Architect.
  - 1. Precast Terrazzo Enterprises, Inc.
  - 2. Romoco Precast Terrazzo Products; a subsidiary of Roman Mosaic & Tile Company.
  - 3. Wausau Tile, Inc.

- B. Precast Terrazzo Units: Minimum 2-inch- thick, reinforced, portland cement terrazzo units. Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for fabricating precast terrazzo units in sizes and profiles indicated. Reinforce units as required by unit sizes, profiles, and thicknesses and as recommended by manufacturer. Finish exposed-to-view edges and reveals to match face finish. Ease exposed edges to 1/8-inch radius.

- 1. Color, Pattern, and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 STRIP MATERIALS

- A. Standard Divider Strips: One-piece, flat-type strips for grouting into sawed joints prepared in substrate.
  - 1. Material: As indicated.
  - 2. Depth: As indicated.
  - 3. Width: As indicated.
- B. Control-Joint Strips: Separate, double L-type angles, positioned back to back, that match material and color of divider strips and in depth required for topping thickness indicated.
- C. Expansion-Joint Strips: Brass, with removable zip-strip top for installing sealant.
  - 1. Width: Minimum 1/2 inch.
- D. Accessory Strips: Match divider-strip width, material, and color unless otherwise indicated. Use the following types of accessory strips as required to provide a complete installation:
  - 1. Base-bead strips for exposed top edge of terrazzo base.
  - 2. Edge-bead strips for exposed edges of terrazzo.
  - 3. Nosings for terrazzo stair treads and landings.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS ACCESSORIES

- A. Strip Adhesive: Recommended by manufacturer for this use.
- B. Anchoring Devices:
  - 1. Strips: Provide mechanical anchoring devices or adhesives for strip materials as recommended by manufacturer and as required for secure attachment to substrate.
  - 2. Precast Terrazzo: Provide mechanical anchoring devices as recommended by fabricator for proper anchorage and support of units for conditions of installation and support.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Isolation and Expansion-Joint Material: Closed-cell polyethylene foam, nonabsorbent to liquid water and gas, and non-outgassing in unruptured state; butyl rubber; rubber; or cork; minimum 1/2 inch wide.

## E. Stair Nosing – A-SN:

1. Basis of Design Product: Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schluter Systems L.P.; Schluter-TREP-G, or comparable product by one of the following:
2. Description: Stair-nosing profile with replaceable non-slip tread, mineral grain coating; stainless steel.
  - a. Width: Width of tread.
  - b. Size: As selected by Architect.

## F. Portland Cement Terrazzo Cleaner: Chemically neutral cleaner with pH factor between 7 and 10 that is biodegradable, phosphate free, and recommended by cleaner manufacturer for use on terrazzo type indicated.

## G. Sealer: Slip- and stain-resistant, penetrating-type sealer that is chemically neutral; does not affect terrazzo color or physical properties; is recommended by sealer manufacturer; and complies with NTMA's written recommendations for terrazzo type indicated.

1. Surface Friction: Not less than 0.6 according to ASTM D 2047.
2. Acid-Base Properties: With pH factor between 7 and 10.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions, including levelness tolerances, have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances, including oil, grease, and curing compounds, that might impair terrazzo bond. Provide clean, dry, and neutral substrate for terrazzo application.
  1. Roughen concrete substrates before installing terrazzo system according to NTMA's written recommendations.
- B. Protect other work from water and dust generated by grinding operations. Control water and dust to comply with environmental protection regulations.
  1. Erect and maintain temporary enclosures and other suitable methods to limit water damage and dust migration and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions during installation.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for terrazzo and accessory installation.

- B. Installation Tolerance: Limit variation in terrazzo surface from level to 1/4 inch in 10 feet; noncumulative.
- C. Strip Materials:
  - 1. Divider and Control-Joint Strips:
    - a. Locate divider strips directly over breaks and control joints in concrete slabs and in locations indicated.
    - b. Install control-joint strips back to back and directly above concrete-slab control joints and in locations indicated.
      - 1) Install control-joint strips with 1/4-inch gap between strips, and install sealant in gap.
    - c. Install strips in adhesive setting bed without voids below strips, or mechanically anchor strips as required to attach strips to substrate, as recommended by strip manufacturer.
  - 2. Expansion-Joint Strips: Form expansion joints using divider strips and install directly above concrete-slab expansion joints.
  - 3. Accessory Strips: Install as required to provide a complete installation.
  - 4. Abrasive Strips: Install with surface of abrasive strip positioned 1/16 inch higher than terrazzo surface.

### 3.4 POURED-IN-PLACE TERRAZZO INSTALLATION

- A. Monolithic Portland Cement Terrazzo: Apply topping bonding agent on concrete substrate.
- B. Place terrazzo mixture in panels formed by divider strips and trowel mixture to top of strips. Seed additional aggregates in matrix to uniformly distribute granular material and produce a surface with a minimum of 70 percent aggregate exposure. Roll and compact surface until excess cement and water have been extracted.
  - 1. Portland Cement Terrazzo: Trowel to a dense, uniform, flat surface disclosing lines of divider strips.
- C. Portland Cement Terrazzo Finishing: Cover terrazzo topping with moisture-retaining cover and cure until topping develops sufficient strength to prevent lifting or pulling of aggregate during grinding.
  - 1. Rough Grinding: Grind with 24-grit or finer stones or with comparable diamond plates.
  - 2. Grouting: After rough grinding, clean terrazzo topping with water and rinse away residue. Remove excess rinse water, apply matrix mix to grout surface, and fill voids. After grouting, cover surface with moisture-retaining cover to cure grout until ready for fine grinding.
  - 3. Fine Grinding and Polishing: Delay fine grinding until heavy trade work is complete and construction traffic through area is restricted. Grind with 120-grit stones or with comparable diamond abrasives until grout is removed from surface.

3.5 PRECAST TERRAZZO INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast terrazzo units using method recommended in writing by NTMA and manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Do not install units that are chipped, cracked, discolored, or improperly finished.
- C. Seal joints between units with cement grout matching precast terrazzo matrix.

3.6 REPAIR

- A. Cut out and replace terrazzo areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate or underbed, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound if tapped. Cut out terrazzo areas in panels defined by strips and replace to match adjacent terrazzo, or repair panels according to NTMA's written recommendations, as approved by Architect.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Terrazzo Cleaning:
  - 1. Remove grinding dust from installation and adjacent areas.
  - 2. Wash surfaces with cleaner immediately after final cleaning of terrazzo flooring according to both NTMA's and manufacturer's written recommendations and manufacturer's written instructions; rinse surfaces with water and allow them to dry thoroughly.
- B. Sealing:
  - 1. Seal surfaces according to NTMA's written recommendations.
  - 2. Apply sealer according to sealer manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Protection: Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Installer, that ensure that terrazzo is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 6613

## SECTION 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Resinous flooring system.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review manufacturer's written instructions for substrate preparation and environmental conditions affecting resinous flooring installation.
2. Review manufacturer's written instructions for installing resinous flooring systems.
3. Review protection measures for adjacent construction and installed flooring, floor drainage requirements, curbs, base details, and so forth.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:

1. Manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.

B. Samples for Verification: For each resinous flooring system required, 5 inches square, applied to a rigid backing.

C. Product Schedule: Use resinous flooring designations and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.

B. Material Certificates: For each resinous flooring component.

C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.



## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

## A. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, through one source from a single manufacturer, with not less than ten years of successful experience in manufacturing and installing principal materials described in this section.
2. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

## B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer (applicator) who is experienced in applying resinous flooring systems similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and who is acceptable to resinous flooring manufacturer.

1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
2. Contractor shall have completed at least 10 projects of similar size and complexity.

## C. Manufacturer Field Technical Service Representatives: Resinous flooring manufacture shall retain the services of Field Technical Service Representatives who are trained specifically on installing the system to be used on the project.

1. Field Technical Services Representatives shall be employed by the system manufacture to assist in the quality assurance and quality control process of the installation and shall be available to perform field problem solving issues with the installer.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration from moisture, heat, cold, direct sunlight, or other detrimental effects. Store material per product data sheet.
- C. All materials used shall be factory pre-weighed and pre-packaged in single, easy to manage batches to eliminate on site mixing errors. No on site weighing or volumetric measurements allowed.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.

- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application, unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- D. Concrete substrate shall be properly cured. A vapor barrier must be present for concrete subfloors on or below grade. Otherwise, an osmotic pressure resistant grout must be installed prior to the resinous flooring.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer shall furnish a single, written warranty covering both material and workmanship for a period of (1) full years from date of installation, or provide a joint and several warranty signed on a single document by material manufacturer and applicator jointly and severally warranting the materials and workmanship for a period of (1) full year from date of installation. A sample warranty letter must be included with bid package or bid may be disqualified.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RESINOUS FLOORING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Stonhard, Inc.; products or comparable products by one of the following:
  - 1. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
  - 2. Key Resin Company.
- B. System Characteristics:
  - 1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - 2. Wearing Surface: Standard smooth.
  - 3. Overall System Thickness (Nominal): 1/4-inch
- C. System Components: Manufacturer's standard components that are compatible with each other and as follows:
  - 1. Primer:
    - a. Material Basis: Stonhard Standard Primer.
    - b. Resin: Epoxy
    - c. Application Method: Squeegee and roller.
    - d. Number of Coats: (1) one.
  - 2. Mortar Base:
    - a. Material design basis: Stonclad GS.
    - b. Resin: Epoxy.
    - c. Application Method: Metal Trowel.
      - 1) Thickness of Coats (Nominal): 1/4-inch.
      - 2) Number of Coats: One.
    - d. Aggregates: Pigmented Blended aggregate.

3. Top Coat:
  - a. Material design basis: Stonkote GS4
  - b. Resin: Epoxy.
  - c. Type: pigmented.
  - d. Finish: standard.
  - e. Number of Coats: one.

D. System Physical Properties: Provide resinous flooring system with the following minimum physical property requirements when tested according to test methods indicated:

1. Compressive Strength (ASTM C 579): 10,000 psi after 7 days.
2. Tensile Strength (ASTM C 307): 1,750 psi.
3. Flexural Strength (ASTM C 580): 4,000 psi.
4. Water Absorption (ASTM C 413): Less than 1 percent.
5. Impact Resistance (ASTM D 2794): Less than 160 in. lbs.
6. Flammability (ASTM E-648): Class 1.
7. Hardness (ASTM D 2240): 0.85 to 0.90, Shore D.
8. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity (ASTM C-580):  $2.0 \times 10^6$  psi.
9. Thermal Coefficient of Linear Expansion (ASTM C-531):  $1.4 \times 10^{-5}$  in./in. degrees F

## 2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Patching, Leveling and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- B. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, and dry substrate for resinous flooring application.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
  1. Mechanically prepare substrates as follows:
    - a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup or Diamond grind with a dust free system.
  2. Verify that concrete substrates meet the following requirements.
    - a. Perform in situ probe test, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with application only after substrates do not exceed a maximum potential equilibrium relative humidity of 85 percent.

- b. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 6 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab in 24 hours.
- C. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
  - 1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
  - 2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
  - 3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, provide joint in resinous flooring to comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - a. Apply joint sealant to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Apply primer where required by resinous system, over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply metal trowel single mortar coat in thickness indicated for flooring system. Hand or power trowel and grout to fill voids. When cured, sand to remove trowel marks and roughness.
- D. Apply topcoat(s) in number of coats indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### 3.3 TERMINATIONS

- A. Chase edges to "lock" flooring system into the concrete substrate along lines of termination.
- B. Penetration Treatment: Lap and seal resinous system onto the perimeter of the penetrating item by bridging over compatible elastomer at the interface to compensate for possible movement.

### 3.4 JOINTS AND CRACKS

- A. Treat control joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection.
- B. Treat cold joints and construction joints and to maintain monolithic protection on horizontal and vertical surfaces as well as horizontal and vertical interfaces.

- C. Horizontal contraction and expansion joints are treated by installing backer rod and compatible sealant after coating installation is completed. Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer for traffic conditions and chemical exposures to be encountered.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Material Sampling: Owner may at any time and any numbers of times during resinous flooring application require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Owner will engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's product data.
  - 3. If test results show applied materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND CURING

- A. Cure resinous flooring materials in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of curing process. Close area of application for a minimum of 24 hours.
- B. Protect resinous flooring materials from damage and wear during construction operation. Where temporary covering is required for this purpose, comply with manufacturer's recommendations for protective materials and method of application. General Contractor is responsible for protection.
- C. Cleaning: Remove temporary covering and clean resinous flooring just prior to final inspection. Use cleaning materials and procedures recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer. General contractor responsible for cleaning prior to inspection.

END OF SECTION 09 6723

## SECTION 09 6813 - TILE CARPETING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Modular carpet tile.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 6513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
  - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
  - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
2. Include manufacturer's written installation recommendations for each type of substrate.

B. Shop Drawings: For carpet tile installation, plans showing the following:

1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
3. Type of subfloor.
4. Type of installation.
5. Pattern of installation.
6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
7. Pile direction.
8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
9. Transition details to other flooring materials.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

- 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.

- D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
  - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II or Master II certification level.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.

- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
  - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. More than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, and runs.
    - b. Dimensional instability.
    - c. Excess static discharge.
    - d. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
    - e. Loss of face fiber.
    - f. Delamination.
  - 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CARPET TILE – CPT-1, CPT-2 AND CPT-3

- A. See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

#### 2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile, and are recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.



### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance.
- B. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
  - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
    - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.
- D. Metal Substrates: Clean grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 10, "Carpet Tile," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
  - 1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
  - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 13.7.
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 09 6813

## SECTION 09 6900 - ACCESS FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cementitious-core steel panel access flooring.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 8000 "Acoustical Treatment" for pedestal isolation pads.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review connections between access flooring and mechanical and electrical systems.
2. Review requirements related to sealing the plenum.
3. Review procedures for keeping underfloor space clean.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type Product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for access flooring.
2. Include loading capacities.

B. Shop Drawings: For access flooring:

1. Include layout of access flooring and relationship to adjoining Work based on field-verified dimensions.
2. Details and sections with descriptive notes indicating materials, finishes, fasteners, typical and special edge conditions, accessories, and understructures.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Floor Coverings: Full-size units.
2. Exposed Metal Accessories: Approximately 10 inches in length.
3. One full-size floor panel, pedestal, and understructure unit for each type of access flooring required.

D. Delegated Design Submittals: For seismic design of access flooring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Coordinate mechanical and electrical work in underfloor cavity to prevent interference with access flooring.
2. Mark pedestal locations on subfloor to enable mechanical and electrical work to proceed without interfering with access-flooring pedestals installed after mechanical and electrical work.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of access flooring.

D. Product Test Reports: For each type of access-flooring material and floor covering, performed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Seismic Design Calculations: For seismic design of access flooring, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

F. Preconstruction Test Reports: For preconstruction adhesive field test.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install access flooring until spaces are enclosed, subfloor has been sealed, ambient temperature is between 50 degrees and 90 degrees F, and relative humidity is not less than 20 and not more than 70 percent.

1. All floor panels shall be stored at ambient temperature between 50 degrees to 90 degrees F for at least 24 hours before installation begins.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design access flooring for seismic performance, including loads imposed on the access flooring by items and equipment installed on the access flooring.

- B. Structural Performance: Provide access flooring capable of complying with the following performance requirements according to testing procedures in CISCA's "Recommended Test Procedures for Access Floors:"
1. Concentrated Loads: 1250 lbf with the following deflection and permanent set:
    - a. Top-Surface Deflection: 0.10 inch.
    - b. Permanent Set: 0.010 inch.
  2. Ultimate Loads: 2500 lbf.
  3. Rolling Loads: With local or overall deformation not to exceed 0.040 inch.
    - a. CISCA Wheel 1: 10 passes at 1000 lbf.
    - b. CISCA Wheel 2: 10,000 passes at 800 lbf.
  4. Stringer Load Test: 450 lbf at center of span with a permanent set not to exceed 0.010 inch.
  5. Pedestal Axial Load Test: 6000 lbf.
  6. Pedestal-Overturning-Moment Test: 1000 lbf x inches.
  7. Drop Impact Load Test: 150 lb.
- C. Fire Performance:
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

## 2.2 CEMENTITIOUS-CORE STEEL PANEL ACCESS FLOORING

- A. Cementitious-Core Steel Panel Access Flooring Fabricate panels from cold-rolled steel sheet, with die-cut flat top sheet and die-formed and stiffened bottom pan welded together. Protect metal surfaces against corrosion using manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish. Fully grout internal spaces of completed units with manufacturer's standard cementitious fill.
1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tate Access Floors, Inc.; ConCore 1250 Access Floor Panel or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. ASM Modular Systems, Inc.
    - b. Computer Environments, Inc.
    - c. Global IFS.
    - d. Netfloor USA.
  2. Configuration: Provide modular panels with nominal size of 24 by 24 inches, interchangeable with other field panels without disturbing adjacent panels or understructure.
  3. Attachment to Understructure: Bolted.
- B. Pedestal System Understructure: System consisting of base, column with provisions for height adjustment, and head (cap); made of steel.
1. Base: Square or circular base with not less than 16 sq. in. of bearing area.
  2. Column: Of height required to bring finished floor to elevations indicated. Weld column to base plate.
  3. Provide vibration-proof leveling mechanism for making and holding fine adjustments in height over a range of not less than 2 inches and for locking at a selected height, so deliberate action is required to change height setting and prevent vibratory displacement.

4. Head: Designed to support the floor panel indicated.
  - a. Provide sound-deadening pads or gaskets at contact points between heads and panels.
  - b. Bolted Assemblies: Provide head with four holes aligned with holes in floor panels for bolting of panels to pedestals.
- C. Stringer System Understructure: Modular steel stringer systems designed to bolt to pedestal heads and form a grid pattern. Protect steel components with manufacturer's standard galvanized or corrosion-resistant paint finish.
  1. Continuous Gaskets: At contact surfaces between panel and stringers to deaden sound, seal off the underfloor cavity from above, and maintain panel alignment and position.
- D. Floor Finish: Provide factory-applied floor finish fabricated in one piece to cover entire panel face; with integral trim edging.
  1. Panels shall consist of a top steel sheet welded to a formed steel bottom pan filled internally with a lightweight cementitious material. Mechanical or adhesive methods for attachment of the steel top and bottom sheets are unacceptable.
  2. Floor panels shall be protected from corrosion by electro-deposited epoxy paint. The use of zinc electroplating shall be prohibited.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication Tolerances:
  1. Size: Plus or minus 0.020 inch of required size.
  2. Squareness: Plus or minus 0.015 inch between diagonal measurements across top of panel.
  3. Flatness: Plus or minus 0.035 inch, measured on a diagonal on top of panel.
- B. Panel Markings: Clearly and permanently mark floor panels on their underside with panel type and concentrated-load rating.
- C. Bolted Panels: Provide panels with holes drilled in corners to align precisely with threaded holes in pedestal heads and to accept countersunk screws with heads flush with top of panel.
  1. Captive Fasteners: Provide fasteners held captive to panels.
- D. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts in floor panels for cable penetrations and service outlets. Provide reinforcement or additional support, if needed, to make panels with cutouts comply with structural performance requirements.
  1. Number, Size, Shape, and Location: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Grommets: Where indicated, fit cutouts with manufacturer's standard grommets; or, if size of cutouts exceeds maximum grommet size available, trim edge of cutouts with manufacturer's standard plastic molding with tapered top flange. Furnish removable covers for grommets. Provide foam-rubber pads for sealing annular space formed in cutouts by cables.

- A. Adhesives: Manufacturer's standard adhesive for bonding pedestal bases to subfloor.
  - 1. Coordinate with acoustic treatment.
- B. Service Outlets: Standard UL-listed and -labeled assemblies, for recessed mounting flush with top of floor panels; for power, communication, and signal services.
- C. Perimeter Support: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard method for supporting panel edge and forming transition between access flooring and adjoining floor coverings at same level as access flooring.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer and manufacturer's authorized representative present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of conditions and deleterious substances that might interfere with attachment of pedestals.
  - 2. Verify that concrete floor sealer and finish have been applied and cured.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Lay out floor panel installation to keep the number of cut panels at floor perimeter to a minimum. Avoid using panels cut to less than 6 inches.
- B. Locate each pedestal, complete any necessary subfloor preparation, and vacuum subfloor to remove dust, dirt, and construction debris before beginning installation.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install access flooring and accessories under supervision of access-flooring manufacturer's authorized representative to produce a rigid, firm installation that complies with performance requirements and is free of instability, rocking, rattles, and squeaks.
- B. Coordinate attachment with acoustical requirements.
  - 1. Adhesive Attachment of Pedestals: Set pedestals in adhesive, according to access-flooring manufacturer's written instructions, to provide full bearing of pedestal base on subfloor; and as required to meet seismic design requirements.

2. Mechanical Attachment of Pedestals: Attach pedestals to subfloor with post-installed mechanical anchors as required to meet seismic design requirements.
- C. Adjust pedestals so installed panels are flat, level, and at the proper height.
- D. Stringer Systems: Secure stringers to pedestal heads according to access-flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install flooring panels securely in place, leaving them properly seated with panel edges flush. Do not force panels into place.
- F. Scribe perimeter panels to provide a close fit, with adjoining construction having no voids greater than 1/8 inch where panels abut vertical surfaces.
  1. To prevent dusting, seal cut edges of steel-encapsulated, wood-core panels with sealer recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.
- G. Cut and trim access flooring and perform other dirt-or-debris-producing activities at a remote location or as required to prevent contamination of subfloor under installed access flooring.
- H. Grounded Access Flooring: Ground access flooring as recommended by manufacturer and as needed to comply with performance requirements for electrical resistance of floor coverings.
  1. Panel-to-Understructure Resistance: Not more than 10 ohms as measured without floor coverings.
- I. Clean dust, dirt, and construction debris caused by floor installation, and vacuum subfloor area as installation of floor panels proceeds.
- J. Seal underfloor air cavities at construction seams, penetrations, and perimeter to control air leakage, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Install access flooring without change in elevation between adjacent panels and within the following tolerances:
  1. Plus or minus 1/16 inch in any 10-foot distance.
  2. Plus or minus 1/8 inch from a level plane over entire access flooring area.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Prohibit traffic on access flooring for 24 hours and removal of floor panels for 72 hours after installation, to allow pedestal adhesive to set.
- B. Replace access-flooring panels that are stained, scratched, or otherwise damaged or that do not comply with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 09 6900



SECTION 09 8000 – ACOUSTIC TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Isolation pads; isolated floor assembly.
2. Pedestal isolation pads.
3. Ceiling vibration isolators.
4. Wall isolation pads.
5. Acoustical sealant.
6. Acoustical sheet caulk
7. Acoustic batt insulation.
8. Closed-cell sponge neoprene.
9. Acoustical ceiling surface
10. Quilted blanket
11. Black mesh facing system.
12. Shop-fabricated acoustical treatment.

B. Attachments: For reference only.

1. RBDG Report, “WTJX, St. Thomas, Acoustical Criteria and Guidelines (Revised),” dated February 8, 2024.
  - a. Report item numbers are included for reference in [brackets] at each Article in this specification section.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 5113 “Acoustical Panel Ceilings” for suspended ceiling systems. [46]
2. Section 08 7100 “Door Hardware” for acoustic hardware. [22]
3. Section 13 4800.13 “Sound Control Window Systems” for acoustic windows. [25]
4. Section 13 4800.16 “Sound Control Swinging Door Systems” for swinging acoustic doors. [21]
5. Section 13 4800.19 “Sound Control Sliding Door Systems” for sliding acoustic doors.

1.2 ACOUSTIC PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. General: Ensure the isolation of all building assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:

1. Data on product characteristics, performance criteria, and limitations.
2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type system. Include:

1. Floor plan indicating location of installation(s).
2. Include large-scale detail of each assembly.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. Provide one sample of each product in manufacturer's standard size.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions for specified Products.
- B. Performance Data: Submit applicable research reports or evaluation data for products listed in this Section.
- C. Certificates: For each type product

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Obtain each type of product from one manufacturer through a single source.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer having demonstrated experience on projects of similar size and complexity.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by manufacturer.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard limited 1-year warranty from the date of shipment the product will be free from defects in material and workmanship.

## 2.1 ISOLATED FLOOR SYSTEM [12]

A. Description: Floating floor system.

B. Materials:

## 1. Rollout Isolation Mats:

a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kinetics Noise Control; Rollout Isolation Material (RIM), or comparable product, as approved by the Architect, by the following:

1) Mason Industries/ EAFM Isolated Floor System

b. Material: High-density molded fiberglass pads individually coated with a flexible elastomeric membrane.

c. Thickness: 2 inches.

d. Configuration: Rolls.

## 2. Absorption Material:

a. Material: Low-density fiberglass absorption material

b. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.

c. Application: Bond to isolation pads.

## 3. Perimeter Isolation Material: 3/8-inch thick sound rated perimeter strips (SRP).

a. Material: Polyethylene foam.

b. Height: To suit application.

## 4. See additional materials noted on Drawings.

C. Location: At isolated floating floor assembly. See Drawings.

## 2.2 PEDESTAL ISOLATION PADS [14]

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kinetics Noise Control; RSP isolators, or comparable product, as approved by the Architect, by one of the following:

1. Kinetics Noise Control/MetaWrx.

2. Mason Industries/Super W pads.

B. Description: Isolation pads.

1. Material: EPDM.

2. Size (maximum): 18 inches by 18 inches by 3/4-inch thick.

a. Sheets are prescored in 2-inch by 2-inch for easily cutting.

3. Resistance: Oil, water, and corrosion resistant.

4. Load: 85 psi, maximum.

5. Maximum Load Rating (each 2-inch by 2-inch pad): 340 lbs. (154 kg).

C. Location: At access flooring to mitigate vibration transfer to the access flooring. See Drawings.

## 2.3 CEILING VIBRATION ISOLATORS [27]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kinetics Noise Control; Muta Hanger Wire-Tie Ceiling Hangers, or comparable products as approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - 1. Kinetics Noise Control/ Gotham hangers
  - 2. Mason Industries/ 30NCC or W30N hangers
- B. Description:
  - 1. Combination high-deflection steel spring in series with a resilient, molded neoprene noise and vibration isolation pads at top and bottom of the hanger bracket.
  - 2. Steel spring and neoprene pads shall be incorporated into a stamped steel hanger assembly that resiliently supports the isolated ceiling.
- C. Material: Molded neoprene and steel.
- D. Related Components:
  - 1. Perimeter Isolation Material: 3/8-inch thick sound rated perimeter strips (SRP).
    - a. Material: Polyethylene foam.
- E. Location: Ceiling assemblies at wall assemblies. See Drawings.

## 2.4 WALL ISOLATION PADS AND ISOLATOR BUSHINGS [29]

- A. Wall Isolation Pads:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kinetics Noise Control; WallMat Resilient Partition Isolation Pad, or comparable product as approved by the Architect.
  - 2. Description: Resilient members that decouple the wall framing from the concrete it anchors into.
    - a. Material: Custom-molded, low-density fiber glass board
    - b. Size: 1/2-inch (13-mm) thick and designed to carry continuous loads up to 25-psi (17-N/cm<sup>2</sup>) without excessive creep or pad failure
      - 1) Higher capacity bearing pads are available for loads up to 300-psi (207 N/cm<sup>2</sup>) if required.
      - 2) Pad deflection shall be 0.175-inches (4-mm) at maximum rated load.
  - 3. Location: Wall framing at concrete slabs. See Drawings.
- B. Isolator Bushings:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kinetics Noise Control; Model KAI Anchor Isolator Rubber Bushing, or comparable product as approved by the Architect.
  - 2. Description: Rubber bushing with a steel spacer and washer through which any one-quarter inch (1/4-inch) diameter anchor is inserted.
    - a. Material: 60-durometer element.
    - b. Size: 1/2-inch thick

## 2.5 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT [30]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide USG Corporation; Sheetrock Brand Acoustical Sealant, or comparable product, as approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
  - 1. Pecora.
  - 2. Tremco.
- B. Description: Acrylic latex-based acoustical sealant, ASTM C 834.
  - 1. Applications: Use for typical interior applications, such as walls and ceilings, as an acoustical sealant.
  - 2. Color: Off-white, not paintable.
- C. Location: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.6 ACOUSTICAL SHEET CAULK [32]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide PABCO Gypsum; products, or comparable product as approved by the Architect.
  - 1. Harry A. Lowry & Associates/Outlet Box Pads
- B. Description: Recessed electrical boxes acoustical treatment; sealant and underlayment
- C. Materials:
  - 1. Sealant:
    - a. Latex Sealant (ASTM C834): Grade minus 18 degrees
    - b. Surface Burning Characteristic (ASTM E84): Class A.
    - c. Product: QuietSeal Pro.
  - 2. Underlayment (Acoustical Putty):
    - a. TCA Robinson Test (ASTM C627): Light Commercial.
    - b. Size: 7 inches by 7 inches (178 mm by 178 mm) pad.
    - c. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.17 mm).
    - d. Product: QuietPutty 380.
- D. Location: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.7 SOUND ATTENUATION BLANKETS [33]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Owens Corning; Thermafiber SAFB Mineral Wool Insulation, or comparable product, as approved by the Architect, by the following:
  - 1. Rockwool/AFB Insulation.

- B. Description: Mineral wool, non-combustible, moisture-resistant, non-corrosive, non-deteriorating, mildew-resistant, and vermin-resistant, ASTM C665.
1. Material: Mineral wool.
  2. Thickness (2.5 pcf): 1-1/2 to 8 inches; as indicated on Drawings.
  3. Dimensions: 16 inches by 48 inches; 24 inches by 48 inches; width as indicated on Drawings.
  4. Flamespread (ASTM E84): 0.
  5. Smoke Developed (ASTM E84): 0.
- C. Location: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.8 NEOPRENE GASKET [35]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide American National Rubber; Neoprene 4111-N, or comparable product as approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
1. Monmouth Rubber and Plastics Corp./C121A Durafoam
  2. Blaylock Gasket and Packing/SCE41B Neoprene
- B. Description: Neoprene gasket; ASTM D1056.
- C. Performance:
1. 25 Percent Compression Deflection (psi): 2-5
  2. Shore 00 Durometer (Approximate): 30 - 50
  3. Density (Approximate pcf): 7 - 11
  4. Tensile Strength (Typical): 50 psi
  5. Elongation (Typical): 150 percent
  6. Flammability (FM VSS No. 302): Pass
- D. Location: Resilient gasket at special intersection conditions of gap construction, at penetrations, and similar locations as indicated on Drawings.

## 2.9 ACOUSTICAL CEILING SURFACE [41] – ASL-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Knauf; Black Acoustical Board, or comparable product as approved by the Architect, by one of the following:
1. Johns Manville:
    - a. Insul-Shield 300 Black.
    - b. Theatre-Shield
  2. Certainteed:
    - a. AcoustaBoard Black
    - b. AcoustaBlanket Black.

- B. Description: Bonded Heavy-density mat-faced fiberglass board insulation bonded with a black mat facing with a smooth, tough surface.
  - 1. Thickness (total): 4 inches.
    - a. 2.25 pcf: 2 inches
    - b. 3.0 pcf: 2 inches.
  - 2. Installation: Impaling clips and/or adhesive as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Location: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.10 QUILTED BLANKET [42]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insul-Quilt; Quilted Studio Blanket, or comparable product as approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Quilted blanket consisting of a sound-absorbing fill material covered with an acoustically transparent scrim facing.
  - 1. Thickness (Nominal): 2 inches.
  - 2. Standard Width (Nominal): 46 inches.
  - 3. Standard Length: 16'-0"; custom lengths available.
  - 4. Flammability (ASTM E84): Class A.
    - a. Flame Spread: 0.
    - b. Smoke Density: 0.
  - 5. Acoustical Ratings:
    - a. NRC: 1.05.
    - b. STC: 12.
  - 6. Facing: Acoustically transparent scrim facing.
  - 7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - 8. Attachment: Stick clips with domes or pin caps.
- C. Location: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.11 BLACK MESH FACING SYSTEM [43]

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Industrial Netting; OV 7822, or comparable product as approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Bird barrier and pest control netting acoustic surface protection.
  - 1. Color: Black
  - 2. Grade: Heavy duty
  - 3. Hole Opening: 1/4-inch by 1/4-inch. (6mm by 6mm).
  - 4. Resin (material): Polypropylene.
  - 5. Joints: Fused; will not stretch or pull apart.
  - 6. Roll Size: Available up to 14'-0" by 2500'-0".
- C. Location: as indicated on Drawings.

## 2.12 SHOP-FABRICATED ACOUSTICAL TREATMENT [44] – PAT-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide FabricWall; Acousti-Core (FWAP), or comparable product as approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Fabric stretched over fiberglass core.
  - 1. Core: Fiberglass, 6-7 pcf.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2-inch to 4-inches, as indicated on the Drawings.
  - 3. Flammability: Class A.
  - 4. Fabric: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Location: as indicated on Drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION – ROLLOUT ISOLATION MATS (ISOLATED FLOOR SYSTEM) [12]

- A. Examination:
  - 1. Examine areas and conditions under which work will be installed.
  - 2. Verify floor flatness.
  - 3. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Preparation:
  - 1. Verify that substrates are clean and free of debris.
- C. Installation:
  - 1. General: Install isolation pads and related assembly components in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect-approved submittals.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION - PEDESTAL ISOLATION PADS [14]

- A. Examination:
  - 1. Examine areas and conditions under which work of this section will be installed.
  - 2. Verify floor flatness.
  - 3. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Preparation:
  - 1. Verify that substrates are clean and free of debris.
- C. Installation:
  - 1. General: Install isolation pads in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect-approved submittals.
  - 2. Coordinate with access flooring installation.



## 3.3 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION CEILING VIBRATION ISOLATORS [27]

## A. Examination:

1. Examine areas and conditions under which work of this section will be installed.
2. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## B. Installation:

1. Install isolation ceiling vibration isolators in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved submittals.
2. Install related assembly components.
3. All building components supported by the isolation hangers shall be free from rigid contact with any part of the non-isolated building structure to prevent unwanted sound flanking.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION WALL ISOLATION PADS AND ISOLATOR BUSHINGS [29]

## A. Examination:

1. Carefully examine conditions at the job site before commencing specified work.

## B. Preparation:

1. Do not installed in wet conditions or wherever exposed to moisture.
2. Area shall be flat and smooth, and then clean and free of debris.

## C. Installation:

1. General: Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect- approved submittals.
2. Wall Isolation Pads: Install wall isolation pads continuously along base and top plate of partition as indicated on approved shop drawings.
3. Rubber Bushing Assembly: Install rubber bushings as indicated on approved shop drawings.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION ACOUSTICAL SEALANT [30]

## A. Preparation:

1. Do not begin until building is enclosed and building temperatures are maintained at 55 degrees F (13 degrees C) minimum.
2. Surfaces to be caulked must be clean, dry, and free of dust.

## B. Application:

1. Apply sealant in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect-approved submittals.

## 3.6 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION ACOUSTICAL SHEET CAULK [32]

## A. Examination:

1. Verify that substrate conditions, which have been previously installed under other sections, are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## B. Preparation:

1. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
2. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

## C. Installation:

## 1. Sealant:

- a. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions, product carton instructions for installation and Architect-approved submittals.
- b. Apply a full 1/8 to 1/4 inch bead to seal openings where wall meets the ceiling, floor and adjoining walls, to the perimeter of all cut-outs including those for outlet boxes, pipes, conduit, vents, etc.
- c. Make sure the joint is completely filled. It is recommended to push sealant into the joint with a finger. For ease of clean up, wear disposable gloves during installation.

## 2. Underlayment:

- a. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product carton instructions for installation and Architect-approved submittals.
- b. Installation:
  - 1) Remove the release paper.
  - 2) Inspect the fire rated outlet box to make sure it is properly installed and free of free of dust, grease, oil, loose materials, rust or other substances.
  - 3) Starting at side, align the putty pad to front edge of box and overlap onto the stud.
  - 4) Cut the putty pad to allow the pad to fit around conduits or cables.
  - 5) Pleat the extra material at the corners.
  - 6) Fold the pleated corners into place and firmly press the putty pad into place so that the entire surface of the back of the outlet box is covered.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION ACOUSTIC BATT INSULATION [33]

## A. Examination:

1. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be installed.
2. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## B. Preparation: Verify that surfaces are clean and free of debris.

## C. Installation:

1. General: Install insulation in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect- approved submittals.
2. Do not over-compress insulation to fit into spaces.
3. Fit insulation closely around electrical boxes, pipes, ducts, frames, and other objects in or passing through insulation.
4. Install products in proper relationship with each other and adjacent construction.
5. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by insulation installation.

## 3.8 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION NEOPRENE GASKET [35]

## A. Examination:

1. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be installed.
2. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## B. Preparation: Verify that surfaces are clean and free of debris.

## C. Installation:

1. Install gaskets in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved submittals.

## 3.9 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL CEILING SURFACE [41] – ASL-1

## A. Examination: Verify that surfaces are in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions

## B. Preparation: Verify that surfaces are clean and free of debris.

## C. Installation:

1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved submittals.

## 3.10 INSTALLATION - ISOLATION QUILTED BLANKET [42]

## A. Examination: Verify that substrates are in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions

## B. Preparation: Verify that substrates are clean and free of debris.

## C. Installation:

1. Install blankets in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and approved submittals.
2. Install blankets directly to substrate with stick clips and washers.
3. Set stick clips at 15 inches on center vertically and 22-inches on center horizontally.
4. Allow stick clips to stay on wall to dry for at least 24 hours prior to mounting blankets.

3.11 INSTALLATION - BLACK MESH FACING SYSTEM [43]

- A. Examination: Verify that surfaces are in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions
- B. Preparation: Verify that surfaces are clean and free of debris.
- C. Installation:
  - 1. Install protect netting in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect-approved submittals.

3.12 INSTALLATION - SHOP-FABRICATED ACOUSTICAL TREATMENT [44] – PAT-1

- A. Examination: Verify that substrate is in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions
- B. Preparation: Verify that surfaces are clean and free of debris.
- C. Installation:
  - 1. Install acoustic panels in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and Architect-approved submittals.

3.13 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed work from damage due to subsequent construction activity on site. Repair damage to installed products prior to installation of finish materials.

END OF SECTION 09 8000

Attachment: RBDG Report, "WTJX, St. Thomas, Acoustical Criteria and Guidelines (Revised)," dated February 8, 2024.

## SECTION 09 9113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Coating Maintenance Manual: Provide coating maintenance manual including area summary with finish schedule, area detail designating location where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, material safety data sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used. See Custodian by Sherwin-Williams for an example of approved documentation.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gallon of each material and color applied.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Handling: Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed containers, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing. Packaging shall bear the manufacture's label with the following information:
  - 1. Product name and type (description).
  - 2. Batch date.
  - 3. Color number.
  - 4. VOC content.
  - 5. Environmental handling requirements.
  - 6. Surface preparation requirements.
  - 7. Application instructions.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 degrees F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 degrees and 95 degrees F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 degrees F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sherwin-Williams Company products indicated or comparable product from one of the following:
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain paint materials from single source from single listed manufacturer.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers. Where acceptability of substrate conditions is in question, apply samples and perform in-situ testing to verify compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of new paint application.
1. Report, in writing, conditions that may affect application, appearance, or performance of paint.
- B. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected; application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.



3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. Paint System:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Hollow metal doors and frames.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer
  - b. Finish (2 coats): Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane, Semi-Gloss, B53-1151
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Exterior on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 09 9113

## SECTION 09 9123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Coating Maintenance Manual: Provide coating maintenance manual including area summary with finish schedule, area detail designating location where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, material safety data sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used. See Custodian by Sherwin-Williams for an example of approved documentation.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gallon of each material and color applied.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Handling: Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed containers, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing. Packaging shall bear the manufacturer's label with the following information:
  - 1. Product name and type (description).
  - 2. Batch date.
  - 3. Color number.
  - 4. VOC content.
  - 5. Environmental handling requirements.
  - 6. Surface preparation requirements.
  - 7. Application instructions.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 degrees F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 degrees and 95 degrees F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 degrees F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sherwin-Williams Company products indicated or comparable product from one of the following:
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain paint materials from single source from single listed manufacturer.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

### A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

### B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

### A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers. Where acceptability of substrate conditions is in question, apply samples and perform in-situ testing to verify compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of new paint application.

1. Report, in writing, conditions that may affect application, appearance, or performance of paint.

#### B. Substrate Conditions:

1. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.

#### C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected; application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Concrete Floors: Remove oil, dust, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials. Comply with SSPC-SP-13/NACE 6 or ICRI 03732.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

## 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.

2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. P-1:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Gypsum board walls.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600
  - b. Finish (2 coats): ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell, B20-2600
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

B. P-2:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Gypsum board walls.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600
  - b. Finish (2 coats): ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell, B20-2600
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

C. P-3:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Gypsum board walls.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600
  - b. Finish (2 coats): ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell, B20-2600
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

D. P-4:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Gypsum board walls.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600
  - b. Finish (2 coats): ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell, B20-2600
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.



## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### E. PNT-5:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Hollow metal doors and frames.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer
  - b. Finish (2 coats): Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane, Semi-Gloss, B53-1151
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

### F. PNT-6:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Gypsum board ceilings.
2. System:
  - a. Primer: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600
  - b. Finish (2 coats): ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Flat, B30-2600 Series
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

### G. PNT-7 - Water-Based Dry-Fall System:

1. Application includes:
  - a. Exposed ceilings – EXP-1.
2. System:
  - a. Shop Primed:
    - 1) Spot Prime: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer
    - 2) Dryfall: Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat
  - b. Galvanized (Not primed):
    - 1) Prep: SSPC-SP1
    - 2) Primer: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Acrylic Primer
    - 3) Dryfall: Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat
3. Color: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 09 9123

## SECTION 10 2243 - SLIDING GLASS PARTITIONS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood framed sliding glass partition with swinging doors.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordination: Coordinate sliding glass partition system with steel support framing.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product type. Include:

1. Manufacturer's printed product literature for each sliding glass partition system.
2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate sliding glass partition system component sizes, dimensions and support framing, configuration, sliding and swing panels, direction of swing, stacking layout, typical head jamb, side jambs and sill details, type of glazing material, handle height and field measurements.
2. Details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, and profiles

C. Samples:

1. Submit full array of wood species and finish in manufacturer's standard sizes.
2. Submit full array of graphics options.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Submit door stile of selected wood species with finish; 12-inch length.
2. Submit sample graphic.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates: Performance tests and results.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Submit Owner's Manual from manufacturer.
  - 1. Identify with project name, location, and completion data, and type and size of the unit installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Furnish sliding glass partition system materials from one manufacturer from one source.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer capable of providing complete, precision built, engineered, pre-fitted units with a minimum thirty (30) years' experience in the sale of folding-sliding door systems for large openings in the North American market.
  - 1. Manufacturer to have ISO 9001: 2015 quality management system registration.
  - 2. Manufacturer to have ISO 14001: 2015 environmental management system registration.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Installer experienced in the installation of manufacturer's products or other similar products for large openings. Installer to provide reference list of at least three (3) projects of similar scale and complexity successfully completed in the last three (3) years.
  - 1. Installer to be trained and certified by manufacturer.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and as follows:
  - 1. Deliver materials to job site in sealed, unopened cartons or crates.
    - a. Upon receipt, inspect the shipment to ensure it is complete, in good condition and meets project requirements.
  - 2. Condition wood components to average prevailing relative humidity before installation.
    - a. Do not subject wood components to extreme nor rapid changes in heat or humidity.
  - 3. Do not use forced heat to dry out building.
  - 4. Store flat in a well-ventilated area out of direct sunlight under cover in a clean and dry location, protecting units against weather and defacement or damage from construction activities, especially to the edges of panels.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Contractor to field verify dimensions of openings and stack storage area.
  - 1. Mark field measurements on shop drawing submittal.

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide sliding glass partition system manufacturer's standard limited warranty as per manufacturer's published warranty document in force at time of purchase, subject to change, against defects in materials and workmanship.
  - 1. Warranty Period beginning with the earliest of 120 days from Date of Delivery or Date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Rollers: Ten (10) years.
    - b. All Other Components: Ten (10) years
      - 1) Exception: Five (5) years if not installed by manufacturer's specific system approved or certified trained installer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLIDING GLASS PARTITION

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide NanaWall Systems, Inc. ([www.nanawall.com](http://www.nanawall.com), 800-873-5673); HSW66 or comparable product approved by the Architect.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE / DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. Performance Criteria (Lab Tested):
  - 1. Sliding Glass Partition Units tested to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
  - 2. Forced Entry - 300 lb. (1330 N) point load (AAMA 1304): Pass
- B. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Sizes and Configurations: As indicated by the Drawings for selected number and size of panels, location of swing panels, and location of tracks and stacking bays.
  - 2. Unit Operation: Adjustable sliding type; sliding and swing hardware with top track.
  - 3. Panel Configuration: Straight.
  - 4. Stack Storage Configuration: Jamb wall.
  - 5. Mounting Type: Top-hung
  - 6. Panel Type: As indicated on Drawings.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Sliding Glass Partition Description: Standard top-hung, single-track, interlocking wood-framed sliding glass partition system and have a swing door hinged off a side jamb. Manufacturer's standard frame and panel profiles, with head track, stacking bays, side jambs, sliding panels, and swing panels with dimensions as shown on Drawings.
  - 1. Provide clear anodized aluminum head track with wood fascia covers on both sides.

2. Panels and Frames:
    - a. Panels:
      - 1) Single lite.
      - 2) Panel Size: As indicated o Drawings.
      - 3) Rail Depth: 2-5/8 inch (66 mm).
      - 4) Top Rail Width: 3-3/4 inch (93 mm).
      - 5) Bottom Rail Width: 10-inch, ADA-compliant.
    - b. Frames:
      - 1) Top Track Depth: 3-15/16 inch (100 mm).
      - 2) Top Track Width: 4-1/2 inch (115 mm).
      - 3) Side Jambs Width: 1-9/16 inch (40 mm).
  3. Top Track: Aluminum extrusion.
    - a. Alloy: AIMgSi0.5; 6063-T5 (F-22 - European standard)
    - b. Thickness: 0.078 inch (2.0 mm) nominal
    - c. Finish (AAMA 611): Clear, anodized.
  4. Wood: Cross-grained, solid, triple laminated wood with mortise and tenon, and glued and pinned corners.
    - a. Species: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
    - b. Field finish prior to installation.
- B. Glass and Glazing: Safety Glazing: In compliance with ASTM C1036, ASTM C1048, ANSI Z97.1 and CPSC 16CFR 1201; tempered.
- C. Locking Hardware and Handles:
1. Design, Configuration, Material and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless steel machine screws for connecting frame components.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Extruded aluminum head frame profiles, solid triple-laminated wood side jamb profiles, tracks, stacking bays, with male-female interlocking solid triple-laminated wood panel profiles, hinges, sliding/swinging hardware, locking hardware and handles, glass and glazing and sound gasketing components to construct a single track sliding opening glass wall.
1. Wood frame and panel members to be sealed with a clear sand sealer or primer.
  2. Each unit factory pre-assembled and shipped with all components and installation instructions.
  3. Exposed work to be carefully matched to produce continuity of line and design with all joints.
  4. No raw edges visible at joints.

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions:

1. Carefully examine rough openings with Installer present, for compliance with requirements affecting Work performance.
  - a. Verify that field measurements, substrates, tolerances, levelness, plumbness, cleanliness and other conditions are as required by the manufacturer, and ready to receive Work.
  - b. Verify the structural integrity of the header for deflection with live and dead loads limited to the lesser of  $L/720$  of the span or 1/4 inch (6 mm). Provide structural support for lateral loads, and both wind load and eccentric load when the panels are stacked open.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. General: Install sliding glass partition system in accordance with the drawings, approved submittals and shop drawings, manufacturers' recommendations, and installation instructions, and as follows:

1. Properly seal around opening perimeter.
2. Securely attach anchorage devices to rigidly fit frame in place, level, straight, plumb, and square. Install frame in proper elevation, plane and location, and in proper alignment with other work.
3. Install panels, handles, lockset, sound gasketing and other accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Field Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify the sliding glass partition system operates and functions properly.
2. Adjust hardware for proper operation.

#### B. Non-Conforming Work: Repair or replace non-conforming work as directed by the Architect.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Keep units closed and protect sliding glass partition installation against damage from construction activities.
- B. Remove protective coatings and use manufacturer recommended methods to clean exposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 10 2239.13

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

## SECTION 10 2800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Toilet accessories.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data Submittals: For each type product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.

B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: For grab bars.

1. Include structural design calculations indicating compliance with specified structural-performance requirements.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.



- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

### 2.2 TOILET ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of toilet accessory from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Soap Dispenser – CC1:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bradley Corporation; product, or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. ASI-American Specialties, Inc.
    - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 2. Product: Selection to be coordinated with Owner.
- C. Paper Towel Dispenser – CC2:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bradley Corporation; product, or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. ASI-American Specialties, Inc.
    - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 2. Product: Selection to be coordinated with Owner.
- D. Grab Bar – CC3:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bradley Corporation; Grab bar Series 812, or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
    - b. McKinney/Parker
  - 2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
  - 3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
    - a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.

4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.

E. Mirror Unit – CC4:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bradley Corporation; Channel-Frame Mirror 781, or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - b. McKinney/Parker.
2. Frame: Stainless steel channel.
  - a. Corners: Mitered and mechanically interlocked.
3. Size: 20 inches by 36 inches.
4. Hangers: Manufacturer's standard rigid, tamper and theft resistant.

F. Toilet Paper Dispenser – CC5:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bradley Corporation; product, or comparable products by one of the following:
  - a. ASI-American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
2. Product: Selection to be coordinated with Owner.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch- minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch- minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
  - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

#### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 10 2800

## SECTION 10 4413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
  - a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 10 4416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples 6 by 6 inches square.

D. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Larsen's Manufacturing Company; Products or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Aluminum sheet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
  - 1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Extruded-aluminum shapes.
- F. Door Material: Aluminum sheet.
- G. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- H. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard.
  - 2. Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- I. Accessories:
  - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
    - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
      - 1) Location: Applied to location indicated on Drawings.
      - 2) Application Process: Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
      - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
      - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

## J. Materials:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B221 for extruded shapes and aluminum sheet, with strength and durability characteristics of not less than Alloy 6063-T5 for aluminum sheet.
  - a. Finish: Clear anodic.
2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
  3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
  2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for cabinets to verify actual locations of piping connections before cabinet installation.

- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinet Mounting Height: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
  - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
  - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification:
  - 1. Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 4413

## SECTION 10 4416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Portable hand-carried fire extinguishers.
  - 2. Mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 4413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.



- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Larsen's Manufacturing Company; Products or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Brass Container: UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in chrome-plated-brass container.

## 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Larsen's Manufacturing Company; Products or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
  - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
    - a. Orientation: Vertical.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.
  - 1. Mounting Height: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.

END OF SECTION 10 4416

## SECTION 10 7117 – SHUTTER SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Mechanically-operated roll-up shutter system with end retention.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 4213 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances."
2. Section 08 4313 "Aluminum-Framed Storefront."

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of shutter system and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of assemblies, and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
4. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for excluding and draining moisture to the exterior.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing full range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes.

1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following components, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
  - 1. Curtain slats.
  - 2. End retention.
  - 3. Hood.
  - 4. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- E. Delegated Design Submittal: For shutter system including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- C. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.
- D. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
  - 1. Include documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranty.
- B. Maintenance Data: For shutter system to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Each shutter assembly shall bear a permanent label on the bottom of the hood facing the exterior with the following minimum information:
  - 1. USA Shutter Company
  - 2. Ft. Myers, FL
  - 3. Missile Level D – ASTM E1186 , ASTM E1996 and ASTM E330
  - 4. Florida Product Approval Number.
- C. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of shutter system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain shutter system from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 SHUTTER SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Maestrosshield; Aluminum Roll-Up Shutter with End Retention, or comparable product approved by the Architect.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Capable of withstanding the following design wind loads:
  - 1. Testing: According to ASTM E330/E330M.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Design shutter system to withstand design wind load without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of shutter components.
  - 3. Wind Loads: See Document 00 3113 "Calculations for Components and Cladding."
- B. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Provide impact-protective roll-up shutter system that pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests according to ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for basic protection.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For shutter system located within 30 ft. (9.1 m) of grade.
  - 2. Small-Missile Test: For shutter system located between 30 ft. (9.1 m) and 60 ft. (18.3 m) above grade.
- C. Seismic Performance: Shutter system must withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

## 2.4 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: Minimum 6063-T5 aluminum alloy, unless noted otherwise.
- C. Bolts and Washers: Stainless steel with a minimum tensile yield strength of 60 ksi.

- D. All aluminum 3/16-inch diameter or 1/4-inch diameter pop rivets shall be 7075-T6 or stronger.
- E. All steel in contact with aluminum shall be painted or plated as prescribed in accordance with the above-noted Building Code.
  - 1. Contractor is responsible to insulate all materials to prevent electrolysis.

## 2.5 COMPONENTS

- A. Shutter Curtain Slats:
  - 1. Profile: Curved.
  - 2. Size: 2.595 inches long by 0.552 inches wide.
  - 3. Material: Aluminum.
  - 4. Material Thickness (minimum): 0.047-inch.
  - 5. Gasket Seal: Manufacturer's standard continuous gaskets between slats.
- B. Shutter Curtain Bottom Slat:
  - 1. Profile: Flat.
  - 2. Size: 2.2 inches long by 0.300 inches wide.
  - 3. Material: Aluminum.
  - 4. Material Thickness (minimum): 0.042-inch.
- C. Side Rail End Retention:
  - 1. Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. End Retention Material: Nylon.
  - 3. Finish: Match shutter.
  - 4. Color: Match shutter.
  - 5. Mounting: End Retention Typical Wall Mount.
- D. Hood: Match curtain material and finish.
  - 1. Shape: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Finish: Match shutter.
  - 4. Color: Match shutter.
  - 5. Mounting: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.6 SHUTTER ACCESSORIES

- A. As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.7 ELECTRIC OPERATORS

- A. Provide motors with required lifting capacities and type to suit application.

## A. Factory-applied finish:

1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
2. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
3. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
  - a. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roll-up shutter system and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions, as specified and in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- B. Install roll-up shutters, hoods, controls, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  1. Test shutter release, closing and opening operations when activated.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired shutter system installations comply with specified requirements.

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. After electrical circuitry has been energized, operate shutter system to confirm proper motor rotation and shutter performance.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that shutters operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
  - 1. Adjust roll-up shutter system and components to be weather resistant.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust seals to provide tight fit around entire perimeter.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service includes 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of the shutter system Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper shutter operation. Parts and supplies are to be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 1. Perform maintenance, including emergency callback service, during normal working hours.
  - 2. Include 24-hour-per-day, seven-day-per-week, emergency callback service.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain shutter system.

END OF SECTION 10 7117



## SECTION 10 7516 - GROUND-SET FLAGPOLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Ground-set flagpoles.
- B. Owner-Furnished Material: Flags.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operating characteristics, fittings, accessories, and finishes for flagpoles.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each flagpole.
  - 1. Include the following:
    - a. Plans, elevations, and attachment details. Show general arrangement, jointing, fittings, accessories, grounding, anchoring, and support.
    - b. Section, and details of foundation system.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Delegated Design Submittals: For flagpoles.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flagpoles to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Spiral wrap flagpoles with heavy paper and enclose in a hard fiber tube or other protective container.

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flagpoles as complete units, including fittings, accessories, bases, and anchorage devices, from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design flagpole assemblies.
- B. Seismic Performance: Flagpole assemblies to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Structural Performance: Flagpole assemblies, including anchorages and supports, to withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Wind Loads: See Drawings.
  - 2. Base flagpole design on polyester flags of maximum standard size suitable for use with flagpole or flag size indicated, whichever is more stringent.

## 2.3 ALUMINUM FLAGPOLES

- A. Aluminum Flagpoles: Cone -tapered flagpoles fabricated from seamless extruded tubing complying with ASTM B241/B241M, Alloy 6063, with a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Acme Lingo Flagpoles.
    - b. American Flagpole.
    - c. Concord American Flagpole.
    - d. Pole-Tech Co., Inc.
    - e. US Flag & Flagpole Supply, LLC.
- B. Exposed Height: 25 feet to 30 feet as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Construct flagpoles in one piece if possible. If more than one piece is necessary, comply with the following:
  - 1. Fabricate shop and field joints without using fasteners, screw collars, or lead calking.
  - 2. Provide flush hairline joints using self-aligning, snug-fitting, internal sleeves.
- D. Sleeve for Aluminum Flagpole: Fiberglass or PVC pipe foundation sleeve, made to fit flagpole, for casting into concrete foundation.
  - 1. Flashing Collar: Same material and finish as flagpole.

- A. Finial Ball: Flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to match flagpole-butt diameter.
  - 1. 0.063-inch spun aluminum, finished to match flagpole.
- B. External Halyard: Ball-bearing, nonfouling, revolving truck assembly of cast metal with continuous 5/16-inch- diameter, braided polypropylene halyard and 9-inch cast-metal cleats with fasteners. Finish exposed metal surfaces to match flagpole.
  - 1. Halyards and Cleats: Two at each flagpole.
  - 2. Cleat Covers: Cast metal, finished to match flagpole, secured with cylinder locks.
  - 3. Halyard Covers: 2-inch channel, 60 inches long, finished to match flagpole.
  - 4. Halyard Flag Snaps: Chromium-plated bronze. Furnish four per halyard.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M.
- B. Drainage Material: Crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; coarse aggregate.
- C. Sand: ASTM C33/C33M, fine aggregate.
- D. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane joint sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare uncoated metal flagpoles that are set in foundation tubes by painting below-grade portions with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Foundation Excavation: Excavate to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil. Remove loose soil and foreign matter from excavation and moisten earth before placing concrete. Place and compact drainage material at excavation bottom.
- C. Provide forms where required due to unstable soil conditions and for perimeter of flagpole base at grade. Secure and brace forms to prevent displacement during concreting.

- D. Foundation Tube: Place foundation tube, center, and brace to prevent displacement during concreting. Place concrete. Plumb and level foundation tube and allow concrete to cure.
- E. Sleeves: Locate and secure sleeves in forms by bracing to reinforcement and forms.
- F. Place concrete, as specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Compact concrete in place by using vibrators. Moist-cure exposed concrete for no fewer than seven days or use nonstaining curing compound.
- G. Trowel exposed concrete surfaces to a smooth, dense finish, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance. Provide positive slope for water runoff to perimeter of concrete base.

### 3.2 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install flagpoles where indicated and according to approved shop drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Foundation Tube: Place flagpole in tube, seated on bottom plate between steel centering wedges, and install hardwood wedges to secure flagpole in place. Place and compact sand in foundation tube and remove hardwood wedges. Seal top of foundation tube with a 2-inch layer of elastomeric joint sealant and cover with flashing collar.

END OF SECTION 10 7516

## SECTION 12 2413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manually operated, single-roller shades.
2. Motor-operated, single-roller shades.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.
2. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing the perimeters of installation accessories for light-blocking shades with a sealant.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.

1. Motor-Operated Shades: Include details of installation and diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.

1. Shadeband Material: Not less than 10 inches square. Mark interior face of material if applicable.
2. Roller Shade: Full-size operating unit, not less than 16 inches wide by 36 inches long for each type of roller shade indicated.
3. Installation Accessories: Full-size unit, not less than 10 inches long.

D. Product Schedule: For roller shades. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Roller Shades: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size and color, material indicated, but no fewer than two units.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation for each type.
  - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on shop drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Roller Shade Hardware and Chain Warranty: Manufacturer's standard non-depreciating warranty for interior shading.
  - 1. Shade Hardware: 10 years unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUALLY OPERATED, SINGLE-ROLLER SHADES – SH-2

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MechoShade Systems, LLC; Mecho/5 or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Draper, Inc.
  - 2. Hunter Douglas Architectural.
- B. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
  - 1. Bead Chains: Manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
    - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
    - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Chain tensioner, jamb mounted.
  - 2. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Manufacturer's standard for balancing roller shade weight and for lifting heavy roller shades.
    - a. Provide for shadebands that weigh more than 10 lb or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criterion is more stringent.
- C. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
  - 1. Roller Drive-End Location: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
  - 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- D. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.

## E. Shadebands:

1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
  - a. Type: Exposed with endcaps and integral light seal at bottom where it meets the sill.
  - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## F. Installation Accessories:

1. Recessed Shade Pocket: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure designed for recessed ceiling installation; with front, top, and back formed as one piece, end plates, and removable bottom closure panel.
  - a. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than height indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Provide pocket with lip at lower edge to support acoustical ceiling panel.
2. Closure Panel and Wall Clip: Removable aluminum panel designed for installation at bottom of site-constructed ceiling recess or pocket and for snap-in attachment to wall clip without fasteners.
  - a. Closure-Panel Width: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Side Channels: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at sides of shades as shades are drawn down. Provide side channels with shadeband guides or other means of aligning shadebands with channels at tops.
4. Bottom (Sill) Channel or Angle: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at bottoms of shades when shades are closed.
5. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.2 MOTOR-OPERATED, SINGLE-ROLLER SHADES – SH-1

## A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MechoShade Systems, LLC; Mecho/5 or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Draper, Inc.
2. Hunter Douglas Architectural.

## B. Motorized Operating System: Provide factory-assembled, shade-operator system of size and capacity and with features, characteristics, and accessories suitable for conditions indicated, complete with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, power disconnect switch, enclosures protecting controls and operating parts, and accessories required for reliable operation without malfunction. Include wiring from motor controls to motors. Coordinate operator wiring requirements and electrical characteristics with building electrical system.

1. Electrical Components: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Electric Motor: Manufacturer's standard tubular, enclosed in roller.
3. Remote Control: Electric controls with NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure for surface mounting.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Limit Switches: Adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to stop shades automatically at fully raised and fully lowered positions.



5. Operating Features:
  - a. Group switching with integrated switch control; single faceplate for multiple switch cutouts.
  - b. Capable of interface with audiovisual control system.
  - c. Capable of accepting input from building automation control system.
  - d. Override switch.
- C. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
  1. Roller Drive-End Location: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
  3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- D. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- E. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers that are operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
- F. Shadebands:
  1. Shadeband Material: Light-blocking fabric.
  2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
    - a. Type: Exposed with endcaps and integral light seal at bottom where it meets the sill.
    - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Installation Accessories:
  1. Recessed Shade Pocket: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure designed for recessed ceiling installation; with front, top, and back formed as one piece, end plates, and removable bottom closure panel.
    - a. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than height indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Provide pocket with lip at lower edge to support acoustical ceiling panel.
  2. Closure Panel and Wall Clip: Removable aluminum panel designed for installation at bottom of site-constructed ceiling recess or pocket and for snap-in attachment to wall clip without fasteners.
    - a. Closure-Panel Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Side Channels: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at sides of shades as shades are drawn down. Provide side channels with shadeband guides or other means of aligning shadebands with channels at tops.
  4. Bottom (Sill) Channel or Angle: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at bottoms of shades when shades are closed.
  5. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
  - 1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
  - 2. Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - 3. Roll Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Orientation on Shadeband: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Openness Factor: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Light-Blocking Fabric: Opaque fabric, stain and fade resistant.
  - 1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
  - 2. Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - 3. Roll Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Orientation on Shadeband: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Features: Washable.
  - 6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 degrees F:
  - 1. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible, except as follows:
  - 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, locations of connections to building electrical system, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Opaque Shadebands: Located so shadeband is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
- B. Electrical Connections: Connect motor-operated roller shades to building electrical system.
- C. Roller Shade Locations: As indicated on Drawings.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller shades.

END OF SECTION 12 2413

## SECTION 12 3623.13 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plastic-laminate-clad countertops.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product.

B. Shop Drawings: For plastic-laminate-clad countertops.

1. Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Detail fabrication and installation, including field joints.
2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate-clad countertops.

C. Samples for Verification: As follows:

1. Plastic Laminates: For each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required, 8 by 10 inches in size.
2. Fabrication Sample: For each type and profile of countertop required, provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Fabricator.

B. Product Certificates: For the following:

1. High-pressure decorative laminate.
2. Adhesives.
3. Composite wood products.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver countertops only after casework and supports on which they will be installed have been completed in installation areas.
- B. Store countertops in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
- C. Keep surfaces of countertops covered with protective covering during handling and installation.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install countertops until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 degrees F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of plastic-laminate-clad countertops indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- B. Grade: Custom.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: ISO 4586-3, Grade HGS.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Formica Corporation.
    - b. Laminart LLC.
    - c. Nevamar Company, LLC.
    - d. Pionite; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.
    - e. Wilsonart LLC.
- D. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: See Finish Selections – Interior.
- E. Edge Treatment: 3.0-mm PVC edging.
- F. Core Material: MDF.

## G. Core Thickness: 3/4 inch.

1. Build up countertop thickness to 1-1/2 inches at front, back, and ends with additional layers of core material laminated to top.

## H. Backer Sheet: Provide plastic-laminate backer sheet, ISO 4586-3, grade to match exposed surface, on underside of countertop substrate.

## I. Paper Backing: Provide paper backing on underside of countertop substrate.

## 2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

## A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard unless otherwise indicated.

## B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of countertop and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.

1. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard, ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

## A. Wire-Management Grommets: Circular, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.

1. Outside Diameter: 2 inches.
2. Color: Black,

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

## A. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Type II water-resistant type as selected by fabricator to comply with requirements.

1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

## A. Fabricate countertops to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch over base cabinets. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:

1. Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.

## B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

- C. Shop cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing countertops, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
  - 1. Provide cutouts for electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
  - 2. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.
- C. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- D. Countertop Installation: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
  - 1. Install countertops level and true in line. Use concealed shims as required to maintain not more than a 1/8-inch-in-96-inches variation from a straight, level plane.
  - 2. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches on center. and to walls with adhesive.
  - 3. Seal joints between countertop and backsplash, if any, and joints where countertop and backsplash abut walls with mildew-resistant silicone sealant or another permanently elastic sealing compound recommended by countertop material manufacturer.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace countertops. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean countertops on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- C. Protection: Provide Kraft paper or other suitable covering over countertop surfaces, taped to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches on center. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 12 3623.13



## SECTION 12 3661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid surface material countertops.
2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
3. Solid surface material end splashes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 6116 "Solid Surfacing Fabrications" for wall panels.
2. Section 12.3661.19 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops" for countertop brackets.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For countertop materials and sinks.

B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.
2. One full-size solid surface material countertop, with front edge and backsplash, 8 by 10 inches, of construction and in configuration specified.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Fabricator.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS – SS-1

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wilsonart LLC; product or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - b. Durasein Solid Surface; a brand of Relang International, LLC.
    - c. Formica Corporation.
    - d. LG Hausys, Ltd.
  - 2. Type: Standard unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Colors and Patterns: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.
- B. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Configuration:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
  - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
  - 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.

## C. Countertops:

1. 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.

## D. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material.

## E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
2. Install integral sink bowls in quartz countertops in the shop.

## F. Joints:

1. Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
  - a. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.

## G. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
  - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

## A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.

## B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.

- B. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- D. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- E. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- F. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- G. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 12 3661.16

## SECTION 12 3661.19 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
2. Quartz agglomerate backsplashes.
3. Quartz agglomerate end splashes.
4. Countertop brackets.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 12 3661.16 "Solid Surfacing Countertops" for solid surface countertops.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For countertop materials.

B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.
2. One full-size quartz agglomerate countertop, with front edge, 8 by 10 inches, of construction and in configuration specified.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS – QS-1

- A. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of polymers, resins, and pigment and complying with ISFA 3-01.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wilsonart LLC product or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Cosentino North America; C&C North America, Inc.
    - b. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - c. LG Hausys, Ltd.
  - 2. Colors and Patterns: See Finish Selections – Interior on Drawings.
- B. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Countertop Brackets:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Iron Supports; Standard Front Mount Countertop L Bracket, or comparable product approved by the Architect.
  - 2. Description: L-shaped counter bracket.
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Dimensions: 2.5 inches wide by 1/2-inch thick.

- c. Size: To suit application unless indicated on Drawings.
  - 1) Available Size Range: 8-inch deep by 6-inch high to 20-inch deep to 14-inch high.
- d. Mounting: Provided with (3) predrilled mounting holes sized for 14 by 2-1/2 inch Phillips flat head screws, included, for attachment to wood framing.
- e. Finish: Premium powder coat.
- f. Color: Matte black.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions and the AWI/AWMAC/WT's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Configuration:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
  - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
  - 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- C. Countertops: 3/4-inch- thick, quartz agglomerate with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: 3/4-inch- thick, quartz agglomerate.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- F. Joints:
  - 1. Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
    - a. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.
    - b. Joint Type, Bonded: 1/32 inch or less in width.
    - c. Joint Type, Grouted: 1/16 inch in width.
    - d. Joint Type, Sealant Filled: 1/16 inch in width.
- G. Cutouts and Holes:
  - 1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
    - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
  - 2. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertop brackets in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- D. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- E. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- F. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
- G. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 12 3661.19



## SECTION 124813 - ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Recessed entrance walk-off mats.
- B. Related Requirements.
  - 1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place."

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type Product. Include:
  - 1. Manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail showing layout of mat specified including details indicating construction relative to materials, direction of traffic, spline locations, profiles, anchors and accessories.
- C. Samples for Verification
  - 1. Submit an assembled section of floor mat with selected tread insert showing each type of color for exposed floor mat and accessories required.

#### 1.3 INFORMATONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Certificate: Compliant with slip resistant requirements.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data in the form of manufacturer's printed instructions for cleaning and maintaining floor mats.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain floor mats and frames from one source of a single manufacturer.
- B. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

- C. Flammability in accordance with ASTM E648, Class I, Critical Radiant Flux, minimum 0.45 watts/m<sup>2</sup>
- D. Slip resistance in accordance with ASTM D-2047-96, Coefficient of Friction, minimum 0.60 for accessible routes.
- E. Standard rolling load performance factory tested at 300 lb./wheel with larger loading requirements as specified (load applied to a solid 5-inch by 2-inch wide polyurethane wheel, 1000 passes without damage).
- F. Utilize superior structural aluminum alloy 5000 series for tile components.
- G. Machined by a CNC mill to ensure accuracy and consistency of the pattern.
- H. Utilize a manufacturer that is ISO 9001 & 14001 certified.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to the project site ready for use and fabricated in as large sections and assemblies as practical, in unopened original factory packaging clearly labeled to identify manufacturer.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field measurements:
  - 1. Check actual openings for aluminum tile system by accurate field measurements before fabrication.
  - 2. Record actual measurements on final shop drawings.
  - 3. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALK-OFF MATS – WM-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Construction Specialties, Inc. (cet@c-sgroup.com, 800-233-8493); Floormations (FLM) or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. American Floor Mats.
  - 2. Nystrom.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, alloy 5000 series for floor tile fabrication.
- B. 3M Dual Lock

## 2.3 FLOOR MAT/GRID

- A. Mechanically fabricated from solid 5052-H32 aluminum plate with a minimum thickness of 0.25 inch.
- B. Machining will have slots providing free area for fall through of dirt and debris.
- C. Machining will also allow for recessed installation of chosen inserts.
- D. Fully fabricated modules will be supplied in clear anodized finish.
- E. Height: See Drawings.

## 2.4 TREAD INSERT

- A. Carpet Inserts:
  - 1. Description: 100 percent solution dyed Nylon 6 fiber, with non-woven synthetic backing, designed for high traffic areas.
  - 2. Products:
    - a. CP- Shaw Path series.
    - b. Patcraft Paseo series Carpet Insert.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of conditions: Examine areas and conditions under which work is to be performed and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion.
  - 1. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Manufacturer shall offer assistance and guidance to provide a template of irregular shaped mat assemblies to ensure a proper installation.
- B. Optional: Manufacturer to provide factory supplied field measurement to ensure precise installation.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work of this section in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and approved submittals and shop drawings.
- B. Set mat at height recommended by manufacturer for most effective cleaning action.

- C. Coordinate top of mat surface with bottom of doors that swing across to provide ample clearance between door and mat.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. After completing required concrete work, provide temporary filler of plywood or fiberboard in recess, and cover with plywood protective flooring.
- B. Maintain protection until construction traffic has ended and project is near time of substantial completion.
- C. Defer installation of floor mats until time of substantial completion of Project.

END OF SECTION 12 4813

## SECTION 13 4800.13 - SOUND CONTROL WINDOW SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Factory-assembled, sound control (acoustic) window systems:
  - a. Steel window frames with stops;
  - b. Glazing;
  - c. Sound-absorbing material;
  - d. Concealed fasteners.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sound Rating: Provide window assemblies that have been fabricated as sound-retardant units, tested according to ASTM E 90 and have the following certified Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating as determined according to ASTM E 413.
1. STC Rating: As indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product, including:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles and finishes.
2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show details of each frame type, elevations of window designs, details of openings, and details of construction, installation and anchorage.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit full array of manufacturer's colors.

D. Samples for Verification: For each selection of color, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Window Frames: 12 inches long.

- E. Product Schedule: For each sound control window system. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Certificates: Material certificates signed by the manufacturer certifying that each sound control window complies with the project requirements.
- C. Field test reports from qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements of installed sound control windows.
- D. Test Reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results from Part 3 of this Section relative to compliance of sound ratings with the indicated requirements.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide sound control windows, including stops, glazing, frame and sound-absorbing material essential for sound control as an assembly and by a single firm specializing in producing this type of work for a minimum of ten (10) years.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to sound control window system manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- C. Acoustical Performance
  - 1. Acoustical window manufacturer will be required to submit acoustical performance data in the form of up-to-date test reports from an independent testing laboratory indicating the windows to be provided will have the required Sound Transmission Class Rating (ASTM E-90-90).

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

- A. Acoustic window materials and associated hardware shall be guaranteed against defective workmanship for one (1) year from date of shipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOUND-CONTROL WINDOW SYSTEMS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide IAC Acoustics, A Division of Sound Seal ([www.iacacoustics.com](http://www.iacacoustics.com), 630.270.1790); Noise-Lock Windows or comparable product, approved by the Architect, by the following:
  - 1. Noise Barriers, LLP.
- B. Description: Single- and/or double-glazed acoustic windows including frames with stops, glazing, sound-absorbing material, and concealed fasteners

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Glass Pane(s) Minimum Thickness:
  - 1. STC 59 Rating: Double pane (laminated) glass:
    - a. Glass Pane 1: 1/2-inch (13 mm).
    - b. Glass Pane 2: 3/8-inch (10 mm)
- B. Glass Type:
  - 1. Glass Pane 1: 1/2-inch laminated safety glass, clear.
  - 2. Glass Pane 2: 3/8-inch laminated safety glass, clear.
- C. Frames:
  - 1. Depth: 1-1/4 inch deep.
  - 2. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Material: 12-gauge cold rolled, galvanized steel with an A60 coating weight.
  - 4. Reinforcement: Frame reinforced and filled with sound-absorbing acoustic fill.
  - 5. Corners: Inside and outside corners shall be mitered and interlocked to hairline measurements, made square, continuously welded, and ground smooth, flush and invisible.
- D. Glazing Acoustical Seals:
  - 1. Vibration-isolating resilient gaskets, U-shaped and continuous santoprene UV grade 65-75 durometer black.
  - 2. Self-contained, sound absorptive interior perimeter of not less than 22-gage (0.76 mm) steel shall be perforated and pre-finished black.
  - 3. Desiccant material shall be incorporated into multiple glazed units.

## E. Stops:

1. Size: 1-inch (25mm) high and readily removable.
2. Material: Fabricated from not less than 16 gauge (2 mm) rolled steel sections predrilled and aligned with frame to form tight square acoustical joints.
3. Stop Fasteners: Concealed.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

## A. General: Fabricate units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle.

1. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles.
2. Wherever practical, fit and assemble units in the manufacturer's plant.
3. Identify work that is not permanently factory-assembled before shipment to ensure proper assembly at the Project site.
4. Weld exposed joints continuously: grind, fill dress and make smooth flush and invisible.

## B. Assembly: The assembly of the acoustic window units including frames, stops, glazing, acoustic seals, sound-absorbing material and concealed fasteners shall take place at the factory to ensure required noise reduction is achieved. Glazing shall not need to be removed to facilitate fastening or anchoring at the job site.

1. Field-glaze windows when required by window size.

## 2.4 FINISH

## A. Factory Finish:

1. Metal Primer: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer.
2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard polyester powder coating.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 GENERAL

## A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions, product carton instructions and approved shop drawings.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Adjacent Surfaces Protection: Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during product installation.
- B. Adjacent Construction: Coordinate window assembly details with details of adjacent work to ensure proper attachments and clean junctions.



- A. Install work in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions, approved shop drawings and these specifications using only factory-trained personnel as required by the Manufacturer and approved by the Architect.
  - 1. Install windows and shim accordingly to allow for a plumb and square installation without excessive clearances.
    - a. Glaze windows not shop-glazed.
  - 2. During installation, solidly pack acoustic insulation around frames that are installed in stud and gypsum-wallboard partitions.
  - 3. Caulk exterior joint prior to painting.
  - 4. Install sound control window assemblies during finish phase of construction to protect units from damage.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Upon completion of this portion of work, and prior to its acceptance by the Owner, secure a visit to the job site by a qualified representative of the manufacturer of the acoustical door system(s) to confirm that installation is in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 FIELD TESTING

- A. Testing Agency: Provide the service of an independent testing agency experienced in testing sound control windows and is acceptable to architect to perform sound control field-testing.
- B. Testing Requirements: Conduct field tests according to ASTM E336 with results calculated according to ASTM E413 to confirm that the operating field NIC values are within 5 dB of laboratory STC values.
- C. Test results shall be reported promptly and in writing by testing agency to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Repair or replace components of sound control windows where test results indicate STC rating does not meet requirements.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct the Owner's maintenance personnel regarding the maintenance of acoustic windows.

END OF SECTION 13 4800.13

## SECTION 13 4800.16 - SOUND CONTROL SWINGING DOOR SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sound control (acoustic) access (door) systems, including:
  - a. Steel door frames with stops
  - b. Steel doors.
  - c. Factory supplied and installed hardware such as cam-lift hinges.
  - d. Wood veneer.
  - e. Acoustical seals.
  - f. Glazing

#### 1.2 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sound Rating: Provide door and frame assemblies that have been fabricated as sound-retardant units, tested according to ASTM E 90 and have the following certified Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating as determined according to ASTM E 413.

1. STC Rating: As indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product. Include:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles and finishes.
2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show details of each frame type, elevations of door designs, details of openings, and details of construction, installation and anchorage.

C. Samples:

1. Submit specified wood veneer with full array of transparent finish in manufacturer's standards sizes.

D. Sample for Verification:

1. Wood Veneer: Provide door sample, 6 inches by 6 inches, with wood veneer laminated to both door faces and edges, illustrating typical door with selected wood veneer and transparent finish.

- E. Product Schedule: For each sound control door system. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Photographs and quality control inspection reports will be provided prior to shipment. Photograph including doors with all pertinent hardware installed and hanging, in the completed position. Door open and door closed photographs will be provided for each door.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
- C. Certificates: Material certificates signed by the manufacturer certifying that each sound control window complies with the project requirements.
- D. Field test reports from qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements of installed sound control windows.
- E. Test Reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results from Part 3 of this Section relative to compliance of sound ratings with the indicated requirements.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For door, hardware and finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide sound control doors and frames, including gaskets, hinges and other hardware items essential for sound control as an assembly and by a single firm specializing in producing this type of work for a minimum of ten (10) years.
- B. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures which, when approved by the Architect, will become the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the work.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to sound control swinging door system manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- D. Acoustical Performance
  - 1. Acoustical door manufacturer will be required to submit acoustical performance data in the form of up-to-date test reports from an independent testing laboratory indicating the doors to be provided will have the required Sound Transmission Class Rating (ASTM E-90-90).

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Acoustic door materials and hardware shall be guaranteed against defective workmanship for one (1) year from date of shipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SOUND-CONTROL DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide IAC Acoustics, A Division of Sound Seal ([www.iacacoustics.com](http://www.iacacoustics.com), 630.270.1790); Noise-Lock Doors or comparable product, approved by the Architect, by the following:
  - 1. Noise Barriers, LLP.
- B. Description: Single- and/or double-glazed leaf acoustic doors and frames with cam lift hinges and split frames; steel and wood veneer.

## 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Door Leaf Minimum Thickness:
  - 1. STC 47 thru STC 53 Rating: 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
  - 2. See Door Schedule on Drawings.
- B. Door Leafs and Door Stiffeners :
  - 1. Material: 14 gauge (2 mm) cold rolled, galvanized steel with an A60 coating weight.
  - 2. Door Core: 6 lb density, sound absorbing, and damping elements.
- C. Wood Veneer:
  - 1. Species: White birch, rotary cut.
- D. Frames:
  - 1. Material: 14 gauge cold rolled, galvanized steel with an A60 coating weight.
  - 2. Configuration: Furnished "split" in two (2) pieces, inside and outside, that are mitered and welded.
- E. Acoustic Seals:
  - 1. Door jambs, meeting stiles of double doors and at the head of the door and frame shall receive self-aligning magnetic, fire resistant (if UL rated)] compression seals.
    - a. Door(s) to be held in closed position by magnetic force of perimeter seals.

- F. Acoustic labyrinth shall be created when door is in closed position. Bottom of door leaf shall contain continuous, adjustable, gravity-activated seal that shall compress against the floor as the door is closed.
1. Raised sills and threshold drop seals will not be acceptable.
  2. Acoustic Seal Assemblies: Double magnetic type at head and jamb seals.
- G. Jamb anchors: Provide jamb anchors as determined by wall construction. Anchors are to be spaced at 12 inches (305 mm) on center (maximum) and are to be of a corrosion resistant material.
- H. Hardware:
1. Hinges: Cam-lift, butt-type, hinges, US26D finish (Hinge manufacturer to furnish laboratory test data certifying that hinges of identical design have been cycled a minimum of 125,000 times while supporting a door leaf weighing a minimum of 350 lbs.); provided by manufacturer.
    - a. Quantities of hinges as follows:
      - 1) For door leaf thickness less than or equal to 2-1/2 inches (64):
        - a) Two (2) hinges required per leaf for openings up to and including 96 inches (2438 mm) high.
        - b) Three (3) hinges required per leaf for openings up to and including 120 inches (3048 mm) high.
      - c) For door leaf thickness greater than 2-1/2 inches (64):
        - d) Three (3) hinges required per leaf for openings up to and including 96 inches (2438 mm) high.
        - e) Four (4) hinges required per leaf for openings up to and including 120 inches (3048 mm) high.
  2. Closers: Factory-installed.
    - a. Manufacturers: LCN or Norton.
  3. Pull Handles: 1-inch (25 mm) diameter by 9-inch (229 mm) overall length, 3-inch (76 mm) projection, US28 finish, factory installed.
  4. Push Plates: 4-inch (102 mm) wide by 16-inch (406 mm) high by 0.050-inch (1 mm) thick, US32D finish, factory installed.
  5. Latchsets/Locksets: Provided and installed by door manufacturer. Refer to finish hardware section for manufacturer, type and details.
  6. Exit Devices: Provided and installed by door manufacturer. Refer to finish hardware section for manufacturer, type and details.
  7. Flushbolts: Surface mounted to inactive leaf, top and bottom (used on double leaf doors). Factory installed.
    - a. Manufacturer: Glynn-Johnson.
  8. Coordinators: Used on double leaf doors when both leaves need to be active. Factory installed.
    - a. Manufacturer: Dorma.
  9. See Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."

## I. Hardware Reinforcement

1. Hinges: Minimum of 1/4-inch (6 mm) thick by 2-inch (51 mm) wide by 7-1/2 inch (191 mm) long.
2. Frames: Minimum of 3/16-inch (5 mm) thick for strikes and #11 (3 mm) gauge for closers.
3. Doors: Minimum of #11 (3 mm) gauge for lock boxes and closers.

## J. Glazing - Laminated:

1. Non-Fire Rated: Provide factory-installed, aluminum extruded stops and moldings with true mitered corners for double, glazed assemblies.
  - a. Size of vision lite is to be determined from the door schedule.
  - b. Safety glass glazing product meeting doors' sound control and labeling requirements is acceptable.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles. Wherever practical, fit and assemble units in the manufacturer's plant. Identify work that is not permanently factory-assembled before shipment to ensure proper assembly at the Project site. Weld exposed joints continuously: grind, fill dress and make smooth flush and invisible.
- B. Assembly and adjustment of door leaf, frame, acoustic seals, hinges and associated finish hardware shall take place at the factory to insure ease of installation, reliable operation and acoustic performance.
  1. Entire manufactured assembly shall be shipped to job site ready to install and operate.

## 2.4 FINISHES

## A. Factory Finish:

1. Metals:
  - a. Metal Primer: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer.
  - b. Finish: Manufacturer's standard polyester powder coating.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
2. Wood Veneer:
  - a. Description: Paper-backed, wood veneer shall be applied as a finish to all sides of the door.
  - b. Species: White birch, rotary cut.
  - c. Finish: Transparent finish.

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product carton instructions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Adjacent Surfaces Protection: Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during product installation.
- B. Adjacent Construction: Coordinate door assembly details with details of adjacent work to ensure proper attachments and clean junctions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions, approved shop drawings and these specifications using only factory-trained personnel as required by the Manufacturer and approved by the Architect.
  - 1. Hang doors and adjust for free swinging operation without binding, sticking, sagging or excessive clearances.
  - 2. During installation, solidly pack acoustic insulation around frames that are installed in stud and gypsum-wallboard partitions.
  - 3. Caulk exterior joint prior to painting.
  - 4. Install sound control door assemblies during finish phase of construction to protect units from damage.
  - 5. When installation is otherwise complete, adjust operating hardware for proper operation and function.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Upon completion of this portion of work, secure a visit to the job site by a qualified representative of the manufacturer of the acoustical door system(s) to confirm that installation is in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.5 FIELD TESTING

- A. Testing Agency: Provide the service of an independent testing agency experienced in testing sound control doors and is acceptable to Architect to perform sound control field-testing.
- B. Selection: Randomly selected doors, except not-completely installed sound doors.

- C. Testing Requirements: Conduct field tests according to ASTM E336 with results calculated according to ASTM E413 to confirm that the operating field NIC values are within 5 dB of laboratory STC values.
- D. Test results shall be reported promptly and in writing by testing agency to Contractor and Architect.
- E. Repair or replace components of sound control doors where test results indicate STC rating does not meet requirements.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct the Owner's maintenance personnel regarding operation and maintenance of all acoustic doors.

END OF SECTION 13 4800.16



## SECTION 13 4800.19 - SOUND CONTROL SLIDING DOOR SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single panel sliding acoustic door, top hung with operating hardware and electric controls with man-door for egress.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 13 4800.16 "Sound Control Swinging Door System" for egress man-door.

#### 1.2 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sound Rating: Provide door and frame assemblies that have been fabricated as sound-retardant units, tested according to ASTM E 90 and have the following certified Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating as determined according to ASTM E 413.

1. STC Rating: 51.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product including:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles and finishes.
2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Shop Drawings showing details of each frame type, elevations of door designs, details of openings, and details of construction, installation and anchorage.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit full array of manufacturer's colors.

D. Samples for Verification: For each selection of color, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Frame: 12 inches long.

E. Product Schedule: For each sound control door system. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Certificates: Material certificates signed by the manufacturer certifying that each sound control window complies with the project requirements.
- C. Field test reports from qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements of installed sound control windows.
- D. Test Reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results from Part 3 of this Section relative to compliance of sound ratings with the indicated requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures which, when approved by the Architect, will become the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the work.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes and maintenance to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide sound control doors and frames, including gaskets, operators and other hardware items essential for sound control as an assembly and by a single firm specializing in producing this type of work for a minimum of ten (10) years.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to sound control window system manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- C. Acoustical Performance
  - 1. Acoustical door manufacturer will be required to submit acoustical performance data in the form of up-to-date test reports from an independent testing laboratory indicating the doors to be provided will have the required Sound Transmission Class Rating (ASTM E-90-90).

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Acoustic door materials and hardware shall be guaranteed against defective workmanship for one (1) year from date of shipment.

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide IAC Acoustics ([www.iacacoustics.com](http://www.iacacoustics.com), 630-270-1790); Super Noise Lock sliding acoustic door or comparable product, approved by the Architect.
- B. Description: Single panel sliding acoustic door, top hung with operating hardware and electric controls, with man-door for egress.

## 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Panels:
  - 1. Reinforced steel panels, top hung, electrically operated and filled with sound absorbing and damping elements.
  - 2. Provide internal stiffeners as required to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Sound Traps:
  - 1. Provide around head and jambs and attach to building.
  - 2. Traps shall be envelope type with 1-inch clearance between the door panel and 12-inch overlap on head and jambs when the door is in the closed position.
  - 3. At door bottom, provide continuous friction type seal that is adjustable.
  - 4. Provide bulb type or flexible wipe type seal at each termination of sound trap, except at sill.
- C. Operator:
  - 1. Motor operator to operate door at 30 fpm (max) not using more than 75 percent of the rated capacity of the motor.
  - 2. Operator shall be electric and include motors, adjustable clutch, brake, overload protection, limit switches, heavy duty release, travelers and chain.
  - 3. Design operators for manual operation in case of power failure.
  - 4. Cover operators with removable cover.
- D. Controls:
  - 1. Include reversing starter, open and close limit switches, manual overriding switch, open and close constant push button stations with motor disconnect switch at motor.
- E. Egress Man-Door:
  - 1. See Section 13 4800.16 "Sound Control Swinging Door."

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles.

- B. Wherever practical, fit and assemble units in the manufacturer's plant.
- C. Identify work that is not permanently factory-assembled before shipment to ensure proper assembly at the Project site.
- D. Weld exposed joints continuously: grind, fill dress and make smooth flush and invisible.
- E. Install egress man-door.

## 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Factory Finish:
  - 1. Metal Primer: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer.
  - 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard polyester powder coating.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product carton instructions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Adjacent Surfaces Protection: Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during product installation.
- B. Adjacent Construction: Coordinate door assembly details with details of adjacent work to ensure proper attachments and clean junctions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with approved shop drawings and these specifications using only factory-trained personnel as required by the Manufacturer and approved by the Architect.
  - 1. Hang doors and adjust for free moving operation without binding, sticking, sagging or excessive clearances.
  - 2. Caulk exterior joint prior to painting.
  - 3. When installation is otherwise complete, adjust operating hardware for proper operation and function.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Upon completion of this portion of work, secure a visit to the job site by a qualified representative of the manufacturer of the acoustical door system(s) to confirm that installation is in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 FIELD TESTING

- A. Testing Agency: Employ and pay an independent testing agency to perform sound control field testing.
- B. Testing Requirements: Conduct field tests according to ASTM E336 with results calculated according to ASTM E413 to confirm that the operating field NIC values are within 5 dB of laboratory STC values of slab.
- C. Test results shall be reported promptly and in writing by testing agency to Architect.
- D. Repair or replace components of sound control doors where test results indicate STC rating does not meet requirements.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct the Owner's maintenance personnel regarding operation and maintenance of all acoustic doors.

END OF SECTION 13 4800.19

## SECTION 14 2400 – HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hydraulic elevators.

B. Work Required

1. The work required under this section consists of all labor, materials and services required for the complete installation (including operational verification) of all the equipment required for the elevator(s) as herein specified.
2. All work shall be performed in a first class, safe and workmanlike manner.
3. In all cases where a device or part of the equipment is herein referred to in the singular, it is intended that such reference shall apply to as many of such devices or parts as are required to make complete installation.

C. Related Sections

1. General: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section and are performed by trades other than the elevator manufacturer/installer.
2. Section 01 5000 “Temporary Facilities and Controls” for protection of floor openings and personnel barriers; temporary power and lighting.
3. Section 03 3000 “Cast-In-Place Concrete” for elevator pit, elevator motor and pump foundation, and grouting thresholds.
4. Section 05 5000 “Metal Fabrications: for pit ladder, supports for entrances and rails, and hoisting beam at top of elevator hoistway.

#### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Description:

1. Equipment Description: Hole-less hydraulic elevator with machine-room less application
2. Equipment Control: Elevonic Control System.
3. IoT Connectivity: Elevator connected to Otis ONE IoT Platform
4. Quantity of Elevators: 1 of 1
5. Elevator Stop Designations:
  - a. Front- 1
  - b. Rear- 2
6. Stops: 2
7. Openings: Front and Rear
8. Travel: 13 ft 4 in 0
9. Rated Capacity: 3000 lbs. (1361 kg)
10. Rated Speed: 125 fpm (0.64 mps)

11. Platform Size: 6'-6 3/4" wide by 6'-2 3/4" deep.
12. Clear Cab Height: 7'-7 11/16" (2330 mm)
13. Main Power Supply: 480 volts, plus/minus 5 percent of normal, three-phase, with a separate equipment grounding conductor.
14. Car Lighting Power Supply: 120 volts, single-phase, 15 amps, 60 Hz.
15. Machine Location: No machine-room required, tank and controller in hoistway pit.
16. Signal Fixtures:- Manufacturer's standard with metal button targets.
17. Controller Location: Inside hoistway, accessible by a door in a side hoistway wall on the 1st or 2nd landing. (1st landing only if rear entrance).
18. Stopping Accuracy: Plus/minus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) under any loading condition or direction of travel.
19. Operation: Simplex Collective: Using a microprocessor-based controller, operation shall be automatic by means of the car and hall buttons. If all calls in the system have been answered, the car shall park at the last landing served.
20. Operation Features
  - a. Full Collective Operation
  - b. Anti-nuisance
  - c. Fan and Light Protection
  - d. Independent Service
  - e. Firefighters' Service Phase I and Phase II
  - f. Top of Car Inspection
  - g. Zoned Access at Bottom Landing
  - h. Zoned Access at Upper Landing
  - i. Car Secure Access
  - j. Independent Service
21. Door Control Features:
  - a. Door control to open doors automatically when car arrives at a landing in response to a normal hall or car call.
  - b. Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device that will stop and reopen the car door(s) and hoistway door(s) automatically should the door(s) become obstructed by an object or person.
  - c. Door protection shall consist of a two dimensional, multi-beam array projecting across the car door opening.
  - d. Door nudging operation to occur if doors are prevented from closing for an adjustable period of time.
22. Provide equipment for seismic conditions.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for each system proposed for use. Include the following:
  1. Signal and operating fixtures, operating panels and indicators.
  2. Cab design, dimensions and layout.
  3. Hoistway-door and frame details.
  4. Electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
  5. Expected heat dissipation of elevator equipment in hoistway (BTU).
  6. Color selection chart for Cab and Entrances.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit approval layout drawings. Include the following:

1. Car, guide rails, buffers, and other components in hoistway.
2. Maximum rail bracket spacing.
3. Maximum loads imposed on guide rails requiring load transfer to building structure.
4. Clearances and travel of car.
5. Clear inside hoistway and pit dimensions.
6. Location and sizes of access doors, hoistway entrances and frames.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturer's standard operations and maintenance manual.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Elevator manufacturer shall be ISO 9001 certified.
- B. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of fifteen years of experience in the fabrication, installation and service of elevators.
- C. Installer: Elevators shall be installed by the manufacturer.
- D. Permits, Inspections and Certificates: The Elevator Contractor shall obtain and pay for necessary Municipal or State Inspection and permit as required by the elevator inspection authority, and make such tests as are called for by the regulations of such authorities. These tests shall be made in the presence of such authorities or their authorized representatives.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Should the building or the site not be prepared to receive the elevator equipment at the agreed upon date, the General Contractor will be responsible to provide a proper and suitable storage area on or off the premises.
- B. Should the storage area be off-site and the equipment not yet delivered, then the elevator contractor, upon notification from the General Contractor, will divert the elevator equipment to the storage area. If the equipment has already been delivered to the site, then the General Contractor shall transport the elevator equipment to the storage area. The cost of elevator equipment taken to storage by either party, storage and redelivery to the job site shall not be at the expense of the elevator contractor.



## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. The elevator contractor's acceptance is conditional on the understanding that their warranty covers defective material and workmanship. The warranty period shall not extend longer than one (1) year from the date of completion or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier, of each elevator. The warranty excludes: ordinary wear and tear, improper use, vandalism, abuse, misuse, or neglect or any other causes beyond the control of the elevator contractor and this express warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

- A. Maintenance service consisting of regular examinations and adjustments of the elevator equipment shall be provided by the elevator contractor for a period of 12 months after the elevator has been turned over for the customer's use. This service shall not be subcontracted but shall be performed by the elevator contractor. All work shall be performed by competent employees during regular working hours of regular working days. This service shall not cover adjustments, repairs or replacement of parts due to negligence, misuse, abuse or accidents caused by persons other than the elevator contractor. Only genuine parts and supplies as used in the manufacture and installation of the original equipment shall be provided.
- B. The elevator control system must:
1. Provide in the controller the necessary devices to run the elevator on inspection operation.
  2. Provide on top of the car the necessary devices to run the elevator in inspection operation.
  3. Provide in the controller an emergency stop switch. This emergency stop switch when opened disconnects power from the brake and prevents the motor from running.
  4. (Optional) Provide the means from the controller to reset elevator earthquake operation.
- C. Provide system capabilities to enable a remote expert to create a live, interactive connection with the elevator system to enable the following functions:
1. Remotely diagnose elevator issues with a remote team of experts
  2. Remotely return an elevator to service
  3. Provide real-time status updates via email.
  4. Remotely make changes to selected elevator functions including:
    - a. Control building traffic: Restrict floor access, remove car from group operation, shut down elevator, select up peak/down peak mode and activate independent service.
    - b. Conserve energy: Activate cab light energy save mode, activate fan energy save mode, shut down car(s).
    - c. Improve passenger experience: Extend door open times, change parking floor, activate auto car full, activate anti-nuisance, advance door opening, door nudging, extend specific floor extended opening time, release trapped passengers.

## 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Otis Worldwide Corporation; Hydrofit 3012R or comparable products by one of the following:
  - 1. Canton Elevator, Inc.
  - 2. KONE Inc.
  - 3. MEI.
  - 4. ThyssenKrupp Elevator.
- B. Description: Hydraulic machine room-less holeless elevator system.

## 2.2 DESIGN AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Provide machine-roomless, holeless hydraulic elevators from Otis Elevator Company. The control system and car design based on materials and systems manufactured by Otis Elevator Company. Specifically, the system shall consist of the following components:
  - 1. The entire hydraulic system and the controller shall be located inside the hoistway. No extra machine room or control closet space is required.
  - 2. LED lighting standard in ceiling lights and elevator fixtures.
  - 3. Sleep mode operation for LED ceiling lights and car fan.
- B. Approved Installer: Otis Elevator Company

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT: MACHINE COMPONENTS

- A. The hydraulic system shall be of compact design suitable for operation under the required pressure. The power component shall be mounted in the hydraulic-fluid storage tank. The control valve shall control flow for up and down directions hydraulically and shall include an integral check valve. A control section including control solenoids shall direct the main valve and control: up and down starting, acceleration, transition from full speed to leveling speed, up and down stops, pressure relief and manual lowering. All of these functions shall be fully adjustable for maximum smoothness and to meet contract conditions. System to be provided with a low-pressure switch and a shut-off valve.
- B. The entire hydraulic system with hydraulic-fluid storage tank, power component and valves shall be located in elevator machine room.in the hoistway pit and be easily accessible for maintenance through an access door in the hoistway wall.
- C. A microprocessor-based controller shall be provided, including necessary starting switches together with all relays, switches, solid-state components and hardware required for operation, including door operation, as described herein. A three (3) phase overload device shall be provided to protect the motor against overloading.

- D. Controller Location: The controller shall be located together with the hydraulic system in the hoistway pit and be easily accessible for maintenance through the same access door that is also used for the hydraulic system.
- E. A manual lowering feature shall permit lowering the elevator at slow speed in the event of power failure or for adjusting purposes.
- F. Pressure Switch
- G. Low-oil control (where required)

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT: HOISTWAY COMPONENTS

- A. Plunger(s) and Cylinder(s): Each cylinder shall be constructed of steel pipe of sufficient thickness and suitable for the operating pressure. The top of each cylinder shall be equipped with a cylinder head with a drip ring to collect any oil seepage as well as an internal guide ring and self-adjusting packing. Each plunger shall be constructed of selected steel tubing or pipe of proper diameter machined true and smooth with a fine polished finish. Each plunger shall be provided with a stop ring electrically welded to it to prevent the plunger from leaving the cylinder. Each plunger and cylinder shall be installed plumb and shall operate freely with minimum friction.
- B. Car Guide Rails: Tee-section steel rails with brackets and fasteners.
- C. Polyurethane type buffers shall be used.
- D. Wiring: Wiring for hoistway electrical devices included in scope of the elevator system, hall panels, pit emergency stop switch, and the traveling cable for the elevator car.
- E. Hoistway Entrances:
  - 1. Frames: Entrance frames shall be of bolted construction for complete one-piece unit assembly. All frames shall be securely fastened to fixing angles mounted in the hoistway and shall be of UL fire rated steel.
  - 2. Sills Shall Be: Extruded Aluminum Sills at:
    - a. Front- 1
    - b. Rear- 2
  - 3. Doors: Entrance doors shall be of metal construction with vertical channel reinforcements.
  - 4. Fire Rating: Entrance and doors shall be UL fire rated for 1-1/2 hour for M1, M2, M3, D1, and D2 entrance arrangements or 1 hour for D3 entrance arrangements.
  - 5. Frame and Entrance Finishes:
    - a. Brushed Stainless Steel Frames and Entrances at:
      - 1) Front- 1
      - 2) Rear- 2
  - 6. Entrance Marking Plates: Entrance jambs shall be marked with 4-inch by 4-inch (102 mm x 102 mm) plates having raised floor markings with Braille located adjacent to the floor marking. Marking plates shall be provided on both sides of the entrance.
  - 7. Sight Guards: Sight guards will be furnished with all doors painted to match with painted doors, painted black for stainless steel doors.
  - 8. Fascia: Galvanized sheet steel shall be provided at the front of the hoistway.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT: CAR COMPONENTS

- A. Cab:
  - 1. to be selected from manufacturer's catalog of choices.
  - 2. Brushed Stainless Steel finished base plate located at top and bottom.
  - 3. Brushed Stainless Steel finished vertical trim pieces are optional.
- B. Car Front Finish: Stainless steel, brushed.
- C. Car Door Finish: Stainless steel, brushed.
- D. Ceiling Type: Flat ceiling with 4 LED Lights
- E. Ceiling Finish: Stainless steel, brushed.
- F. Emergency Car Lighting: An emergency power unit employing a 6-volt sealed rechargeable battery and totally static circuits shall be provided to illuminate the elevator car in the event of building power failure.
- G. Fan: A one-speed 120 VAC fan will be mounted to the ceiling to facilitate in-car air circulation, meeting A17.1 code requirements. The fan shall be rubber mounted to prevent the transmission of structural vibration and will include a baffle to diffuse audible noise. A switch shall be provided in the car-operating panel to control the fan.
- H. Handrail:
  - 1. Size: 3/8-inch by 2-inch (9.5 mm by 51 mm) flat tubular bars.
  - 2. Location: Provide on side walls.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, brushed.
- I. Threshold: Extruded aluminum.
- J. Emergency Exit Contact: An electrical contact shall be provided on the car-top exit.
- K. Guides: Car roller type guides at the top and the bottom.
- L. Platform: Car platform shall be constructed of metal.
- M. The LED ceiling lights and the fan should automatically shut off when the system is not in use and be powered back up after a passenger calls the elevator and pushes a hall button.
- N. Certificate frame: Provide a Certificate frame with a brushed stainless steel finish.

## 2.6 EQUIPMENT: SIGNAL DEVICES AND FIXTURES

- A. Car Operating Panel: A car operating panel shall be provided which contains all push buttons, key switches, and message indicators for elevator operation. The car operating panel shall have a brushed stainless steel finish.
1. A car operating panel shall be furnished. It shall contain a bank of round stainless steel, mechanical LED illuminated buttons, Flat Flush mounted to the panel and marked to correspond to the landings served. All buttons to have raised numerals and Braille markings. The buttons shall be Lexan 1/8-inch (3mm) projecting buttons, fully illuminated by a white LED.
  2. The car operating panel shall be equipped with the following features:
    - a. Raised markings and Braille to the left hand side of each push-button.
    - b. Car Position Indicator at the top of and integral to the car operating panel.
    - c. Door open and door close buttons.
    - d. Inspection key-switch.
    - e. Elevator Data Plate marked with elevator capacity and car number.
    - f. Help Button: The help button shall initiate two-way communication between the car and a location inside the building, switching over to another location if the call is unanswered, where personnel are available who can take the appropriate action. Visual indicators are provided for call initiation and call acknowledgement.
    - g. Landing Passing Signal: A chime bell shall sound in the car to signal that the car is either stopping at or passing a floor served by the elevator.
    - h. In car stop switch (toggle or key unless local code prohibits use)
    - i. Firefighter's hat
    - j. Firefighter's Phase II Key-switch
    - k. Call Cancel Button
    - l. Firefighter's Phase II Emergency In-Car Operating Instructions: worded according to A17.1 2000, Article 2.27.7.2. - Optional
    - m. Please Exit Symbol: provided with emergency hospital service, Seismic Zones  $\geq 2$  or express priority in the hall. - Optional
- B. Car Position Indicator: A digital, LED car position indicator shall be integral to the car operating panel.
1. Hall Fixtures: Hall fixtures shall be provided with necessary push buttons and key switches for elevator operation. All Hall fixtures shall have a Brushed Stainless Steel Finish.
  2. Hall Buttons:
    - a. Flat flush mounted brushed stainless steel button with blue or white LED illuminating halo.
- C. Car Lantern and Chime: A directional lantern visible from the corridor shall be provided in the car entrance. When the car stops and the doors are opening, the lantern shall indicate the direction in which the car is to travel and a chime will sound.
- D. Access key-switch at top floor in entrance jamb.
- E. Access key-switch at lowest floor in entrance jamb.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Take field dimensions and examine conditions of substrates, supports, and other conditions under which this work is to be performed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of all elevator components except as specifically provided for elsewhere by others.

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION

- A. The elevator contractor shall make a final check of each elevator operation with the Owner or Owner's representative present prior to turning each elevator over for use. The elevator contractor shall determine that control systems and operating devices are functioning properly.

END OF DOCUMENT 14 2400

## SECTION 210500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of this Section includes:

1. Motors.
2. Sleeves without waterstop.
3. Sleeves with waterstop.
4. Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Sleeve-seal systems.
6. Grout.
7. Silicone sealants.
8. Escutcheons.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product, excluding motors which are included in Part 1 of the fire-suppression equipment Sections.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of components.
  - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.

3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MOTORS

#### A. Motor Requirements, General:

1. Content includes motors for use on alternating-current power systems of up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
2. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in equipment schedules or Sections.
3. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Motor Characteristics:

1. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 ft. above sea level.
2. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### C. Polyphase Motors:

1. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
2. Efficiency: Premium Efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Service Factor: 1.15.
4. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - a. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - b. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
5. Multispeed Motors, Multiple Winding: Separate winding for each speed.
6. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
7. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
8. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
9. Insulation: Class F.
10. Code Letter Designation:
  - a. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - b. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
11. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.



D. Additional Requirements for Polyphase Motors:

1. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
2. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - a. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time-rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
  - b. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - c. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - d. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

E. Single-Phase Motors:

1. Motors larger than 1/20 hp must be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - a. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - b. Split phase.
  - c. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - d. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
2. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
3. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
4. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
5. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device will automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

F. Electronically Commutated Motors:

1. Microprocessor-Based Electronic Control Module: Converts 120 V or 240 V single-phase AC power to three-phase DC power to operate the brushless DC motor.
2. Three-phase power motor module with permanent magnet rotor.
3. Circuit board or digital speed controller/LED display.
4. Building Automation System Interface: Via AC voltage signal, DC voltage signal, or Digital Serial Interface (DSI).

## 2.2 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

A. Sleeves without Waterstop:

1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron, with plain ends.

2. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
3. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 24 gauge minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
4. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
5. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange.
6. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange.

B. Sleeves with Waterstop:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC
  - b. CALPICO, Inc.
  - c. GPT; a division of EnPRO Industries
  - d. Metraflex Company (The)
2. Description: Manufactured stainless steel, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

C. Stack-Sleeve Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International
  - b. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC
2. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

D. Sleeve-Seal Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC
  - b. CALPICO, Inc.
  - c. GPT; a division of EnPRO Industries

- d. Metraflex Company (The)
  - e. Proco Products, Inc
2. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
- a. Hydrostatic Seal: 20 psig minimum.
  - b. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
  - c. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - d. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.
- E. Grout:
- 1. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
  - 2. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 3. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- F. Silicone Sealants:
- 1. Silicone Sealant, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
      - 2) ITW Polymers Sealants North America
      - 3) Polymeric Systems, Inc
      - 4) Sherwin-Williams Company (The)
      - 5) Sika Corporation
      - 6) The Dow Chemical Company
      - 7) Tremco Incorporated
    - b. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 2. Silicone Sealant, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Pecora Corporation
  - 2) Sika Corporation
  - 3) The Dow Chemical Company
  - 4) Tremco Incorporated
- b. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
3. Silicone Foam Sealant: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Smooth-On
4. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
  - a. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
  - b. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
  - c. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
  - d. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
  - e. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." The building concentration of formaldehyde shall not exceed half of the indoor recommended exposure limit, or 33 mcg/cu. m, and that of acetaldehyde shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m.

## 2.3 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company
2. Dearborn Brass
3. Jones Stephens Corp.
4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The)
5. Mid-America Fittings, LLC; A Midland Industries Company
6. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand

B. Escutcheon Types:

1. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
2. One-Piece, Stainless Steel Type: With polished stainless steel finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
4. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steelbrass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

C. Floor Plates:

1. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LOOPS AND SWING CONNECTIONS

- A. Install pipe loops and offsets in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements for expansion and contraction compensation.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES, GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 2-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.

2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  3. Using groutorsilicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in floors/slabs/walls without sleeve-seal system. Select to maintain fire-resistance of floor/slab/wall.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants that joint sealant manufacturer's literature indicates is appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP
- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange centered across width centered in concrete slab or wall.
  - C. Secure nailing flanges to wooden concrete forms.
  - D. Using groutorsilicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeves.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION OF STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS
- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
    1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
    2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
    3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
    4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
    5. Using silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.

- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sleeves and Sleeve Seals:
  - 1. Perform the following tests and inspections:
    - a. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - b. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Escutcheons:
  - 1. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

### 3.8 SLEEVES APPLICATION

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Sleeves with waterstops or stack-sleeve fittings.
4. Interior Walls and Partitions:
  - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

### 3.9 ESCUTCHEONS APPLICATION

#### A. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:

1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
2. Chrome-Plated Piping: One piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
3. Insulated Piping:
  - a. One piece, stainless steel with polished stainless steel finish.
4. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
  - a. One piece, stainless steel with polished stainless steel finish.
5. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
  - a. One piece, stainless steel with polished stainless steel finish.
6. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
  - a. One piece, cast brass with polished, chrome-plated rough-brass finish.
  - b. O
7. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
  - a. One piece, cast brass with polished, chrome-plated

#### B. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:

1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
2. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
3. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
4. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with



- concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 5. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 6. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One piece, floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

END OF SECTION 210500

## SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
4. Check valves.
5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
7. NRS gate valves.
8. Indicator posts.
9. Trim and drain valves.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- B. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- C. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
  - 1. Fire Main Equipment: HAMV - Main Level.
    - a. Indicator Posts, Gate Valve: HCBZ - Level 1.
    - b. Ball Valves, System Control: HLUG - Level 3.
    - c. Butterfly Valves: HLXS - Level 3.
    - d. Check Valves: HMER - Level 3.
    - e. Gate Valves: HMRZ - Level 3.
  - 2. Sprinkler System and Water Spray System Devices: VDGT - Main Level.
    - a. Valves, Trim and Drain: VQGU - Level 1.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
  - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
    - a. Indicator posts.
    - b. Valves.
      - 1) Gate valves.
      - 2) Check valves.
      - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- D. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

E. NFPA Compliance for Valves:

1. Comply with NFPA 13, NFPA 14, NFPA 20, and NFPA 24.

F. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher, as required by system pressures.

G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

H. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

## 2.3 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A Watts Water Technologies Company
2. NIBCO INC.
3. Victaulic Company

B. Description:

1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global approved for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Design: Two piece.
4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
5. Port Size: Full or standard.
6. Seats: PTFE.
7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9. Actuator: Worm gear
10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.4 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. ALEUM USA
2. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation

3. Milwaukee Valve Company

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Minimum: Pressure rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem Material: Bronze or stainless steel.
6. Disc: Stainless steel.
7. Actuator: Worm gear.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
10. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

2.5 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. ALEUM USA
2. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution
3. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation
4. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
5. NIBCO INC.
6. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
7. Victaulic Company
8. Zurn Industries, LLC

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron, and EPDM or SBR coated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Grooved-end connections.

## 2.6 CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A Watts Water Technologies Company
  2. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  3. Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.
  4. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  5. Victaulic Company
  6. Viking Group Inc.
  7. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Type: Single swing check.
  4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
  5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
  6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
  7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
  8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
  9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

## 2.7 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Milwaukee Valve Company
  2. NIBCO INC.
  3. United Brass Works, Inc
  4. Zurn Industries, LLC
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
  4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
  5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
  6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
  8. Supervisory Switch: External.
  9. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.8 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company
2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. Hammond Valve
4. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
5. Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.
6. NIBCO INC.
7. Victaulic Company
8. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company
9. Zurn Industries, LLC

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: FlangedGrooved.

## 2.9 NRS GATE VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company
2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.
4. NIBCO INC.
5. Victaulic Company
6. Zurn Industries, LLC

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.

5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.  
End Connections: FlangedGrooved

## 2.10 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems
  - b. Croker; a Division of Morris Group International
  - c. Fire Protection Products Inc (FPPI); a brand of Anvil International and Smith-Cooper International
  - d. Flowserve Corporation
  - e. Jomar Valve
  - f. KITZ Corporation
  - g. Metso Automation USA Inc.
  - h. Milwaukee Valve Company
  - i. NIBCO INC.
  - j. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International
  - k. Red-White Valve Corp.
  - l. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  - m. Victaulic Company
  - n. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company
  - o. Zurn Industries, LLC
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating:250 psig.
  - b. Body Design: Two piece.
  - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  - d. Port size: Full or standard.
  - e. Seats: PTFE.
  - f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  - g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - h. Actuator: Handlever.
  - i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
  - j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

### B. Angle Valves:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Fire Protection Products Inc (FPPI); a brand of Anvil International and Smith-Cooper International
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. United Brass Works, Inc
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
  - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve-installation requirements and applications:
  - 1. Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes; wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems; and dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
  - 2. Section 211339 "Foam-Water Systems" for application of valves in AFFF piping.
  - 3. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for application of valves in fire-suppression water-service piping.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply, except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs, indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install double-check valve assembly in each fire-protection water-supply connection.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.

END OF SECTION 210523

## SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping - metal.
2. Pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping - metal, trapeze type.
3. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Equipment supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices and seismic restraints.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with 2021 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

#### 2.2 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING - METAL

- A. Pipe Hangers and Supports for Fire-Suppression Piping - Carbon Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution
    - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
    - c. FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
  - 2. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM Global approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 3. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
  - 4. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steelstainless

steel<Insert material>.

B. Pipe/Tube Hangers and Supports for Fire-Suppression Piping - Copper:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution
  - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  - c. FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
  - d.
2. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM Global approved for fire-suppression piping support.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.3 PIPE HANGERS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING - METAL, TRAPEZE TYPE

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM Global-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Buckaroos, Inc.
  2. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc
  3. KB Enterprise
  4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation
  5. Pipe Shields Inc.
  6. Piping Technology & Products, Inc
  7. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc
  8. Value Engineered Products, Inc
- B. Insulation-Insert Material: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100 psi or ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100 psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125 psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield are to cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield are to cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air

temperature.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Fastener System - NFPA/UL/FM Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM Global-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - c. MKT Fastening, LLC
- B. Fastener System - NFPA/UL/FM Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM Global-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
    - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
    - c. Hilti, Inc.
    - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - e. MKT Fastening, LLC
    - f.
  - 2. Indoor Applications: Stainless.
  - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM Global-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.

- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination is to comply with NFPA 13 requirements, minimum 5 times the water-filled weight of piping and supported components plus 250 lb.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- B. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- C. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Coordinate location of concrete inserts before concrete is placed.
- D. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- E. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- F. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- G. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- H. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- I. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners in accordance with powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
  2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- K. Equipment Support Installation:
1. Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
  2. Grouting: Place grout under supports for floor-mounted equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
  3. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying.
- L. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. MSS SP-58, Type 39 Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields are to span an arc of 180 degrees.



- a. MSS SP-58, Type 40 Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve

indicated slope of pipe.

- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

#### A. Touchup:

1. Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use stainless steel pipe hangers and stainless steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and stainless steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or

- insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- K. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments

where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 210529

## SECTION 210548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Elastomeric hangers.
5. Snubbers.
6. Restraints - rigid type.
7. Restraints - cable type.
8. Restraint accessories.
9. Post-installed concrete anchors.
10. Concrete inserts.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Designated Seismic System: A fire-suppression component that requires design in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7, Ch. 13 and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
- B. IBC: International Building Code.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (for the State of California).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Include load rating for each wind-load-restraint fitting and assembly.
3. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic- and wind-load-restraint

- component.
  - 4. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 5. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
  - 6. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:
- 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal:
- 1. For each seismic-restraint and wind-load protection device, including seismic-restrained mounting, pipe-riser resilient support, snubber, seismic restraint, seismic-restraint accessory, and concrete anchor and insert that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
    - a. Seismic- and Wind-Load- Restraint Selection: Select seismic and wind-load restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
    - b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
    - c. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic and wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
    - d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared under "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under "Wind-Load Design Calculations" in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic and wind-load-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 2. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Detail Drawing:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and

- values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
- c. Coordinate seismic restraint details with wind-load restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
- 3. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
  - 4. All delegated design submittals for seismic- and wind-load-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for fire-suppression piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.
  - 1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active fire-suppression system seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and AHRI 1270, including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  - 2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  - 3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
  - 4. The following fire-suppression systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:

- a. Inert Gas Suppression System
  - b. Wet Sprinkler Fire Systems
- F. Wind-Load Performance Certification: Provide special certification for fire-suppression system components subject to high-wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-load performance certification.
- 1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated fire-suppression system device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. The following fire-suppression system systems and components require special certification for high wind performance. Written special certification of resistance to the effects of high wind load and impact damage must be provided by manufacturer.
- a. Exterior DWLs (Dynamic Weather Louver)

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic and wind-load control system.
  - 1. Seismic Performance: Equipment must be designed and secured to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  - 2. Wind-Load Performance: Equipment must be designed and secured to withstand the effects of high wind events determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16.
- B. Seismic Design Calculations:



1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the Section Text.
  - a. Data indicated below to be determined by Delegated Design Contractor must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
  - b. Coordinate seismic design calculations with wind-load calculations for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
  - c. Building Occupancy Category: IV.
  - d. Building Risk Category: IV.
  - e. Building Site Classification: D.
2. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-16 unless otherwise noted.
  - a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Value is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
    - 1)  $SDS$  = Spectral Acceleration: Refer to structural drawings. Value applies to all components on Project.
    - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from each component submittal.
    - 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine from Project Drawings for each component by Delegated Design Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" is to be taken as zero.
    - 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.
  - b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.1.2.
  - c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_{pl}$ : Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
    - 1)  $D_p$  = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor in

- accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2.
- 2)  $I_e$  = Structure Importance Factor: 1.5. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 3)  $\delta_{xA}$  = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $\delta_{yA}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 5)  $\delta_{yB}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $h_x$  = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 7)  $h_y$  = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 8)  $\Delta_{aA}$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
  - 9)  $\Delta_{aB}$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
  - 10)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of the Allowable Drift  $\Delta_a$ : See Drawings Schedules for each component.
- d. Component Fundamental Period  $T_p$ : Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.3. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: Determined by contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 2)  $g$  = Gravitational Acceleration: 32.17 fps<sup>2</sup>.
  - 3)  $K_p$  = Combined Stiffness of Component, Supports, and Attachments: Determined by delegated design seismic engineer..

C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.
  - a. Factors indicated below that are specific to individual pieces of equipment must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
  - b. Coordinate design wind-load calculations with seismic load calculations for equipment requiring both seismic and wind-load reinforcement. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.

2. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as appropriate:
  - a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
  - b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
  - c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" less than 60 ft..
  - d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 ft. and less than 160 ft..
  - e. PART 5: Open Buildings.
3. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment. See Structural drawings for all design parameters.
  - a. Risk Category: [I][II][III][IV][V].
  - b. h = Mean Roof Height: <Insert value>.
  - c. V = Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
  - d. Kd = Wind Directionality Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - e. Exposure Category: [B][C][D].
  - f. Kzt = Topographic Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - g. Ke = Ground Elevation Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - h. Kz = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height z): <Insert coefficient>.
  - i. Kh = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height h): <Insert coefficient>.
  - j. qz = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - k. qh = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - l. G = Gust-Effect Factor: 0.85<Insert factor>.
  - m. Enclosure Classification: <Insert classification>.
  - n. GCpi = Internal Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
4. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 29. Perform calculations in accordance with the following, as appropriate:
  - a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
  - b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
  - c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 ft..
  - d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" less than 160 ft..
  - e. PART 5: Open Buildings.
5. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment. See Structural drawings for all design

parameters.

- a. Risk Category: IIIIIIVV.
  - b.  $h$  = Mean Roof Height: <Insert value>.
  - c.  $V$  = Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
  - d.  $K_d$  = Wind Directionality Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - e. Exposure Category: BCD.
  - f.  $K_{zt}$  = Topographic Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - g.  $K_z$  = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height  $z$ ): <Insert coefficient>.
  - h.  $K_h$  = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height  $h$ ): <Insert coefficient>.
  - i.  $q_z$  = Velocity Pressure at Height  $z$ : Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - j.  $q_h$  = Velocity Pressure at Height  $h$ : Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - k.  $G$  = Gust-Effect Factor:  $0.85<Insert factor>$ .
  - l. Enclosure Classification: <Insert classification>.
  - m.  $G_{Cpi}$  = Internal Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
6. Design wind force "F" for rooftop equipment and external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 29. See Structural drawings for all design parameters.
- a.  $I$  = Importance Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - b.  $h$  = Mean Roof Height: <Insert value>.
  - c.  $V$  = Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
  - d.  $K_d$  = Wind Directionality Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - e. Exposure Category: BCD.
  - f.  $K_{zt}$  = Topographic Factor: <Insert factor>.
  - g.  $K_z$  = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height  $z$ ): <Insert coefficient>.
  - h.  $K_h$  = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height  $h$ ): <Insert coefficient>.
  - i.  $q_z$  = Velocity Pressure at Height  $z$ : Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 6.5.10 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - j.  $q_h$  = Velocity Pressure at Roof Height  $h$ : Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 6.5.10 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - k.  $G$  = Gust-Effect Factor:  $0.85<Insert factor>$ .
  - l.  $G_{Cpi}$  = Internal Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
  - m.  $G_{Cp}$  = External Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
  - n.  $C_f$  = Force Coefficient: Value determined by delegated wind-load design Contractor from ASCE/SEI 7-05, Figures 6-21 through 6-23 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - o.  $A_f$  = Projected Area Normal to the Wind: Except where  $C_f$  is specified for the

actual surface area, value determined by delegated wind-load design Contractor from equipment submittal or manufacturer.

- D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic and wind-load restraints for suspended fire-suppression system components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted fire-suppression system components as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16 so that failure of a non-essential or essential fire-suppression system component will not cause the failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical, or electrical building component.
- E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.
- F. Component Supports:
  - 1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
  - 2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: .
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
    - f. Korfund
    - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
    - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
    - j. Vibration Isolation
    - k. Vibration Management Corp.
    - l. VMC GROUP
  - 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
  - 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
  - 5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
  - 6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
  - a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
  - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

## 2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - f. Korfund
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - j. Vibration Isolation
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. VMC GROUP
2. Mounting Plates:
  - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
  - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.

- b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - f. Korfund
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - j. Vibration Isolation
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. VMC GROUP
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
- a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
  - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.5 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

### A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: .

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - h. Vibration Isolation
  - i. Vibration Management Corp.
  - j. VMC GROUP
- 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
- 3. Damping Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel-to-steel contact.

## 2.6 SNUBBERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
3. Mason Industries, Inc.
4. Vibration Management Corp.
5. VMC GROUP

- B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchor Bolts: Secure to concrete surface with post-installed concrete anchors. Anchors to be seismically prequalified in accordance with ACI 355.2 testing and designated in accordance with ACI 318-08 Appendix D for 2009 IBCACI 318-11 Appendix D for 2012 IBCACI 318-14 Ch. 17 for 2015 or 2018 IBC.
2. Preset Concrete Inserts: Seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
3. Anchors in Masonry: Design in accordance with TMS 402.
4. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
5. Resilient Cushion: Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4 inch thick.

## 2.7 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Atkore Unistrut
2. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
3. California Dynamics Corporation
4. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
5. Hilti, Inc.
6. Isolation Technology, Inc
7. TOLCO Incorporated
8. VMC GROUP

- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe as per NFPA 13, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.



## 2.8 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  3. Gripple Inc.
  4. Loos & Co. Inc.
  5. VMC GROUP
- B. Seismic-Restraint Cables: ASTM A492 stainless steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.
- C. Restraint cable assembly with cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. All cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

## 2.9 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Atkore Unistrut
  2. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  4. Hilti, Inc.
  5. Loos & Co. Inc.
  6. Mason Industries, Inc.
  7. TOLCO Incorporated
  - 8.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid restraints and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and

size of attachment devices used.

- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.10 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

### A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Atkore Unistrut
  - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  - c. Hilti, Inc.
  - d. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - e. Powers Fasteners
2. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

### B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Atkore Unistrut
  - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  - c. Hilti, Inc.
  - d. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - e. Powers Fasteners
2. Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

### C. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic applications. Post-installed concrete anchors must comply with all requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13.

1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other

- approved qualification testing procedures.
- 2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.
- D. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp that is not vibration isolated.
  - 1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

## 2.11 CONCRETE INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Atkore Unistrut
  - 2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  - 3. Hilti, Inc.
  - 4. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Powers Fasteners
  - 6.
- B. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC466 testing.
- C. Comply with ANSI/MSS SP-58.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation, wind control, and seismic control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry calculated static, wind load, and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION CONTROL, WIND-LOAD-RESTRAINT, AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Fire-Suppression Vibration Isolation, Seismic, and Wind-Load-Restraint Schedule, where indicated on Drawings, or where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.
- B. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load-restraint devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration Isolation, Seismic, and Wind-Load-Restraint Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Installation of vibration isolators, wind-load restraints, and seismic restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or piping.
- E. Comply with installation requirements of NFPA 13 for installation of all seismic-restraint devices.
- F. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of equipment supports and roof penetrations.
- G. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install snubbers on fire-suppression equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- H. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with all requirements in NFPA 13.
  - 2. Design piping sway bracing in accordance with NFPA 13.
    - a. Maximum spacing of all sway bracing to be no greater than indicated in NFPA 13.
    - b. Design loading of all sway bracing not to exceed values indicated in NFPA 13.

- I. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- J. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- K. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- L. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- M. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors to be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross structural seismic joints and other points where differential movement may occur, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during

normal operation.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  - 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 4. Test at no fewer than four<Insert number> of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  - 7. Measure isolator deflection.
  - 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 210548

## SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Warning tape
4. Pipe labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve-numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: Provide for fire-suppression piping system. Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP
  - c. Champion America

- d. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  - e. emedco
  - f. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  - g. LEM Products Inc.
  - h. Marking Services Inc.
  - i. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  - k.
- 2. Material and Thickness: stainless steel, 0.025 inch thick, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP
  - c. Champion America
  - d. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  - e. emedco
  - f. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  - g. LEM Products Inc.
  - h. Marking Services Inc.
  - i. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  - k.
- 2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.



7. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Brady Corporation
  2. Carlton Industries, LP
  3. Champion America
  4. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  5. emedco
  6. LEM Products Inc.
  7. Marking Services Inc.
  8. National Marker Company
  9. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  10. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  11. Stranco, Inc.
  - 12.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs in locations and with content in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification

instructions.

## 2.3 WARNING TAPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation
  - 2. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  - 3. National Marker Company
  - 4. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  - 6.
- B. Material: Vinyl.
- C. Minimum Thickness: 0.005 inch.
- D. Letter, Pattern, and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- E. Waterproof Adhesive Backing: Suitable for indoor or outdoor use.
- F. Maximum Temperature: 160 deg F.
- G. Minimum Width: 4 inches.

## 2.4 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
  - 2. Brady Corporation
  - 3. Carlton Industries, LP
  - 4. Champion America
  - 5. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  - 6. emedco
  - 7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  - 8. LEM Products Inc.
  - 9. Marking Services Inc.
  - 10. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 11. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  - 12.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

- D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- F. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include the following:
  - 1. Pipe size.
  - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on main distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
  - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

## 2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Craftmark Pipe Markers
    - b. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - e.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
  - 3. Stencil Material: Aluminum, brass, or fiberboard.
  - 4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 5. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 6. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

## 2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
  - 2. Brady Corporation
  - 3. Carlton Industries, LP
  - 4. Champion America
  - 5. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  - 6. emedco

7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
8. LEM Products Inc.
9. Marking Services Inc.
10. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
11. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
- 12.

B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: stainless steel, 0.024 inch thick, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wirelink chainbeaded chainorS-hook.

C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Include valve-tag schedule in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.7 WARNING TAGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Brady Corporation
2. Champion America
3. Craftmark Pipe Markers
4. emedco
5. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
6. LEM Products Inc.
7. Marking Services Inc.
8. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
9. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
- 10.

B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum Approximately 4 by 7 inches
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption, such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of fire-suppression equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors:
  - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where arc-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAPE

- A. Warning Tape Color and Pattern: Yellow background with black diagonal stripes.
- B. Install warning tape on pipes and ducts, with cross-designated walkways providing less than 6 ft. of clearance.
- C. Locate tape so as to be readily visible from the point of normal approach.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior

Painting."Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

- B. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- C. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- D. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Within 3 ft. of each valve and control device.
  - 2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
  - 3. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- E. Flow- Direction Arrows: Provide arrows to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- F. Fire-Suppression Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Fire-Suppression Pipe Labels: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVE TAGS

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule in the operating and maintenance manual. Include the identification "FSV" on all fire-suppression system valve tags.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below.
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 2 inches, square.
    - b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 2 inches, square.
    - c. Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System: 2 inches,square.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Color: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tag Color: Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background.
- B. Attach warning tags, with proper message, to equipment and other items where scheduled.

END OF SECTION 210553

## SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. The Work of this Section Includes:

1. Cx process requirements for the following fire-suppression systems, assemblies, and equipment:
  - a. Water-based fire-suppression systems.
  - b. Fire-extinguishing systems.
  - c. Fire pumps.
  - d. Fire-suppression water storage.
  - e. Inert gas suppression system.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.
2. For construction checklists, comply with requirements in various Division 21 Sections specifying fire-suppression systems, system components, equipment, and products.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- C. IgCC: International Green Construction Code.
- D. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fire-suppression testing technician.
- B. Construction Checklists:
1. Cx plan, including material, installation, and performance construction checklists for systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components relating to fire-suppression system to be part of the Cx process and in accordance with requirements in Section



019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" and NFPA 3.

- C. Test Equipment and Instruments: For all test equipment and instruments to be used in conducting Cx tests by Contractor, provide the following:
1. Equipment/instrument identification number.
  2. Planned Cx application or use.
  3. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
  4. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
  5. Equipment manufacturers' proprietary instrumentation and tools. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
    - a. Instrument or tool identification number.
    - b. Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
    - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
    - d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Suppression Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform fire-suppression Construction Checklist verification tests, Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
1. Journey level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of fire-suppression system, electrical concepts, and building operations.
  2. Minimum **three years'** experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- B. Clean-Agent Fire-Suppression Systems Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform clean-agent fire-suppression system Construction Checklist verification tests, Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in mechanical systems, fire-suppression systems, or similar field. Degree requirement may be offset by three years' experience in servicing fire-suppression systems in the clean-agent fire-suppression systems industry. Generally, required knowledge includes clean-agent fire-suppression systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of fire-suppression system equipment, assemblies, and systems.
  2. Minimum **three years'** experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration:

1. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
2. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
3. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
4. Be recalibrated/repared if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.

D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:

1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, shall comply with the following:
  - a. Be calibrated by manufacturer with current calibration tags permanently affixed.
  - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - c. Fire-suppression system proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Cx PROCESS

A. Perform Cx process for fire-suppression system in accordance with the following:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
2. NFPA 3.
3. **IgCC, which requires compliance with ASHRAE 202.**
4. **Cx standards acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.**

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

A. Preliminary detailed construction checklists are to be prepared under Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for each fire-suppression system, assembly, subsystem, equipment, and component required to be commissioned, as detailed in NFPA 3 and **IgCC**. Contractor performs the following:

1. Review fire-suppression system preliminary construction checklists and provide written comments on Construction Checklist items where appropriate.
2. Return preliminary Construction Checklist with review comments within **10** days of receipt.
3. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
4. Use only construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)" when performing tests. Mark construction checklists in the appropriate place, as indicated Project events

are completed, and provide pertinent details and other information.

B. Prepare preliminary detailed construction checklists for each fire-suppression system, assembly, subsystem, equipment, and component required to be commissioned, as detailed in **NFPA 3and IgCC**.

1. Submit preliminary construction checklists to CxA and Designer for review.
2. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
3. Use only construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)" when performing tests. Mark construction checklists in the appropriate place, as indicated Project events are completed, and provide pertinent details and other information.

C. Additional Systems Required to Be Commissioned:

1. Facility fire-suppression water-distribution piping outside the building, including the following:
  - a. Fire-suppression water piping, fittings, and specialties outside the building.
  - b. Hydrants and fire-department connections.
  - c. Fire-alarm devices.
  - d. Meters and meter pits.
  - e. Outdoor water-storage tanks.
  - f. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - g. Meters and gauges.
  - h. General-duty and specialty valves.
  - i. Hangers and supports.
  - j. Heat tracing.
  - k. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
  - l. Identification.
  - m. Insulation.
2. Fire-suppression standpipes, including the following:
  - a. Fire-suppression water piping, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
  - b. Fire-department connections.
  - c. Fire pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - d. Pressure-maintenance pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - e. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - f. Indoor water-storage tanks.
  - g. Meters and gauges.
  - h. General-duty and specialty valves.
  - i. Hangers and supports.
  - j. Heat tracing.
  - k. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
  - l. Identification.
  - m. Insulation.
3. Fire-suppression sprinkler systems, including the following:

- a. Wet-pipe sprinkler piping, fittings, sprinklers, and specialties.
  - b. Dry-pipe sprinkler piping, fittings, sprinklers, and specialties.
  - c. Pre-action, deluge sprinkler piping, fittings, sprinklers, and specialties.
  - d. Fire pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - e. Pressure-maintenance pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - f. Compressed-air piping, compressors, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - g. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - h. Meters and gauges.
  - i. General-duty and specialty valves.
  - j. Hangers and supports.
  - k. Heat tracing.
  - l. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
  - m. Identification.
  - n. Insulation.
4. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems, including the following:
- a. Piping, fittings, outlets, and specialties.
  - b. Storage tanks, manifolds, mounting devices, controls, and accessories.
  - c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - d. Meters and gauges.
  - e. General-duty and specialty valves.
  - f. Hangers and supports.
  - g. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
  - h. Identification.
  - i. Insulation.
5. Documentation:
- a. Fire-suppression system operating manuals.
  - b. Documentation of required Cx.
  - c. Documentation of required operator training.

### 3.3 Cx TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that fire-suppression systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating in accordance with the Contract Documents and approved submittals.
- B. Certify that fire-suppression system instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating in accordance with the Contract Documents and approved submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested in accordance with approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

### 3.4 Cx TEST CONDITIONS

- A. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
  - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA, and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
  - 2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
  - 3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- B. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the fire-suppression system, document the deficiency and report it to Architect. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- C. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation, and schedule seasonal tests.

### 3.5 Cx TESTS COMMON TO FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

- A. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions, to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- B. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components for operating modes, interlocks, control responses, responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response compared to acceptance criteria.
- C. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of, CxA.
- D. Comply with Construction Checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance test requirements specified in Division 21 Sections specifying fire-suppression systems and equipment.
- E. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to perform and document the following:
  - 1. Cx Construction Checklist verification tests.
  - 2. Cx Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations.

### 3.6 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST EXAMPLES

- A. Vibration Isolation in Fire-Suppression Systems:
  - 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for vibration **and seismic**

control devices specified in **Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."** **Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."**

2. Components to Be Tested:
  - a. Vibration isolation control devices in water-based fire-suppression systems.
  - b. **Seismic control devices for proper device selection and installation.**
  - c. Support systems.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate effectiveness of vibration isolation **and proper installation of seismic** control devices.
4. Test Conditions: Measure vibration of the facility structure at **three<Insert number>** locations designated by Owner's witness while the isolated equipment operates.
  - a. Maximum speed.
  - b. Minimum speed.
  - c. Critical speed.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Structure-borne vibration not to exceed specified performance.

**B. Supervision of Fire-Protection Valves in Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems:**

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for valves specified in the following Sections:
  - a. Section 210523 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire Protection Piping."
  - b. Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems."
  - c. Section 284600 "Fire Detection and Alarm."
  - d. Section 284614 "Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms."
  - e. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."
2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested:
  - a. Supervised valves in water-based fire-suppression systems.
  - b. Division 28 fire-detection and -alarm systems.
3. Test Purpose: Verify generation of supervisory alarm at the fire-alarm control panel in response to activation of valve supervision device or tamper switch.
4. Test Conditions:
  - a. Fire-alarm system operating in normal, automatic mode.
  - b. Activate valve supervision devices and tamper switches, one at a time.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Activation of valve supervision device or tamper switch generates supervisory alarm at fire-alarm control panel.

**C. Heat Tracing in Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems:**

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for heat tracing specified in water-based fire-suppression systems. Comply with requirements in Section 210533

- "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping."
  2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested:
    - a. Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cables.
    - b. Heater trace circuit controller.
    - c. Interface with fire-alarm control panel.
  3. Test Purpose:
    - a. Evaluate response to ambient temperature below freeze-protection set point.
    - b. Evaluate heating cable fault alarm.
  4. Test Conditions:
    - a. Subject temperature sensor to temperature approximately **3 deg F** above freeze-protection set point (initial set point **41 deg F** Monitor sensed temperature with a calibration-grade thermometer. Gradually change set point or sensed temperature until freeze-protection circuit is energized.
    - b. Subject temperature sensor to temperature approximately **3 deg F** below freeze-protection set point (initial set point **41 deg F**. Monitor sensed temperature with a calibration-grade thermometer. Gradually change set point or sensed temperature until freeze-protection circuit is de-energized.
    - c. Simulate an electrical fault on the heating cable.
  5. Acceptance Criteria:
    - a. Freeze-protection circuit is energized at set-point temperature of minus **2 deg F**.
    - b. Freeze-protection circuit is de-energized at set-point temperature of plus **2 deg F**.
    - c. Heater trace circuit controller initiates an alarm of cable fault. Alarm is correctly reported at the fire-alarm control panel.
- 3.7 Cx TESTS FOR DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER PIPING, FITTINGS, SPRINKLERS, AND SPECIALTIES
- A. Air Compressor Run Time:
1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified in Section 211316 "Dry-Piping Sprinkler Systems."
  2. Systems and Equipment to Be Tested:
    - a. Air compressors in fire-suppression systems.
    - b. Associated compressed air piping, valves, and appurtenances.
    - c. Associated air pressure controllers.
  3. Test Purpose: Evaluate air compressor run time and number of compressor starts.
  4. Test Conditions:
    - a. Keep compressed air and associated sprinkler piping openings closed during test.
    - b. For systems with multiple compressors, lock out compressor motors on all but one

- compressor. Repeat test for each compressor in turn.
  - c. Record number of air compressor motor starts during a 14-day period.
  - d. Record air compressor motor run time during the same 14-day period.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
- a. Number of compressor motor starts during test period shall not exceed **20**.
  - b. Compressor motor run time during test period shall not exceed **60 minutes**.

### 3.8 Cx TESTS FOR CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

#### A. Carbon-Dioxide Concentration in Carbon-Dioxide Fire-Extinguishing System:

1. Prerequisites:
  - a. Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified in Section 212113.13 "High-Pressure, Carbon-Dioxide Fire-Extinguishing Systems."
  - b. Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified in Section 212113.16 "Low-Pressure, Carbon-Dioxide Fire-Extinguishing Systems."
  - c. Acceptance of construction checklists specified in Division 23 for systems and equipment serving the protected space.
  - d. Partitions, ceilings, doors, and other openings complete in the vicinity of the protected space.
2. Systems and Equipment to Be Tested:
  - a. High-pressure, carbon-dioxide fire-extinguishing systems.
  - b. Low-pressure, carbon-dioxide fire-extinguishing systems.
  - c. Protected space enclosure.
  - d. HVAC system protected space isolation equipment.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate initial and final carbon-dioxide concentration in the protected space following carbon-dioxide release.
4. Test Conditions:
  - a. HVAC systems operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
  - b. Fire-detection and -alarm systems operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
  - c. Carbon-dioxide fire-extinguishing system charged and operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
  - d. Protected space air temperature is **70 deg F**.
  - e. Create a fire-alarm event in the carbon-dioxide protected space, resulting in discharge of carbon-dioxide fire-extinguishing system.
  - f. Measure and record carbon-dioxide concentration at **four**<Insert number> locations selected by the CxA when the carbon dioxide is completely dispersed and at the end of holding time.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Carbon-dioxide concentration is no less than **34**<Insert number> percent concentration by volume at **70 deg F**.



B. Clean-Agent Concentration in Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System:

1. Prerequisites:
  - a. Acceptance of results of construction checklists for Section 212200 "Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing Systems."
  - b. Acceptance of construction checklists specified in Division 23 for systems and equipment serving the protected space.
  - c. Partitions, ceilings, doors, and other openings complete in the vicinity of the protected space.
2. Systems and Equipment to Be Tested:
  - a. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems.
  - b. HVAC system protected space isolation equipment.
  - c. Protected space enclosure.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate initial and final clean-agent concentration in the protected space following carbon-dioxide release.
4. Test Conditions:
  - a. HVAC systems operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
  - b. Fire-detection and -alarm systems operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
  - c. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system charged and operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
  - d. Protected space air temperature is **70 deg F**.
  - e. Create a fire-alarm event in the clean-agent protected space, resulting in discharge of clean-agent fire-extinguishing system.
  - f. Measure and record clean-agent concentration at **four<Insert number>** locations selected by the CxA when the clean agent is completely dispersed and at the end of holding time.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Clean-agent concentration is no less than **34<Insert number>** percent concentration by volume at **70 deg F**.

END OF SECTION 210800

## SECTION 211000 - WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-suppression piping, fittings, and appurtenances.
2. System control valves.
3. Fire-suppression piping specialties.
4. Cover systems for sprinkler piping.
5. Sprinklers.
6. Alarm devices.
7. Manual control stations.
8. Control panels.
9. Pressure gauges.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Fire-Suppression System Piping: Piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175 psig maximum.
- B. High-Pressure Fire-Suppression System Piping: Piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig, but not higher than 300 psig.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles.
  - b. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Prepare in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 section "Working Plans."
  - a. Include plans, elevations, and sections of the system piping and details.
  - b. Include detailed riser diagram and schematic diagram showing system supply, supply connection, devices, valves, pipe and fittings, as well as the delineation of the standard-pressure and high-pressure portions of the fire-suppression system.

- c. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  2. Prepare computer-generated hydraulic calculations in accordance with the following:
    - a. Minimum operating pressure at hydraulically most remote fire hose valve is to be 100 psig.
    - b. Name of hydraulic program used.
    - c. Water supply information, including fire hydrant flow test data report.
  3. Submit documents and calculations signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Delegated Design Submittals: For fire-suppression systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Fire-suppression system plans and sections, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-suppression equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer and NICET-certified technician.
- D. Design Data: Approved fire-suppression piping working plans, prepared in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 14, including documented approval by AHJs, and including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Field Test Reports:
  1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13 and NFPA 14. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
  2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.

- G. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-suppression systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for a minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.
  - 2. System control valves.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing fire-suppression systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Automatic wet-pipe sprinkler system.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Fire-suppression system piping to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with NFPA 13 See Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- B. Fire-Suppression System Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" and FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."

- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - D. Fire-suppression system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing to comply with NFPA 13
  - E. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175 psig minimum working pressure.
  - F. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 250 psig minimum working pressure.
  - G. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer to design fire-suppression systems.
- 1. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - b. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - c. Institutional: Light Hazard.
    - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - e. Offices, including Data Processing: Light Hazard.
  - 2. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
    - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
    - d. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by AHJs.
  - 3. Minimum Density for Deluge-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over entire area.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over entire area.
    - c. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by AHJs.
  - 4. Maximum protection area per sprinkler in accordance with UL listing.
  - 5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    - a. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft..
    - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft..
    - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
    - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
    - e. Other Areas: In accordance with NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: In accordance with NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.
    - c. Extra-Hazard Occupancies: 500 gpm for 90 to 120 minutes.

7. Minimum residual pressure at each hose-connection outlet is as follows:

- a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) Hose Connections: 65 psig.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) Hose Connections: 100 psig.

H. Obtain documented approval of fire-suppression system design from AHJs.

## 2.3 FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING, FITTINGS, AND APPURTENANCES

A. Steel Pipe, Fittings, and Appurtenances:

1. Schedule 40 Steel Pipe: Galvanized-and black-steel pipe, ASTM A53/A53M, ASTM A135/A135M, or ASTM A795/A795M.

a. Standards:

- 1) UL 852.
- 2) FM 1630.

b. Factory-applied exterior coating.

c. Factory-applied bacterial-resistant internal coating to reduce microbiologically influenced corrosion.

d. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

2. Schedule 10 Steel Pipe: Galvanized-and black-steel pipe, ASTM A53/A53M, ASTM A135/A135M, or ASTM A795/A795M.

a. Standards:

- 1) UL 852.
- 2) FM 1630.

b. Factory-applied exterior coating.

c. Factory-applied bacterial resistant internal coating to reduce microbiologically influenced corrosion.

d. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

3. Engineered Light-Wall Steel Pipe: Galvanized-and black-steel pipe, ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M with wall thickness less than Schedule 40. Outside dimension is to be equivalent to Schedule 40.

a. Standards:

- 1) UL 852.
- 2) FM 1630.

b. Factory-applied exterior coating.

c. Factory-applied bacterial-resistant internal coating to reduce microbiologically influenced corrosion.

- d. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- 4. Steel Pipe Nipples: Galvanized and black steel, ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- 5. Steel Couplings: Galvanized steel, ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- 6. Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: Galvanized gray-iron threaded fittings, ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- 7. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: ASME B16.3.
- 8. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- 9. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
  - a. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick.
    - 1) Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
    - 2) Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
  - b. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1 carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 10. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M and ASME B16.9.
  - a. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- 11. Plain-End-Pipe Fittings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Gruvlok; an ASC Engineered Solution
    - 2) Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems
    - 3) Victaulic Company
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
  - c. Plain-End Fittings for Steel Piping: Painted plain-end fittings, ASTM A53/A53M, carbon steel or ASTM A106/A106M, forged steel with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  - d. Plain-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: Rigid pattern for steel-pipe dimensions, ductile-iron or malleable-iron housing. Include EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- 12. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) CPS Products, Inc.
    - 2) Gruvlok; an ASC Engineered Solution
    - 3) Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems
    - 4) Smith-Cooper International
    - 5) SPF/Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution
    - 6) Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
    - 7) Victaulic Company
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
    - c. Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: Painted grooved-end fittings, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
    - d. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
  13. Carbon Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Approvals-approved, 175 psig pressure rating with carbon steel-, zinc-nickel-coated housing, EPDM O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries
      - 2) Viega LLC
- B. Stainless Steel Pipe, Fittings, and Appurtenances:
1. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312/A312M, Type 304/304L, Schedule 10S, dimensions conforming to ASME B36.19M.
  2. Stainless Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A403/A403M.
  3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless Steel Pipe:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) GroovJoint
    - b. Source Limitations: Obtain appurtenance for grooved-end, stainless steel pipe from single manufacturer.
    - c. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless Steel Pipe: Stainless steel casting with dimensions matching stainless steel pipe.
  4. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless Steel Pipe:



- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) GroovJoint
  - b. AWWA C606 for stainless steel pipe dimensions.
  - c. Stainless steel housing sections.
  - d. Stainless steel bolts and nuts.
  - e. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - f. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: 600 psig.
    - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 to DN 300): 400 psig.
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 250 psig.
5. Stainless Steel Piping, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) GroovJoint
    - 2) Merit Brass Company
    - 3) Victaulic Company
    - 4) Viega LLC
  - b. Source Limitations: Obtain pressure-seal-joint fittings from single manufacturer.
  - c. Material: Type 304Type 316 stainless steel, ASTM A312/A312M.
  - d. Fittings: Type 304Type 316 stainless steel with EPDM O-ring seal in each end, and FM approved for fire protection applications.

C. Copper Tube, Fittings, and Appurtenances:

- 1. Copper Tube, Drawn Temper: ASTM B88, Type KASTM B88, Type Land ASTM B88, Type M.
- 2. Solder-Joint Fittings, Cast Copper: ASME B16.18 pressure fittings.
- 3. Solder-Joint Fittings, Wrought Copper: ASME B16.22 pressure fittings.
- 4. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- 5. Unions, Cast Copper: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- 6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- 7. Copper Tube, Mechanically Formed Tee Fitting: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not

limited to, the following:

- 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc

- b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube in accordance with ASTM F2014.

8. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Gruvlok; an ASC Engineered Solution
- 2) Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems
- 3) Victaulic Company

- b. Standard: UL 213.

- c. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B75/B75M copper tube or ASTM B584 bronze castings.

- d. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper tube dimensions; rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting EPDM-rubber gasket rated for minimum 180 deg F for use with ferrous housing and steel bolts and nuts; 300 psig minimum CWP pressure rating.

9. Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Viega LLC

- b. Fittings: Cast brass, cast bronze, or wrought copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.

- c. Minimum 200 psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

D. CPVC Pipe, Fittings, and Appurtenances:

1. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F442/F442M and UL 1821, SDR 13.5, for 175 psig rated pressure at 150 deg F, with plain ends. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER PIPE" markings.

2. CPVC Fittings: UL listed or FM Approvals approved, for 175 psig rated pressure at 150 deg F, socket type. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER FITTING" markings.

- a. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/2 (DN 20 to DN 40): ASTM F438 and UL 1821, Schedule 40, socket type.

- b. NPS 2 to NPS 3 (DN 50 to DN 80): ASTM F439 and UL 1821, Schedule 80, socket type.
  - c. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC, one piece, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
  - d. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Unions: CPVC, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
  - e. Flanges: CPVC, one or two pieces.
- 3. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493 solvent cement recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer, and made for joining CPVC sprinkler pipe and fittings. Include cleaner or primer recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer.
  - 4. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket and Bolts and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 SYSTEM CONTROL VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
  - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Valves: 175 psig minimum.
  - 2. High-Pressure Piping Valves: 250 psig minimum 300 psig.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. System Control Valve, Alarm Valve:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
    - b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
    - c. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
    - d. Victaulic Company
    - e. Viking Group Inc.
    - f.
  - 2. Standard: UL 193.
  - 3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
  - 4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gauges, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
  - 5. Drip cup assembly pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping with

check valve to main drain piping.

G. System Control Valve, Dry-Pipe Valve:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  - c. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  - d. Victaulic Company
  - e. Viking Group Inc.
  - f.
2. Standards:
  - a. UL 260.
  - b. UL 1486.
3. Design: Differential-pressure type.
4. Include quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
5. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device for Dry-Pipe Valve:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) General Air Products, Inc
    - 2) Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
    - 3) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
    - 4) Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
    - 5) Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
    - 6) Victaulic Company
    - 7) Viking Group Inc.
    - 8)
  - b. Standard: UL 260.
  - c. Description: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
  - d. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14 to 60 psig adjustable range, and 175 psig300 psig outlet pressure.

6. Air Compressor for Dry-Pipe Valve:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1) Gast Manufacturing Inc
  - 2) General Air Products, Inc
  - 3) Viking Group Inc.
  - 4)
- b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
- c. Power: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
- d. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA standards. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
- e. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.

H. System Control Valve, Deluge Valve:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. BERMAD Control Valves
  - b. CLA-VAL
  - c. OCV Control Valves
  - d. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - e. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  - f. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  - g. Victaulic Company
  - h. Viking Group Inc.
  - i.
2. Standard: UL 260.
3. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
4. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gauges, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Wet, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include gauge to read diaphragm-chamber pressure and manual control station for manual operation of deluge valve, and connection for actuation device.

I. System Control Valve, Preaction Valve:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the

following:

- a. BERMAD Control Valves
  - b. OCV Control Valves
  - c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - d. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  - e. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  - f. Victaulic Company
  - g. Viking Group Inc.
  - h.
2. Standard: UL 260.
  3. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
  4. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gauges, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
  5. Dry, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include dry, pilot-line actuator; air- and water-pressure gauges; low-air-pressure warning switch; air-relief valve; and actuation device. Dry, pilot-line actuator includes cast-iron, operated, diaphragm-type valve with resilient facing plate, resilient diaphragm, and replaceable bronze seat. Valve includes threaded water and air inlets and water outlet. Loss of air pressure on dry, pilot-line side allows pilot-line actuator to open and causes deluge valve to open immediately.
  6. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device for Preaction Valve:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
      - 2) Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
      - 3) Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
      - 4) Victaulic Company
      - 5) Viking Group Inc.
      - 6)
    - b. Standard: UL 260.
    - c. Description: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
    - d. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14 to 60 psig adjustable range, and 175 psig 300 psig outlet pressure.
  7. Air Compressor for Preaction Valve:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not

limited to, the following:

- 1) Gast Manufacturing Inc
  - 2) General Air Products, Inc
  - 3) Viking Group Inc.
  - 4)
- b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
  - c. Power: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
  - d. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA standards. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
  - e. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.

## 2.5 DRY-SPRINKLER SYSTEM NITROGEN GENERATOR WITH PURGE/VENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Engineered Corrosion Solutions
2. General Air Products, Inc
3. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
4. South-Tek Systems, LLC
5. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
6. UNITED Fire Systems
- 7.

- B. Description: Nitrogen generator system to serve dry sprinkler zones for piping corrosion mitigation, including system venting. System is to provide required supervisory pressure within sprinkler zone. System is to include either an integrated, oil-less air compressor, located within the nitrogen generator system package, or a separate vibration-isolation mounted air compressor, also provided by nitrogen generator manufacturer.

- C. Standards:

1. FM 1035.
2. UL 508A.

- D. Nitrogen Generator:

1. Wall-mounted skid-mounted or stand-alone nitrogen generator to provide minimum nitrogen purity of 98 percent to the designated sprinkler systems.
2. Power: 120 V ac.
3. Bypass mode and nitrogen-generating mode.
4. Minimum Capacity: As recommended by manufacturer<Insert requirements>.

- E. Air Compressor:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."
2. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
  - a. Power: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
3. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
4. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
5. Minimum Capacity: Match capacity of nitrogen generator.

F. Automatic Purge Vent/Valve:

1. Vents oxygen during system nitrogen fill.
2. Automatically closes when 98 percent minimum nitrogen has been reached.
3. Sized to allow correct purge rate per manufacturer's written instructions and with 14 days<Insert period>.
4. Provide one venting device for each dry/preaction sprinkler system zone.
5. Include a connection port for a portable nitrogen purity sensor or a nitrogen purity manifold.

G. Supervisory Gas Monitoring - Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device:

1. Portable Handheld Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device: Portable sensing device to connect to the outlet of the automatic purge/vent valve during periodic inspections to obtain a nitrogen purity reading within each zone.
2. Permanently Mounted Nitrogen Purity Monitoring Device or Manifold: Permanent monitoring device to continuously monitor system's nitrogen purity.

H. BAS Alarm Integration:

1. Provide nitrogen-generation system with integrated leak-detection and bypass alarms. Program alarms into controller and connect to BAS.
  - a. Leak-detection system is to alarm if leaks develop within fire-suppression system piping.
  - b. Air bypass alarm is to activate if nitrogen-generation system is bypassed by air compressor.

## 2.6 PREACTION SPRINKLER SYSTEM NITROGEN GENERATOR WITH PURGE/VENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Engineered Corrosion Solutions
2. General Air Products, Inc
3. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC



4. South-Tek Systems, LLC
  - 5.
- B. Description: Nitrogen generator system to serve preaction sprinkler zones for piping corrosion mitigation, including system venting. System is to provide required supervisory pressure within sprinkler zone. System is to include either an integrated, oil-less air compressor, located within the nitrogen generator system package, or a separate vibration-isolation mounted air compressor, also provided by nitrogen generator manufacturer.
- C. Standards:
1. FM 1035.
  2. UL 508A.
- D. Nitrogen Generator:
1. Wall-mounted skid-mounted or stand-alone nitrogen generator to provide minimum nitrogen purity of 98 percent to the designated sprinkler systems.
  2. Power: 120 V ac.
  3. Bypass mode and nitrogen-generating mode.
  4. Minimum Capacity: As recommended by manufacturer<Insert requirements>.
- E. Air Compressor:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."
  2. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
    - a. Power: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
  3. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
  4. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
  5. Minimum Capacity: Match capacity of nitrogen generator.
- F. Automatic Purge Vent/Valve:
1. Vents oxygen during system nitrogen fill.
  2. Automatically closes when 98 percent minimum nitrogen has been reached.
  3. Sized to allow correct purge rate per manufacturer's written instructions and with 14 days<Insert period>.
  4. Provide one venting device for each dry/preaction sprinkler system zone.
  5. Include a connection port for a portable nitrogen purity sensor or a nitrogen purity manifold.
- G. Supervisory Gas Monitoring - Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device:
1. Portable Handheld Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device: Portable sensing device to connect to the outlet of automatic purge/vent valve during periodic inspections to obtain a nitrogen

- purity reading within each zone.
- 2. Permanently Mounted Nitrogen Purity Monitoring Device or Manifold: Permanent monitoring device to continuously monitor system's nitrogen purity.

H. BAS Alarm Integration:

- 1. Provide nitrogen-generation system with integrated leak-detection and bypass alarms. Program alarms into controller and connect to BAS.
  - a. Leak-detection system is to alarm if leaks develop within fire-suppression system piping.
  - b. Air bypass alarm is to alarm if nitrogen-generation system is bypassed by air compressor.

2.7 FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems
  - b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  - c. Victaulic Company
  - d.
- 2. Standard: UL 213.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum 300 psig.
- 4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
- 5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
- 6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
- 7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
- 8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - c. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America

- d. Victaulic Company
  - e.
- 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum 300 psig.
  - 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
  - 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.
- C. Branch Line Testers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. Croker; a Division of Morris Group International
    - c. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International
    - d.
  - 2. Standard: UL 199.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 4. Body Material: Brass.
  - 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - 6. Inlet: Threaded.
  - 7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
  - 8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
    - c. Viking Group Inc.
    - d.
  - 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum 300 psig.
  - 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
  - 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Aegis Technologies, Inc.
  - b.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum300 psig.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ALEUM USA
  - b. Easyflex, Inc.
  - c. Flexhead; an ASC Engineered Solution
  - d. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
  - e. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - f. Victaulic Company
  - g.
2. Standards:
  - a. UL 2443.
  - b. FM 1637.
3. Description: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum300 psig.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

G. Automatic (Ball-Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)

- b. Viking Group Inc.
    - c.
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  - 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
  - 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
  - 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- H. Manual Air Vent/Valve:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b.
  - 2. Description: Ball valve that requires human intervention to vent air.
  - 3. Body: Forged brass.
  - 4. Ends: Threaded.
  - 5. Minimize Size: 1/2 inch.
  - 6. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
- I. Automatic Air Vent:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
    - b. CLA-VAL
    - c. Engineered Corrosion Solutions
    - d. Metraflex Company (The)
    - e. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
    - f.
  - 2. Description: Automatic air vent that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention. Approved for use in wet-pipe fire-suppression system.
  - 3. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
  - 4. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
  - 5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- J. Automatic Air Vent Assembly:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Engineered Corrosion Solutions
  - c. South-Tek Systems, LLC
  - d.
2. Description: Automatic dual air vent assembly that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention, including Y-strainer and ball valve in a pre-piped assembly. Approved for use in wet-pipe fire-suppression system.
  3. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
  4. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
  5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  6. <Insert additional requirements specific to manufacturers>.

## 2.8 COVER SYSTEMS FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

### A. Cover System, Extruded PVC:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. DecoShield Systems, Inc.
  - b.
2. Description: System of support brackets and covers designed to protect sprinkler piping.
3. Brackets: Per cover manufacturer.
4. Covers: Factory-fabricated extruded-PVC cover with concealed attachment clips.

### B. Cover System, Fabricated Steel:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. JG Innovations, Inc.
  - b.
2. Description: System of support brackets and covers designed to protect sprinkler piping.
3. Brackets: Per cover manufacturer.
4. Covers: Factory-fabricated steel cover with concealed attachment clamps.
  - a. Stainless Steel with #4 Finish: 1618202224 gauge.
  - b. Cold-Rolled Steel: 18202224 gauge.
    - 1) Zinc-galvanized treated to accept painting but not painted.
    - 2) Zinc galvanized, factory treated, and factory painted in colors selected by Architect from manufacturers standard/custom colors.

- 3) Zinc galvanized, factory treated, and factory primed.

## 2.9 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  2. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  3. Victaulic Company
  4. Viking Group Inc.
  - 5.
- B. Standards:
  1. UL 199.
  2. UL 1767.
  3. UL 1626.
  4. FM 2000.
  5. FM 2008.
  6. FM 2030.
- C. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."
- D. Pressure Rating for Sprinklers:
  1. Standard Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig minimum.
  2. High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250 psig minimum 300 psig.
  3. Residential Sprinklers: 175 psig maximum.
- E. Sprinklers, Automatic Wet with Heat-Responsive Element:
  1. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
  2. Standard Spray, Standard Response:
    - a. Upright.
    - b. Pendent.
    - c. Recessed pendent.
    - d. Flat, concealed pendent.
    - e. Vertical sidewall.
    - f. Horizontal sidewall.
  3. Standard Spray, Quick Response:
    - a. Upright.

- b. Pendent.
  - c. Recessed pendent.
  - d. Flat, concealed pendent.
  - e. Vertical sidewall.
  - f. Horizontal sidewall.
  - g. Flat, concealed horizontal sidewall.
- 4. Extended Coverage:
  - a. Upright.
  - b. Pendent.
  - c. Flat, concealed pendent.
  - d. Horizontal sidewall.
  - e. Flat, concealed horizontal sidewall.
- 5. Residential:
  - a. Recessed pendent.
  - b. Flat, concealed pendent.
  - c. Flat, concealed horizontal sidewall.
- F. Sprinklers, Automatic Dry with Heat-Responsive Element:
  - 1. Standard Spray, Standard Response:
    - a. Upright.
    - b. Pendent.
    - c. Recessed pendent.
    - d. Flat, concealed pendent.
    - e. Horizontal sidewall.
  - 2. Standard Spray, Quick Response:
    - a. Upright.
    - b. Pendent.
    - c. Recessed pendent.
    - d. Flat, Concealed pendent.
    - e. Horizontal sidewall.
    - f. Flat, concealed horizontal sidewall.
- G. Special Sprinklers:
  - 1. Attic.
  - 2. Combustible, concealed.
  - 3. ESFR.
  - 4. Flat spray.
  - 5. Hallway.
  - 6. Institutional.
  - 7. MRI/Non-Ferrous, concealed.
  - 8. Window.



H. Open Sprinklers and Nozzles:

1. Nominal Orifice:

- a. 1/2 inch, with discharge coefficient K between 5.3 and 5.8<Insert value>.
- b. 17/32 inch with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 8.2<Insert value>.

I. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated bronze and painted.

J. Special Coatings: Wax lead and corrosion-resistant paint.

K. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

- 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
- 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.

L. Sprinkler Guards and Water Shields:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  - c. Victaulic Company
  - d. Viking Group Inc.
  - e.
- 2. Standard: UL 199.
- 3. Description: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.10 ALARM DEVICES

A. Match alarm-device material and connection types to piping and equipment materials and connection types.

B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)

- b. Victaulic Company
  - c. Viking Group Inc.
  - d.
- 2. Standard: UL 753.
  - 3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
  - 4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
  - 5. Size: 8-1/2-inch10-inch diameter.
  - 6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
  - 7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
  - 8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

C. Electrically Operated Notification Appliances:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - b. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
  - c.
- 2. Electric Bell:
  - a. Standard: UL 464.
  - b. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
  - c. Size: 6-inch minimum-8-inch minimum-10-inch diameter.
  - d. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase24 V dc.
  - e. Finish: Red-enamel or polyester powder-coat factory finish, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox.
- 3. Strobe/Horn:
  - a. Standard: UL 464.
  - b. Tone: Selectable, steady, Temporal-3 (T-3) in accordance with ISO 8201 and ANSI/ASA S3.41, 2400 Hz, electromechanical, broadband.
  - c. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz.
  - d. Effective Intensity: 110 cd.
  - e. Finish: Red, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox. White letters on housing identifying device as for "Fire."
  - f. Sign, Integrated: Mount between backbox and strobe/horn with text visible on both sides, above and below strobe/horn. Housing to be shaped to cover surface-mounted weatherproof backbox. Sign is to consist of white lettering on red plastic identifying it as a "Sprinkler Fire Alarm" and instructing viewers to call 911, police or fire department.

D. Water-Flow Indicators:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the

following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
  - b. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c. Viking Group Inc.
  - d.
2. Standard: UL 346.
  3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
  4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125 V ac and 0.25 A, 24 V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
  5. Type: Paddle operated.
  6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches - Water-Flow Alarm Detection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
  - b. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c.
2. Description: Electrically supervised, pressure-activated water-flow switch with retard feature.
3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches with normally closed contacts.
4. Design Operation: Rising pressure to 6 psi, plus or minus 2 psi<Insert value> signals water flow.
5. Adjustability: Each switch is to be independently adjustable.
6. Wire Separation: Pressure switch to provide for separation of wiring to each switch connection to allow for low- and high-voltage connections to comply with NFPA 70, Article 760 requirements.

F. Pressure Switches - Low/High Air Pressure Supervisory:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
  - b. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c.

2. Description: Electrically supervised pressure supervisory switch.
3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
4. Design Operation: Detects increase and/or decrease from normal supervisory air pressure.
5. Adjustability: Each switch is to be independently adjustable.
6. Wire Separation: Pressure switch to provide for separation of wiring to each switch connection to allow for low- and high-voltage connections to comply with NFPA 70, Article 760 requirements.

G. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - b. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
  - c. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - d.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
5. Wire Terminal Designations: Indicates normal switch position when switch is properly installed on valve and valve is fully open.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
7. OS&Y Valve Supervisory Switches:
  - a. One or two single-pole, double-throw switches.
  - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 and NEMA 6P enclosures suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
  - c. Visual Switch Indication: Indicates device is properly installed and OS&Y valve is fully open.
  - d. Mounting Hardware: Mounting bracket to grip valve yoke and prevent movement of switch assembly on OS&Y valve.
  - e. Trip Rod Length: Adjustable
8. Butterfly Valve Supervisory Switches:
  - a. Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
  - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 and NEMA 6P enclosures suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
  - c. Mounting Hardware: Removable nipple.
  - d. Trip Rod Length: Adjustable
9. Ball Valve Supervisory Switches:
  - a. One single-pole, double-throw switch.
  - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 enclosure suitable for mounting in any position indoors

or outdoors.

- c. Mounting Hardware: Suitable for mounting directly to pipe, ball valves, or backflow preventers sized from up to NPS 2.

H. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC
  - b. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c.
- 2. Type: Electrically supervised.
- 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
- 4. Design: Signals that controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.

2.11 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide"
- B. Description: For hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- C. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.12 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
  - 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Approvals' "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
  - 2. Electrical characteristics are 120 V ac, 60 Hz, with 24 V dc rechargeable batteries.
  - 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Manual Control Stations, Electric Operation: Metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- C. Manual Control Stations, Hydraulic Operation: Provide union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

D. Panel Components:

1. Power supply.
2. Battery charger.
3. Standby batteries.
4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
6. Lamp test facility.
7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
8. Rectifier.

2.13 PRESSURE GAUGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Ametek U.S. Gauge
3. Ashcroft Inc
4. Brecco Corporation
5. WIKA Instrument Corporation
- 6.

B. Standard: UL 393.

C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

D. Pressure Gauge Range: 0 to 250 psig minimum0 to 300 psig.

E. Water System Piping Gauge: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

F. Air System Piping Gauge: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

1. Flow test is to be performed to meet the criteria established by NFPA 13andNFPA 14.
2. Flow test is to be conducted in accordance with NFPA 291.
3. Test is to be performed during a period of ordinary demand for the water system.

- a. To obtain satisfactory test results of expected flow or rated capacities, sufficient

discharge should be achieved to cause drop of at least 10 percent.

4. Pitot readings are to be taken at the 2-1/2-inch orifice connection.
5. The pitot reading is to range from 10 to 35 psig.
6. Open additional hydrant outlets as needed to control pitot readings.
7. The pitot pressure and corresponding residual pressure readings are to be taken consecutively as pressure fluctuates between a high number and low number.

B. Flow Test Data Written Report:

1. Flow data report is to be written in accordance with NFPA 291.
2. Flow data report is to include a copy of all flow data recorded during the test, including a site plan showing the tested fire hydrants with respect to the fire water service to the building. Site plan is to indicate which hydrant was flowed and which hydrant was used for pressure reading. Provide date of test, name of testing agency, and name of individual performing test.

C. Water Supply Curve: Provide water supply curve based on the lowest supply for a given set of test data. For a given residual pressure reading, the supply is to be graphed utilizing the corresponding pitot pressure/flow reading and static pressure reading.

D. Documentation is to include calibration certifications for gauges used in the flow tests. The certifications are to be from within the previous six (6) months from a reputable agency recognized for certifying pressure gauges.

E. Report flow test results promptly and in writing. A copy of the flow test data report is to be submitted with the hydraulic calculations.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING

- A. Comply with requirements for fire-suppression water-service piping in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fire-suppression water piping to building's interior domestic water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from AHJs. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 requirements for installation of fire-suppression piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA standards requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Install listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install inspector's test connections in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located in accordance with NFPA 13.
- H. Install fire-suppression system piping with drains for complete system drainage. Extend drain piping to exterior of building where possible.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire department connection, to drain piping between fire department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to exterior of building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping in accordance with NFPA standards. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA standards. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- M. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe/sprinkler supply. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Pressurize and check dry-pipe reaction standpipe or sprinkler system piping and air-pressure maintenance devices air compressors.
- O. Fill wet-type fire-suppression system piping with water.
- P. Drain dry-type fire-suppression system piping.



1. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on fire-suppression piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210500 "Common Work Results for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210500 "Common Work Results for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210500 "Common Work Results for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF PIPING JOINTS

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts in accordance with ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

- J. Welded Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators in accordance with "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe in accordance with AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings in accordance with AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe in accordance with AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings in accordance with AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- M. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings in accordance with Copper Development Association's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
- N. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube in accordance with AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings in accordance with AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- O. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- P. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube in accordance with ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- Q. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- R. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Install wall-type fire department connections.
- B. Install yard-type fire department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Install two protective pipe bollards around sides of each fire department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."
- D. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire department connection.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF HOSE CONNECTIONS AND HOSE STATIONS

- A. Examine roughing-in for hose connections and hose stations to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thickness, fire- and smoke-rated construction, framing for hose-station cabinets, and other conditions where hose connections and hose stations are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes.
- E. Install freestanding hose connections and hose stations for access and minimum passage restriction.
- F. Install NPS 1-1/2 hose-connection and hose-station valves with flow-restricting device unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections with quick-disconnect NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2 reducer adapter and flow-restricting device unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Install wall-mounted-type hose connections and wall-mounted, rack hose stations in cabinets. Include pipe escutcheons, with finish matching valves, inside cabinet where water-supply piping penetrates cabinet. Install valves at angle required for connection of fire hose. Comply with requirements for cabinets in Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."
- I. Install freestanding hose stations with support or bracket attached to standpipe.
- J. Install hose-reel hose stations on wall with bracket.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

- A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping in accordance with manufacturer's installation manual and in accordance with NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Install listed fire-suppression system control valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions, NFPA standards, and AHJ.
- B. Install listed fire-suppression system shutoff valves in supervised open position, located to control sources of water supply except from fire department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. System Control Valves:

1. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
2. Install dry-pipe and preaction valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball-drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
  - a. Install air compressor and compressed-air-supply piping.
  - b. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with 14 to 60 psig<Insert value> adjustable range; and 175 psig<Insert value> maximum inlet pressure.
  - c. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.
3. Install deluge valves with trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball-drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

D. Air Vent:

1. Provide at least one air vent at high point in each wet-pipe fire-suppression system in accordance with NFPA standards. Connect vent into top of fire-suppression piping.
2. Provide dielectric union for dissimilar metals, ball valve, and strainer upstream of automatic air vent.
3. Pipe from outlet of air vent to drain.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings symmetrically in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels within tolerance of 1/2 inch<Insert dimension>. Coordinate entire pattern of sprinkler locations with approved reflected ceiling plan.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF NITROGEN GENERATOR WITH PURGE/VENT SYSTEM

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Locate purge vent/valve in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- C. Route alarm signals in code-approved electrical conduit from nitrogen generator system control panel to the supervisory circuit of BAS.

### 3.12 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping in accordance with requirements for identification specified in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect fire-suppression systems in accordance with NFPA standards.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Start and run air compressors.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
  - 9. Verify that sprinklers original factory finish has not been contaminated with dirt, debris, or paint. Sprinklers containing other-than-original factory finish are to be considered defective and replaced with new products. Repair and/or cleaning is not acceptable.
- C. Fire-suppression piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Fire-suppression piping system components considered defective during testing will be replaced with new components. Repair of defective components is not acceptable.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.14 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from fire-suppression system piping, system control valves, sprinklers, and associated components.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.15 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain system control valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

### 3.16 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.
- D. CPVC pipe, Schedule 40Schedule 80 CPVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints may be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.
- E. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, to Be One of the Following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
  - 4. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; galvanized, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
  - 5. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut-or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 6. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 7. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  - 8. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 9. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
  - 10. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
  - 11. Schedule 40orSchedule 10S steel pipe; steel pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - 12. Type L Type M, hard copper tube with plain ends; cast-or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 13. Type L Type M, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

14. NPS 2, Type L Type M, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- F. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), to Be One of the Following:
1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut-or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  4. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  5. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  6. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  7. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
  8. Type L type M, hard copper tube with plain ends; cast-or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  9. Type L type M, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  10. Type L type M, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- G. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger, to Be One of the Following:
1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut-or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  4. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  5. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  6. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  7. Schedule 10orengineered light-wall, steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
  8. Type L type M, hard copper tube with plain ends; cast-or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  9. Type L type M, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

- H. High-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller, to Be One of the Following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  - 4. Schedule 10 engineered light-wall, steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
- I. High-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger, to Be One of the Following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  - 4. Schedule 10 engineered light-wall, steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

### 3.17 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent sprinkler
  - 3. Wall Mounting: Horizontal sidewall sprinklers
  - 4. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces and locations not generally exposed to view; and wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.
  - 2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome factory-painted white escutcheon.
  - 3. Flat Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  - 4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.

END OF SECTION 211000



WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY  
Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS  
a NOVUS architects company

## SECTION 212200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Clean-agent systems.
  - 2. Fire-extinguishing clean agent.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPO: Emergency Power Off.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare in accordance with requirements of NFPA 2001, to include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include design calculations.
  - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, manufacturer-required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 5. Permit-Approved Documents: Working plans and hydraulic calculations approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems indicated to comply with performance and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades. Coordinate for enclosure integrity in accordance with NFPA 2001 requirements.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for extinguishing-agent containers and control panels,

from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
1. Detection Devices: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
  2. Container Valves: Not less than 10percent of amount of each size and type installed.
  3. Nozzles: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
  4. Extinguishing Agent: Not less than 100 percent of amount installed in largest hazard area. Include pressure-rated containers with valves.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. FM Global Compliance: Provide components that are FM Approved and that are listed in FM Approvals' "Approval Guide."

- C. UL Compliance: Provide equipment listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory."
- D. Seismic Performance: Fire-suppression piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5

## 2.2 CLEAN-AGENT SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Viking Group Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain clean-agent systems from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Description: Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system shall be an engineered system for total flooding of the hazard area including the room cavity above the ceiling, below the ceiling, and below the raised floor. System includes separate zones above and below the ceiling and beneath the raised floor. If smoke is detected below the raised floor, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the underfloor zone only. If smoke is detected below the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in zones above and below the ceiling and below the floor. If smoke is detected above the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the zone above the ceiling only.
- D. Delegated Design: Design clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction. Design system for Class AClass BClass C fires as appropriate for areas being protected, and include safety factor. Use clean agent indicated and in concentration suitable for normally occupied areas.
- E. Performance Requirements, Discharge HFC 227ea: Within 10 seconds and maintain 7.1 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
  - 1. HFC 227ea concentration in hazard areas greater than 9.0<Insert number> percent immediately after discharge or less than 5.8<Insert number> percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 620-psig calculated working pressure and 360-psig initial charging pressure.
- F. Performance Requirements, Discharge FK-5-1-12: Within 10 seconds and maintain 6.6 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
  - 1. FK-5-1-12 concentration in hazard areas greater than 10.0<Insert number> percent immediately after discharge or less than 6.5<Insert number> percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 620-psig calculated working pressure and 360-psig initial charging pressure.

- G. Performance Requirements, Discharge IG-541: Within 60 seconds and maintain 38 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
  - 1. IG-541 concentration in hazard areas greater than 40<Insert number> percent immediately after discharge or less than 32<Insert number> percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 2175-psig calculated working pressure upstream from orifice union, minimum 1000-psig calculated working pressure downstream from orifice union, and 2175-psig initial charging pressure.
- H. Cross-Zoned Detection: Devices located in two separate zones. Sound alarm on activating single-detection device, and discharge extinguishing agent on actuating single-detection device in another zone.
- I. Verified Detection: Devices located in single zone. Sound alarm on activating single-detection device, and discharge extinguishing agent on actuating second-detection device.
- J. System Operating Sequence for combination of ionization and photoelectric smoke detectors:
  - 1. Actuating First Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and visual alarms (slow pulse), shut down air-conditioning and ventilating systems serving protected area, close doors in protected area, and send signal to fire-alarm system.
  - 2. Actuating Second Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and visual alarms (fast pulse), shut down power to protected equipment, start time delay for extinguishing-agent discharge for 30 seconds, and discharge extinguishing agent.
  - 3. Extinguishing-agent discharge will operate audible alarms and strobe lights inside and outside the protected area.
- K. System Operating Sequence: System shall be cross-zoned, air-sampling detectors and photoelectric detectors reporting to a fully programmable microprocessor-based control panel programmed to operate as follows:
  - 1. If one photoelectric detector and air-sampling detector reaches the third detection level (Fire 1), agent discharge will be initiated as described for the third detection level (Fire 1) below.
  - 2. Air-Sampling System:
    - a. First Detection Level (Alert): Mild audible and visual indication on annunciator panel. Strobe lights flash slowly in the protected area.
    - b. Second Detection Level (Action): Strong audible and visual indication on annunciator panel. Strobe lights flash rapidly in the protected area.
    - c. Third Detection Level (Fire 1): Strong audible and visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize horn(s), bell(s), and strobe light(s) in the protected area and outside entry doors. Shut down air-conditioning and ventilating systems serving the protected area, and close doors in the protected area. Send signal to fire-alarm system, initiate 30-second time delay for extinguishing-agent discharge, and discharge extinguishing agent. At agent discharge, terminate power to equipment in the protected area.
    - d. Fourth Detection Level (Fire 2): Same as Fire 1.

- L. Manual stations shall immediately discharge extinguishing agent when activated.
- M. Operating abort switches will delay extinguishing-agent discharge while being activated, and switches must be reset to prevent agent discharge. Release hand pressure on the switch to cause agent discharge after the time delay has expired.
- N. EPO: Will terminate power to protected equipment immediately on actuation.
- O. Low-Agent Pressure Switch: Initiate trouble alarm if sensing less than set pressure.
- P. Power Transfer Switch: Transfer from normal to standby power source.

## 2.3 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. See "IG-541 Agent Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Piping, Valves, and Discharge Nozzles: Comply with types and standards listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution," for charging pressure of system.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type S, Grade B or ASTM A106/A106M, Grade A and Grade B; Schedule 40, Schedule 80, and Schedule 160, seamless steel pipe.
  - 1. Threaded Fittings:
    - a. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 300.
    - b. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 300 unless Class 600 is indicated.
    - c. Fittings Working Pressure: 620 psig minimum.
    - d. Flanged Joints: Class 300 minimum.
  - 2. Forged-Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.11, Class 3000, socket pattern.
  - 3. Steel, Grooved-End Fittings: FM Approved and NRTL listed, ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A536 ductile iron, with dimensions matching steel pipe and ends factory grooved in accordance with AWWA C606.
- D. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch- maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- E. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Steel, Keyed Couplings: UL 213, AWWA C606, approved or listed for clean-agent service, and matching steel-pipe dimensions. Include ASTM A536, ductile-iron housing, rubber gasket, and

steel bolts and nuts.

## 2.4 VALVES

### A. General Valve Requirements:

1. UL listed or FM Approved for use in fire-protection systems.
2. Compatible with type of clean agent used.

### B. Container Valves: With rupture disc or solenoid and manual-release lever, capable of immediate and total agent discharge and suitable for intended flow capacity.

### C. Valves in Sections of Closed Piping and Manifolds: Fabricate to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install valve and separate pressure relief device.

### D. Valves in Manifolds: Check valve; installed to prevent loss of extinguishing agent when container is removed from manifold.

## 2.5 EXTINGUISHING-AGENT CONTAINERS

### A. Description: Steel tanks complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, for unfired pressure vessels. Include minimum working-pressure rating that matches system charging pressure, valve, pressure switch, and pressure gage.

1. Finish: Red, enamel or epoxy paint.
2. Manifold:
  - a. Fabricate with valves, pressure switches, and connections for multiple storage containers, as indicated.
  - b. Fabricate with valves, pressure switches, selector switch, and connections for main- and reserve-supply banks of multiple storage containers.
3. Storage-Tank Brackets: Factory- or field-fabricated retaining brackets consisting of steel straps and channels; suitable for container support, maintenance, and tank refilling or replacement.

## 2.6 FIRE-EXTINGUISHING CLEAN AGENT

### A. IG-541 Clean Agent: Mixture of nitrogen, argon, and carbon dioxide inert gases.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following :
  - a. Viking Group Inc.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain clean agents from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.7 DISCHARGE NOZZLES

- A. Description: Equipment manufacturer's standard one-piece brass or aluminum alloy of type, size, discharge pattern, and capacity required for application.
- B. Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- C. Stamped with orifice size and type.

## 2.8 MANIFOLD AND ORIFICE UNIONS

- A. Description: NRTL-listed device with minimum 2175-psig pressure rating, to control flow and reduce pressure of IG-541 gas in piping.
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Piping assembly with orifice, sized for system design requirements.
  - 2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Piping assembly with nipple, sized for system design requirements.

## 2.9 FIRE CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, including equipment and features required for testing, supervising, and operating fire-extinguishing system.
- B. Power Requirements: 120/240 V ac; with electrical contacts for connection to system components and fire-alarm system, and transformer or rectifier as needed to produce power at voltage required for accessories and alarm devices.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1, enameled-steel cabinet.
  - 1. Mounting: Surface
- D. Supervised Circuits: Separate circuits for each independent hazard area.
  - 1. Detection circuits equal to required number of zones, or addressable devices assigned to required number of zones.
  - 2. Manual pull-station circuit.
  - 3. Alarm circuit.
  - 4. Release circuit.
  - 5. Abort circuit.
  - 6. EPO circuit.
- E. Control-Panel Features:
  - 1. Electrical contacts for shutting down fans, activating dampers, and operating system electrical devices.
  - 2. Automatic switchover to standby power at loss of primary power.
  - 3. Storage container, low-pressure indicator.
  - 4. Service disconnect to interrupt system operation for maintenance with visual status



indication on the annunciator panel.

- F. Annunciator Panel: Graphic type showing protected, hazard-area plans, as well as locations of detectors and abort, EPO, and manual stations. Include lamps to indicate device-initiating alarm, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, and stainless steel or aluminum enclosure.
- G. Standby Power: Sealed lead calciumSealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acidVented, wet-cell pocket, plate nickel cadmium batteries with capacity to operate system for 24 hours and alarm for minimum of 15 minutes. Include automatic battery charger that has a varying charging rate between trickle and high depending on battery voltage, and that is capable of maintaining batteries fully charged. Include manual voltage control, dc voltmeter, dc ammeter, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, automatic transfer switch, and suitable enclosure.

## 2.10 DETECTION DEVICES

- A. Description: Comply with NFPA 2001, NFPA 72, and UL 268; 24 V dc, nominal.
- B. Ionization Detectors: Dual-chamber type, having sampling and referencing chambers, with smoke-sensing element.
- C. Photoelectric Detectors: LED light source and silicon photodiode receiving element.
- D. Remote Air-Sampling Detector System: Includes air-sampling pipe network, laser-based photoelectric detector, sample transport fan, and control unit.
  - 1. Pipe Network: CPVC tubing connects control unit with calibrated sampling holes.
  - 2. Smoke Detector: Particle-counting type with continuous laser beam. Sensitivity adjustable to a minimum of four preset values.
  - 3. Sample Transport Fan: Centrifugal type, creating a minimum static pressure of 0.05 inch wg at all sampling ports.
  - 4. Control Unit: Multizone unit as indicated on Drawings. Provides same system power supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for the control panel plus separate trouble indication for airflow and detector problems.
- E. Signals to the Central Fire-Alarm Control Panel: Any type of local system trouble is reported to central fire-alarm control panel as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each system zone are individually reported to central fire-alarm control panel as separately identified zones.

## 2.11 MANUAL STATIONS

- A. Description: Surface FM Approved or NRTL listed, with clear plastic hinged cover, 120-V ac or low-voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
- B. Manual Release: "MANUAL RELEASE" caption, and red finish. Unit can manually discharge extinguishing agent with operating device that remains engaged until unlocked.
- C. Abort Switch: "ABORT" caption, momentary contact, with green finish.

- D. EPO Switch: "EPO" caption, with yellow finish.

## 2.12 SWITCHES

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, where available, 120-V<Insert value> ac or low-voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
  - 1. Low-Agent Pressure Switches: Pneumatic operation.
  - 2. Power Transfer Switches: Key-operation selector, for transfer of release circuit signal from main supply to reserve supply.
  - 3. Door Closers: Magnetic retaining and release device or electrical interlock to cause door operator to drive the door closed.

## 2.13 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, low voltage, and surface mounting. Comply with requirements in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" or Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems" for alarm and monitoring devices.
- B. Bells: Minimum 6-inch diameter.
- C. Horns: 90 to 94 dBA.
- D. Strobe Lights: Translucent lens, with "FIRE" or similar caption.
- E. Oxygen Deficiency Monitor.
  - 1. Sampling Method and Range: Diffusion, zero to 25 percent O<sub>2</sub>.
  - 2. 24 V dc.
  - 3. Wall mounted with bracket.
  - 4. Built-in audible alarm 90 dBA.
  - 5. Backlit LCD.
  - 6. 10-year no-calibration sensor.
  - 7. No maintenance required.
  - 8. Signal Outputs: Standard 4- to 20-mA analog.
  - 9. Connections for system control data acquisition system and/or programmable logic controller.
  - 10. Plus or minus 1 percent accuracy of full scale.
  - 11. Operating temperature of minus 40 to plus 122 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with enclosure integrity requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work in

accordance with NFPA 2001.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 IG-541 AGENT PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Piping between Storage Containers and Orifice Union: Schedule 80 160, steel pipe; forged-steel welding fittings; and welded malleable-iron fittings with threaded or flanged joints.
- B. Piping Downstream from Orifice Union: Schedule 40 80, steel pipe; forged-steel welding fittings; and welded malleable-iron fittings with threaded or flanged joints.

### 3.3 CLEAN-AGENT SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install clean-agent containers, piping, and other components level and plumb, in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Clean-Agent Container Mounting:
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- C. Grooved Piping Joints: Groove pipe ends in accordance with AWWA C606 dimensions. Assemble grooved-end steel pipe and steel, grooved-end fittings with steel, keyed couplings and lubricant in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install pipe and fittings, valves, and discharge nozzles in accordance with requirements listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution."
  - 1. Install valves designed to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install pressure relief devices in valved sections of piping systems.
  - 2. Support piping using supports and methods in accordance with NFPA 13.
  - 3. Install seismic restraints for extinguishing-agent piping systems.
  - 4. Install control panels, detection system components, alarms, and accessories, in accordance with requirements listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Detection, Actuation, and Control Systems," as required for supervised system application.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical

Systems."

- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
- E. Connect electrical devices to control panel and to building's fire-alarm system. Electrical power, wiring, and devices are specified in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" or Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems."

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components and equipment. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- B. Identify piping, extinguishing-agent containers, other equipment, and panels in accordance with NFPA 2001.
- C. Install signs at entry doors for protected areas to warn occupants that they are entering a room protected with a clean-agent fire-extinguishing system.
- D. Install signs at entry doors to advise persons outside the room the meaning of horn(s), bell(s), and strobe light(s) outside the protected space.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance in accordance with requirements listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Approval of Installation."
  - 2. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and associated protected enclosure will be considered defective if either does not pass required tests and inspections.
  - 3. Prepare test and inspection reports in accordance with requirements listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Installation Acceptance."

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Each pipe section shall be cleaned internally after preparation and before assembly by means of swabbing, using a suitable nonflammable cleaner. Pipe network shall be free of particulate matter and oil residue before installing nozzles or discharge devices.

### 3.10 OPERATIONAL CONDITION SYSTEM FILLING

#### A. Preparation:

1. Verify that clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and protected enclosure have passed all required tests and inspections in accordance with NFPA 2001.
2. Verify that clean-agent fire-extinguishing piping system installation is completed and cleaned.
3. Verify complete enclosure integrity.
4. Verify operation of ventilation and exhaust systems.

#### B. Filling Procedures:

1. Fill clean-agent fire-extinguishing containers with extinguishing agent, and pressurize to indicated charging pressure.
2. Install filled containers.
3. Energize circuits.
4. Adjust operating controls.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems.

END OF SECTION 212200

## SECTION 213113 - ELECTRIC-DRIVE, CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Horizontally mounted, single-stage, split-case fire pumps.
2. Fire-pump accessories and specialties.
3. Flowmeter systems.
4. Grout.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, performance curves, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire pumps, motor drivers, and fire-pump accessories and specialties.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of fire pump, from manufacturer.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 20.
- B. Seismic Performance: Fire pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event.
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- C. Pump Equipment, Accessory, and Specialty Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum unless higher pressure rating is indicated.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested fire-pump and driver unit.
- B. Base: Fabricated and attached to fire-pump and driver unit, with reinforcement to resist movement of pump during seismic events when base is anchored to building substrate.
- C. Finish: Red paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.

#### 2.3 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, SINGLE-STAGE, SPLIT-CASE FIRE PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. A-C Fire Pump; a Xylem brand
  - 2. CPS Products, Inc.
  - 3. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, USA
  - 4. Patterson Pump Company; a Gorman-Rupp company
  - 5. Peerless Pump Company
  - 6. Pentair Aurora; Pentair Pump Group
  - 7. Reddy-Buffaloes Pump Company
  - 8. Ruhrpumpen, Inc

9. S.A. Armstrong Limited

B. Pump:

1. Standard: UL 448 for split-case pumps for fire service.
2. Casing: Axially split case, cast iron, with ASME B16.1 pipe-flange connections.
3. Impeller: Double suction, cast bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft.
4. Wear Rings: Replaceable bronze.
5. Shaft and Sleeve: Alloy steel shaft with bronze sleeve.
  - a. Shaft Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing.
  - b. Seals: Stuffing box with minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn and bronze packing gland.
6. Mounting: Pump and driver shafts are horizontal, with pump and driver on same base.

C. Coupling: Flexible and capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment. Include metal coupling guard.

D. Driver:

1. Standard: UL 1004A
2. Type: Electric motor; NEMA MG 1, polyphase Design B.

E. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Rated Capacity: 500 GPM.
2. Total Rated Head: 175 PSI.
3. Inlet Flange: Class 125Class 250<Insert class>.
4. Outlet Flange: Class 125Class 250<Insert class>.
5. Suction Head Available at Pump: <Insert feet>.
6. Motor Horsepower: 75 hp.
7. Motor Speed: 3600 rpm.
8. Electrical Characteristics:
  - a. Volts: 460 V.
  - b. Phase: Three.
  - c. Hertz: 60.
  - d. Full-Load Amperes: <Insert number> A.
  - e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: <Insert number> A.
  - f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: <Insert number> A.
9. Pump-Start, Pressure-Switch Setting: <Insert psig>.
10. Pump-Stop, Pressure-Switch Setting: <Insert psig>.
11. Rotation RH Clockwise.



## 2.4 FIRE-PUMP ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Automatic Air-Release Valves: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation in fire-pump casing.
- B. Circulation Relief Valves: UL 1478, brass, spring loaded; for installation in pump discharge piping.
- C. Relief Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BERMAD Control Valves
    - b. CLA-VAL
    - c. Kunkle Valve
    - d. OCV Control Valves
    - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company
    - f. Zurn Industries, LLC
  - 2. Description: UL 1478, bronze or cast iron, spring loaded; for installation in fire-suppression water-supply piping.
- D. Inlet Fitting: Eccentric tapered reducer at pump suction inlet.
- E. Outlet Fitting: Concentric tapered reducer at pump discharge outlet.
- F. Discharge Cone: ClosedOpenClosed or open type.
- G. Hose Valve Manifold Assembly:
  - 1. Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 20.
  - 2. Header Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Header Pipe Fittings: ASME B16.4, galvanized cast-iron threaded fittings.
  - 4. Automatic Drain Valve: UL 1726.
  - 5. Manifold, Flush-Type Body:
    - a. Test Connections: Comply with UL 405; however, provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
    - b. Body: Flush type, brass or ductile iron, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
    - c. Nipples: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe, with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - d. Adapters and Caps with Chain: Brass or bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
    - e. Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; rectangular.
    - f. Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.

- g. Exposed Parts Finish: PolishedRoughbrass, chrome plated.
  - h. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."
6. Manifold, Exposed-Type Body:
- a. Test Connections: Comply with UL 405; however, provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
  - b. Body: Exposed type, brass, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
  - c. Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; round.
  - d. Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads. Include caps and chains.
  - e. Exposed Parts Finish: PolishedRoughbrass, chrome plated.
  - f. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."

## 2.5 FLOWMETER SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 1. Fire Research Corp
  - 2. Gerand Engineering Co
  - 3. Hose Monster company; a HydroFlow Products, Inc. company
  - 4. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc
  - 5. Meriam Process Technologies
  - 6. Preso Meters; Badger Meter Inc.
  - 7. Reddy-Buffaloes Pump Company
  - 8. Rosemount; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions
  - 9. Victaulic Company
- B. Description: UL-listed or FM-Approved, fire-pump flowmeter system able to indicate flow to not less than 175 percent of fire-pump rated capacity.
- C. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum250 psig.
- D. Sensor: Annubar probe, orifice plate, or venturi unless otherwise indicated. Sensor size shall match pipe, tubing, flowmeter, and fittings.
- E. Permanently Mounted Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches in diameter. Include bracket or device for wall mounting.
- 1. Tubing Package: NPS 1/8 or NPS 1/4 soft copperorplastic tubing with copper or brass fittings and valves.
- F. Portable Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches in diameter and with two 12-foot- long hoses in carrying case.

## 2.6 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect fire pumps according to UL 448 requirements for "Operation Test" and "Manufacturing and Production Tests."
  - 1. Verification of Performance: Rate fire pumps according to UL 448.
- B. Fire pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment bases and anchorage provisions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of fire pumps.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-pump installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Fire-Pump Installation Standard: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation of fire pumps, relief valves, and related components.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install fire pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in

Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install fire-pump suction and discharge piping equal to or larger than sizes required by NFPA 20.
- D. Support piping and pumps separately, so weight of piping does not rest on pumps.
- E. Install valves that are same size as connecting piping. Comply with requirements for fire-protection valves specified in Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems."
- F. Install pressure gages on fire-pump suction and discharge flange pressure-gage tapings. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems."
- G. Install piping hangers and supports, anchors, valves, gages, and equipment supports according to NFPA 20.
- H. Install flowmeters and sensors. Install flowmeter-system components and make connections according to NFPA 20 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not factory mounted. Furnish copies of manufacturers' wiring diagram submittals to electrical Installer.
- J. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

### 3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Align split-case pump and driver shafts after complete unit has been leveled on concrete base, grout has set, and anchor bolts have been tightened.
- B. After alignment is correct, tighten anchor bolts evenly. Fill baseplate completely with grout, with metal blocks and shims or wedges in place. Tighten anchor bolts after grout has hardened. Check alignment and make required corrections.
- C. Align piping connections.
- D. Align pump and driver shafts for angular and parallel alignment according to HI 1.4 and to tolerances specified by manufacturer.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping and valves specified in Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and

specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps and equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect relief-valve discharge to drainage piping or point of discharge.
- D. Connect flowmeter-system meters, sensors, and valves to tubing.
- E. Connect fire pumps to their controllers.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for fire-pump marking according to NFPA 20.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test each fire pump with its controller as a unit. Comply with requirements for electric-motor-driver fire-pump controllers specified in Section 262933 "Controllers for Fire-Pump Drivers."
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  - 1. After installing components, assemblies, and equipment, including controller, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Test according to NFPA 20 for acceptance and performance testing.
  - 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 4. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Components, assemblies, and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Furnish fire hoses in number, size, and length required to reach storm drain or other acceptable location to dispose of fire-pump test water. Hoses are for tests only and do not convey to Owner.

3.7        STARTUP SERVICE

- A.    Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1.    Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8        DEMONSTRATION

- A.    Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire pumps.

END OF SECTION 213113

## SECTION 22 0500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product, excluding motors which are included in Part 1 of the plumbing equipment Sections.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components, and finishes.
  - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

##### B. Delegated Design Submittals: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

##### C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Welding certificates.

##### B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of expansion joint, and gauge to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with 2021 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water expansion fittings and loops for plumbing piping intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Compatibility: Provide products suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- C. Capability: Provide products and installations to accommodate maximum axial movement as scheduled or indicated on Drawings.

#### 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Motor Requirements, General:
  - 1. Content includes motors for use on alternating-current power systems of up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
  - 2. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in equipment schedules or Sections.
  - 3. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.



4.

B. Motor Characteristics:

1. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 ft. above sea level.
2. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

C. Polyphase Motors:

1. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
2. Efficiency: Premium Efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Service Factor: 1.15.
4. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
5. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
6. Insulation: Class F.
7. Code Letter Designation:
  - a. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - b. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
8. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T

D. Additional Requirements for Polyphase Motors:

1. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
  - a. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

E. Single-Phase Motors:

1. Motors larger than 1/20 hp must be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - a. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - b. Split phase.
  - c. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - d. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
2. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
3. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for

- radial and thrust loading.
- 4. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- 5. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device will automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

F. Electronically Commutated Motors:

- 1. Microprocessor-Based Electronic Control Module: Converts 120 V or 240 V single-phase AC power to three-phase DC power to operate the brushless DC motor.
- 2. Three-phase power motor module with permanent magnet rotor.
- 3. Circuit board or digital speed controller/LED display.
- 4. Building Automation System Interface: Via AC voltage signal, DC voltage signal, or Digital Serial Interface (DSI).

## 2.3 EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

A. Performance Requirements:

- 1. Compatibility: Provide products suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- 2. Capability: Provide products and installations that will accommodate maximum axial movement as scheduled or indicated on Drawings.

B. Alignment Guides and Anchors:

- 1. Anchor Materials:
  - a. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A183, steel hex head.
  - c. Washers: ASTM F844, steel, plain, flat washers.
  - d. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
    - 1) Stud: Threaded, stainless steel.
    - 2) Expansion Plug: Stainless steel.
    - 3) Washer and Nut: Stainless steel.
  - e. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
    - 1) Bonding Material: ASTM C881/C881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
    - 2) Stud: ASTM A307, zinc-coated carbon steel or stainless steel with continuous

- thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
- 3) Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated carbonStainless steel.

## 2.4 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

### A. Sleeves without Waterstop:

1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron, with plain ends.
2. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
3. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 24 gauge minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
4. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
5. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange.
6. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange.

### B. Grout:

1. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
2. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
3. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### C. Silicone Sealants:

## 2.5 METERS AND GAUGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### A. Thermowells, Lead Free:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: Lead-free copper.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Type 304 stainless steel.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, or as required to match threaded opening in pipe.
7. Internal Threads: Size and thread type as required to match thermometer mounting threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length to extend a minimum of 2 inches into fluid
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing. Extension is to be of sufficient length to extend beyond finished insulation surface.

11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
  12. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.
- B. Gauge Attachments, Lead Free:
1. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, lead-free brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
  2. Valves: Lead-free brass or stainless steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF EXPANSION JOINTS, GENERAL

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Install metal-bellows expansion joints in accordance with EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- B. Install rubber packless expansion joints in accordance with FSA-PSJ-703.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9.
  2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-58, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
  2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in floors/slabs/walls without sleeve-seal system. Select to maintain fire resistance of floor/slab/wall.

- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants that joint sealant manufacturer's literature indicates is appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange centered across width of concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to wooden concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeves. Select to maintain fire resistance of floor/slab/wall.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF METERS AND GAUGES

- A. Install thermometer with thermowell at each required thermometer location.
- B. Install thermowells in vertical position in piping tees.
- C. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- D. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- E. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- F. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- G. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gauges in piping tees with pressure gauge located on pipe at most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gauges on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gauge for fluids.
- K. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- L. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
  - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
  - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
  - 5. Outlet side of hot-water-balancing valve.
  - 6. Each main hot-water-recirculating line return pipe.
- M. Install pressure gauges in the following locations:

1. Building water service entrance into building.
2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### 3.11 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gauges adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gauges, machines, and equipment.

### 3.12 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gauges to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sleeves and Sleeve Seals:
  1. Perform the following tests and inspections:
    - a. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - b. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  2. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Escutcheons:
  1. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

### 3.14 SLEEVES APPLICATION

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
  2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
  3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:



- a. Sleeves with waterstops or stack-sleeve fittings.
- 4. Interior Wall and Partitions:
  - a. Sleeves without waterstops.
- 3.15 THERMOMETER, LEAD FREE, APPLICATION
  - A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater are to be the following:
    - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
- 3.16 THERMOMETER, LEAD FREE, SCALE-RANGE APPLICATION
  - A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping:
    - 1. 0 to 100 deg F.
  - B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping:
    - 1. 0 to 250 deg F
  - C. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping:
    - 1. 0 to 100 deg F
- 3.17 PRESSURE-GAUGE APPLICATION
  - A. Pressure gauges at discharge of each water service into building are to be the following:
    - 1. Sealed direct mounted, metal case.
- 3.18 PRESSURE-GAUGE SCALE-RANGE APPLICATION
  - A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping:
    - 1. 0 to 100 psi.
    - 2. 0 to 200 psi.
  - B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping:
    - 1. 0 to 100 psi.

2. 0 to 200 psi.

END OF SECTION 220500

## SECTION 22 0523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer.
- C. FKM: Fluoroelastomer.
- D. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber (also known as Buna-N).
- E. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- F. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
- H. RPTFE: Reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene.
- I. RS: Rising stem.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For each type of product.
    - a. Include material descriptions and dimensions of individual components.
    - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooved ends, press ends, solder ends, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - 4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - 5. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

6. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  1. Maintain valve end protection.
  2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems or other components as lifting or rigging points unless specifically indicated for this purpose in manufacturer's written instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standards:
  1. Domestic-water piping valves intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption must comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61/NSF 372; or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  5. ASME B16.18 for cast-copper solder-joint connections.
  6. ASME B16.22 for wrought-copper solder-joint connections.
  7. ASME B16.34 for flanged- and threaded-end connections.
  8. ASME B16.51 for press joint connections.
  9. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Provide bronze valves made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are unacceptable.

- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.
- H. Valve Actuator Type:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn ball valves NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Hand Lever: For quarter-turn ball valves smaller than NPS 4.
- I. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Provide 2-inch extended neck stems.
  - 2. Provide extended operating handles with nonthermal-conductive covering material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Provide memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Examine press fittings to verify they have been properly pressed.
- F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves. Remove defective valves from site.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

- B. Provide support of piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and where not blocked by equipment, other piping, or building components.
- D. For valves in horizontal piping, install valves with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position that does not project into aisles or block access to other equipment.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem and actuator or manual operator movement.
- G. Verify that joints of each valve have been properly installed and sealed to assure there is no leakage or damage.
- H. Chainwheels: Install chainwheels on manual operators for butterfly globe and gate valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- I. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Check Valves: Center-guided type and plate type, in horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 2. Check Valves, Swing Type: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 3. Check Valves, Lift Type: With stem upright and plumb.
- J. Valve Tags: Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
- K. Adhere to manufacturer's written installation instructions. When soldering or brazing valves, do not heat valves above maximum permitted temperature. Do not use solder with melting point temperature above valve manufacturer's written recommended maximum.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where

- threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
  7. For Stainless Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ThreadedPress ends.
  8. For Stainless Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends.
  9. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Valve ends may be grooved.
  10. For Grooved-End Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.
  11. Wafer-Type Valves: Flanged connections.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER BALL VALVE SCHEDULE

#### A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Ball valves, lead free, threaded or soldered ends - bronze, two piece with full port and stainless steel trim; soldered ends.

#### B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Ball valves, threaded or flanged ends - stainless steel, two piece with full port; threaded ends.

### 3.6 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER BUTTERFLY VALVE SCHEDULE

#### A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Butterfly valves, lead free, flangeless (wafer type) - iron, with stainless steel disc; 150 CWP, EPDM seat.

### 3.7 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER CHECK VALVE SCHEDULE

#### A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Check valves, lead free, swing type, threaded or soldered ends - bronze, with bronze disc, Class 125.

#### B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Check valves, lead free, swing type, flanged or threaded ends - iron, with metal seats, Class 125.

3.8 PUMP-DISCHARGE CHECK VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Check valves, lead free, swing type, threaded or soldered ends - bronze, with bronze disc, Class 125.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Domestic Water Pumps:

1. Check valves, lead free, swing type, flanged or threaded ends - iron, with lever- and spring-closure control, Class 125.

C. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage:

1. Check valves, swing type, flanged ends - iron, with lever- and spring-closure control, Class 125.

3.9 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER GATE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Gate valves, lead free, threaded or soldered ends - bronze, NRS, Class 125; threaded or soldered ends.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Gate valves, lead free, flanged ends - iron, NRS, Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523



## SECTION 22 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. [Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"] [Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"] for vibration isolation devices.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

##### B. Shop Drawings: [Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.] Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal strut support systems.
3. Rooftop-mounted strut support systems.
4. FRP strut support systems.
5. Pipe stands.
6. Equipment supports.

##### C. Delegated Design Submittals: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication/assembly and design calculations for trapeze hangers.
2. Detail fabrication/assembly and design calculations for each type of strut support system, by the manufacturer's technical representative.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with 2021 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment[ and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction].

#### 2.2 PIPE HANGERS - METAL, TRAPEZE TYPE

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

#### 2.3 PIPE HANGERS - FRP

- A. Pipe Hangers - FRP, Clevis Type:
  - 1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1 factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger, except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced plastic resin.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread [stainless steel]<Insert material> rod, washer, and nuts made of [FRP][polyurethane][or][stainless steel]<Insert material>.
  - 3. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, UL 94.
- B. Pipe Hangers - FRP, Strap Type:
  - 1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10 steel pipe hanger, except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced plastic resin.

- a. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, UL 94.
2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of [stainless steel]<Insert material>.

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

Equipment support in "Description" Paragraph below requires calculating and detailing at each use.

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: **ASTM B221**.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: **5000 psi**, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination is to include weight of supported components plus **[200 lb]**<Insert value>.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

- B. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- C. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, [NPS 2-1/2]<Insert pipe size> and larger[ and at changes in direction of piping]. Coordinate location of concrete inserts before concrete is placed.
- D. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- E. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- F. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used as an option. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields are to span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used as an option. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  - 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- G. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

- H. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate in accordance with ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- I. FRP Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-58. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- J. Strut System Installation: [Metal][FRP]; arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- K. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- L. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick after concrete is placed and cured. Use installers that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Install lag screw wood fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- M. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types, except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- N. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- O. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- P. Equipment Support Installation:
  - 1. Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
  - 2. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
  - 3. Grouting: Place grout under supports for floor-mounted equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
  - 4. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for [trapeze pipe hangers][and][equipment supports].
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to [1-1/2 inches]<Insert dimension>.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup:
  - 1. Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
  - 2. Comply with requirements in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"][Section 099123 "Interior Painting"][Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"]<Insert painting Section(s)> for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
  - 3. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel [pipe hangers and supports][metal trapeze pipe hangers][and][metal framing systems] and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use [stainless steel pipe hangers][FRP pipe hangers][and][FRP strut systems] and [stainless steel][or][corrosion-resistant] attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and [copper][or][stainless steel] attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30**.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to **1050 deg F** pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 24**, requiring up to **4 inches** of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes **NPS 3/4 to NPS 36**, requiring clamp flexibility and up to **4 inches** of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 24** if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 4**, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/4 to NPS 8**.
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8**.
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8**.
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8**.
  - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/8 to NPS 8**.

11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/8 to NPS 3**.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30**.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36** if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes **NPS 1 to NPS 30**, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24**, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 42** if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 24** if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 30** if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24**.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24** if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to **6 inches** for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For **120 to 450 deg F** piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For **120 to 450 deg F** piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend



- pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
- 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
- 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
  - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  - 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability

- factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use [powder-actuated fasteners][or][mechanical-expansion anchors] instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

## SECTION 22 0548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Designated Seismic System: A plumbing component that requires design in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7, Ch. 13 and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
- B. IBC: International Building Code.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (for the State of California owned and regulated medical facilities).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Include load rating for each wind-force-restraint fitting and assembly.
3. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic- and wind-force-restraint component.
4. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by UL product listing, FM Approvals, OSHPD, an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
6. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.

2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. For each seismic-restraint and wind-load protection device, including seismic-restrained mounting, and concrete anchor and insert, that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
  - a. Seismic and wind-load restraint, and vibration isolator, and isolation base selection: Select vibration isolators, seismic and wind-load restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
  - b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
  - c. Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic and wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
  - d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared in "Performance Requirements" Article in "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph.
  - e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared in "Wind-Load Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic and wind-load-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Detail Drawing:
  - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - c. Coordinate seismic restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
3. All delegated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
4. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.

5. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation and wind-load reinforcement device installation and seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Air-Spring Mounting System Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data.
- E. Field quality-control reports:
- F. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.
  1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active plumbing seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and **AHRI 1270**, including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
- G. Wind-Force Performance Certification: Provide special certification for plumbing components subject to high wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-force performance certification.
  1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated plumbing device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For restrained-air-spring isolators to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, be an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: UL product listing, an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic and wind-load control system.
  - 1. Seismic and Wind-Load Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16.
- B. Seismic Design Calculations:
  - 1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16 or other seismic calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the section text.
    - a. Data indicated below to be determined by Delegated-Design Contractor must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
    - b. Coordinate seismic design calculations with wind-load calculations for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.

- c. Building Occupancy Category: IV.
  - d. Building Risk Category: IV.
  - e. Building Site Classification: D.
2. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-16 unless otherwise noted.
- a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Value is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation.
    - 1)  $S_D$  = Spectral Acceleration: Refer to drawing S001. Value applies to all components on Project.
    - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated-Design Contractor from each component submittal.
    - 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine from Project Drawings for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" shall be taken as zero.
    - 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated-Design Contractor.
  - b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.1.2.
  - c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_{pl}$ : Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
    - 1)  $D_p$  = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2.
    - 2)  $I_e$  = Structure Importance Factor: 1.5. Value applies to all components on Project.
    - 3)  $\delta_{xA}$  = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 4)  $\delta_{yA}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 5)  $\delta_{yB}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 6)  $h_x$  = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
    - 7)  $h_y$  = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached:

- Determine for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
- 8)  $\Delta a_A$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
  - 9)  $\Delta a_B$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
  - 10)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift  $\Delta a$ : See Drawings Schedules for each component.
- d. Component Fundamental Period  $T_p$ : Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.3. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: Determined by Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 2)  $g$  = Gravitational Acceleration: **32.17 fps<sup>2</sup>**.
  - 3)  $K_p$  = Combined Stiffness of the Component, Supports, and Attachments: Determined by delegated-design seismic engineer.
3. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-10 unless otherwise noted.
- a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-10, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $SDS$  = Spectral Acceleration: See Drawing S001. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated-Design Contractor from equipment submittal.
  - 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determined from Project Drawings for each component by Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" shall be taken as zero.
  - 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated-Design Contractor.
- b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculate by Delegated- Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.1.
- c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_{pl}$ : Calculate by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $D_p$  = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be



- Designed to Accommodate: Calculate by Delegated-Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2.
- 2)  $I_e$  = Structure Importance Factor: 1.5. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 3)  $\delta_{xA}$  = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $\delta_{yA}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 5)  $\delta_{yB}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $h_x$  = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data;
  - 7)  $h_y$  = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 8)  $\Delta_aA$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 9)  $\Delta_aB$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 10)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of the Allowable Drift  $\Delta_a$ : See Schedule for each component.
4. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-05 unless otherwise noted.
- a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-05, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation.
- 1)  $SDS$  = Spectral Acceleration: See Drawing S001. Value applies to all components on the project.
  - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: Obtain by Delegated-Design Contractor for each component from component submittal.
  - 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for the Base: Determine by Delegated-Design Contractor for each component from Project Drawings. For items at or below the base, "z" shall be taken as zero.
  - 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for the Base: Determine by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings.
- b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.1.

- c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_p$ : Calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $\delta x_A$  = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 2)  $\delta y_A$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 3)  $\delta y_B$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $h_x$  = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 5)  $h_y$  = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated-Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 6)  $\Delta a_A$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 7)  $\Delta a_B$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 8)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of the Allowable Drift  $\Delta a$ : See Drawing Schedule for each component.

C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented ASCE/SEI 7 edition or other wind-force calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.
  - a. Data indicated below that are specific to individual pieces of equipment must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
  - b. Coordinate design wind-load calculations with seismic load calculations for equipment requiring both seismic and wind-load reinforcement. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
2. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30. Perform calculations according to one of the following, as appropriate:
  - a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
  - b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
  - c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" less than 60 feet.
  - d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet and less than 160 feet.
  - e. PART 5: Open Buildings.

3. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment. See Structural drawings for all wind design parameters.
  4. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as appropriate:
    - a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
    - b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
    - c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" greater than **60 feet**.
    - d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" less than **160 feet**.
    - e. PART 5: Open Buildings.
  5. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment. See Structural drawings for all wind design parameters.
  6. Design Wind Force "F" for rooftop equipment and external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated-Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 6. See Structural drawings for all wind design parameters.
- D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic and wind-force restraints for suspended plumbing components or anchorage of floor, roof or wall mounted plumbing components as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16 so that failure of a non-essential or essential plumbing component will not cause the failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical or electrical building component.
- E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.
- F. Component Supports:
1. Load Ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
  2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6.

## 2.2 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

- A. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic applications. Post-installed concrete anchors must comply with all requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13.
1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
  2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification

procedures.

- B. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp, which is not vibration isolated.
  - 1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation, wind-load control, and seismic control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry static, wind load, and seismic load within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION CONTROL, WIND-LOAD CONTROL, AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Device Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, or where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.
- B. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic-Restraint Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- D. Installation of vibration isolators, wind-load restraints, and seismic restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or piping.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- F. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds **0.125 inch**.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- G. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of **40 feet** o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of **80 feet** o.c.
  - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than **12 feet**.
- H. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- I. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- J. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- K. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- L. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- M. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify Project structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural

- element to which anchor is to be fastened.
- 4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
- 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
- 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Provide flexible connections in piping systems where they cross structural seismic joints and other point where differential movement may occur. Provide adequate flexibility to accommodate differential movement as determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. Comply with requirements in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" and Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 5. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 7. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  - 8. Measure isolator deflection.

- 9. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
- 10. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 220548

## SECTION 22 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve-numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system. Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

END OF SECTION 220553



## SECTION 22 0593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. TAB of domestic water system.
2. TAB of plumbing equipment:
  - a. Domestic water booster pumps.
  - b. Domestic hot-water in-line circulation pumps.
  - c. Sanitary sewage pumps.
  - d. Drainage pumps.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan, to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB or TABB:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE 111 Compliance: Requirements in ASHRAE 111 applicable to analogous domestic water system and plumbing equipment balancing.
- E. ASHRAE 188 Compliance: Comply with balancing and report requirements, Section 8.3

"Balancing."

- F. Code and Authorities Having Jurisdiction Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, and balancing valves and fittings. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine approved submittals for plumbing systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including plumbing system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about plumbing system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data, including pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including pump system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate pump system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of plumbing equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations, and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine plumbing equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine temporary and permanent strainers. Verify that temporary strainer screens used during

system cleaning and flushing have been removed and permanent strainers are installed and clean.

- J. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- K. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- L. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on plumbing equipment.
- M. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of plumbing systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water System:
    - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed in accordance with applicable code and authority having jurisdiction.
    - b. Water heaters are installed and functioning.
    - c. Piping is complete and all points of outlet are installed.
    - d. Water treatment is complete.
    - e. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
    - f. Strainers are clean.
    - g. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
    - h. Shutoff and balance valves are 100 percent open.
    - i. Booster and hot-water circulating pumps are operational and proper rotation is verified.
    - j. Pump gauge connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
    - k. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - l. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
  - 2. Sanitary Sewage/Drainage System:
    - a. Leakage and pressure tests on sanitary sewage/drainage systems have been completed in accordance with applicable code and authority having jurisdiction

- requirements.
- b. Piping is complete.
- c. Sanitary sewage pumps/drainage pumps are operational.
- d. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
- e. Shutoff valves are 100 percent open.
- f. Suitable access to equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. Where holes for probes are required in piping or equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" and Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including valve position indicators and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in **inch-pound (IP)** units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance plumbing equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Motors.
  - 2. Domestic water booster pumps.
  - 3. Domestic water in-line pumps.
  - 4. Domestic water heaters.
  - 5. Sanitary sewage pumps.
  - 6. Drainage pumps.

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required equipment flow rates with system design flow rates.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.

- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare domestic water systems for testing and balancing as follows:
  - 1. Check expansion tank for proper setting.
  - 2. Check water heater for proper discharge temperature setting.
  - 3. Check remotest point of outlet for adequate pressure.
  - 4. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
  - 5. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
  - 6. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
  - 7. Check that air has been purged from the system.
- D. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
- E. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
- F. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- G. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEM BOOSTER PUMPS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
  - 1. Measure total water flow.
    - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
    - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
  - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
  - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

C. Verify final system conditions as follows:

1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

D. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER CIRCULATING INLINE PUMP

A. Balance system with manual or automatic balancing valves by setting at design flow.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

B. Adjust pump to deliver total design flow.

1. Measure pump TDH as follows:
  - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
  - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
  - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
  - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
2. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
3. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
4. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
  - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
  - c. Mark final settings.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors ½ HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.

2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR WATER HEATERS

- A. Electric Water Heaters:

1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
2. Measure and record water flow.
3. Measure and record pressure drop.
4. [Measure and]Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
5. Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h of heating output.
6. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.

### 3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Set plumbing system's flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Domestic Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 10 gpm, within 10 percent.

### 3.11 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to plumbing systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.12 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections



for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents, including the following:
  - a. Indicated versus final performance.
  - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
  - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
14. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
  - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
  - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
  - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Flow rates.
2. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
3. Balancing stations.
4. Position of balancing devices.

- E. Electric Water Heater Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Model number and unit size.
    - d. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - e. Output capacity in **Btu/h.**
    - f. Number of stages.
    - g. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    - h. Rated amperage.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Heat output in **Btu/h.**
    - b. Entering-water temperature in **deg F.**
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in **deg F.**
    - d. High-temperature-limit setting in **deg F.**
    - e. Operating set point in **deg F.**
    - f. Voltage at each connection.
    - g. Amperage for each phase.
- F. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves, and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Service.
    - d. Make and size.
    - e. Model number and serial number.
    - f. Water flow rate in **gpm.**
    - g. Water-pressure differential in **feet of head or psig.**
    - h. Required net positive suction head in **feet of head or psig.**
    - i. Pump speed.
    - j. Impeller diameter in **inches.**
    - k. Motor make and frame size.
    - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    - m. Voltage at each connection.
    - n. Amperage for each phase.
    - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - p. Seal type.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Static head in **feet of head or psig.**
    - b. Pump shutoff pressure in **feet of head or psig.**

- c. Actual impeller size in **inches**.
- d. Full-open flow rate in **gpm**.
- e. Full-open pressure in **feet of head or psig**.
- f. Final discharge pressure in **feet of head or psig**.
- g. Final suction pressure in **feet of head or psig**.
- h. Final total pressure in **feet of head or psig**.
- i. Final water flow rate in **gpm**.
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

G. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.13 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. Architect shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 5 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a day.
- B. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- C. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 20 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- D. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue other Contract options to complete TAB work.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 220593

## SECTION 22 0716 - PLUMBING EQUIPMENT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing equipment that is not factory insulated:
  - 1. Domestic water cold-water pumps.
  - 2. Domestic water filter housings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
  - 2. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  - 4. Detail field application for each equipment type.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include, the name of the manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- D. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing

process.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 SEALANTS

Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

## 2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
  - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
  - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

## 2.6 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  - 1. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from **0.016-inch-** thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than **1-1/2 inches** in diameter.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal **3/4-inch-** wide, stainless steel or Monel.

## 2.7 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: **30-mils** thick, minimum **1- by 1-inch** PVC in accordance with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C, white or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer **5 mils** thick and an epoxy finish **5 mils** thick if operating in a temperature range between **140 and 300 deg F**. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between **32 and 300 deg F** with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of equipment, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or area of compression in the insulation.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch-** wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches** o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches**. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at **2 inches** o.c.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.



O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

B. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on **6-inch** centers, starting at corners. Install **3/8-inch** diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a field-adjustable latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel at least **0.040 inch** thick.
3. For below-ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and ASTM C1710.

B. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 INDOOR EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

B. Domestic water pump insulation is the following:

1. Mineral Wool Blanket: **1 inch 4 lb/cu. ft.** nominal density.

C. Domestic water filter-housing insulation is the following:

1. Mineral Wool Blanket: **2 inch** and **4 lb/cu. ft.** nominal density.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY  
Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS  
a NOVUS architects company

END OF SECTION 220716

## SECTION 22 0719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" for equipment insulation.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
  - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include name of the manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

#### 2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

## 2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
  - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
  - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
  - 4. ASJ+: Aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136 Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
  - 5. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil fiberglass reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing, complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

## 2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

## 2.7 SECUREMENTS

- A. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal ~~3/4-inch~~ wide, stainless steel or Monel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch**- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches** o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches**. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at **4 inches** o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least **2 inches** below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches**.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."



### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece is butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
  - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install sections of pipe insulation and miter if required in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install prefabricated valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When prefabricated valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL WOOL INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with glass-fiber or mineral-wool blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least **1 inch**, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Underground piping.
2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. **All sizes** and Smaller: Insulation is one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1/2 inch** thick.
  - b. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1/2 inch**.

3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 220719

## SECTION 22 0800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following plumbing systems, assemblies, and equipment:
  - 1. Domestic hot- and cold-water piping.
  - 2. Gray-water piping and storage.
  - 3. Sanitary waste and vent piping.
  - 4. Storm drainage piping.
  - 5. Rainwater retention piping and equipment.
  - 6. Plumbing pumps.
  - 7. General-service compressed-air piping and equipment.
  - 8. Plumbing equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.
  - 2. For construction checklists, comply with requirements in various Division 22 Sections specifying plumbing systems, system components, equipment, and products.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- C. IAPMO: International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials.
- D. IgCC: International Green Construction Code.
- E. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For plumbing testing technician.
- B. Construction Checklists:

1. Cx plan, including material, installation, and performance construction checklists for systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components relating to plumbing to be part of the Cx process and in accordance with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements", **IAPMO "Green Plumbing and Mechanical Code Supplement,"** and ASHRAE 202.
- C. Test Equipment and Instruments: For all test equipment and instruments to be used in conducting Cx tests by Contractor, provide the following:
  1. Equipment/instrument identification number.
  2. Planned Cx application or use.
  3. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
  4. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
  5. Equipment manufacturers' proprietary instrumentation and tools. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
    - a. Instrument or tool identification number.
    - b. Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
    - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
    - d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Plumbing Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform plumbing Construction Checklist verification tests. Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
  1. Journey level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of plumbing system, electrical concepts, and building operations.
  2. Minimum **three years'**<Insert time> experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- B. Medical Gas Piping Systems Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform medical compressed-air, vacuum, and medical gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities system Construction Checklist verification tests. Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
  1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in mechanical systems, plumbing systems, or similar field. Degree requirement may be offset by three years' experience in servicing plumbing systems and gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Generally, required knowledge includes design and maintenance of gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facility systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of plumbing system equipment, assemblies, and systems.

2. Minimum **three years'**<Insert time> experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration:
1. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
  2. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
  3. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
  4. Be recalibrated/repared if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.
- D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:
1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, shall comply with the following:
    - a. Be calibrated by manufacturer with current calibration tags permanently affixed.
    - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
    - c. Plumbing system proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)  
PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Cx PROCESS

- A. Perform Cx process for plumbing systems in accordance with:
1. **IgCC, which requires compliance with ASHRAE 202.**
  2. **ASHRAE 202.**
  3. **Commissioning standards acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.**

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

- A. Preliminary detailed construction checklists are to be prepared under Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for each plumbing system, assembly, subsystem, equipment, and component required to be commissioned, as detailed in **ASHRAE 202**. Contractor performs the following:
1. Review plumbing preliminary construction checklists and provide written comments on Construction Checklist items where appropriate.
  2. Return preliminary Construction Checklist with review comments within **10** days of

- receipt.
3. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
  4. Use only construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)." Mark construction checklists in the appropriate place, as indicated Project events are completed, and provide pertinent details and other information.
- B. Prepare preliminary detailed construction checklists for each plumbing system, assembly, subsystem, equipment, and component required to be commissioned, as detailed in **ASHRAE 202**.
1. Submit preliminary construction checklists to CxA and Designer for review.
  2. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
  3. Use only construction checklists marked "Approved for Use, (date)." Mark construction checklists in the appropriate place as indicated Project events are completed, and provide pertinent details and other information.
- C. Additional Systems Required to Be Commissioned:
1. Facility water-distribution piping, including the following:
    - a. Domestic **and fire-suppression** water piping, fittings, and specialties outside the building.
    - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
    - c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    - d. General-duty and specialty valves.
    - e. Hangers and supports.
    - f. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
  2. Domestic water piping, including the following:
    - a. Domestic cold- and hot-water piping, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
    - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
    - c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    - d. Indoor water-storage tanks.
    - e. Meters and gauges.
    - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
    - g. Hangers and supports.
    - h. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
  3. Sanitary waste and vent piping, including the following:
    - a. Gravity and forced-main sewerage piping, fittings, and specialties.
    - b. Sanitary waste interceptors.
    - c. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
    - d. Drains.
    - e. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
    - g. Hangers and supports.



- h. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
- 4. Gray-water piping, including the following:
  - a. Piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - c. Storage tanks.
  - d. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - e. Meters and gauges.
  - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
  - g. Hangers and supports.
  - h. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
- 5. Storm-water piping, including the following:
  - a. Drainage piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
  - c. Drains and collection basins.
  - d. Rainwater-collection and storage equipment.
  - e. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
  - g. Hangers and supports.
  - h. Vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**.
- 6. Plumbing fixtures, including the following:
  - a. Water closets, supports and connections, supplies, and flush valves.
  - b. Lavatories, supports, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
  - c. Sinks, supports, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
  - d. Showers, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
  - e. Drinking fountains, supplies, and drainage connections.

### 3.3 Cx TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating in accordance with the Contract Documents and approved submittals.
- B. Certify that plumbing system instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, point-to-point checkout has been successfully completed, and systems are operating in accordance with their design sequence of operation, Contract Documents, and approved submittals. Certify that all sensors are operating within specified accuracy and that all systems are set to and maintaining set points as required by the design documents.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested in accordance with approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

### 3.4 Cx TEST CONDITIONS

- A. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
  - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA, and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
  - 2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
  - 3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- B. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the plumbing system, document the deficiency and report it to Architect. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- C. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

### 3.5 Cx TESTS COMMON TO PLUMBING SYSTEMS

- A. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions, to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- B. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components for operating modes, interlocks, control responses, responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response compared to acceptance criteria.
- C. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of, CxA.
- D. Comply with Construction Checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance test requirements specified in Division 22 Sections specifying plumbing systems and equipment.
- E. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to perform and document the following:
  - 1. Cx Construction Checklist verification tests.
  - 2. Cx Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations.

### 3.6 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST EXAMPLES

- A. Vibration Isolation in Plumbing Systems:
  - 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for vibration **and seismic**

- control devices specified in **Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."**
2. Components to Be Tested:
    - a. Vibration isolation control devices in plumbing systems.
    - b. **Seismic control devices for proper device selection and mounting.**
    - c. Support systems.
  3. Test Purpose: Evaluate effectiveness of vibration isolation **and proper installation of seismic** control devices.
  4. Test Conditions: Measure vibration of the facility structure at **three** locations designated by Owner's witness at the following operating conditions:
  5. Acceptance Criteria: Structure-borne vibration not to exceed specified performance.

B. Supervision of Alarms in Plumbing Systems:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for plumbing systems specified in the following Sections:
  - a. Section 221429 "Sump Pumps."
  - b. Section 223400 "Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters."
  - c. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."
2. Test Scope:
  - a. **Supervised** plumbing system alarms.
3. Test Purpose:
  - a. Verify reporting of **supervised** plumbing alarm at **building management system**.
4. Test Conditions:
  - a. Alarm monitoring systems operating in normal, automatic mode.
  - b. Activate **supervisedmonitored** plumbing alarms, one at a time.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
  - a. Activation of **supervised** plumbing alarm generates alarm at **building management system** control panel.

3.7 Cx TESTS FOR PROCESSED-WATER SYSTEMS

A. Processed-Water System Tests:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified for processed-water systems. Comply with requirements in Section 226713 "Processed Water Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" and Section 226719 "Processed Water Equipment for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities."

2. Test Scope:
  - a. Processed-water equipment in plumbing systems.
  - b. Associated processed-water piping, valves, and appurtenances.
  - c. Processed-water point-of-use fixtures.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate processed-water quality at points of use.
4. Test Conditions:
  - a. Operate water-processing equipment and circulation pumps in normal automatic mode for seven days prior to the test.
  - b. Collect processed-water samples from points of use.
  - c. Collect and handle water samples in accordance with analytical laboratory recommendations.
  - d. Document that the following parameters meet minimum standards required for the specified grade of processed water, as applicable:
5. Acceptance Criteria:
  - a. Measured processed-water parameters shall meet the following criteria:

END OF SECTION 220800

## SECTION 22 1116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings - domestic water.
2. Piping joining materials - domestic water.
3. Encasement for piping.
4. Transition fittings - domestic water.
5. Dielectric fittings - domestic water.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Copper tube and fittings - domestic water.
2. Piping joining materials - domestic water.
3. Encasement for piping.
4. Transition fittings - domestic water.
5. Dielectric fittings - domestic water.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installers of pressure-sealed joints are to be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water piping, tubing, fittings, joints, and appurtenances intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Potable-water piping and components are to comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372.

### 2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than **NPS 4**.
- B. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than **NPS 4**.
- C. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than **NPS 4**.
- D. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than **NPS 4**.

### 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, **1/8 inch** thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black.

## 2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

## 2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller is to be the following:
  - 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger is to be the following:
  - 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings;

and brazed joints.

- F. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller is to be the following:
  - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller is to be the following:
  - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L** wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) is to be the following:
  - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L** wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints in accordance with AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install valves in accordance with Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- G. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation in accordance with utility company's requirements.
- H. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- I. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.



- K. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- L. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- M. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- O. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- P. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- Q. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- R. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123.21 "Inline, Domestic Water Pumps."
- S. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- W. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

Plastic-to-metal transition [fittings][or][unions].

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for copper tube and pipe, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.
- D. Support vertical runs of copper tube and pipe to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.6 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for **NPS 2-1/2** and larger.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system in accordance with either of the following:
      - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
  - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
  - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:
  - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after installation and before setting fixtures.
    - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
  - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a

- separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Hydrostatic testing and documentation of test results for polypropylene (PP-R and PP-RCT) pipe to be in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and submitted to manufacturer upon successful completion per warranty requirements.
  - f. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - g. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221116

## SECTION 22 1119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
2. Section 223200 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
3. Section 224700 "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers."
4. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for fire water-service backflow prevention devices.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

##### B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Test and inspection reports.

##### B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- ##### A.
- Domestic water piping specialties intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average

lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: **125 psig** unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: **400-psig** minimum CWP.
3. Size: **NPS 3/4**.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

- B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: **NPS 3/4**.
4. Body: ASTM B62 bronze.
5. Inlet: **NPS 3/4** threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

- C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: **200-psig** minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: **NPS 3/4**.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B62 bronze.
5. Drain: **NPS 1/8** side outlet with cap.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Backflow Preventers: Install in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Water Regulators: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.
- C. Water Control Valves: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.
- D. Automatic Water Shutoff Valves: Test for signal strength before valve installation. Install automatic shutoff valve downstream from main domestic water shutoff valve. Install valve controller in an accessible location with sensors in areas where water is likely to accumulate.
- E. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Set at indicated design flow rates.
- F. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each **control valve, solenoid valve and pump**.
- H. Outlet Boxes: Install boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install **1-1/2-by-3-1/2-inch** fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install water piping in accordance with PDI-WH 201.

### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."



- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Balancing valves.
  - 4. Outlet boxes.
  - 5. Wall hydrants.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- D. Adjust each **pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly, and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer** in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **Owner will engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**.

1. Test each **pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer** according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221119

## SECTION 22 1316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221329 "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps" for effluent and sewage pumps.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. PVC pipe and fittings.

##### B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- ##### C. Shop Drawings:
- For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Coordination Drawings:
- Plans and elevations or Building Information Model (BIM) drawn to scale, showing items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

- ##### B. Seismic Qualification Certificates:
- For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- ##### C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- ##### A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation are capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10 ft. head of water.
  - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment":
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5

See ASCE/SEI 7, Coefficients for Architectural Component Table and Seismic Coefficients for Mechanical and Electrical Components Table, for requirements to be inserted in paragraph below.

- C. <Insert requirements for Component Amplification Factor and Component Response Modification Factor>.

### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.3 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
  - 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be

joined.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
  - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
  - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment".
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in

- direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch, and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
  - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
  - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
  1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Building Sanitary Waste: Two percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: Two percent downward in direction of flow.
  3. Vent Piping: One percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- O. Install steel piping in accordance with applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install stainless steel piping in accordance with ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.
- Q. Install aboveground copper tubing in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install aboveground ABS piping in accordance with ASTM D2661.
- S. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.
- T. Install underground [ABS][and][PVC] piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.
- U. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:
  1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Hubless, Single-Stack Drainage System: Comply with ASME B16.45 and hubless, single-stack aerator fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

- V. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
  - W. Plumbing Specialties:
    - 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
      - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
    - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
      - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
      - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
    - 3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
      - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - X. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - Y. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    - 1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - Z. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
    - 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - AA. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    - 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints:
    - 1. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
  - B. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe

and fittings in accordance with the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendixes.

C. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:

1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:
  - a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
  - b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 4 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
  - c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded], nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
  - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flange kits.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installation are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- C. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.



1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install stainless steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  4. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42 clamps.
  6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Ft. (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Ft. (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44 pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52 spring hangers.
- C. Install hangers for stainless steel soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting[, valve,] and coupling.
- F. Support vertical runs of stainless steel soil piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- G. Support vertical runs of PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
  - 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
    - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
    - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  - 1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
  - 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
    - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
    - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10 ft. head of water.
    - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
    - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
    - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1 inch wg.
    - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
    - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
    - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until

- satisfactory results are obtained.
- 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
    - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
    - b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed Plastic Piping: Protect PVC plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be the following:
  - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger are to be the following:

1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) is to be the following:

- 1.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger is to be the following:

- 1.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- 3.
4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be the following:

1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger are to be the following:

1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

## SECTION 22 1319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashing assemblies.
2. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for preformed flashings.
3. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
4. Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for metal and concrete interceptors outside the building, grease interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, and solids interceptors.
5. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.
6. Section 334200 "Stormwater Conveyance" for storm drainage piping and piping specialties outside the building.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Open Drains:
  - 1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A74, Service Class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C564 rubber gaskets.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping[ with increaser fitting of size indicated].
- B. Deep-Seal Traps:
  - 1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
    - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
  - 1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- D. Air-Gap Fittings:
  - 1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
  - 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  - 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
  - 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
  - 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Sleeve Flashing Device:
  - 1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top

- of fitting that will extend 2 inches above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
- 2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- F. Stack Flashing Fittings:
  - 1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Vent Caps <Insert drawing designation, if any>:
  - 1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- H. Expansion Joints:
  - 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
  - 2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
  - 3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
  - 4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping.
  - 1. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.



- E. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- F. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- G. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- H. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- I. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- J. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- K. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- L. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- M. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment, to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
  - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and

to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

## SECTION 22 1319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
- D. PE: Polyethylene.
- E. PP: Polypropylene.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains are to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

#### 2.2 PLASTIC CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. General Requirements for Plastic Channel Drainage Systems:
  - 1. Modular system of plastic channel sections, grates, and appurtenances.
  - 2. Designed so grates fit into frames without rocking or rattling.
  - 3. Number of units required to form total lengths indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SANITARY DRAINS

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
  - 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  - 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
    - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
  - 1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with ASME A112.3.1 for installation of stainless steel channel drainage systems.
  - 1. Install on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- D. Install FRP channel drainage system components on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- E. Install plastic channel drainage system components on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- F. Install open drain fittings with top of hub [1 inch][2 inches]<Insert dimension> above floor.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for grease interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, sand interceptors, and solid interceptors.
- D. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

## SECTION 22 1323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interceptors, oil.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. FOGs: Fats, oils, greases.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. PP: Polypropylene.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sanitary waste interceptor.
1. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  2. Include diagrams of power wiring.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete sanitary waste interceptor.
1. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
  2. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste interceptors to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANHOLE RISERS, FRAMES, AND COVERS

- A. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers: **ASTM C478**, with rubber-gasket joints.
  - 1. Structural Design Loads:
    - a. Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-12.
  - 2. Length: From top of underground concrete structure to grade.
  - 3. Riser Sections: **3-inch** minimum thickness and **36-inch** diameter.
  - 4. Top Section: Eccentric cone unless otherwise indicated. Include top of cone to match grade ring size.
  - 5. Gaskets: **ASTM C443**, rubber.
  - 6. Steps: ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch** steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at **12- to 16-inch** intervals.
- B. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, **6- to 9-inch** total thickness, diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust the manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
- C. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; **24-inch** ID by **7- to 9-inch** riser with **4-inch-** minimum-width flange and **26-inch-** diameter cover.
  - 1. Ductile Iron: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Gray Iron: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to the following:
    - a. Oil Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "OIL INTERCEPTOR."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install oil interceptors on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
  - 2. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- B. Install precast-concrete interceptors in accordance with ASTM C891.
- C. Set interceptors level and plumb.
- D. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.
- E. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements.
  - 1. Set tops **3 inches** above finish surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
- G. Set metal interceptors level and plumb.
- H. Set tops of metal interceptor covers flush with finished surface in pavements.
  - 1. Set tops **3 inches** above finish surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Install captured waste oil piping and waste oil storage tanks in accordance with the requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- J. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
  - 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
  - 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
  - 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- K. Install grease-removal devices on floor. Install trap, vent, and flow-control fitting in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Install control panel adjacent to unit unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install oil interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
  - 1. Coordinate captured waste oil storage tank and/or gravity drain with the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- M. Install solids interceptors with cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors that do not have integral cleanout on outlet.
  - 1. Install trap on interceptors that do not have integral trap and are connected to sanitary drainage and vent systems.



### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Oil interceptors.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect sanitary waste interceptors from damage during construction period.
- B. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by sanitary waste interceptor installation.

END OF SECTION 221323

## SECTION 22 1414 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221429 "Sump Pumps" for storm drainage pumps.
2. Section 334200 "Stormwater Conveyance" for storm drainage piping outside the building.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. ABS pipe and fittings.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, sections, elevations, and details.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and elevations or Building Information Model (BIM) drawn to scale, showing items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certificate is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field Quality-Control Reports: Inspection reports signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide materials bearing label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation are to be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
  - 2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig
- B. Seismic Performance: Storm drainage piping and support and installation to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully functional after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

See ASCE/SEI 7, Coefficients for Architectural Component Table and Seismic Coefficients for Mechanical and Electrical Components Table, for requirements to be inserted in subparagraph below.

- 3. <Insert requirements for Component Amplification Factor and Component Response Modification Factor>

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.
- B. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.

## 2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.

### B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- #### A.
- Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- #### A.
- Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
- #### B.
- Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- #### C.
- Install piping in concealed locations.
1. Piping installed in equipment rooms, service areas, and where indicated may be exposed.
- #### D.
- Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated.
- #### E.
- Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- #### F.
- Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- #### G.
- Install piping at indicated slopes.
- #### H.
- Install piping free of sags and bends.
- #### I.
- Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- L. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  - 1. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
  - 2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
    - a. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- M. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.
  - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- N. Install piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 1/4 inch per foot downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1/8 inch per foot 1/4 inch per foot downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm Drainage Piping: 1/4 inch per foot downward in direction of flow.
- O. Install cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Ch IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- P. Install steel piping in accordance with applicable plumbing code.
- Q. Install aboveground copper tubing in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install aboveground ABS piping in accordance with ASTM D2661.
- S. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.
- T. Install underground [ABS][and][PVC] piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.
- U. Install engineered controlled-flow drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- V. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- W. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
  2. Install cleanouts in storm drainage gravity-flow piping in accessible locations.
    - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
    - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
  3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
  - X. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - Y. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - Z. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
    1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - AA. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
  - B. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:
    1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    2. ABS Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2235 and ASTM D2661 appendices.
    3. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendices.

C. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:

1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:
  - a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings [5 inches] and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
  - b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings [4 inches] and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
  - c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings [5 inches] and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flange kits.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installations are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Shutoff Valves:

1. Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
2. Install gate for piping NS 2 and smaller.
3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.

D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless

- otherwise indicated.
- 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
- 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Install stainless steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  - 2. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  - 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install hangers for piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- F. Support vertical piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent, but as a minimum at base and at each floor.
- G. Support vertical PVC piping with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.



- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
  - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
  - 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves and cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been

altered, extended, or repaired.

- a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Test Procedure:
    - a. Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in.
    - b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
    - c. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
    - d. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
    - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.11 PROTECTION

- A. Protect piping and drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- C. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by storm drainage piping installation.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller is to be the following:
  - 1.
  - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger is to be the following:
  - 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger is to be the following:
  - 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 2. Cellular-core, sewer and drain series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Aboveground storm drainage force mains [NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2] is to be the following:
  - 1. Solid-wall PVC.
- G. Aboveground storm drainage force mains [NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6] is to be the following:
  - 1. Fitting-type transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 221414

## SECTION 22 1429 - SUMP PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. Sump pumps - submersible.
2. Sump pumps - wet-pit volute.
3. Oil-sensing sump pumps and controllers.
4. Sump pumps - pedestal.
5. Sump-pump basins and basin covers.
6. Packaged drainage-pump units - submersible.

##### B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles.
2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

##### C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and [mounting][attachment] details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls.

1. Indicate actual installed items by marking submittals with an arrow or box.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace sump pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Faulty operation.
- b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Period: 1 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of sump pump from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

### 2.3 SUMP-PUMP BASINS AND BASIN COVERS

- A. Basins : Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
- 1. Material: Fiberglass.
  - 2. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, and accessories.
  - 3. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, and in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.
- B. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
- 1. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Capacity: 70 GAL.
2. Diameter: 28.7".
3. Depth: 36.5".
4. Inlet No. 1:
  - a. Drainage Pipe Size: 4" NPS.
  - b. Bottom of Sump to Centerline: 27 inches.
  - c. Type: Hubbed outside.
5. Outlet No. 1:
  - a. Drainage Pipe Size: 2" NPS.
  - b. Type: Hubbed outside.
6. Outlet No. 2:
  - a. Ventilation Pipe Size: 3" NPS.
  - b. Type: Hubbed outside.
7. Cover Material: Fiberglass
8. Cover Diameter: 28.7", but not less than OD of basin top flange.
9. Manhole Required in Cover: No.
10. Vent Size: 2 NPS.

## 2.4 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Motors for submersible pumps are to be hermetically sealed.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and filling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump-pump installation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 14.4 for installation of sump pumps.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221414 "Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust control set points.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test, inspect, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Tests and inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION 221429



## SECTION 22 3200 - DOMESTIC WATER FILTRATION EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for plumbing piping strainers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. UV Filtration Skid

##### B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

##### C. Shop Drawings: For water filtration equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For UV filter skid accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

##### B. Certificates of Shop Inspections and Data Reports: For products required to have ASME label,

signed by product manufacturer.

- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water filtration equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Indicate the actual installed items by marking the submittals with an arrow or box.

#### 1.5 MATERIALS MAINTENANCE SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Cartridge-Filter Elements: Elements for cartridge filters equal to 200 percent of amount installed for each size and media indicated.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Feedwater Analysis:
  - 1. To be coordinated with UV filtration skid manufacturer.
- B. Feedwater Properties:
  - 1. To be coordinated with UV filtration skid manufacturer.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace water filtration components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of water filtration equipment through one source from a single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water filtration equipment intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Seismic Performance: Freestanding cartridge-type filters, Carbon-type filters is to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7 See Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. The term "withstand" means that "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

See ASCE/SEI 7, Coefficients for Architectural Component Table and Seismic Coefficients for Mechanical and Electrical Components Table, for requirements to be inserted in subparagraph below.

- 3. <Insert requirements for Component Amplification Factor and Component Response Modification Factor>.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Before shipping, hydrostatically test carbon-type filters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
- B. Prepare test reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of [filters][and][separators].
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where [filters][and][separators] will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT MOUNTING

- A. Equipment Mounting: Install skid on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF BAG-TYPE FILTER

- A. Install bag-type filters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Install filter media bags.
- C. Install seismic restraints for bag-type filter housings and anchor to building structure.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CARTRIDGE-TYPE FILTER

- A. Install cartridge-type filters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Attach wall brackets for off-floor, wall-mounted, cartridge filter to vertical surface. Attach

housing(s), and base if any, to wall bracket.

- C. Install housings for off-floor, in-line, cartridge filters in piping.
- D. Install filter elements in cartridges.
- E. Install seismic restraints for freestanding cartridge-filter housings and anchor to building structure.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CARBON-TYPE FILTER

- A. Install carbon-type filters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Prepare carbon-filter tank distribution system and underbed, if any, for filter media, and place specified media into tanks.
- C. Install seismic restraints for carbon-filter housings and anchor to building structure.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SAND-TYPE FILTER

- A. Install sand-type filters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Prepare sand-filter tank distribution system and underbed for filter media, and place specified sand and other media into tanks.
- C. Install seismic restraints for sand-filter tanks and accessories and anchor to building structure.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF SEPARATOR

- A. Install separators level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install separators on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Install seismic restraints for separators and accessories and anchor to building structure.

### 3.8 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between water filtration equipment and dissimilar-metal water piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements for dielectric fittings specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on feedwater-inlet and filtrate-outlet piping of each water filtration equipment filter and separator and on inlet and outlet headers.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for metal general-duty valves specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for plastic valves specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
  - 3. Exception, Shutoff Valve Installation: Water filtration equipment with factory-installed shutoff valves at locations indicated.
- E. Install pressure gauges on feedwater-inlet and filtrate-outlet piping of each water filtration equipment filter and separator. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - 1. Exception, Pressure Gauge Installation:
    - a. Water filtration equipment with factory-installed pressure gauges.
    - b. Cartridge-type water filters.
- F. Install valved bypass water piping around each water filtration equipment [filter][and][separator].
  - 1. Comply with requirements for metal general-duty valves specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for plastic valves specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
  - 3. Comply with requirements for water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
  - 4. Exception, Valved Bypass Water Piping Installation:
    - a. Cartridge-type water filtration equipment.
- G. Install drains as indirect wastes to spill into open drains or over floor drains.

### 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.10 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service for all UV filtration systems.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Sample filter filtrate after startup and at three consecutive seven-day intervals (total of four samples), and prepare certified test reports for required water performance characteristics.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service, Including Testing: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise field tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Domestic water filtration equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain UV Water Treatment filters.

END OF SECTION 223200

## SECTION 22 4200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Efficiency Flush Volume: 1.28 gal. or less per flush.
- B. WaterSense Fixture: Water closet and/or flushometer valve/tank certified by the EPA to meet the WaterSense performance criteria.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for plumbing fixtures.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories and/or counter-mounted sinks.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. For lavatories and faucets.
    - a. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:



- 1) Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.
2. For shower valves to include in maintenance manuals
3. For sinks and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  3. Shower Valve Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  4. Shower Valve Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Lavatory faucets, sink faucets, shower valves, and wash fountain spray heads and faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory Supply Fittings:
  1. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  3. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless steel wall flange.
  4. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
  5. Operation: Wheel handle.

6. Risers:
  - a. NPS 1/2.
  - b. ASME A112.18.6/CSA B125.6, braided or corrugated stainless steel, flexible hose riser.

B. Lavatory Waste Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
2. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
3. Trap:
  - a. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
  - b. Material:
    - 1) Stainless steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch thick stainless steel tube to wall, and stainless steel wall flange.

2.3 COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

A. Grout:

1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
3. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 COMMERCIAL SINKS

A. Sink Supply Fittings:

1. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless steel wall flange.
4. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
5. Operation: Wheel handle
6. Risers:
  - a. NPS 1/2.
  - b. ASME A112.18.6/CSA B125.6, braided or corrugated stainless steel flexible hose.

B. Sink Waste Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
2. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
3. Trap:
  - a. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
  - b. Material:
    - 1) Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 17-gauge brass tube to wall and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

C. Grout:

1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
3. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply piping and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where plumbing fixtures will be installed.
- C. Examine counters for suitable conditions where lavatories and sinks will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

A. Lavatory Installation:

1. Install lavatories level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted lavatories at mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
4. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each lavatory faucet. Install stops in locations that are accessible for ease of operation.
5. Install trap and waste piping on each drain outlet of each lavatory to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

6. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
7. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
8. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

B. Shower Installation:

1. Assemble shower components in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Install showers level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
3. Install ball valves in water-supply piping to the shower if supply stops are specified with the shower valve. Comply with ball valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping." Install valves in locations that are accessible for ease of operation.
4. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
5. Set shower receptors and shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
6. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
7. Seal joints between showers, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

C. Sink Installation:

1. Install sinks level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted sinks.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted sinks at mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
4. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
5. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  - a. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - b. Install stops/valves in locations that are accessible for ease of operation.
6. Install trap and waste piping on each drain outlet of each sink to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
7. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

8. Seal joints between sinks, counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
9. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

D. Water Closet Installation:

1. Install water closets level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
4. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
5. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
6. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets, attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
7. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals, and affix to building substrate.
8. Measure support height installation from finished floor, not structural floor.
9. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
10. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
11. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
12. Install actuators in locations easily reachable for people with disabilities.
13. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
14. Install toilet seats on water closets.
15. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
16. Seal joints between water closets, walls, and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to water-closet color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect plumbing fixtures with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match plumbing fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil, waste, and vent piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Install protective-shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of

accessible plumbing fixtures. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

- E. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets and urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning plumbing fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Adjust water pressure at shower valves to produce proper flow.
- D. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- E. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of plumbing fixtures, inspect and repair damages finishes. Replace any fixtures unable to be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.
- B. Clean plumbing fixtures and associated faucets, valves, flushometer valves, and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed plumbing fixtures and associated faucets, valves, flushometer valves, and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224200

## SECTION 22 4700 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATER COOLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - b. Include operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of fixture assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power wiring.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: For vibration isolation and supports, and seismic restraints indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For remote water coolers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains, and bottle filling stations to include in maintenance manuals.



1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include servicing and adjustment of electronic-sensor fixtures.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 100 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 1 of each.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for delivery, storage, and handling.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standards:
  1. Drinking fountains, water coolers, bottle filling stations, and remote water coolers intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of the authority having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 or NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 or NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Delegated Design:
  1. Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, supports, and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Seismic Performance: Remote water coolers are to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment".
  1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for juveniles, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Set pedestal drinking fountains and bottle filling stations on flat surface in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- C. Set freestanding water coolers on floor.
- D. Install recessed drinking fountains and bottle filling stations secured to wood blocking in wall construction.
- E. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- F. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed water coolers and bottle filling stations to mounting frames.
- G. Set remote water coolers on floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- I. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- J. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- K. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone

sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for drinking fountain, water cooler, and bottle filling station. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplates to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust water cooler temperature settings.
- C. Adjust electronic-sensor settings.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. After installing fixtures, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris.

Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224700

## SECTION 23 0548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Resilient pipe guides.
9. Air-spring isolators.
10. Spring hangers.
11. Restraints - rigid type.
12. Restraints - cable type.
13. Restraint accessories.
14. Post-installed concrete anchors.
15. Vibration isolation equipment bases.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Designated Seismic System: An HVAC component that requires design in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7, Ch. 13, and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
- B. IBC: International Building Code.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (State of California).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation

- device.
  - 2. Include load rating for each wind-force-restraint fitting and assembly.
  - 3. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic- and wind-force-restraint component.
  - 4. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by UL product listing, FM Approvals, OSHPD, an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 5. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
  - 6. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:
- 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals:
- 1. For each seismic-restraint and, wind-load protection device, including seismic-restrained mounting, concrete anchor and insert, and, restrained isolation roof-curb rail that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
    - a. Seismic and Wind-Load Restraint, and Vibration Isolation Base Selection: Select vibration isolators, seismic and wind-load restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
    - b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
    - c. Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic and wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
    - d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared under "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under "Wind-Load Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 2. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Detail Drawing:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind

- restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
- 3. All delegated design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 4. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By FM Approvals, OSHPD, an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and basis for approval (tests or calculations).
  - 5. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.
  - 6. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer, and, testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Air-Spring Isolator Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.
  - 1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active mechanical seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and **AHRI 1270**, including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous

- contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-16.
3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
- G. Wind-Force Performance Certification: Provide special certification for HVAC components subject to high wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-force performance certification.
1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated HVAC device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Provide manufacturer's written certification for each designated louver, damper, or similar device, stating that it will remain in place and protect opening from penetration of windborne debris and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For restrained-air-spring isolators to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated, be an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: UL product listing, an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic and wind-load control system.
1. Seismic and Wind-Load Performance: Equipment to withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16.



B. Seismic Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the Section Text.
  - a. Data indicated below to be determined by Delegated Design Contractor must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
  - b. Coordinate seismic design calculations with wind-load calculations for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
  - c. Building Occupancy Category: IV.
  - d. Building Risk Category: IV.
  - e. Building Site Classification: D
2. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-16 unless otherwise noted.
  - a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Value is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
    - 1)  $SDS$  = Spectral Acceleration: Refer to Drawing S001. Value applies to all components on Project.
    - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from each component submittal.
    - 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
    - 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine from Project Drawings for each component by Delegated Design Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" to be taken as zero.
    - 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.
  - b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.1.2.
  - c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_p$ : Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
    - 1)  $D_p$  = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be

- Designed to Accommodate: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2.
- 2)  $I_e$  = Structure Importance Factor: 1.5. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 3)  $\delta_{xA}$  = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $\delta_{yA}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: see Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 5)  $\delta_{yB}$  = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $h_x$  = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 7)  $h_y$  = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 8)  $\Delta_aA$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
  - 9)  $\Delta_aB$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
  - 10)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift  $\Delta_a$ : See Drawings Schedules for each component.
- d. Component Fundamental Period  $T_p$ : Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.3. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: Determined by Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 2)  $g$  = Gravitational Acceleration: **32.17 fps<sup>2</sup>**.
  - 3)  $K_p$  = Combined Stiffness of Component, Supports, and Attachments: Determined by delegated design seismic engineer.
3. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-10 unless otherwise noted.
- a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-10, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $SDS$  = Spectral Acceleration: See Drawing S001. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from equipment submittal.

- 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determined from Project Drawings for each component by Contractor. For items at or below the base, " $z$ " to be taken as zero.
  - 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.
- b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.1.
- c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_{pl}$ : Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $D_p$  = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2.
  - 2)  $I_e$  = Structure Importance Factor: 1.5. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 3)  $\delta_{xA}$  = Deflection at Building Level  $x$  of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $\delta_{yA}$  = Deflection at Building Level  $y$  of Structure A: see Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 5)  $\delta_{yB}$  = Deflection at Building Level  $y$  of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 6)  $h_x$  = Height of Level  $x$  to which Upper Connection point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data;
  - 7)  $h_y$  = Height of Level  $y$  to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 8)  $\Delta_aA$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 9)  $\Delta_aB$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 10)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift  $\Delta_a$ : See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 3 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-05 unless otherwise noted.
- a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force  $F_p$ : Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-05, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
- 1)  $SDS$  = Spectral Acceleration: See Drawing S001. Value applies to all components on Project.
  - 2)  $a_p$  = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each

- component.
- 3)  $I_p$  = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
- 4)  $W_p$  = Component Operating Weight: Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor for each component from component submittal.
- 5)  $R_p$  = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
- 6)  $z$  = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine by Delegated Design Contractor for each component from Project Drawings. For items at or below the base, " $z$ " to be taken as zero.
- 7)  $h$  = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings.
- b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.1.
- c. Seismic Relative Displacement  $D_p$ : Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
  - 1)  $\delta x_A$  = Deflection at Building Level  $x$  of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 2)  $\delta y_A$  = Deflection at Building Level  $y$  of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 3)  $\delta y_B$  = Deflection at Building Level  $y$  of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 4)  $h_x$  = Height of Level  $x$  to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 5)  $h_y$  = Height of Level  $y$  to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
  - 6)  $\Delta a_A$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 7)  $\Delta a_B$  = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
  - 8)  $h_{sx}$  = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift  $\Delta a$ : See Drawing Schedule for each component.

C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

- 1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7 edition or other wind-force calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.
  - a. Data indicated below that are specific to individual pieces of equipment must be

- obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
- b. Coordinate design wind-load calculations with seismic load calculations for equipment requiring both seismic and wind-load reinforcement. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
2. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as applicable:
    - a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
    - b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
    - c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" less than 60 feet.
    - d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet and less than 160 feet.
    - e. PART 5: Open Buildings.
  3. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment. See drawings for all wind design parameters.
  4. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers are to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 29. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as appropriate:
    - a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
    - b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
    - c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet.
    - d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" less than 160 feet.
    - e. PART 5: Open Buildings.
  5. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 29, PART 4: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment. See drawings for all wind design parameters.
  6. Design wind force "F" for rooftop equipment and external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 29. See drawings for all wind design parameters.
- D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic restraints for suspended HVAC components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted HVAC components as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16 so that failure of a non-essential or essential HVAC component will not cause failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical, or electrical building component.
- E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.
- F. Component Supports:
1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based

- on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
- 2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

### A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: .

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - f. Korfund
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - j. Vibration Isolation
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. VMC GROUP
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain elastomeric isolation pads from single manufacturer.
- 3. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
- 4. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
- 5. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
- 6. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
- 7. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
- 8. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
- 9. Sandwich-Core Material: elastomeric
  - a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
  - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

## 2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation

- d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - f. Korfund
  - g. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - h. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - i. Vibration Isolation
  - j. Vibration Management Corp.
  - k. VMC GROUP
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain double-deflection, elastomeric isolation mounts from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Mounting Plates:
    - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
    - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
  - 4. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators: .

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - f. Korfund
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - j. Vibration Isolation
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. VMC GROUP
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators from single manufacturer.
- 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
- 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
- 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
- 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- 7. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates limit floor load to 500 psig.

8. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - f. Korfund
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - h. Vibration Isolation
  - i. Vibration Management Corp.
  - j. VMC GROUP
2. Source Limitations: Obtain freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators in two-part telescoping housing from single manufacturer.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases limit floor load to **500 psig**.
  - b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt.

## 2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc



- f. Korfund
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - j. Vibration Isolation
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. VMC GROUP
2. Source Limitations: Obtain restrained-spring isolators from single manufacturer.
3. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
  - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases limit floor load to **500 psig**.
  - b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
  - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
4. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
6. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
7. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
8. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
    - f. Korfund
    - g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
    - h. Vibration Isolation
    - i. Vibration Management Corp.
    - j. VMC GROUP
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain freestanding, open-spring isolators with vertical-limit stop restraints from single manufacturer.
  3. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.

- a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases limit floor load to **500 psig**.
  - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.8 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  3. Gripple Inc.
  4. Loos & Co. Inc.
  5. VMC GROUP
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain cable-type restraints from single manufacturer.
- C. Seismic-Restraint Cables: ASTM A1023/A1023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic-restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.
- D. Restraint cable assembly with cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. All cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

## 2.9 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Atkore Unistrut
  2. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  4. Hilti, Inc.
  5. Loos & Co. Inc.
  6. TOLCO Incorporated
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain restraint accessories from single manufacturer.

- C. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.
- D. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- E. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- F. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- G. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - 2. California Dynamics Corporation
  - 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
  - 4. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson
  - 5. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc
  - 6. Vibration Isolation
  - 7. Vibration Management Corp.
  - 8. VMC GROUP
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain vibration isolation equipment bases from single manufacturer.
- C. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than **1-inch** clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M. Rails to have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- D. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than **1-inch** clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.

- a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M. Bases to have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- E. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than **1-inch** clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M. Bases to have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
  4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic and wind control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static, wind load, and seismic

loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION-CONTROL, WIND-LOAD CONTROL, AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, or where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.
- B. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic-Restraint Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Installation of vibration isolators, wind-load restraints, must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- F. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds **0.125 inch**.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint, and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- G. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of **40 feet** o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of **80 feet** o.c.
  - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than **12 feet**.
- H. Ductwork Restraints:
  - 1. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of **40 feet** o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of **80 feet** o.c.

3. Brace a change of direction longer than **12 feet**.
  4. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry static and seismic loads.
  5. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- I. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- J. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- K. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- L. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- M. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- N. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Wedge-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors to be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF AIR-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Independent Isolator Installation:

1. Install tank valve into each air isolator.
2. Inflate each isolator to height and pressure specified on Drawings.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment

and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- B. Coordinate dimensions of steel equipment rails and bases, concrete inertia bases, and restrained isolation roof-curb rails with requirements of isolated equipment specified in this and other Sections. Where dimensions of these bases are indicated on Drawings, dimensions may require adjustment to accommodate actual isolated equipment.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 5. Test no fewer than four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 7. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  - 8. Measure isolator deflection.
  - 9. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  - 10. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY  
Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS  
a NOVUS architects company

END OF SECTION 230548



## SECTION 23 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Warning tape.
4. Pipe labels.
5. Duct labels.
6. Stencils.
7. Warning tags.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP
  - c. Champion America
  - d. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  - e. emedco
  - f. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  - g. LEM Products Inc.
  - h. Marking Services Inc.
  - i. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.

- j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
- 
- 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, **0.032-inch** minimum thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances of up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP
    - c. Champion America
    - d. Craftmark Pipe Markers
    - e. emedco
    - f. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
    - g. LEM Products Inc.
    - h. Marking Services Inc.
    - i. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/8 inch** thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to **160 deg F**.
  - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances of up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 7. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation
  2. Carlton Industries, LP
  3. Champion America
  4. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  5. emedco
  6. LEM Products Inc.
  7. Marking Services Inc.
  8. National Marker Company
  9. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  10. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
  11. Stranco, Inc.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/8 inch** thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to **160 deg F**.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances of up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-taping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs in locations and with content in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA70E.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.

2. Brady Corporation
  3. Carlton Industries, LP
  4. Champion America
  5. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  6. emedco
  7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  8. LEM Products Inc.
  9. Marking Services Inc.
  10. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  11. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- F. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include:
1. Pipe size.
  2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on[ main] distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
  3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation
  2. Carlton Industries, LP
  3. Champion America
  4. Craftmark Pipe Markers
  5. emedco
  6. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
  7. LEM Products Inc.
  8. Marking Services Inc.
  9. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  10. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/8 inch** thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to **160 deg F**.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances of up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include the following:
  - 1. Duct size.
  - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on[ main] distribution ducts. Arrows may be either integral with label or may be applied separately.
  - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors:

1. [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background]<Insert colors>.

- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where arc-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  1. Within 3 ft. of each valve and control device.
  2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  3. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. in areas of congested piping, ductwork, and equipment.
- D. Do not apply plastic pipe labels or plastic tapes directly to bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F or higher. Where these pipes are to remain uninsulated, use a short section of insulation or use stenciled labels.
- E. Flow-Direction Arrows: Use arrows to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF DUCT LABELS

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on air ducts.
  1. Provide labels in the following color codes:
    - a. For air supply ducts: White letters on blue background
    - b. For air return ducts: White letters on blue background .
    - c. For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts: White letters on blue background .
- B. Locate label near each point where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 20 ft. where exposed or are concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 230553

## SECTION 23 0593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:
  - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
2. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
3. Procedures for exhaust hoods.
4. Sound tests.
5. Vibration tests.
6. HVAC-control system verification.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.
- G. UFAD: Underfloor air distribution.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan, to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB:
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- E. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.



## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- C. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.
- D. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- G. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- H. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- I. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- J. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- K. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness

for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Airside:
  - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
  - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
  - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
  - d. Clean filters are installed.
  - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
  - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
  - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - h. Ceilings are installed.
  - i. Windows and doors are installed.
  - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- C. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Motors.
  2. Fans and ventilators.
  3. Terminal units.
  4. Commercial kitchen hoods.
  5. Condensing units.
  6. Condensers.
  7. Air-handling units.
  8. Computer-room air conditioners.
  9. Split-system air conditioners.
  10. Coils.
  11. Humidifiers.

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  - 3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations

- in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
4. Obtain approval from Construction Manager for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.
  5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  6. Measure and record all operating data.
  7. Record final fan-performance data.
- 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS
- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as

follows:

- a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
  - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
  - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
  - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
  - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  - f. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
- a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
  - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow, so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
  - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
  - d. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
- a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit, and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls Contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
- b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
- c. Re-measure final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
- d. Mark final settings.
- e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Phase and hertz.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSERS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of fan(s) and motor(s).

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each hydronic coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  3. Airflow.

4. Air pressure drop.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
6. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
7. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Entering and leaving refrigerant pressure and temperatures.

### 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR EXHAUST HOODS

A. Room Pressure: Measure and record room pressure with respect to atmosphere and adjacent space with hoods in room initially not operating and then with hoods operating.

B. Canopy Hoods: Measure and record the following:

1. Pressure drop across hood.
2. Airflow by duct traverse where duct distribution will allow accurate measurement, and calculate hood average face velocity.
3. Measure velocity across hood face and calculate hood airflow.
  - a. Clearly indicate the direction of flow at each point of measurement.
  - b. Measure velocity across opening on not less than **12-inch** centers. Record velocity at each measurement, and calculate average velocity.
4. Capture and Containment: Check each hood for proper capture and containment using a smoke-emitting device. Observe and report performance. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.

C. Kitchen Hoods:

1. Type 1: Measure and record pressure drop and face velocity of hood filters and slots in

- accordance with hood manufacturer's instructions. Consult hood manufacturer to determine hood airflow using recorded information.
2. Capture and Containment: Check each hood for proper capture and containment using a smoke-emitting device. Observe and report performance. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.
- D. AHJ Tests: Conduct additional tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.13 SOUND TESTS

- A. After systems are balanced and Substantial Completion, measure and record sound levels at 10 locations as designated by the Architect.
- B. Instrumentation:
1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
  2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels, and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level (Leq).
  3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using one-third octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
  4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.
- C. Test Procedures:
1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
  2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
  3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
  4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
  5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight unweighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment off.
  6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight unweighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment operating.
  7. Take readings no closer than **36 inches** from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately **60 inches** from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
  8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.
- D. Reporting:
1. Report shall record the following:
    - a. Location.
    - b. System tested.
    - c. dBA reading.
    - d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.



2. Plot sound pressure levels on Noise Criteria (NC) worksheet with equipment on and off.

### 3.14 VIBRATION TESTS

- A. After systems are balanced and Substantially Completion, measure and record vibration levels on equipment having motor horsepower equal to or greater than 10.
- B. Instrumentation:
  1. Use portable, battery-operated, and microprocessor-controlled vibration meter with or without a built-in printer.
  2. The meter shall automatically identify engineering units, filter bandwidth, amplitude, and frequency scale values.
  3. The meter shall be able to measure machine vibration displacement in mils of deflection, velocity in inches per second, and acceleration in inches per second squared.
  4. Verify calibration date is current for vibration meter before taking readings.
- C. Test Procedures:
  1. To ensure accurate readings, verify that accelerometer has a clean, flat surface and is mounted properly.
  2. With the unit running, set up vibration meter in a safe, secure location. Connect transducer to meter with proper cables. Hold magnetic tip of transducer on top of the bearing, and measure unit in mils of deflection. Record measurement, then move transducer to the side of the bearing and record in mils of deflection. Record an axial reading in mils of deflection by holding nonmagnetic, pointed transducer tip on end of shaft.
  3. Change vibration meter to velocity (inches per second) measurements. Repeat and record above measurements.
  4. Record CPM or rpm.
  5. Read each bearing on motor, fan, and pump as required. Track and record vibration levels from rotating component through casing to base.
- D. Reporting:
  1. Report shall record location and the system tested.
  2. Include horizontal-vertical-axial measurements for tests.
  3. Verify that vibration limits follow Specifications, or, if not specified, follow the General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart or Vibration Acceleration General Severity Chart from AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance." Acceptable levels of vibration are normally "smooth" to "good."
  4. Include in General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart, with conditions plotted.

### 3.15 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
  2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.

3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.16 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than **100 cfm**, within **10 cfm**.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than **100 cfm**, within **10 cfm**.

- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.17 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.18 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Fan curves.
  2. Manufacturers' test data.
  3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents, including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
    - e. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - f. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - g. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - h. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - i. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
  16. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present

each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
4. Terminal units.
5. Balancing stations.
6. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:

1. Motor Data:
  - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and speed.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in **inches**, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in **inches**.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Total airflow rate in **cfm**.
  - b. Total system static pressure in **inches wg**.
  - c. Fan speed.
  - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in **inches wg**.
  - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in **inches wg**.
  - f. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in **inches wg**.
  - g. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in **inches wg**.
  - h. Outdoor airflow in **cfm**.
  - i. Return airflow in **cfm**.
  - j. Outdoor-air damper position.
  - k. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Airflow rate in **cfm**.
  - b. Average face velocity in **fpm**.
  - c. Air pressure drop in **inches wg**.
  - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in **deg F**.
  - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in **deg F**.
  - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in **deg F**.
  - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in **deg F**.
  - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
  - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in **psig**.
  - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in **deg F**.

G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in

central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
  - a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Coil identification.
  - d. Capacity in **Btu/h**.
  - e. Number of stages.
  - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
  - g. Rated amperage.
  - h. Airflow rate in **cfm**.
  - i. Face area in **sq. ft.**.
  - j. Minimum face velocity in **fpm**.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Heat output in **Btu/h**.
  - b. Airflow rate in **cfm**.
  - c. Air velocity in **fpm**.
  - d. Entering-air temperature in **deg F**.
  - e. Leaving-air temperature in **deg F**.
  - f. Voltage at each connection.
  - g. Amperage for each phase.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:
  - a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in **inches**, and bore.
  - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in **inches**.
2. Motor Data:
  - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and speed.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in **inches**, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in **inches**.
  - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in **cfm**.
  - b. Total system static pressure in **inches wg**.
  - c. Fan speed.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in **inches wg**.
  - e. Suction static pressure in **inches wg**.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  1. Report Data:
    - a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in **deg F**.
    - d. Duct static pressure in **inches wg**.
    - e. Duct size in **inches**.
    - f. Duct area in **sq. ft.**.
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in **cfm**.
    - h. Indicated velocity in **fpm**.
    - i. Actual airflow rate in **cfm**.
    - j. Actual average velocity in **fpm**.
    - k. Barometric pressure in **psig**.
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
  1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Apparatus used for test.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Make.
    - f. Number from system diagram.
    - g. Type and model number.
    - h. Size.
    - i. Effective area in **sq. ft.**.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in **cfm**.
    - b. Air velocity in **fpm**.
    - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in **cfm**.
    - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in **fpm**.
    - e. Final airflow rate in **cfm**.
    - f. Final velocity in **fpm**.
    - g. Space temperature in **deg F**.
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
  1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Room or riser served.
  - d. Coil make and size.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Airflow rate in **cfm**.
  - b. Entering-air temperature in **deg F**.
  - c. Leaving-air temperature in **deg F**.

L. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
  - a. Instrument type and make.
  - b. Serial number.
  - c. Application.
  - d. Dates of use.
  - e. Dates of calibration.

3.19 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect, Construction Manager.
- B. Architect, Construction Manager shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
  1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
  2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue other Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.20 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593



## SECTION 23 0713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or craft training program.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers are to be marked with the manufacturer's name, appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are to be applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.

- E. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to **450 deg F** in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II, and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
    - c. Knauf Insulation
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
    - e. Owens Corning
- G. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between **35 deg F** and **250 deg F** for jacketed and between **35 deg F** and **450 deg F** for unfaced in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
    - c. Knauf Insulation
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
    - e. Owens Corning

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

A. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller
2. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.**
5. Color: White.

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of **1.3 perms** when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
6. ASJ+: All-service jacket composed of aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
7. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.6 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division
  - b. Aeroflex USA
  - c. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division
  - d. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company
  - e. Knauf Insulation
2. Width: **3 inches.**
3. Thickness: **11.5 mils.**

4. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch** in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company
    - d. Knauf Insulation]
  2. Width: **3 inches**.
  3. Thickness: **6.5 mils**.
  4. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch** in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company
    - d. Knauf Insulation
    - e. Sekisui Voltek, LLC
  2. Width: **2 inches**.
  3. Thickness: **3.7 mils**.
  4. Adhesion: **100 ounces force/inch** in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: **34 lbf/inch** in width.

## 2.7 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
      - 2) Gemco.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
    - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - c. Spindle: [Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel][Aluminum][Stainless steel], fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
  4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc
      - 2) Gemco
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding
    - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
  - C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
  - D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. C & F Wire Products
      - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
      - c. RPR Products, Inc.
- 2.8 CORNER ANGLES
- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC in accordance with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
  - B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum in accordance with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

- C. Stainless Steel Corner Angles: **0.024 inch** thick, minimum **1 by 1 inch**, stainless steel in accordance with ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.



1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch-** wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches** o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches**. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **2 inches** o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation

continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches**.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):  
Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least **2 inches**.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least **2 inches**.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL-WOOL INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions **18 inches** and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space **3 inches** maximum from insulation end joints, and **16 inches** o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than **18 inches**, place pins **16 inches** o.c. each way, and **3 inches** maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

- e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing **2 inches** from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with **1/2-inch** outward-clinching staples, **1 inch** o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below **50 deg F** at **18-foot** intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than **3 inches**.
  - 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of **2 inches** on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of **18 inches** o.c.
  - 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  - 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with **6-inch-** wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced **6 inches** o.c.
- C. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions **18 inches** and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space **3 inches** maximum from insulation end joints, and **16 inches** o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than **18 inches**, space pins **16 inches** o.c. each way, and **3 inches** maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing **2 inches** from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with **1/2-inch** outward-clinching staples, **1 inch** o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below **50 deg F** at **18-foot** intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than **3 inches**.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with **6-inch**- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced **6 inches** o.c.

### 3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- C. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- D. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  - 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Vibration-control devices.
  - 6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation is the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation is the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- D. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation is the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.

- E. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation is the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation is the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation is the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

## SECTION 23 0719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or craft training program.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include name of manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size, as well as ASTM standard designation, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

### 2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, or expanded-rubber materials; suitable for maximum use temperature between **minus 70 deg F** and **220 deg F**. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I, for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:



- a. Aeroflex USA
- b. Armacell LLC
- c. K-Flex USA

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA
    - b. Armacell LLC
    - c. K-Flex USA
  - 2. Flame-spread index is 25 or less and smoke-developed index is 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Black.

## 2.4 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

## 2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.
  - 2. Stainless Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing, Factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

- 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
- 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

## 2.6 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; **0.015 inch** thick, **1/2 inch** wide with wing seal.
3. Aluminum: **ASTM B209**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, **0.020 inch** thick, **1/2 inch** wide with wing seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel, with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size is determined by manufacturer for application.

### B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal **3/4 inch** wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### C. Wire: **0.062-inch** soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. C & F Wire Products
  - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
  - c. RPR Products, Inc.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- #### A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.

2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches**.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install sections of pipe insulation and miter if required in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install prefabricated valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands **12 inches** o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- B. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

### 3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is[ one of] the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- D. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

### 3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
  - C. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
    - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
      - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- 3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE
- A. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
  - B. Piping, Concealed:
    - 1. None.
  - C. Piping, Exposed:
    - 1. Stainless Steel, Type 304,or, Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

## SECTION 23 0923 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Direct digital control (DDC) system for HVAC.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
  - 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data and services over a network.
  - 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
  - 3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
  - 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: network controllers, programmable application controllers, and application-specific controllers.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems to be capable of



operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.

- J. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.
- K. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- L. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- M. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI) and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- N. I/P: Current to pneumatic.
- O. LAN: Local area network.
- P. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- Q. LON Specific Definitions:
  - 1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
  - 2. LonMark International: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
  - 3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
  - 4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.
  - 5. Node: Device that communicates using CTA-709.1-D protocol and that is connected to a CTA-709.1-D network.
  - 6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
  - 7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CTA-709.1-D device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
  - 8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually, EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
  - 9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark for configuration properties.
  - 10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
  - 11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is

- defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CTA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CTA-709.1-D control network.
  13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25 Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" and typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
  14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "u-keep-it." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
  15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- R. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- S. Mobile Device: A data-enabled phone or tablet computer capable of connecting to a cellular data network and running a native control application or accessing a web interface.
- T. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- U. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- V. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- W. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- X. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- Y. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- Z. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- AA. RAM: Random access memory.
- BB. RF: Radio frequency.
- CC. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- DD. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- EE. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- FF. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

GG. USB: Universal Serial Bus.

HH. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.

II. VAV: Variable air volume.

JJ. WLED: White light emitting diode.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at [Project site].

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Multiple Submissions:

1. If multiple submissions are required to execute work within schedule, first submit a coordinated schedule clearly defining intent of multiple submissions. Include a proposed date of each submission with a detailed description of submittal content to be included in each submission.
2. Clearly identify each submittal requirement indicated and in which submission the information will be provided.
3. Include an updated schedule in each subsequent submission with changes highlighted to easily track the changes made to previous submitted schedule.

B. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
  - a. Protocol analyzers.
  - b. DDC controllers.
  - c. Enclosures.
  - d. Electrical power devices.
  - e. Accessories.
  - f. Instruments.

- g. Control dampers and actuators.
  - 6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
  - 7. Each submitted piece of product literature to clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.
- C. Software Submittal:
  - 1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on DDC controller.
  - 2. Description and technical data of all software provided and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
  - 3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
  - 4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
  - 5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
  - 6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
  - 7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
  - 8. Description of each network communication protocol.
  - 9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity, and limitations to expand database.
  - 10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden, and system throughout.
  - 11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
- D. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. General Requirements:
    - a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor, and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
    - b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
  - 2. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
    - a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
    - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
    - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
    - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
    - e. Unique identification of each I/O that to be consistently used between different

- drawings showing same point.
  - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays, and interface to DDC controllers.
  - g. Narrative sequence of operation.
  - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
3. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
- a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
  - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates, and allocated spare space.
  - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
  - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
4. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
  - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
  - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed, and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
  - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
5. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
  - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
6. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
- a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
  - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
  - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches, and transmitters.
  - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches, and transmitters.
7. Color graphics indicating the following:
- a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
  - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics, and data displayed.
  - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.

E. System Description:

1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing, and events that initiate generation.
3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Loss of power.
  - b. Loss of network communication signal.
  - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outpoints.
  - d. Operator workstation failure.
  - e. Server failure.
  - f. Gateway failure.
  - g. Network failure.
  - h. Controller failure.
  - i. Instrument failure.
  - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
6. Description of Owner training.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
  - b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
  - c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
  - d. Names, addresses, email addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
  - e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and variables.
  - f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
  - g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to do the following:
    - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
    - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
    - 3) Debug hardware problems.

4) Repair or replace hardware.

- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and databases on electronic media.
- j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

- 1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
- 2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of five years within time of bid.
- 3. DDC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least three past projects.
- 4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation, and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
- 5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
  - a. Product research and development.
  - b. Product and application engineering.
  - c. Product manufacturing, testing, and quality control.
  - d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning, and troubleshooting of installations.
  - e. Owner operator training.

B. DDC System Provider Qualifications:

- 1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
- 2. Demonstrate past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within [three][five]<Insert number> consecutive years before time of bid.
- 3. Demonstrate past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
- 4. Demonstrate past experience of each person assigned to Project.
- 5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
- 6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
- 7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing DDC system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
- 8. DDC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of the Work if necessary to

comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups.

1. Provide test assemblies representative of proposed materials and construction.
2. Build laboratory mockups at testing agency facility; use personnel, materials, and methods of construction that will be used at Project site.
3. Notify Architect seven] days in advance of dates and times when laboratory mockups will be tested.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Adjust, repair, or replace failures at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
  - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
3. Perform warranty service during normal business hours and commence within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
4. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business
2. Alerton Inc.
3. Automated Logic Corporation
4. Delta Controls Inc
5. Distech Controls
6. Honeywell International Inc.
7. Johnson Controls, Inc.
8. KMC Controls, Inc.
9. Reliable Controls Corporation
10. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
11. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division



12. Trane

2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
  - 1. DDC system consisting of peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, operator interfaces, and software.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system to be web based
  - 1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:
    - a. DDC system software based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of web technology. DDC system server accessed using a web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
    - b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a web browser. No special software other than a web browser is required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
    - c. Password-protected web access.
  - 2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:
    - a. Workstation to perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
    - b. DDC system to support web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard web browser is able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
    - c. Password-protected web access.

2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delivery of Selected Control Devices: Deliver to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.
- B. Delegated Design, Qualified Professional: Engage a qualified professional to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.

1. System Performance Objectives:
  - a. DDC system manages HVAC systems.
  - b. DDC system operates HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
  - c. DDC system responds to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
  - d. DDC system operates while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
  - e. DDC system records trends and transactions of events and produces report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths complying with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- D. DDC System Speed:
  1. Response Time of Connected I/O:
    - a. Update AI point values connected to DDC system at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally to also comply with this requirement.
    - b. Update BI point values connected to DDC system at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally to also comply with this requirement.
    - c. AO points connected to DDC system to begin to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands to also comply with this requirement.
    - d. BO point values connected to DDC system to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands to also comply with this requirement.
  2. Display of Connected I/O:
    - a. Update and display analog point COV connected to DDC system at least every 10 seconds for use by operator.
    - b. Update and display binary point COV connected to DDC system at least every 10 seconds for use by operator.
    - c. Update and display alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system within 45 seconds of activation or change of state.
    - d. Update graphic display refresh within eight seconds.
    - e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations to not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.
- E. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing

under worst case conditions. Minimum spare bandwidth as follows:

1. Level 1 Networks: 20
2. Level 2 Networks: 20
3. Level 3 Networks: 10

F. DDC System Data Storage:

1. Include capability to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends, and other information indicated.
2. Local Storage:
  - a. Provide with data storage indicated. Server(s) to use IT industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
3. Cloud Storage:
  - a. Provide web browser interfaces to configure, upload, download, and manage data and to service plan with storage adequate to store all data for term indicated. Cloud storage uses IT industry standard database platforms and is capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.

G. DDC Data Access:

1. When logged into the system, operator able to also interact with any DDC controllers connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
2. Use for application configuration; for archiving, reporting, and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.

H. Future Expandability:

1. DDC system size is expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least 1.25 times total I/O points indicated.
2. Design and install system networks to achieve ultimate capacity with only addition of DDC controllers, I/O, and associated wiring and cable. Design and install initial network infrastructure to support ultimate capacity without having to remove and replace portions of network installation.
3. Operator interfaces installed initially do not require hardware and software additions and revisions for system when operating at ultimate capacity.

I. Input Point Values Displayed Accuracy: Meet following end-to-end overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire or cable, and analog to digital conversion.

1. Flow:
  - a. Air: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.

- b. Air (Terminal Units): Within 10 percent of design flow rate.
  - 2. Gas:
    - a. Carbon Dioxide: Within 50 ppm.
  - 3. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
    - a. Air: Within [1 deg F][0.5 deg F]<Insert value>.
    - b. Space: Within [1 deg F][0.5 deg F]<Insert value>.
    - c. Outdoor: Within [2 deg F][1 deg F]<Insert value>.
  - 4. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
    - a. Air: Within 0.5 deg F
    - b. Space: Within 0.5 deg F
    - c. Outdoor: Within 1 deg F
  - 5. Vibration: Within 5 percent of reading.
- J. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed to have following precision:
  - 1. Current:
    - a. Milliamperes: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
    - b. Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 A and more.
  - 2. Flow:
    - a. Air: Nearest 1/10th of a cubic feet per minute through 100 cfm; nearest cubic feet per minute between 100 and 1000 cfm; nearest 10 cfm between 1000 and 10,000 cfm; nearest 100 cfm above 10,000 cfm.
  - 3. Gas:
    - a. Carbon Dioxide (ppm): Nearest ppm.
  - 4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
    - a. Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
  - 5. Temperature:
    - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
    - b. Outdoor: Nearest degree.
    - c. Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- K. Control Stability: Control variables indicated within the following limits:
  - 1. Flow:

- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment, except Terminal Units: Within [5][2]<Insert number> percent of design flow rate.
    - b. Air, Terminal Units: Within [10][5]<Insert number> percent of design flow rate.
  - 2. Gas:
    - a. Carbon Dioxide: Within 50 ppm.
  - 3. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
    - a. Air: Within [2 deg F][1 deg F][0.5 deg F]<Insert value>.
    - b. Space: Within [2 deg F][1 deg F][0.5 deg F]<Insert value>.
  - 4. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
    - a. Air: Within 0.5 deg F.
    - b. Space: Within 0.5 deg F.
- L. Electric Power Quality:
- 1. Power-Line Surges:
    - a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.
    - b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
    - c. Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:
      - 1) 10-by-1000-microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak current of 60 A.
      - 2) 8-by-20-microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak current of 500 A.
  - 2. Power Conditioning:
    - a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner are as follows:
      - 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage to not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
      - 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage to not deviate by more than 2 percent of nominal.
      - 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles, and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
      - 4) Total harmonic distortion to not exceed 2 percent at full load.
  - 3. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products to not fail due to ground fault condition.

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Desktop and portable workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
  4. Mobile device and application with secured wireless connection through LAN router or cellular data service.
  5. Remote connection through web access.
- B. Make access to system, regardless of operator means used, transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable workstation. Network port easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
1. Each mechanical equipment room.
  2. Each outdoor on-grade yard and elevated platform with equipment connected to DDC system.
  3. Each different roof level with roof-mounted equipment connected to DDC system.
  4. Security system command center.
  5. Fire-alarm system command center.
- D. Mobile Device (Tablet and Smart Phone):
1. Connect Owner-furnished mobile devices to system through a wireless router connected to LAN.
  2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system using secure web access.
- E. Critical Alarm Reporting:
1. Send operator-selected critical alarms to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
  2. Send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
  3. Notify recipients by any or all means, including email, text message, and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.
- F. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to five simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any of operator interfaces indicated.

## 2.6 NETWORKS

- A. Acceptable networks for connecting workstations, mobile devices, and network controllers include the following:
1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
  2. CTA-709.1-D.
  3. IP.

4. ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- B. Acceptable networks for connecting programmable application controllers include the following:
1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
  2. CTA-709.1-D.
  3. IP.
  4. ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- C. Acceptable networks for connecting application-specific controllers include the following:
1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
  2. CTA-709.1-D.
  3. TIA 485-A.
  4. IP.
  5. ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- 2.7 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL
- A. Use network communication protocol(s) that are open to Owner and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:
1. Use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol as sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
  2. DDC system to not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment; not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.
  3. If used, gateways to connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
  4. Use operator workstations, controllers, and other network devices that are tested and listed by BTL.
- C. CTA-709.1-D Protocol:
1. Open implementation of LonWorks technology using CTA 709.1-D communication protocol and using LonMark SNVTs as defined in LonMark SNVT list exclusively for communication throughout DDC system.
  2. Use LNS for all network management including addressing and binding of network variables.
    - a. Submit final LNS database with Project closeout submittals.
    - b. All devices are to be online and commissioned into LNS database.
  3. Use CTA-709.1-D protocol for all connected device. Install so SCPT output from any node on network can be bound to any other node in the domain.

D. Industry Standard Protocols:

1. Use any one or a combination of the following industry standard protocols for network communication while complying with other DDC system requirements indicated:
  - a. ASHRAE 135.
  - b. CTA-709.1-D.
  - c. Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b3.
2. Network controllers are to communicate through ASHRAE 135 protocol.
3. Provide portions of DDC system networks using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol as an open implementation of network devices complying with ASHRAE 135. Use network devices that are tested and listed by BTL.
4. Provide portions of DDC system networks using CTA-709.1-D communication protocol as an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CTA-709.1-D communication protocol and using LonMark SNVTs as defined in LonMark SNVT list exclusively for DDC system.
5. Provide portions of DDC system networks using Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b3 communication protocol as an open implementation of network devices and technology complying with Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b3.
6. Use gateways to connect networks and network devices with different protocols.

2.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 64-bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software to manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database are to be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Network communications software to manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
5. Operator interface software to include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
6. Scheduling software to schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

B. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a mouse.
3. Make operator sign-off a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes



- place, an automatic sign-off.
- 4. Make automatic sign-off period programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute increments on a per operator basis.
- 5. Record operator sign-on and sign-off activity and send to printer.
- 6. Security Access:
  - a. Use password control for operator access to DDC system.
  - b. Assign an alphanumeric password (field assignable) to each operator.
  - c. Grant operators access to DDC system by entry of proper password.
  - d. Use same operator password regardless of which computer or other operator interface means are used.
  - e. Automatically update additions or changes made to passwords.
  - f. Assign each operator an access level to restrict access to data and functions the operator is cable of performing.
  - g. Provide software with at least five access levels.
  - h. Assign each menu item an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
  - i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Make menu and operator access level assignments online programmable and under password control.
- 7. Data Segregation:
  - a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
  - b. Include at least 32 segregation groups.
  - c. Make segregation groups selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.
  - d. Make points assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of data to printer or monitor is to occur where there is a match of operator or peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
  - e. Make alarms displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
  - f. Assign operators and peripherals to multiple segregation groups and make all assignments online programmable and under password control.
- 8. Operators able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Start or stop selected equipment.
  - b. Adjust set points.
  - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
  - d. Enable and disable process execution.
  - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
  - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
  - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
  - h. Override control loop set points.
  - i. Enter temporary override schedules.

- j. Define holiday schedules.
  - k. Change time and date.
  - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
  - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
  - n. View limits.
  - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
  - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
  - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
9. Reporting:
- a. Generated automatically and manually.
  - b. Sent to displays, printers and disc files.
  - c. Types of Reporting:
    - 1) General listing of points.
    - 2) List points currently in alarm.
    - 3) List of off-line points.
    - 4) List points currently in override status.
    - 5) List of disabled points.
    - 6) List points currently locked out.
    - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
    - 8) List weekly schedules.
    - 9) List holiday programming.
    - 10) List of limits and deadbands.
10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.
- C. Graphic Interface Software:
- 1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
  - 2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface is to use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color, and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
  - 3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
  - 4. Make descriptors for graphics, points, alarms, and such modifiable through operator's workstation under password control.
  - 5. Make graphic displays online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
  - 6. Make data displayed within a graphic assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication, or point type.
  - 7. Make graphics online programmable and under password control.

8. Make points assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
9. Graphics to also contain software points.
10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy is to display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
11. Provide a back-trace feature to permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace to show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full-screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
13. Provide operator with ability to select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Display defined and linked graphic below that selection.
14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
15. Make dynamic data assignable to graphics.
16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Make colors variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
18. Provide dynamic points with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.
19. For operators with appropriate privilege, command points directly from display using pointing device.
  - a. For an analog command point such as set point, display current conditions and limits so operator can position new set point using pointing device.
  - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, show valve in current state such as open or closed so operator could select alternative position using pointing device.
  - c. Include a keyboard equivalent for those operators with that preference.
20. Give operator ability to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot, and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature allows real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
21. Help Features:
  - a. Online context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
  - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords and contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
    - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, provide a complete set of user manuals in an indexed word-processing program, which runs concurrently with operating system software.

- c. Available for Every Menu Item:
    - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
- 22. Provide graphic generation software to allow operator ability to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays.
  - a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters, dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols.
  - b. Use a pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:
    - 1) Define background screens.
    - 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
    - 3) Locate, orient, and size descriptive text.
    - 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
    - 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.
- D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
  - 2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
    - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
    - b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
    - c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
  - 3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic representation, similar to that indicated on Drawings, with point identification, set point and dynamic value indication, sequence of operation.
  - 4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
  - 5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers, and other network devices.
- E. Customizing Software:
  - 1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices planned.
  - 2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
  - 3. At a minimum, include the following modification capability:
    - a. Operator Assignment: Designation of operator passwords, access levels, point

- segregation, and auto sign-off.
- b. Peripheral Assignment: Assignment of segregation groups and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and printers, designation of workstation header points, and enabling and disabling of printout of operator changes.
- c. System Configuration and Diagnostics: Communications and peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points, and application programs and initiation of diagnostics.
- d. System Text Addition and Change: English or native language descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages for alarms, run time, and trouble condition.
- e. Time and Schedule Change: Time and date set, time and occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules, and daylight-savings time schedules.
- f. Point related change capability is to include the following:
  - 1) System and point enable and disable.
  - 2) Run-time enable and disable.
  - 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and run time and to a fixed I/O value.
  - 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
- g. Application program change capability is to include the following:
  - 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
  - 2) Programming changes.
  - 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.
- 4. Provide software to allow operator ability to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to link them to energy optimization and management programs. Make additions and modifications online programmable using operator workstations, downloaded to other network devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point additions and associated program operation, upload and record database on hard drive and disc for archived record.
- 5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of custom DDC programs. Include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load capability.
- 6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic, and relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, at a minimum, the following:
  - a. Proportional control (P).
  - b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
  - c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
  - d. Adaptive and intelligent self-learning control.
    - 1) Algorithm monitors loop response to output corrections and adjust loop response characteristics in accordance with time constant changes imposed.
    - 2) Algorithm operates in a continuous self-learning manner and retains in memory a stored record of system dynamics so that on system shut down

and restart, learning process starts from where it left off.

7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time delay, time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output, analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
10. Relational operators such as "Equal to," "Not Equal to," "Less Than," "Greater Than," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

F. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms in accordance with alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Make alarm handling active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display is to include the following:
  - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
  - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
  - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
  - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability is to be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Direct alarms to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
6. Send email alarm messages to designated operators.
7. Send email, page, text, and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Categorize and process alarms by class.
  - a. Class 1:
    - 1) Associated with fire, security, and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
    - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
    - 3) All conditions make an audible alarm sound and require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.

b. Class 2:

- 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
  - 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
- c. Class 3:
- 1) General alarms; printed, displayed, and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
  - 2) Configure so each new alarm received makes an audible alarm sound that are silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
  - 3) Make acknowledgement of queued alarms either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
  - 4) Print alarms returning to normal condition without an audible alarm sound or require acknowledgment.
- d. Class 4:
- 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
  - 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.
9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, make it possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.

G. Reports and Logs:

1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
2. Setup each report so data content, format, interval, and date are operator definable.
3. Sample and store report data on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive for historical reporting.
4. Make it possible for operators to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
5. Store reports and logs on hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.
6. Make reports and logs readily printable and set to be print either on operator command or at a specific time each day.

H. Standard Reports: Provide standard DDC system reports with operator ability to customize reports later.

1. All I/O: With current status and values.
2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
6. Logs:

- a. Alarm history.
    - b. System messages.
    - c. System events.
    - d. Trends.
  - I. Custom Reports: Operator able to easily define and prepare any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, annual, or other historical report. Reports to include a title with time and date stamp.
  - J. Tenant Override Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
    - 1. Daily report showing total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
    - 2. Weekly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
    - 3. Monthly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
    - 4. Annual summary report that shows after-hours HVAC usage on a monthly basis.
- 2.9 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS
- A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard option, for integration via a single communication cable. BACnet-controlled plant equipment includes, but is not limited to, **boilers, chillers, <Insert equipment>**, and variable-speed drives.
  - B. Include gateways to connect BACnet to legacy systems where indicated, existing non-BACnet devices, and existing non-BACnet DDC-controlled equipment.
  - C. Include with each gateway an interoperability schedule showing each point or event on legacy side that BACnet "client" will read, and each parameter that BACnet network will write to. Describe this interoperability of BACnet services, or BIBBs, defined in ASHRAE 135, Annex K.
  - D. Gateway Minimum Requirements:
    - 1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network, and vice versa, where applicable.
    - 2. Write to all writable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network, and vice versa, where applicable.
    - 3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols) translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet, and vice versa.
    - 4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property, Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management Communication Control BIBBs in accordance with ASHRAE 135.
    - 5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway communications.
    - 6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media with ability to modify, download, backup, and restore gateway configuration.



## 2.10 ASHRAE 135 PROTOCOL ANALYZER

- A. Analyzer and required cables and fittings for connection to ASHRAE 135 network.
- B. Include the following minimum capabilities:
  - 1. Capture and store to a file data traffic on all network levels.
  - 2. Measure bandwidth usage.
  - 3. Filtering options with ability to ignore select traffic.

## 2.11 CTA-709.1-D NETWORK HARDWARE

- A. Routers:
  - 1. Network routers, including routers configured as repeaters, are to comply with requirements of CTA-709.1-D and include connection between two or more CTA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels or between two or more CTA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels and a TP/XF-1250 channel.
  - 2. IP Routers:
    - a. Perform layer three routing of CTA-709.1-D packets over an IP network in accordance with CTA-852-C.
    - b. Include appropriate connection to IP network and connections to CTA-709.3 TP/FT-10 or TP/XF-1250 network.
    - c. Support the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IP configuration and use of an CTA-852-C Configuration Server (for CTA-852-C configuration), but do not rely on these services for configuration.
    - d. Capable of manual configuration via a console RS-232 port.
- B. Gateways:
  - 1. Perform bidirectional protocol translation from one non-CTA-709.1-D protocol to CTA-709.1-D.
  - 2. Incorporate a network connection to TP/FT-10 network in accordance with CTA-709.3 and a connection for non-CTA-709.1-D network.

## 2.12 DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system consisting of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers, and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers to perform monitoring, control, energy optimization, and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers are to use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller is capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit

and as a part of DDC system wide distributed network.

E. Environment Requirements:

1. Controller hardware suitable for anticipated ambient conditions.
2. Controllers located in conditioned space rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F
3. Controllers located outdoors rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.

F. Power and Noise Immunity:

1. Operate controller at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
2. Protect against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches of enclosure.

G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:

1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
  - a. Network Controllers: 50 percent.
  - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 60percent.
  - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 70 percent.
2. Memory for DDC controller's operating system and database are to include the following:
  - a. Monitoring and control.
  - b. Energy management, operation, and optimization applications.
  - c. Alarm management.
  - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
  - e. Maintenance applications.
  - f. Operator interfaces.
  - g. Monitoring of manual overrides.

H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:

1. Network Controllers:
  - a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
  - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
    - 1) AIs: Two
    - 2) AOs: Two
    - 3) BIs: Three
    - 4) BOs: Three
    - 5) Option to provide universal I/O to meet spare requirements.
2. Programmable Application Controllers:

- a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
  - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
    - 1) AIs: Two
    - 2) AOs: Two
    - 3) BIs: Three
    - 4) BOs: Three
    - 5) Option to provide universal I/O to meet spare requirements.
3. Application-Specific Controllers:
- a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
  - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
    - 1) AIs: One
    - 2) AOs: One
    - 3) BIs: One
    - 4) BOs: One >.
    - 5) Option to provide universal I/O to meet spare requirements.
- I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
- 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
  - 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
  - 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
  - 4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.
- J. General Requirements for CTA-709.1-D DDC Controllers:
- 1. LonMark certified.
  - 2. Distinguishable and accessible switch, button, or pin, when pressed is to broadcast its 48-bit Node ID and Program ID over network.
  - 3. TP/FT-10 transceiver in accordance with CTA-709.3 and connections for TP/FT-10 control network wiring.
  - 4. TP/XF-1250 transceiver in accordance with CTA-709.3 and connections for TP/XF-1250 control network wiring.
  - 5. Communicate using CTA-709.1-D protocol.
  - 6. Controllers configured into subnets, as required, to comply with performance requirements indicated.
  - 7. Network communication through LNS network management and database standard for CTA-709.1-D network devices.
  - 8. Locally powered, not powered through network connection.
  - 9. Functionality required to support applications indicated including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. I/Os indicated and as required to support sequence of operation and application in which it is used. SNVTs to have meaningful names identifying the value represented by SNVT. Unless SNVT of an appropriate engineering type is unavailable, all network variables to be of SNVT with engineering units

- appropriate to value the variable represents.
  - b. Configurable through SCPTs defined in LonMark SCPT List, operator-defined UCPTs, network configuration inputs (NCIs) of SNVT type defined in LonMark SNVT List, NCIs of an operator-defined network variable type, or hardware settings on controller itself for all settings and parameters used by application in which it is used.
- 10. Programmable controllers comply with "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" and have LonMark certification.
- K. I/O Point Interface:
  - 1. Connect hardwired I/O points to network, programmable application, and application-specific controllers.
  - 2. Protect I/O points so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
  - 3. Protect I/O points from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.
  - 4. AIs:
    - a. Include monitoring of low-voltage (0 to 10 V dc), current (4 to 20 mA) and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
    - b. Compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters installed.
    - c. Perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
    - d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection for each AI.
    - e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
    - f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from 0 to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10000 ohms.
    - g. External conversion resistors are not permitted.
  - 5. AOs:
    - a. Perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
    - b. Output signals range of 4 to 20 mA dc as required to include proper control of output device.
    - c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
    - d. Drift is to be not greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
    - e. External conversion resistors are not permitted.
  - 6. BIs:
    - a. Accept contact closures and ignore transients of less than 5 ms duration.
    - b. Isolate and protect against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180 V ac peak.
    - c. Include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and protected against effects of contact bounce and noise.
    - d. Sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by controller) being applied.

- e. Pulse accumulation input points complying with all requirements of BIs and accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Include buffer to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator is to accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. Reset the totalized value to zero on operator's command.
7. BOs:
- a. Include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices.
    - 1) Relay contact closures to have a minimum duration of 0.1 second and at least 180 V of isolation.
    - 2) Include electromagnetic interference suppression on all output lines to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
    - 3) Minimum contact rating to be 1 A at 24 V ac.
    - 4) Triac outputs to have at least 180 V of isolation and minimum contact rating of 1 A at 24 V ac.
  - b. Include BOs with two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-width modulation control.
  - c. BOs to be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
  - d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators without feedback.
  - e. Limit use of three-point floating devices to VAV terminal unit control applications. Control algorithms to operate actuator to one end of its stroke once every 12 hours for verification of operator tracking.

## 2.13 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

### A. General:

- 1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
- 2. Provide one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
- 3. Include enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements with spare memory indicated.
- 4. Share data between networked controllers and other network devices.
- 5. Operating system of controller to manage I/O communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
- 6. Include network controllers with a real-time clock.
- 7. Controller to continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller is to assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
- 8. Make controllers fully programmable.

### B. Communication:

- 1. Network controllers communicate with other devices on DDC network.

2. Network controller to also perform routing if connected to network of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Equip controllers with a service communications port for connection to mobile device.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
  - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
  - b. Use of keypad and display requires a security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Equip controller with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Connect wiring and cable connections to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Maintain Basic Input Output System (BIOS) and programming information in event of power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.14 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Provide enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements with spare memory indicated.
3. Share data between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Include controller with operating system to manage I/O communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Include controllers with a real-time clock.
6. Controller is to continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller assumes a predetermined failure mode and generates an alarm notification.
7. Fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers are to communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Equip controllers with a service communications port for connection to mobile device.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
  - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.

- b. Protect use of keypad and display by security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Equip controller with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Connect wiring and cable connections to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Maintain BIOS and programming information in event of power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.15 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment or system. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

1. Capable of standalone operation and continued control functions without being connected to network.
2. Share data between networked controllers and other network devices.

- B. Communication: Application-specific controllers are to communicate with other application-specific controllers and devices on network, and to programmable application controllers and network controllers.

- C. Operator Interface: Equip controllers with a service communications port for connection mobile device.

D. Serviceability:

1. Equip controller with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Connect wiring and cable connections to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

## 2.16 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

A. General:

1. Software applications are to reside and operate in controllers. Edit applications through operator workstations
2. Identify I/O points by up to 30 character point name and up to 16 character point descriptor. Use same names throughout, including at operator workstations.
3. Execute control functions within controllers using DDC algorithms.
4. Configure controllers to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Use

default values when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.

B. Security:

1. Secure operator access using individual security passwords and user names.
2. Passwords restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
3. Record operator log-on and log-off attempts.
4. Protect from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. Make the delay time operator-definable.

C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule is to consist of the following:

1. Weekly Schedules:

- a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
- b. Each schedule should include capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
- c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
- d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.

2. Exception Schedules:

- a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
- b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.

3. Holiday Schedules:

- a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
- b. Place schedules on scheduling calendar with ability to repeated each year.
- c. Operator able to define length of each holiday period.

D. System Coordination:

1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
2. Include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
3. Include groups that may be for use in scheduling and other applications.

E. Binary Alarms:

1. Set each binary point to alarm based on operator-specified state.
2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.



F. Analog Alarms:

1. Provide each analog object with both high and low alarm limits.
2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.

G. Alarm Reporting:

1. Include ability for operators to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
2. Route alarms to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
3. Include ability for alarms to start programs, print, be logged in event logs, generate custom messages, and display graphics.

H. Remote Communication:

1. Include ability for system to notify operators by phone message, text message, and email in event of an alarm.

I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:

1. Monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
2. Predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
3. Accomplish demand reduction by the following means:
  - a. Reset air-handling-unit supply temperature set points.
  - b. Reset space temperature set points.
  - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
4. Base demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
  - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
  - b. Changes in demand intervals.
  - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
  - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
  - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
  - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
  - g. Shed and restore priority.
7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, and annual basis:
  - a. Total electric consumption.

- b. Peak demand.
  - c. Date and time of peak demand.
  - d. Daily peak demand.
- J. Maintenance Management: Monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.
- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- L. Control Loops:
  - 1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
    - a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
    - b. Proportional control.
    - c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
    - d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
      - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
      - 2) Algorithm to calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
      - 3) Make controlled variable, set point, and PID gains operator-selectable.
    - e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).
- M. Staggered Start: Prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Make the order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, operator-selectable.
- N. Anti-Short Cycling:
  - 1. Protect BO points from short cycling.
  - 2. Feature to allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.
- O. On and Off Control with Differential:
  - 1. Include algorithm that allows BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
  - 2. Use direct- or reverse-acting algorithm and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- P. Run-Time Totalization:
  - 1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BIPoints.
  - 2. Assign a high run-time alarm, if required, by operator.

## 2.17 ENCLOSURES

- A. General:

1. House each controller and associated control accessories in enclosure. Enclosure is to serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies, and transformers.
2. Do not house more than one controller in single enclosure.
3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
4. Equip doors of enclosures housing controllers and components with analog or digital displays with windows to allow visual observation of displays without opening enclosure door.
5. Individual, wall-mounted, single-door enclosures maximum of 36 inches wide and 48 inches high.
6. Individual, wall-mounted, double-door enclosures maximum of 60 inches wide and 36 inches high.
7. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall or freestanding support stand as indicated.
8. Supply each enclosure with complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in pocket on inside of door

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Arrange internal layout of enclosure to group and protect electric, and electronic components associated with controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling, and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than 10 percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install maximum of two wires on each side of terminal.
9. Include enclosure field electric power supply with toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with line-voltage nominal 20 A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with 5 A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
12. Include products mounted in enclosures with nameplates (black letters on a white background). Nameplates are to have at least 1/4-inch high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire, and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least 15 percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.

2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction, and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
5. Include temperature-controlled cooling within the enclosure for applications where ventilation fans cannot maintain inside temperature of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
6. Where required by application, include humidity-controlled electric dehumidifier or cooling to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum relative humidity of product with most stringent requirement and to prevent surface condensation within enclosure.

D. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector
  - b. Hammond Mfg. Co. Inc
  - c. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc
  - d. Saginaw Control and Engineering
2. NRTL listed in accordance with UL 508A.
3. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
4. Where recessed enclosures are indicated, include enclosures with face flange for flush mounting.
5. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
6. Single-door enclosure sizes up to **60 inches tall by 36 inches wide**.
7. Double-door enclosure sizes up to **36 inches tall by 60 inches wide**.
8. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than the following:
  - a. Size Less Than 24 Inches (600 mm): **0.053 inch** thick.
  - b. Size 24 Inches (600 mm) and Larger: **0.067 inch** thick.
9. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
10. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
  - a. Sizes through 24 Inches (600 mm) Tall: Two hinges.
  - b. Sizes between 24 Inches (600 mm) through 48 Inches (1200 mm) Tall: Three hinges.
  - c. Sizes Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) Tall: Four hinges.

11. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width access.
  - a. Single-door enclosures **48 inches** and taller, and all double-door enclosures, with three-point (top, middle and bottom) latch system.
12. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
13. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
14. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

## 2.18 RELAYS

### A. General-Purpose Relays:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Allen Bradley; by Rockwell Automation
  - b. Eaton
  - c. IDEC Corporation
  - d. Omron Americas
  - e. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division
  - f. Square D; Schneider Electric USA]
2. NRTL listed.
3. Heavy-duty, electromechanical type; rated for at least 10A at 250 V ac and 60 Hz.
4. SPDT, DPDT, or three-pole double-throw, as required by control application.
5. Plug-in-style relay with 8-pin octalplug for DPDT relays and 11-pin octal plug for three-pole double-throw relays.
6. Construct contacts of silver, silver alloy, or gold.
7. Enclose relay in a polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
8. Include LED indication.
9. Performance:
  - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10million cycles.
  - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
  - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
  - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
  - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
  - f. Dropout Voltage: [50][10] percent of nominal rated voltage.
  - g. Power Consumption: [2][5] VA or less.
  - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: **Minus 40 to 115 deg F.**
10. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
11. Plug each relay into industry-standard, 35 mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
12. Include relay socket with screw terminals. Mold into socket the coincident screw terminal numbers.

### B. Current Sensing Relays:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Eaton
  - b. Functional Devices Inc
  - c. NK Technologies
  - d. Square D; Schneider Electric USA
2. NRTL listed.
3. Monitors ac current.
4. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
5. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
6. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
7. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 percent of pickup current.
8. Visual indication of contact status.
9. Include current transformer, if required for application.
10. House current sensing relay and current transformer if required in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure for indoors applications and NEMA 250, Type 4X for outdoor applications.

## 2.19 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

### A. Control Transformers:

1. Sizing Criteria: Size control transformers for total connected load, plus additional 25 percent of connected load for future spare capacity.
2. Transformer Minimum Capacity: 40 VA.
3. Protection: Provide transformers with both primary and secondary fuses.
4. Enclosure: House control transformers in NEMA 250 enclosures, type as indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article for application.

### B. DC Power Supplies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acopian Technical Company
  - b. Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions
  - c. IDEC Corporation
  - d. Omron Americas
2. Description: Linear or switched, regulated power supplies with ac input to one dc output(s).
  - a. Include both line and load regulation to ensure stable output.
  - b. To protect both power supply and load, include power supply with an automatic current limiting circuit.
3. Features:

- a. Connection: Plug-in style suitable for mating with standard socket. Include power supply with mating mounting socket.
  - b. Housing: Enclose circuitry in a housing.
  - c. Local Adjustment: Include screw adjustment on exterior of housing for dc voltage output.
  - d. Mounting: DIN rail.
  - e. Visual status indicator.
4. Performance:
- a. Input Voltage: Nominally 120V ac, 60 Hz.
  - b. Output Voltage: Nominally 24V dc with plus or minus 1 V dc adjustment.
  - c. Output Current: Minimum 100mA.
  - d. Load Regulation: Within 0.1 percent.
  - e. Line Regulation: Within 0.05percent.
  - f. Stability: Within 0.1 percent of rated volts after warmup period.
  - g. Ripple: 1mV rms.

## 2.20 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

### A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.

1. Wire Size: Minimum [18][16][14]<Insert value> AWG.
2. Conductors: 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor Insulation: 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C in accordance with UL 83.
4. Conductor Insulation Colors: Black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
5. Furnish on spools.

### B. Single, Twisted-Shielded, Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:

1. Wire Size: Minimum 18 AWG.
2. Conductors: Twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor Insulation: Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
4. Conductor Insulation Colors:
  - a. Twisted Pair: Black and white.
  - b. Twisted Triad: Black, red, and white.
5. Shielding: 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
6. Outer Jacket Insulation: 600 V, 90 deg C rating, and Type TC cable.
7. Furnish on spools.

### C. Single, Twisted-Shielded, Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

1. Wire Size: Minimum 18AWG.
2. Conductors: Twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor Insulation: Nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
4. Conductor Insulation Colors:

- a. Twisted Pair: Black and white.
  - b. Twisted Triad: Black, red, and white.
- 5. Shielding: 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
- 6. Outer Jacket Insulation: 300 V, 105 deg C rating, and Type PLTC cable.
- 7. Furnish on spools.
- D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.
  - 1. Comply with following requirements for balanced twisted pair cable described in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
    - a. Plenum rated.
    - b. Unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.

## 2.21 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pressure Electric Switches:
  - 1. Description: Diaphragm-operated, snap-acting switch.
  - 2. Performance:
    - a. Rating: Resistance loads at 120 V ac.
    - b. Set Point: Adjustable from 3 to 20 psig
    - c. Differential: Adjustable from 2 to 6 psig
  - 3. Body and Switch Housing: Metal.

## 2.22 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:
  - 1. Self-adhesive label bearing unique identification.
    - a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
  - 2. Letter size as follows:
    - a.
    - b. DDC Controllers: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
    - c. Enclosures: Minimum of .5 inch high.
    - d. Electrical Power Devices: Minimum of .25 inch > high.
    - e. Accessories: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
    - f. Instruments: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
    - g. Control Damper and Valve Actuators: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
  - 3. Engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer



- layer.
- 4. Fastened with drive pins.
- 5. Instruments, control devices, and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require additional identification.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- E. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
  - 1. DDC system has communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
  - 2. Equipment to Be Connected:
    - a. Domestic water booster pumps specified in Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps."
    - b. Sewage pump stations specified in Section 221343 "Facility Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations."
    - c. Sump pumps specified in Section 221429 "Sump Pumps."
    - d. Domestic water heaters specified in Section 223300 "Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters" and Section 223400 "Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters."
    - e. Air-terminal units specified in Section 233600 "Air Terminal Units."
    - f. Kitchen hoods specified in Section 233813 "Commercial-Kitchen Hoods."
    - g. Air-handling units specified in Section 237313.16 "Indoor, Semi-Custom Air-Handling Units."
    - h.

- i. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.12 "Large Capacity (7 Tons (25 kW) and Larger), Computer-Room Air-Conditioners, Floor-Mounted Units."

### 3.3 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

- A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identified installers for field installation.
- B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
  1. Control dampers, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
  2. Airflow sensors and switches, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  3. Pressure sensors, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."

### 3.4 CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- A. Deliver the following to air-handling unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to air-handling unit manufacturer.
  1. Programmable application or application-specific controller.
  2. Unit-mounted DDC control dampers and actuators, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
  3. Unit-mounted airflow sensors, switches, and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  4. Relays.
- B. Deliver the following to terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to terminal unit manufacturer.
  1. Programmable applicationcontroller.

### 3.5 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring, and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to force.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop Penetrations Made in Fire-Rated Assemblies: Comply with requirements in Section

078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
  - 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
  - 2. No equipment is cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
  - 3. Welding, where approved, is to be by inert-gas electric arc process and is to be performed by qualified welders in accordance with applicable welding codes.
  - 4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.
- I. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.
- K. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems," Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems," and Section 260533.23 "Surface Raceways for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not already corrosive resistant from instrument manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X instrument enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONTROLLERS

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Connect controllers to field power supply
- C. Install controllers with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.

E. Installation of Network Controllers:

1. DDC system provider and DDC system manufacturer to determine quantity and location of network controllers to satisfy requirements indicated
2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
3. Locate top of controller within **72 inches** of finished floor.

F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:

1. DDC system provider and DDC system manufacturer to determine quantity and location of programmable application controllers to satisfy requirements indicated.
2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
3. Locate top of controller within **72 inches** of finished floor, except where dedicated controllers are installed at terminal units.

G. Application-Specific Controllers:

1. DDC system provider and DDC system manufacturer to determine quantity and location of application-specific controllers to satisfy requirements indicated
2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a location that is easily accessible by operators.

3.7 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.
- B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade to provide a fully functioning DDC system. Work is to comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.
- B. Install self-adhesive labels with unique identification on face for each of the following:
1. DDC controller.
  2. Enclosure.
  3. Electrical power device.
  4. Accessory.
- C. Install unique instrument identification for each instrument connected to DDC controller.
- D. Install unique identification for each control damper actuator connected to DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install identification on face of access door directly below.

G. Warning Labels and Signs:

1. Permanently attach to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
2. Locate where highly visible near power service entry points.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL WIRE, CABLE, AND RACEWAY

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Comply with installation requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
2. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
  - a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
3. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
  - a. Clamp cable over jacket in a junction box.
  - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of cable is to be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
4. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
5. Install signal transmission components in accordance with IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
6. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
7. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
8. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.

C. Conduit Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems," Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems," and Section 260533.23 "Surface Raceways for Electrical Systems" for control-voltage conductors.

3.10 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and

support.

E. Control Damper Checkout:

1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

F. Instrument Checkout:

1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction, and operating clearances.
2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type, and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
8. For temperature instruments, verify the following:
  - a. Sensing element type and proper material.
  - b. Length and insertion.

3.11 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration to comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
  1. Use field testing and diagnostic instruments and equipment with an accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy of instrument to be calibrated. For example, test and calibrate an installed instrument with accuracy of 1 percent using field testing and diagnostic instrument with accuracy of 0.5 percent or better.
- F. Calibrate each instrument in accordance with instruction manual supplied by instrument

manufacturer.

- G. If after calibration the indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- H. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Controls Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- I. Analog Signals:
  - 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- J. Digital Signals:
  - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
  - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- K. Control Dampers:
  - 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
  - 2. Stroke pneumatic control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
  - 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with cycle time less than 30 seconds.
  - 4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- L. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- M. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- N. Transmitters:
  - 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
  - 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

### 3.12 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

- A. Verify power supply.
  - 1. Verify voltage, phase, and hertz.

2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
  3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
  4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
  5. If applicable, verify if connected to backup power source.
  6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units are installed.
- B. Verify that wire and cabling are properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.
- C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

### 3.13 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

- A. Testing:
1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
  2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
  3. Test every control loop to verify that operation is stable and accurate.
  4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral, and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
  5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
  6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
  7. Operate each analog point at the following:
    - a. Upper quarter of range.
    - b. Lower quarter of range.
    - c. At midpoint of range.
  8. Exercise each binary point.
  9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller, and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller, and at field instrument must match.
  10. Prepare and submit report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

### 3.14 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After [review][approval] of Pretest Checklist and Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.



- C. After testing is complete, submit completed Pretest Checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
  2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
  3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
  4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
  5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
  6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
  7. Required surge protection is installed.
  8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
  9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
  10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
  11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable, and conduits are properly labeled.
  12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
  13. Testing, adjusting, and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
  14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
  15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
  16. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
  17. View trend data where applicable.
  18. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
  19. Safety controls and devices function properly.
  20. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
  21. Electrical interlocks function properly.
  22. Record Drawings are completed.
- E. Validation Test:
1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
    - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
    - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
      - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
      - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
      - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
  2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
  3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
  4. 24 hours after initial validation test, do as follows:
    - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
    - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.

5. 24 Hours after second validation test, do as follows:
  - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
  - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit report indicating results of testing. For all I/O points that required correction, indicate how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.

F. DDC System Response Time Test:

1. Simulate HLC.
  - a. Heavy load to be occurrence of 50 percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represents "alarm" condition, and 50 percent of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represents "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.
2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
3. Measure with timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
  - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
  - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
  - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than two seconds after initiation (time zero) of HLC.
  - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
  - c. Compliance with response times specified.
6. Prepare and submit report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.

G. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:

1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
2. To pass, none of DDC system networks are to use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

3.15 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, verify that service agreement includes software support for one year(s).
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Verify that upgrading software includes operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: No fewer than 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.17 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.
- B. Extent of Training:
  - 1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
  - 2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
- C. Video of Training Sessions:
  - 1. Provide digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create separate recording file for each session.
  - 2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name, and date.
  - 3. Provide Owner with two copies of digital files on cloud and flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.
  - 4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923

## SECTION 23 0923.12 - CONTROL DAMPERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular control dampers with airfoil blades.
2. Rectangular control dampers with flat blades.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.

B. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

C. Thermal Efficiency Ratio (E): Comparison of a tested damper's thermal performance against a v-groove blade reference damper. A damper with the same thermal efficiency as the reference damper would have an E value of 0 percent, while a damper that is 4 times as efficient would have an E value of 200 percent.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Rectangular control dampers with airfoil blades.
2. Round control dampers.
3. Electric and electronic control-damper actuators.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each damper and actuator.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product

- specification sheets.
- 4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and[ mounting] details.
  - 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are indicated and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
    - 1. Product installation location indicated in relationship to room, duct, and equipment.
    - 2. Size and location of wall access panels for control dampers and actuators installed behind walls.
    - 3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control dampers and actuators installed above inaccessible ceilings.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control dampers.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable outdoor ventilation requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
  - C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
  - D. Code Compliance: Comply with governing energy code.
  - E. Ground Fault: Properly ground products to prevent failing due to ground fault conditions.
  - F. Environmental Conditions: For actuators not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated, house in protective secondary enclosures complying with requirements.
  - G. Selection Criteria:

1. Multi-Blade Damper Configuration: As follows unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
  - a. Two-Position Control: parallel.
  - b. Equipment Isolation Applications: parallel.
  - c. Outdoor/Return Air-Mixing Applications: Opposed.
  - d. All Other Applications: Opposed.
2. Fail-Safe Positions: As follows unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
  - a. Supply Air: Open.
  - b. Return Air: Open.
  - c. Outdoor Air: Close.
3. Select dampers with smooth and stable operation throughout full range of operation over varying pressures and temperatures encountered.
4. Sizing: See Drawings

## 2.2 RECTANGULAR CONTROL DAMPERS WITH AIRFOIL BLADES

### A. General Requirements:

1. Factory assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.
  - a. Include multisection damper assemblies with intermediate reinforcing where required between individual sections being joined together. Construct reinforcing of same material (aluminum, galvanized steel, stainless steel) as damper frame.
2. Factory install actuator(s) as integral part of damper assembly. Coordinate, with damper manufacturer, field requirements for actuators, such as type, fail-safe position, power supply, location, and mounting requirements.

### B. Rectangular Control Dampers with Galvanized-Steel Airfoil Blades and Frames:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Warming and Ventilating (AWV); Mestek, Inc.
  - b. Arrow United Industries; Mestek, Inc.
  - c. Greenheck Fan Corporation
  - d. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - e. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain rectangular control dampers, with galvanized-steel airfoil blades and frames, from single manufacturer.
3. AMCA Certification: Test, rate, and seal, in accordance with AMCA 511 for air performance and air leakage.
4. Performance:
  - a. Leakage:

- 1) AMCA 511, Class 1A, at **1 in. wg** Differential Static Pressure: Leakage not to exceed **3 cfm/sq. ft.** against **1 in. wg** differential static pressure when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D.
    - 2) AMCA 511, Class 1, at **4 in. wg** Differential Static Pressure: Leakage not to exceed **8 cfm/sq. ft.** against **4 in. wg** differential static pressure when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D.
  - b. Pressure Drop: **0.06 in. wg** at **1500 fpm** across a **24-by-24-inch** damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D, figure 5.3.
  - c. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/180 of blade length.
  - d. Temperature: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.**
  - e. Velocity: Up to **4000 fpm.**
5. Construction:
- a. Frame:
    - 1) Material: ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel, minimum **0.06 inch** thick.
    - 2) Arrangement: Hat-shaped channel with integral extended face flange(s) having mating face of minimum **2 inches** for attachment to duct flanges, plenum walls, and equipment.
    - 3) Width: Not less than **5 inches**
  - b. Blades:
    - 1) Configuration: Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
    - 2) Material: ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel, **0.05 inch** thick.
    - 3) Shape: Hollow, airfoil.
    - 4) Length: As required by close-off pressure rating, not to exceed **48 inches**.
    - 5) Width: Not to exceed **8 inches**.
  - c. Seals:
    - 1) Blades: Replaceable; extruded silicone, vinyl, [or damper manufacturer-offered equivalent,] as required by performance requirements. Seals are to be mechanically attached in extruded blade slots.
    - 2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.
  - d. Axles:
    - 1) Diameter: Minimum **0.5 inch**.
    - 2) Material: stainless steel.
    - 3) Mechanically attached to blades.
  - e. Bearings:
    - 1) Material: Molded stainless steel sleeve, as required by operating conditions, mounted in frame.

- 2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

f. Linkage:

- 1) Hardware: stainless steel.
- 2) Material: stainless steel.
- 3) Mounting: Concealed in frame.

g. Transitions with Sleeve:

- 1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connections.
- 2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
  - a) Sleeve length not less than **12 inches** for dampers without jackshafts and not less than **16 inches** for dampers with jackshafts.
  - b) Oversize damper and sleeve for duct connection size plus minimum **4 inches**.
- 3) Fabricate sleeve and transitions of galvanized steel.
- 4) Match end connections (flange or sleeve) to field connections.

h. Additional Corrosion Protection for Corrosive Environments:

- 1) Paint surfaces exposed to airstream with an epoxy finish. Prepare surfaces to be painted according to paint manufacturer's instructions.

## 2.3 ROUND CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Factory install actuator as integral part of damper assembly. Coordinate field requirements for actuators, such as type, fail-safe position, power supply, location, and mounting requirements with damper manufacturer.

## 2.4 GENERAL CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS

- A. Select actuators to operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
- B. Select actuators with sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Actuators are to be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as a minimum requirement.
- C. The total damper area operated by an actuator is not to exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's maximum area rating.
- D. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Operate multiple actuators required to drive a single damper assembly in unison.



- E. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators, which could overdrive and cause linkage failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.
- F. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned damper sections.
- G. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper.
- H. Select actuators to fail-safe in desired position in the event of a power [and signal]failure.
- I. Actuator Fail-Safe Positions: As indicated below:
  - 1. Outdoor Air: Close.
  - 2. Supply Air: Open.
  - 3. Return Air: Open.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for dampers and instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 CONTROL-DAMPER APPLICATIONS

- A. Select from damper types indicated to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
- B. Rectangular Control-Damper Applications:
  - 1. Outdoor Air: Rectangular dampers with galvanized-steel airfoil blades.
  - 2. Return Air: Rectangular dampers with galvanized-steel airfoil blades.
  - 3. Supply Air: Rectangular dampers with galvanized-steel airfoil blades.
- C. Round Control-Damper Applications:
  - 1. Supply Air: Round galvanized-steel dampers, sleeve ends.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Properly support dampers and actuators, tubing, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in

attachment when subjected to a seismic, wind, or other forces common to the application.

- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.
- E. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- F. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- G. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
  - 2. Use Type 316 stainless steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.
  - 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  - 4. Where actuators are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Install smooth transitions, not exceeding 15 degrees, to dampers larger or smaller than adjacent duct. Install transitions as close to damper as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Consult manufacturer for recommended clearance.
- B. Clearance:
  - 1. Locate dampers for easy access and provide separate support of dampers that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
  - 2. Install dampers with at least **24 inches** of clear space on sides of dampers requiring service access unless more space is recommended by manufacturer. Provide code required clearances as applicable.
- C. Service Access:

1. Install dampers and actuators to be accessible for visual inspection and service.
  2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator.
- D. Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions.
- E. Install supplementary structural reinforcement for large multiple-section dampers if factory-furnished support alone cannot handle loading.
- F. Attach field-installed actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.
- G. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing is to have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with damper identification on damper and on face of ceiling where damper is concealed above ceiling.

### 3.6 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install electrical power to field-mounted control devices requiring electrical power.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."
- E. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- F. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

3.7 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed surfaces.

3.9 STARTUP

- A. Control-Damper Checkout:
  - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
  - 2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.
  - 3. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
  - 4. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
  - 5. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 6. Verify that damper actuator and damper linkage attachment are secure.
  - 7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
  - 8. Verify that damper blade travel is smooth and unobstructed throughout operating range.

3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.
- C. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.12

## SECTION 23 0923.14 - FLOW INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
2. Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers" for control dampers with integrated airflow measurement in a packaged assembly.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. BLE: Bluetooth low energy.
- B. BTL: BACnet testing laboratories.
- C. Ethernet: Local area network based on IEEE 802.3.1.
- D. FEP: Fluorinated ethylene propylene.
- E. HART: Highway addressable remote transducer protocol is the global standard for sending and receiving digital information across analog wires between smart devices and control or monitoring systems through bidirectional communication that provides data access between intelligent field instruments and host systems. A host can be any software application from a technician's hand-held device or laptop to a plant's process control, asset management, safety, or other system using any control platform.
- F. PEEK: Polyetheretherketone.
- G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
- H. PPS: Polyphenylene sulfide.
- I. RS-485: A TIA standard for multipoint communications using two twisted pairs.
- J. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.
- K. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Airflow-measurement stations and sensors.
2. Airflow switches.
3. Airflow transmitters.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics; electrical characteristics; and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.
5. Product certificates.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and[ mounting] details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include diagrams for air and process signal tubing.
5. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For instruments to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - I'PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR FLOW INSTRUMENTS

- A. Air sensors and transmitters are to have an extended range of 20 percent above Project design

flow and 20 percent below minimum Project flow to signal abnormal flow conditions and to provide flexibility for changes in operation.

## 2.3 AIRFLOW-MEASUREMENT STATIONS AND SENSORS

### A. Performance Requirements:

1. Adjustable for changes in system operational parameters.
2. Airflow Sensor and Transmitter Range: Extended range of 20 percent above Project design flow and 20 percent below minimum Project flow to signal abnormal flow conditions.
3. Manufacturer is to certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with specified performance requirements and characteristics.
  - a. Product certificates are required.

### B. Thermal Airflow-Measurement Stations:

1. Certification:
  - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with UL 873 or UL 60730.
  - b. BTL Certified in accordance with ASHRAE 135 where BACnet communication is required.
  - c. Class A device in accordance with 47 CFR, Chapter I - "Federal Communications Commission," Part 15 - "Radio Frequency Devices," Subpart A - "General"; Subpart B - "FAA Notification Criteria."
2. Common Performance Requirements:
  - a. Airflow Accuracy: Comply with following requirements unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1) Individual Airflow Accuracy: Within 2 percent of reading over the entire operating airflow velocity range from 0 to 4000 fpm
    - 2) Thermal Airflow Station Assembly Airflow Accuracy: Within 2 percent of reading over the entire operating airflow range from 0 to 4000 fpm
      - a) Devices whose accuracy is combined accuracy of transmitter and sensor probes must demonstrate that total accuracy meets the performance requirements throughout the measurement range.
  - b. Process Air Temperature Accuracy: Within 0.15 deg F over entire operating range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
  - c. Ambient Operating Temperature Range:
    - 1) Sensor: Minus 20 to plus 160 deg F
    - 2) Transmitter: Minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
  - d. Ambient Operating Humidity Range:
    - 1) Sensor: Zero to 100 percent.

- 2) Transmitter: Zero to 95 percent, non-condensing.
  - e. Instruments to compensate for changes in air temperature and density throughout calibrated velocity range for seasonal extremes at Project location.
  - f. Reference Pressure Loss: **0.05 inch wg at 2000 fpm.**
  - g. Electrical Power: 24 V ac (between 22.8 and 26.4 V ac under load), using a switching power supply that is overcurrent and overvoltage protected.
3. Common Instrument Requirements:
- a. Manufacturer to certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with specified performance requirements and characteristics.
  - b. Provide thermal airflow stations with one or more sensor nodes mounted in a probe, and a remotely mounted microprocessor-based transmitter at each measurement location.
  - c. Provide stations that can be adjusted in the field to accommodate changes in system operational parameters.
  - d. Sensor-Node and Probe Assemblies Features and Functions:
    - 1) Number of sensors for each airflow station to be determined by manufacturer for each specific application to comply with accuracy indicated while complying with requirements indicated.
    - 2) Each sensor to contain two individually wired, hermetically sealed thermistors.
    - 3) Sensor Nodes: One self-heated and one zero-power thermistor, using the principle of thermal dispersion.
    - 4) Airflow Rate and Temperature of Each Sensor: Equally weighted and averaged by the transmitter before sending output signal unless temperature sensor has an accuracy of **0.10 deg F.**
    - 5) Mount thermistors in sensor using a marine-grade, waterproof material.
    - 6) Protect thermistor leads and internal probe cable and wire from exposure to the ambient environment. Seal and protect so that direct exposure to water will not affect instrument operation.
    - 7) Each sensor assembly to independently determine airflow rate and temperature at each sensor measurement point.
    - 8) Enclosure:
      - a) Indoor Applications: NEMA 250, Type 1, 4, 4X, or 12.
      - b) Outdoor Applications: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X.
    - 9) Sensor-Probe Mounting Bracket Construction:
      - a) Aluminum Probes: Aluminum, Type 304 or Type 316 stainless steel mounting brackets.
      - b) Stainless Steel Probes: Type 304 or 316 stainless steel; type of stainless steel to match probe material.
    - 10) Sensor-Node Construction: Two, bead-in-glass, hermetically sealed thermistors potted in a marine-grade waterproof epoxy with sensor housings constructed of glass-filled polypropylene. Construct with only the thermistor



located within the sensing node and all other electronic components outside the airstream.

- 11) Store sensor-node airflow and temperature calibration data in a serial memory chip, in the cable-connecting plug. Stored data does not require matching or adjustments to the transmitter in the field.
- 12) Performance rate and test with a 100 percent survival rate in a 30-day saltwater and acid vapor test with written independent laboratory results.

e. Transmitter Features and Functions:

- 1) Microprocessor based.
- 2) Integral digital display capable of simultaneously displaying total airflow and average temperature, individual airflow, and temperature readings of each independent sensor assembly.
- 3) Capable of field configuration and diagnostics using an onboard push-button interface and digital display.
- 4) Password-protected programmable settings.
- 5) Field selectable between IP and SI units for airflow, temperature, and velocity.
- 6) Include an integral power switch to operate on 24 V ac (isolation optional) and include the following:
  - a) Integral protection from transients and power surges.
  - b) Circuitry to ensure reset after power disruption, transients, and brownouts.
  - c) Integral transformer to convert field power source to operating voltage required by instrument.
- 7) Enclosure:
  - a) Indoor Applications: NEMA 250, Type 1, 4, 4X, or 12.
  - b) Outdoor Applications: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X.
- 8) Remote Signal Interface Options: Specific interface options are listed for each application.
  - a) Linear Analog Signals for Airflow and Temperature: Fuse protected and isolated, field selectable, zero to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA.
  - b) RS-485: BACnet-MS/TP, Modbus RTU.
  - c) Ethernet: BACnet Ethernet, BACnet-IP, Modbus TCP/IP.
- 9) If quantity of sensors required by a single airflow station assembly exceeds capability of a single transmitter, provide multiple transmitters and associated software programming needed to support them operating as a single airflow station assembly through one transmitter that is remotely mounted and easily accessible from the floor.
- 10) High- and/or low-airflow alarm with user-defined set point and percentage of set-point tolerance.
- 11) Manual or automatic alarm reset, and low-limit cutoff value may be selected to disable the alarm.

- 12) Alarm delay function, field defined.
  - 13) Sensor-node malfunction via the system status alarm. Ignore the sensor node that is in a fault condition.
  - 14) Field configuration, diagnostics, and field output adjustment wizard that allow for a one- or two-point field adjustment to factory calibration for installations that require adjustment.
  - 15) Automatic reset after power disruption, transients, and brownouts.
  - 16) Integration Buffers: Separate integration buffers for display of airflow output, airflow signal output (analog and network), and individual sensor output (IR-interface).
4. Electrical Power and Control Signal Cable and Raceways:
- a. Indoor Applications: Only where exposed cable is allowed by installation requirements, interconnect components using exposed NRTL-listed plenum-rated cable complying with manufacturer's requirements; otherwise install cable in continuous conduit.
  - b. Outdoor Applications: Fit instruments and devices with conduit connections for mating to field-installed conduit. Do not exposed wire and cable at any point.
5. Duct/Plenum Thermal Airflow-Measurement Station:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Ebtron Gold Series
  - b. Source Limitations: Obtain all duct/plenum airflow-measurement stations from a single manufacturer.
  - c. Application: Duct/plenum sizes greater than 2 sq. ft..
  - d. Airflow Station Performance:
    - 1) Independent processing of up to 16separately wired sensor-node assemblies.
    - 2) Accuracy within 3 percent of reading for ducted applications, and within 5 percent of reading for non-ducted applications, when installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommended placement guidelines.
      - a) Include the combined uncertainty of the sensor nodes and transmitter.
      - b) For devices whose overall accuracy is based on individual accuracy specifications of the sensor probes and transmitter, demonstrate compliance with accuracy requirement over entire operating range.
  - e. Airflow Station Casing:
    - 1) Application: Factory install probes and sensor assemblies into an airflow station casing in lieu of field installing individual probes and sensors in ducts and plenums.
    - 2) Casing Configuration and Size: Match shape (rectangular, round, flat oval) and same size as adjacent duct unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3) Casing Depth: Minimum 8 inches.

- 4) Casing Flanges: Outward flange, minimum flange face **1.5 inches**.
  - 5) Joints and Seams: Continuously weld joints and seams. Clean galvanized areas damaged by welding and coat with galvanize paint.
  - 6) Materials:
    - a) Aluminum, minimum **0.063 inch** thick, when connected to aluminum duct.
    - b) Galvanized steel, minimum **0.079 inch** thick with coating complying with ASTM A653/A653M, **G90**, when connected to galvanized steel duct.
    - c) Stainless steel, minimum **0.0781 inch** thick, when connected to stainless duct. Stainless steel, Type 304 or 316, to match adjoining duct.
  - 7) Flow Straightener: Include each airflow station casing with an open parallel cell air straightener or air equalizer honeycomb mechanically fastened to casing.
    - a) Individual Cell Size: **0.5 inches** wide across entering face, **3 inches** deep in direction of airflow, **0.002 inch** thick
    - b) Construct from Type 3003 aluminum for aluminum and galvanized steel casings.
    - c) Construct from Type 316 stainless steel for units for stainless steel casings.
- f. Sensor-Node and Probe Assemblies:
- 1) Sensor-Node Calibration:
    - a) Individually calibrated at 16 measurement points to airflow standards directly calibrated at NIST to the NIST Laser Doppler Anemometer (LDA) primary velocity standard.
    - b) Individually calibrated at a minimum of 16 calibration points to NIST-traceable volumetric standards.
    - c) Accuracy within 2 percent of reading over the entire calibrated airflow range of **0 to 5000 fpm**.
    - d) Individually calibrate thermistors at a minimum of three temperatures to NIST-traceable temperature standards.
  - 2) Minimum number of independent sensor nodes for duct/plenum areas as follows:
    - a) Provide six for area greater than **2.0 through 4.0 sq. ft.**
    - b) Provide eight for area greater than **4.0 through 8.0 sq. ft.**
    - c) Provide 12 for area greater than **8.0 through 12.0 sq. ft.**
    - d) Provide 14 for area greater than **12.0 through 14.0 sq. ft.**
    - e) Provide 16 for area greater than **14.0 sq. ft.**
  - 3) For an aspect ratio of 1.5 or less, and an area of **25 sq. ft.** or greater, provide at least four probes.

- 4) Sensor-Probe Construction: Anodized, 6063 aluminum alloy tube, or, Type 316 stainless steel tube, with each sensor probe containing one or more independently wired sensing nodes.
- g. Transmitter:
  - 1) Transmitter determines average airflow rate and temperature of connected sensor nodes in an array for a single location.
  - 2) Operator Interface: Backlit, alphanumeric LCD display with following remote interface capability:
    - a) Transmitter with Analog Outputs: Two field-selectable zero to 5 V dc, zero to 10 V dc, or, 4 to 20 mA, scalable, isolated, and overcurrent-protected analog output signals. First output provides total airflow rate. Second output field is configurable for temperature, low- and/or high-airflow set-point (user-defined) alarm, or system status alarm.
    - b) Transmitter with RS-485 Network Communications: The RS-485 (BACnet MS/TP or Modbus RTU) network connection provides average airflow rate, temperature, high- and/or low-airflow set-point alarm, system status alarm, individual sensor-node airflow rates, and individual sensor-node temperatures.
    - c) Transmitter with LonWorks Free Topology Network Interface: Connection capable of providing average airflow and temperature rates across the network.
    - d) Transmitter with Data-Logger Interface: Capable of logging airflow and temperature rates over specified time intervals.
6. Air Terminal Unit Thermal Airflow-Measurement Stations:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Air Monitor; an ONICON Brand
    - 2) Ebtron, Inc
    - 3) Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - b. Source Limitations: Obtain all air terminal unit thermal airflow-measurement stations from a single manufacturer.
  - c. Airflow Performance:
    - 1) Independent processing of up to two separately wired sensor-node assemblies.
    - 2) Accuracy within 3 percent of reading when installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommended placement guidelines.
      - a) Include the combined uncertainty of the sensor nodes and transmitter.
      - b) For devices whose overall accuracy is based on individual accuracy specifications of the sensor probes and transmitter, demonstrate compliance with accuracy requirement over entire operating range.

- d. Sensor-Node and Probe Assemblies:
  - 1) Sensor-Node Calibration:
    - a) Individually calibrated at a minimum of seven calibration points to NIST-traceable volumetric standards from **0 to 3000 fpm**.
    - b) Individually calibrate thermistors at a minimum of three temperatures to NIST-traceable temperature standards.
- e. Minimum number of independent sensor nodes as follows:
  - 1) Provide one for duct or terminal unit diameter of **4 inches**.
  - 2) Provide two for duct or terminal diameters **5 through 16 inches**.
- f. Sensor-Probe Construction: Anodized or mill-finish, 6063 aluminum alloy tube, or, Type 316 stainless steel tube, with each sensor probe containing one or more independently wired sensing nodes.
- g. Transmitter:
  - 1) Transmitter determines average airflow rate and temperature of all connected sensor nodes in an array for a single location.
  - 2) Operator Interface: Backlit, alphanumeric, LCD display with following remote interface:
  - 3) Transmitter with Analog Outputs: Two field-selectable zero 5 V dc, 1 to 5 V dc, zero to 10 V dc, or, 2 to 10 V dc, scalable analog output signals. First output provides total airflow rate. Second output is field configurable for temperature, low- and/or high-airflow set-point (user-defined) alarm, or system status alarm.
  - 4) Transmitter with RS-485 Network Communications: RS-485 (BACnet MS/TP or Modbus RTU) network connection provides average airflow rate, temperature, high- and/or low-airflow set-point alarm, system status alarm, individual sensor-node airflow rates, and individual sensor-node temperatures.
  - 5) Contact Closure Relay: One dry contact relay with onboard jumper drives a remote LED, rated for no less than 30 V dc or 24 V ac at 3 A maximum. Actuator is to be configurable as normally open or normally closed during setup.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of

connections before installation.

- D. Provide the services of an independent inspection agency to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
  - 1. Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products to walls and ceilings on Shop Drawings.
  - 2. Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
- E. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.
- F. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Select from instrument types to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
- B. Thermal Airflow-Measurement Stations:
  - 1. For Ducts/Plenums: All applications.
  - 2. For Small Ducts/Plenums: All applications.
  - 3. For Fan Arrays: All applications.
  - 4. For Single-Width Single-Inlet (SWSI) or Double-Width Double-Inlet (DWDI) Fans: All applications.
  - 5. For Air Terminal Units: All applications.
- C. Velocity Pressure Duct-Mounted Airflow Sensors:
  - 1. Measured Velocities Greater Than 500 fpm (2.5 m/s): Velocity pressure pitot-tube airflow sensor stations for duct applications.
- D. Outdoor Airflow Measurement: Thermal airflow-measurement stations.
- E. Airflow Switches:
  - 1. Measured Velocities 400 fpm (2.0 m/s) and Less: Polymer film sail switch.
  - 2. Measured Velocities Greater than 400 fpm (2.0 m/s): Stainless steel single-vane switch.
- F. Airflow Transmitters for Use with Velocity Pressure-Type Sensors:
  - 1. Outdoor Air Airflow: Airflow transmitter with 0.25 percent accuracy and auto-zero feature.
  - 2. Supply Air Airflow: Airflow transmitter with 0.25 percent accuracy and auto-zero feature.

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- D. Install ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- F. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
  - 2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  - 3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from the manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.4 INSTRUMENTS, GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Mounting Location:
  - 1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
  - 2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid flow associated with individual air-handling units and connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
  - 3. Install liquid and steam flow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
  - 4. Install airflow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
  - 5. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- B. Mounting Height:

1. Mount remote displays, switches and transmitters, located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility requirements, within a range of **42 to 72 inches** above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
  - a. Make every effort to mount at **60 inches**.
- C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLOW INSTRUMENTS

#### A. Airflow Sensors and Stations:

1. Install sensors in straight sections of duct with manufacturer-recommended straight duct upstream and downstream of sensor.
2. Install sensors so they are accessible for visual inspection and service. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of sensor, to allow service personnel to handle clean sensors.

#### B. Liquid and Steam Sensors:

1. Install sensors in straight sections of piping with manufacturer-recommended straight piping upstream and downstream of sensor.
2. Alert manufacturer where installation cannot accommodate recommended clearance, and solicit recommendations for field modifications to installation, such as flow straighteners, to improve condition.
3. Install pipe reducers for in-line sensors smaller than line size. Position reducers at distance from sensor to avoid interference and impact on accuracy.
4. Install in-line sensors with flanges or unions to provide drop-in and -out installation.
5. Isolation Without System Interruption: Where indicated, install isolation valves upstream and downstream of in-line sensors and a piping bypass, with isolation valve placed around the isolation valves to allow for sensor removal and replacement without system interruption.

#### C. Liquid and Steam Flow Meters:

1. Install meters in straight sections of piping with manufacturer-recommended straight piping upstream and downstream of sensor.
2. Install pipe reducers for in-line meters smaller than line size. Install reducers at distance from meter to avoid interference and impact on accuracy.
3. Install in-line meters with flanges or unions to provide drop-in and -out installation.
4. Isolation Without System Interruption: Where indicated on Drawings, install isolation valves upstream and downstream of in-line meters and a piping bypass, with isolation valve placed around the isolation valves to allow for meter removal and replacement without system interruption.
5. Insertion Meters:
  - a. Install system process connections full size of meter connection and meter



manufacturer requirements, but not less than **NPS 1**. Provide NPT threaded bushing if required by installation.

- b. Install meter in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement.
- c. In applications where top-dead-center location is not possible due to field constraints, install meter at location along top half of pipe if acceptable by manufacturer for mounting orientation.

6. Orifice Plates:

- a. Meter run piping or tubing is to be uniform internal surface, which is free of internal grooves and striations, but is not polished. Out of roundness is not to exceed 0.5 percent. A reduction of the pipe diameter or distortion caused by welding is unacceptable.
- b. Locate orifice plates in horizontal or vertical piping following good metering practice.
- c. Maintain minimum upstream and downstream straight pipe to comply with ASME's "Fluid Meters: Their Theory and Application" and manufacturer requirements.

D. Liquid Switches:

- 1. Install system process connection full size of switch connection, but not less than **NPS 1**. Install bushing if required to mate switch to system connection.
- 2. Install switch in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement.
- 3. In applications where top-dead-center location is not possible due to field constraints, install switch at location along top half of pipe if switch is acceptable by manufacturer for mounting orientation.

E. Transmitters:

- 1. Install airflow transmitters serving an air system in a single location adjacent to or within system control panel.
- 2. Install liquid flow transmitters, not integral to sensors, in vicinity of sensor. Where multiple flow transmitters serving same system are located in same room, co-locate transmitters by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."
- E. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- F. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control signal wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing is to have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification..

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.

### 3.10 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Description:
  - 1. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
  - 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
  - 3. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact

- performance.
- 4. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.

B. Flow Instrument Checkout:

- 1. Verify that sensors are installed correctly with respect to flow direction.
- 2. Verify that sensor attachment is properly secured and sealed.
- 3. Verify that processing tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
- 4. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
- 5. Verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.

3.11 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

A. Description:

- 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration are to meet instrument manufacturer's instructions.
- 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments are to have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent needs to be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- 8. If after-calibration-indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11 in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.

B. Analog Signals:

- 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
- 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
- 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.

C. Digital Signals:

- 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
- 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

- D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- F. Transmitters:
  - 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values
  - 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- B. Coordinate training video with operation and maintenance manuals and classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- C. Record Owner training and submit digital files with closeout documents for Owner's future use.

END OF SECTION 230923.14

## SECTION 23 0923.23 - PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Air-pressure sensors.
2. Air-pressure switches.
3. Air-pressure three-in-one combination controller/switch/transmitter.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. HART: Highway addressable remote transducer protocol.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics; electrical characteristics; and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over the instrument operating range, control signal over the instrument operating range, default control signal to be used by controller with loss of power to instrument, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, pipe, and equipment.
  2. Wall-mounted instruments located in finished space, showing relationship to light switches, fire alarm devices, and other installed devices.
  3. Size and location of wall access panels for instruments installed behind walls.
  4. Size and location of ceiling access panels for instruments installed in accessible ceilings.
- B. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product requiring test performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For instruments to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Environmental Conditions:
1. Instruments must operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
    - a. If instrument alone cannot comply with requirement, install instrument in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure is to be internally insulated, electrically heated and cooled, filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.
  2. Protect instruments and accessories with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated are to be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Base NEMA 250 enclosure requirements on instrument-installed locations as follows:
    - a. Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4X.
    - b. Indoors, Heated and Air-Conditioned: Type 1.
    - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
      - 1) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.
    - d. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 2.
    - e. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible

Condensation: Type 4X.

- f. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.

## 2.2 AIR-PRESSURE SENSORS

- A. Air-Pressure Sensor, Static Pressure Duct Insertion Type - 90-Degree Probe Design with Compression Fitting Tubing Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc
2. Process Connection: Compression fitting.
3. Construction Materials: stainless steel.
4. Insertion Length: **4 inches**.
5. Mounting: Sensor with threaded end support, sealing washers and nuts.
6. Pressure Measurement: Tip of sensor facing direction of airstream with four radial holes of **0.04-inch** diameter.
7. Pressure Signal Dampener: Provide sensor assembly with dampener designed to minimize erratic and rapid fluctuations in pressure signal.
8. Duct Types: Suitable for flat oval, rectangular, and round duct configurations.

## 2.3 AIR-PRESSURE SWITCHES

- A. Air-Pressure Switch, Differential Type - with Set-Point Indicator:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc
2. Description: Diaphragm operated to actuate an SPDT snap switch.
3. Certification: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Performance:
  - a. Accuracy/Repeatability: Within 1 percent.
  - b. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120 to 480 V ac.
  - c. Pressure Limits:
    - 1) Continuous: **10 psig**.
    - 2) Surge: **25 psig**.
  - d. Pressure Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
  - e. Temperature Limits: **Minus 30 to plus 110 deg F**.
5. User Interface: Screw-type set-point adjustment with visible enclosed set-point indicator and scale.
6. Process Connections: Threaded NPT, **1/8 inch**.
7. Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.

8. Wiring Connections: Three-screw configuration, including one screw for common operation and two screws for field-selectable normally open or closed operation.
9. Enclosure Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
10. Enclosure Rating:
  - a. Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests and Inspections: Test and inspect assembled pressure instruments, as indicated by instrument requirements. Affix standards organization's certification and label.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports as applicable.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PRESSURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Air-Pressure Sensors:
  1. Air-Pressure Sensor, Static Pressure Duct Insertion Type - 90-Degree Probe Design with Compression Fitting Connection.
  2. Air-Pressure Sensor, Static Pressure Outdoor Type - NEMA 250, Type 4X Enclosure.
- B. Air-Pressure Switches:
  1. Air-Pressure Switch, Differential Type - with Set-Point Indicator.
  2. Air-Pressure Switch, Differential Type - with Dual-Scale Adjustable Set Point.
- C. Air-Pressure Three-in-One Combination Controller/Switch/Transmitters:



1. Air-Pressure Three-in-One Combination Controller/Switch/Transmitter, Differential Type - with Indicator.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Fastening Hardware:
  1. Wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause damage to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
  2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by using excessive force or oversized wrenches.
  3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- F. Corrosive Environments:
  1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
  2. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
  3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from the manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS

- A. Mounting Location:
  1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing, cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
  2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid pressure associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
  3. Install liquid and steam pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in

mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.

4. Install air-pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
5. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

B. Mounting Height:

1. Mount remote displays, switches and transmitters, located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility requirements, within a range of **42 to 72 inches** above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
  - a. Mount at **60 inches**.

C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

D. Duct Pressure Sensors:

1. Install sensors using manufacturer's recommended upstream and downstream distances.
2. Unless indicated on Drawings, locate sensors approximately 67 percent of distance of longest hydraulic run. Location of sensors is to be submitted and approved before installation.
3. Install mounting hardware and gaskets to make sensor installation airtight.
4. Route tubing from the sensor to transmitter.
5. Use compression fittings at terminations.
6. Install sensor in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
7. Support sensor to withstand maximum air velocity, turbulence, and vibration encountered to prevent instrument failure.

E. Outdoor Pressure Sensors:

1. Install roof-mounted sensor in least-noticeable location and as far away from exterior walls as possible.
2. Locate wall-mounted sensor in an inconspicuous location.
3. Submit sensor location for approval before installation.
4. Verify signal from sensor is stable and consistent to all connected transmitters. Modify installation to achieve proper signal.
5. Route outdoor signal pipe full size of sensor connection to transmitters. Install branch connection of size required to match to transmitter.
6. Install sensor signal pipe with dirt leg and drain valve below roof penetration.
7. Insulate signal pipe with flexible elastomeric insulation as required to prevent condensation.
8. Connect roof-mounted signal pipe exposed to outdoors to building grounding system.

F. Air-Pressure Differential Switches:

1. Install air-pressure sensor in system for each switch connection. Install sensor in an accessible location for inspection and replacement.
2. A single sensor may be used to share a common signal to multiple pressure instruments.
3. Install access door in duct and equipment to access sensors that cannot be inspected and replaced from outside.
4. Route **NPS 3/8** tubing from sensor to switch connection.
5. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.
6. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
7. Install switches in an accessible location serviceable from floor.
8. Install switches adjacent to system control panel if within **50 ft.**; otherwise, locate switch in vicinity of system connection.

3.5 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Provide electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Provide power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Provide raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems" and Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems."
- E. Provide circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- F. Install electrical devices furnished by instrument manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Install nameplate at each instrument electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplates are to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Nameplates are to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control signal wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control signal wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Provide raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical

Systems" and Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing is to have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly below instruments concealed above ceilings.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.

### 3.9 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.
- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.

### 3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Description:
  - 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
  - 2. Submit a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
  - 3. For each analog instrument, perform a three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy.
  - 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration must comply with instrument manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 5. Furnish diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
  - 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments to have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent is to be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.

7. Calibrate each instrument in accordance with instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
8. If, after calibration, indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Controls Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.

B. Analog Signals:

1. Check analog voltage signals using a voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
2. Check analog current signals using a current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.

C. Digital Signals:

1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of project design values.

E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

F. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of project design values. Field calibration is not required for instruments that have been factory calibrated and provided with certificates.

### 3.11 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 230923.23

## SECTION 23 0923.27 - TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Air temperature sensors.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. HART (Highway Addressable Remote Transducer) Protocol: The global standard for sending and receiving digital information across analog wires between smart devices and control or monitoring systems through bidirectional communication that provides data access between intelligent field instruments and host systems. A host can be any software application from a technician's hand-held device or laptop to a plant's process control, asset management, safety, or other system using any control platform.
- B. PIR: Passive infrared.
- C. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For the following:
  - a. Air temperature sensors.
  - b. Air temperature switches.
  - c. Air temperature RTD transmitters.
2. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
3. Operating and performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, functional characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including pressure, temperature, and humidity.
4. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
5. Installation operation and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

C. Samples: For each exposed product installed in finished space.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades:

1. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, pipe, and equipment.
2. Wall-mounted instruments located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices, and other installed devices.
3. Sizes and locations of wall access panels for instruments installed behind walls.
4. Sizes and locations of ceiling access panels for instruments installed in inaccessible ceilings.

B. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.

C. Product Test Reports: For air temperature sensors, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Environmental Conditions:

1. Instruments are to operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
  - a. If instrument alone cannot meet requirement, install instrument in a protective

enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure is to be internally insulated, electrically heated[ and cooled], filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

2. Instruments and accessories are to be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated are to be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Instrument's installed location is to dictate NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Outdoors, Protected: Type 2.
  - b. Outdoors, Unprotected: Type 4X.
  - c. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1
  - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.
  - e. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment not Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 2.
  - f. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 4X.

## 2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS

### A. Platinum RTD, Single-Point Duct Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ACI Automation; Automation Components Inc
  - b. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc
  - c. Building Automation Products Inc.; BAPI
  - d. Dwyer Instruments, Inc
  - e. Greystone Energy Systems, Inc.
  - f. Honeywell International Inc.
  - g. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - h. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
  - i. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
  - j. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division
  - k. Vaisala
2. Source Limitations: Obtain all platinum RTD single-point air temperature duct sensors from a single manufacturer.
3. Factory Calibration: Factory calibrate each instrument to NIST-traceable standards and include instrument with a calibration certificate.
4. Performance:
  - a. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
  - b. Self-Heating: Negligible.
  - c. Two- or three-wire, PTFE-insulated, minimum 22-gauge stranded copper leads.



- d. Resistance: 100 ohms.
  - e. Temperature Coefficient of Resistance (TCR): 0.00385 ohm/deg C.
  - f. Temperature Range: As required by application, not less than  
**Minus 40 to 185 deg F.**
  - g. Accuracy: At **32 deg F** within **0.27 deg F.**
  - 5. Output Signal: Resistance in ohms.
  - 6. Sensor Assembly:
    - a. Probe: Single-point RTD wired within a rigid stainless steel sheath.
    - b. Length: As required by application to achieve probe tip near midpoint of air tunnel, up to **18 inches** long.
  - 7. Enclosure:
    - a. Material: Metal or plastic box with removable cover.
    - b. Rating: NEMA 250, Type 3R for indoor applications and Type 4X for outdoor applications.
    - c. Field Wiring Connection: Terminal block.
    - d. Conduit Connection: **1/2-inch** trade size.
  - 8. Gasket: For attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
- B. Platinum RTD, Averaging Air Temperature Sensors:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ACI Automation; Automation Components Inc
    - b. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc
    - c. Building Automation Products Inc.; BAPI
    - d. Dwyer Instruments, Inc
    - e. Greystone Energy Systems, Inc.
    - f. Honeywell International Inc.
    - g. Johnson Controls, Inc.
    - h. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
    - i. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
    - j. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain all platinum RTD air temperature averaging sensors from a single manufacturer.
  - 3. Factory Calibration: Factory calibrate each instrument to NIST-traceable standards and include instrument with a calibration certificate.
  - 4. Description: Multiple internal RTDs located across length of sensor probe and internally wired to signal a single average temperature reading.
  - 5. Two- or three-wire, PTFE-insulated, minimum 22-gauge stranded copper leads.
  - 6. Performance:
    - a. Repeatability: Within **0.5 deg F.**

- b. Self-Heating: Negligible.
- c. Resistance: 100 ohms.
- d. Temperature Coefficient of Resistance (TCR): 0.00385 ohm/deg C.
- e. Temperature Range: As required by application, not less than  
**Minus 40 to 185 deg F.**
- f. Accuracy: At **32 deg F** within **0.54 deg F.**
- 7. Output Signal: Resistance in ohms.
- 8. Sensor Probe:
  - a. Type: Flexible probes; option to use averaging rigid probe sensors for air tunnels up to **20 inches.**
  - b. Material:
    - 1) Flexible Probe: stainless steel.
    - 2) Rigid Probe: Stainless steel
  - c. Flexible probes formable to a minimum **4-inch** radius.
  - d. Length: As required by application to account for temperature variations across entire cross section of air tunnel.
- 9. Enclosure:
  - a. Material: Metalbox with removable cover.
  - b. Rating: NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 1 for outdoor applications.
  - c. Field Wiring Connection: Terminal block.
  - d. Conduit Connection: **1/2-inch** or **3/4-inch** trade size.
- 10. Gasket: For attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
- 11. Mounting Clips: Copper; specifically designed for flexible probes to achieve radius ends when installed in serpentine arrangements.

C. Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ACI Automation; Automation Components Inc
  - b. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc
  - c. Building Automation Products Inc.; BAPI
  - d. Dwyer Instruments, Inc
  - e. Greystone Energy Systems, Inc.
  - f. Honeywell International Inc.
  - g. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - h. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
  - i. Minco
  - j. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
  - k. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division

2. Source Limitations: Obtain all platinum RTD outdoor air temperature sensors from a single manufacturer.
3. Factory Calibration: Factory calibrate each instrument to NIST-traceable standards and include instrument with a calibration certificate.
4. Two- or three-wire, PTFE-insulated, minimum 22-gauge stranded copper leads.
5. Performance:
  - a. Repeatability: Within **0.5 deg F**.
  - b. Self-Heating: Negligible.
  - c. Resistance: 100 or 1000 ohms as indicated for each application under Part 3 or on the Drawings ohms.
  - d. Temperature Coefficient of Resistance (TCR): 0.00385 ohm/deg C.
  - e. Temperature Range: As required by application, not less than **Minus 30 to 120 deg F**.
  - f. Accuracy: At **32 deg F** within **0.54 deg F**.
6. Output Signal: Resistance in ohms.
7. Sensor Assembly:
  - a. Probe: Single-point RTD wired within a stainless steelsheath.
  - b. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
8. Enclosure:
  - a. Material: Metalbox or combination conduit and outlet box; removable cover and gasket.
  - b. Rating: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - c. Field Wiring Connection: Terminal block.
  - d. Conduit Connection: **1/2-inch** trade size.

D. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ACI Automation; Automation Components Inc
  - b. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc
  - c. Building Automation Products Inc.; BAPI
  - d. Dwyer Instruments, Inc
  - e. Greystone Energy Systems, Inc.
  - f. Honeywell International Inc.
  - g. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - h. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
  - i. Minco
  - j. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
  - k. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division
  - l. Vaisala
2. Source Limitations: Obtain all platinum RTD space air temperature sensors from a single manufacturer.

3. Factory Calibration: Factory calibrate each instrument to traceable standards and include instrument with a calibration certificate.
4. Two- or three-wire, PTFE-insulated, minimum 22-gauge stranded copper leads.
5. Performance:
  - a. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F
  - b. Self-Heating: Negligible.
  - c. Resistance: 100 or 1000 ohms as indicated for each application under Part 3 or on the Drawings.
  - d. Temperature Coefficient of Resistance (TCR): 0.00385 ohm/deg C.
  - e. Temperature Range: As required by application, not less than Minus 40 to 185 deg F .
  - f. Accuracy: At 32 deg F within 0.27 deg F .
6. Output Signal: Resistance in ohms.
7. Sensor Assembly:
  - a. Mount temperature sensing element under a bright-white, non-yellowing, plastic enclosure.
  - b. Enclosure Rating: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - c. Mounting: Provide mounting compatible with surface mounted to and electrical box used.
  - d. Wiring Connection: Concealed wiring connection.
    - 1) Terminal block.
    - 2) Multi-conductor modular connector.

E. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors with Occupant Interface Features:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ACI Automation; Automation Components Inc
  - b. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc
  - c. Building Automation Products Inc.; BAPI
  - d. Greystone Energy Systems, Inc.
  - e. Honeywell International Inc.
  - f. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - g. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
  - h. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
  - i. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division
2. Source Limitations: Obtain all platinum RTD space air temperature sensors with occupant interface features from a single manufacturer.
3. Factory Calibration: Factory calibrate each instrument to traceable standards and include instrument with a calibration certificate.
4. Description: Sensor with integral occupant interface features
5. Performance:
  - a. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.

- b. Self-Heating: Negligible.
  - c. Resistance: 100 ohms.
  - d. Temperature Coefficient of Resistance (TCR): 0.00385 ohm/deg C.
  - e. Temperature Range: As required by application, not less than  
**Minus 40 to 185 deg F.**
  - f. Accuracy: At **32 deg F** within **0.27 deg F.**
6. Output Signal: Resistance in ohms.
7. Sensor Assembly:
- a. Mount temperature-sensing element under a bright-white, non-yellowing, plastic cover.
  - b. Enclosure Rating: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - c. Mounting: Provide mounting compatible with surface shape mounted to and electrical box used.
  - d. Wiring Connection: Concealed wiring connection.
    - 1) Terminal block.
    - 2) Multi-conductor modular connector.
8. Occupant Interface Features: Where indicated, include instrument with the following features:
- a. Display: Backlit LCD display of temperature in degrees that is switchable between either degree C or degree F.
  - b. Operation Override: Local adjustment on face of enclosure for occupant to initiate HVAC zone "On" operation.
  - c. Temperature Set Point: Local adjustment on face of enclosure for occupant to adjust zone temperature set point.
  - d. Fan Speed: Multispeed adjustment.
  - e. Occupancy Detector: Sensor with integral PIR-type occupancy detector.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests and Inspections: Test and inspect assembled pressure instruments, as indicated by instrument requirements. Affix standards organization's certification and label.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports as applicable.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Air Temperature Sensors:
  - 1. 100-ohm Platinum RTD, Single-Point Air Temperature Duct Sensors.
  - 2. 100-ohm Platinum RTD, Air Temperature Averaging Sensors .
  - 3. 100-ohm Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors.
  - 4. 100-ohm Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors
- B. Air Temperature Sensors with Network Communication Signal for Space Applications .
- C. Multivariable Air Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
  - 1. Combination Carbon-Dioxide and Air Temperature Sensors and Transmitters for Duct Applications
  - 2. Combination Carbon-Dioxide and Air Temperature Sensors and Transmitters for Space Applications
- D. Air Temperature RTD Transmitters

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- C. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- E. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
  - 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.

3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

#### A. Mounting Location:

1. Roughing In:
  - a. Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
  - b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
    - 1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products on Shop Drawings.
    - 2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
  - c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspector is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.
2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid temperature associated with individual HVAC equipment and associated connected ductwork and piping near HVAC equipment co-located in HVAC equipment system control panel to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
3. Install liquid and steam temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
4. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
5. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

#### B. Special Mounting Requirements:

1. Protect products installed outdoors from solar radiation and building and wind effect with stand-offs and shields constructed of Type 316 stainless steel.
2. Isolate temperature instruments having performance impacted by temperature of mounting substrate with an insulating barrier located between instrument and substrate to eliminate effect on performance. Where instruments requiring insulation are located in finished space, conceal insulating barrier in a cover matching the instrument cover.

C. Mounting Height:

1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height is to comply with codes and accessibility requirements.
2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
  - a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.

D. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

E. Installation of Space Temperature Sensors:

1. Conceal assembly and field wiring connections in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if provided.
2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not completely cover electrical box.
3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.

F. Installation of Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Mount sensor in an accessible and discrete location facing north.
2. Protect installed sensor from solar radiation and other environmental influences that could impact performance.
3. If required to have a transmitter, mount transmitter remotely from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location indoors that is not readily accessible by building occupants.

G. Installation of Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensors:

1. Install single-point-type, duct-mounted, supply- and return-air temperature sensors. Install sensors in ducts with sensitive portion of the element installed near center of duct cross section and located to sense near average temperature. Do not exceed 18 inches in sensor length.
2. Install return-air sensor in location that senses return-air temperature without influence from outdoor or mixed air.
3. Rigidly support sensor to duct and seal penetration airtight.
4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter remotely from sensor at accessible and serviceable location indoors that is not readily accessible by building occupants.
5. Install duct access doors of sufficient size for inspection, removal, and replacement of single-point duct temperature sensors. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access doors.



H. Installation of Averaging Duct Temperature Sensors:

1. Install averaging-type air temperature sensor for temperature sensors located within air-handling units, similar HVAC equipment, and large ducts with air tunnel cross-sectional area of 20 sq. ft. and larger.
2. Install sensor length to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area and measure an average temperature. Install multiple sensors where required to maintain coverage.
3. Fasten and support sensor with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep sensor properly supported and taut throughout entire length.
4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter in an accessible and serviceable location indoors that is not readily accessible by building occupants.
5. Install duct access doors of sufficient size for inspection, removal, and replacement of averaging duct temperature sensors. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access doors.

I. Installation of Multivariable Air Temperature Sensors and Transmitters: Comply with requirements indicated for air temperature sensors.

J. Installation of Wireless Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Mount sensors to substrate at height indicated, using mounting kits furnished with sensors.
2. In areas with ceilings, conceal mounting of receivers, transceivers, or repeaters above ceilings.
3. Test communication signal to ensure a strong and uninterrupted signal to all connected devices and for proper coverage. Add additional receivers, transceivers, or repeaters if required.

K. Installation of Combination Air Temperature Sensors and Switches:

1. Install combination air temperature sensors and switches to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of air tunnel and to account for stratification. Install multiple instruments if required to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of air tunnel and to account for stratification.
2. Fasten and support sensing element with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep element properly supported and taut throughout entire length.
3. Mount instrument enclosure outside of airstream at a location and mounting height to provide easy access for set-point adjustment and manual reset.
4. Install on entering side of cooling coil unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
5. Install duct access doors of sufficient size for inspection, removal, and replacement of combination air temperature sensors and switches. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access doors.

3.5 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.23 "Surface Raceways for Electrical Systems."
- E. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- F. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control signal wiring to field-mounted control devices.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.

### 3.9 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- D. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to location, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

- E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.

### 3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

#### A. Description:

1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration are to meet instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments are to have at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent is to be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
7. Calibrate each instrument in accordance with instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
8. If, after calibration, indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Controls Components," in the absence of specific requirements and to supplement requirements indicated.

#### B. Analog Signals:

1. Check analog voltage signals using a voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
2. Check analog current signals using a current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistance source.

#### C. Digital Signals:

1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

#### D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

#### E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

#### F. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections: Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Perform in accordance with manufacturer's written instruction.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 230923.27

## SECTION 23 2300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Strainers.
5. Filter dryers.
6. Pressure-regulating valves.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Submit data for each type of refrigerant piping, fitting, valve, piping specialty, and refrigerant.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: For refrigerant piping size and layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
2. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
3. Shop Drawing Scale: **1/4 inch equals 1 foot**

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding Certificates: For each welder performing shop or field welding on Project.

- B. Field Quality-Control Reports: For each field quality control test and inspection.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Qualifications."

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.
- B. Prepare valves and specialties for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads and other end connections.
- C. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve and specialty end protection.
  - 2. Store valves and specialties indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5.
- C. Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Tubing for Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Applications Other than Heat Pumps: 300 psig
  - 2. Suction Tubing for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Tubing Lines: 535 psig

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: **ASTM B88, Type K or L**
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings, Solder Joint: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Fittings, Brazed Joint: ASME B16.50.
- D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8.
- G. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum **3/4-inch** misalignment in minimum **7-inch-**long assembly.
  - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum **500 psig**.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: **250 deg F**
- H. Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings for Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conex Banninger - USA
    - b. Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries
    - c. Parker Hannifin; Sporlan Division (Zoomlock)
    - d. RLS LLC
  - 2. Standard: UL 207; certified by UL for field installation. Certification as a UL-recognized component alone is unacceptable.
  - 3. Housing: Copper.
  - 4. O-Rings: HNBR with specific refrigerant.
  - 5. Tools: Manufacturer's approved special tools.
  - 6. Minimum Rated Pressure: **700 psig**

## 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Danfoss, Inc.

- b. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group
  - c. Parker (Parker Hannifin)
- 2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
- 3. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless steel spring.
- 4. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
- 5. Seat: Nylon.
- 6. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
- 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
- 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Danfoss, Inc.
  - b. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group
  - c. Parker (Parker Hannifin)
- 2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
- 3. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
- 4. Operator: Rising stem.
- 5. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
- 6. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
- 7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
- 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
- 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F

C. Check Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems
  - b. Danfoss, Inc.
  - c. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
  - d. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group
  - e. Parker (Parker Hannifin)
- 2. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
- 3. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
- 4. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
- 5. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
- 6. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
- 7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
- 8. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
- 9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
- 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F



D. Service Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Danfoss, Inc.
  - b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
  - c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group
  - d. JB Industries
  - e. Parker (Parker Hannifin)
  - f. RectorSeal HVAC; a CSW Industrials Company
  - g. Refrigeration Sales, Inc.
2. Body: Forged brass with brass cap, including key end to remove core.
3. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless steel spring.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Copper spring.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig .
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F

E. Refrigerant Locking Caps:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. C & D Valve, LLC
  - b. JB Industries
  - c. RectorSeal HVAC; a CSW Industrials Company
  - d. Refrigeration Sales, Inc.
2. Description: Locking-type, tamper-resistant, threaded caps to protect refrigerant-charging ports from unauthorized refrigerant access and leakage.
3. Material: Brass, with protective shroud or sleeve.
4. Refrigerant Identification: design.
5. Special Tool: For installing and unlocking.

F. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 I-P and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Danfoss, Inc.
  - b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
  - c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group
  - d. Parker (Parker Hannifin)
2. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
3. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location

- with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and [24][115][208] V ac coil.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig
  8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
- G. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Danfoss, Inc.]
    - b. [Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group]
    - c. [Parker (Parker Hannifin)]
    - d. <Insert manufacturer's name>
  2. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
  3. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  5. End Connections: Threaded.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
- H. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750 I-P.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Danfoss, Inc.
    - b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
    - c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group
    - d. Parker Hannifin; Sporlan Division (Zoomlock)
  2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  5. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  6. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F
  7. Superheat: Nonadjustable.
  8. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
  9. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  10. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig >.
- I. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Danfoss, Inc.
    - b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
    - c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group

- d. Parker (Parker Hannifin)
- e. RLS LLC
- 2. Body: Forged brass.
- 3. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
- 4. Indicator: Color-coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
- 5. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
- 6. End Connections: Socket or flare.
- 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
- 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F

## 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. R-410A, ASHRAE 34: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following]:
    - a. Arkema Inc.
    - b. DuPont Fluorochemicals Div.
    - c. Genetron Refrigerants; Honeywell International Inc.
    - d. Mexichem Fluor, Inc. (Koura)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATION SCHEDULES

- A. Refrigerant: R-410A

### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gauge taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety-relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside in accordance with ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
1. Solenoid valves.
  2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  3. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.
- N. Provide refrigerant locking caps on refrigerant charging ports that are located outdoors unless otherwise protected from unauthorized access by a means acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING, GENERAL

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping in accordance with ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
  - 1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
  - 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
  - 3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
  - 4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
  - 5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
  - 6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves in accordance with Section 230553 "Identification for

HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- B. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- C. Soldered Joints: Construct joints in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS BRH, "Brazing Handbook," Ch. 35, "Pipe and Tubing."
  - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12M/D10.12.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic restraints in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 ft. long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 ft. or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 ft. or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

- D. Install hangers for copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.
- F. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System must maintain test pressure at the manifold gauge throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to **500 micrometers**. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to **2 psig**.
  - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating

suction pressure.

- C. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 3. Open refrigerant valves but not bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 4. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- D. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300



## SECTION 23 3113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraint devices and installation.
2. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (State of California).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For ventilation equipment, indicating compliance with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.

2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
5. Dimensions of mainall duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

D. Delegated Design Submittals:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints are to withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" . Seismically brace duct hangers and supports in accordance withSMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems"
  1. Seismic Hazard Level (SHL): D.

2. Connection Level: 1.
  3. Seismic Risk Category: 4.
- C. Seismic Performance: Ductwork to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7 See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5][1.0].
- D. Wind Performance: Ducts are to withstand the effects of wind determined in accordance with to ASCE/SEI 7 See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- E. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- G. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- H. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of [Type 304][Type 316] stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
  2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal

Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Elgen Manufacturing
2. GreenSeam
3. Linx Industries; a DMI company (formerly Lindab)
4. McGill AirFlow LLC
5. MKT Metal Manufacturing
6. Nordfab Ducting
7. SEMCO, LLC; part of FlaktGroup
8. Set Duct Manufacturing
9. SHAPE Manufacturing Inc.
10. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
11. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
12. Stamped Fittings Inc

- C. Source Limitations: Obtain single-wall roundducts and fittings from single manufacturer.

- D. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

- E. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- F. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- G. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials are to be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G90**.
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish is to be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- D. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating is to be applied to the exterior surface.
  2. Antimicrobial compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound is to have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3363.
  4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: White.
  6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, **1/4-inch-** minimum diameter for lengths **36 inches** or less; **3/8-inch-** minimum diameter for lengths longer than **36 inches**.

## 2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
    - c. Knauf Insulation
    - d. Owens Corning
    - e. Sekisui Voltek, LLC
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain fibrous-glass duct liner from single manufacturer.
  3. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
    - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  4. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  5. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
    - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
    - c. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
    - d. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
    - e. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
    - f. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." The building concentration of formaldehyde shall not exceed half of the indoor recommended exposure limit, or 33 mcg/cu. m, and that of acetaldehyde

shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m.

B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm or greater.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
  - a. Fan discharges.
  - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets are to be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: **3 inches**
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: **10 inch wg**, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: **Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F**.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel.
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: **10 inch wg**, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: **10-inch wg**, positive or negative.
  9. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.



1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal is to provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and is to be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  2. Supports for Stainless Steel Ducts: Stainless steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations.

Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.

- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of **1 inch**, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least **1-1/2 inches**.
- J. Install fire and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
  - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
  - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for **12 inches** and smaller and a minimum of five segments for **14 inches** and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE 1 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

- A. Install ducts in accordance with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operation"; SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; and SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines" unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install all ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
- C. All ducts exposed to view are to be constructed of stainless steel as per "Duct Schedule" Article. All ducts concealed from view are to be stainlesssteel as per "Duct Schedule" Article.
- D. All joints are to be welded and are to be telescoping, bell, or flange joint as per NFPA 96.
- E. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of **20 feet** in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 \DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes **2-Inch wg** and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than **2-Inch wg**: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes **2-Inch wg** and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than **2-Inch wg**: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than **4 inches** thick.
  4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than **4 inches** thick.
  5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints. Coordinate with Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," **Table 5-1**, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within **24 inches** of each elbow and within **48 inches** of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of **16 feet**.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraint installation requirements.

3.7 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
  - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media is to not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. For cleaning of existing ductwork, see Section 230130.52 "Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning."
- C. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.
- D. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
  - 1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

F. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.10 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- B. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
  - 2. Stainless Steel Ducts:
    - a. Grease Duct: 304 Stainless Steel.
- C. Liner:
  - 1. Supply-Air Ducts: Do not use.
  - 2. Return-Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric **1 inch** thick.
  - 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: Do not use.
  - 4. Supply Fan Plenums: Do not use.
  - 5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, **1 inches** thick.
  - 6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I **1 inch** thick.
- D. Elbow Configuration:
  - 1. Rectangular Duct - Requirements for All Velocities: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - 2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
    - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      - 1) Velocity **1000 fpm** or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 2) Velocity **1000 to 1500 fpm**: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 3) Velocity **1500 fpm** or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
- E. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113



## SECTION 23 3300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Flange connectors.
4. Duct-mounted duct silencers.
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Flexible ducts, insulated.
9. Flexible duct connectors.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components.
2. For dampers, include housings, linkages, and operators.
3. For damper operators, include electrical or pneumatic pressure rating and damper size rating.
4. For duct-mounted duct silencers, include pressure drop, dynamic insertion loss, and self-generated noise data. Include breakout noise calculations for high-transmission-loss casings.

##### B. Shop Drawings: For air duct accessories.

1. Plans showing locations, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Duct accessories' fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
  - a. Special fittings.
  - b. Manual volume damper installations.
  - c. Control-damper installations.
  - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
  - e. Duct security bars.
  - f. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating (AWV); Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Cesco Products; MESTEK, Inc.
  - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation
  - 4. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc
  - 6. Pottorff
  - 7. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - 8. United Enertech Corp.
  - 9. Vent Products Co., Inc
- B. Description: Gravity balanced with adjustable counterweight or with spring.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm.
  - 2. Maximum System Pressure: 1 inch wg.
  - 3. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.
  - 4. Leakage:

- a. Class IA: Leakage is not to exceed **3 cfm/sq. ft.** against **1 inch wg** differential static pressure.
  - b. Class I: Leakage is not to exceed **4 cfm/sq. ft.** against **1 inch wg** differential static pressure.
  - c. Class II: Leakage is not to exceed **10 cfm/sq. ft.** against **1 inch wg** differential static pressure.
  - d. Class III: Leakage is not to exceed **40 cfm/sq. ft.** against **1 inch wg** differential static pressure.
- D. Construction:
- 1. Frame:
    - a. Hat shaped.
    - b. **16-gauge-** thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Blades:
    - a. Multiple single-piece blades.
    - b. Center pivoted, maximum **6-inch** width, with sealed edges.
  - 3. Blade Action: Parallel.
- E. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.
- F. Blade Axles:
- 1. Material: Galvanized steel.
  - 2. Diameter: **0.20 inch**.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Counterbalance: Adjustable counterweight or Adjustable-tension return spring.
- I. Bearings: Brass sleeve or synthetic pivot bushings.
- J. Accessories:
- 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. Chain pulls.
  - 4. 90-degree stops.
  - 5. Screen:
    - a. Mounting:
      - 1) Front mounted in sleeve.
        - a) Sleeve Thickness: **20 gauge** minimum.
        - b) Sleeve Length: **6 inches** minimum.

- b. Material: Galvanized steel.
- c. Type: Bird.

## 2.2 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

### A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Air Balance; MESTEK, Inc.
  - b. Aire Technologies, Inc.; DMI Companies
  - c. American Warming and Ventilating (AWV); Mestek, Inc.
  - d. Arrow United Industries; Mestek, Inc.
  - e. Cesco Products; MESTEK, Inc.
  - f. Greenheck Fan Corporation
  - g. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - h. McGill AirFlow LLC
  - i. Nailor Industries Inc
  - j. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.; Metal Industries, Inc.
  - k. Pottorff
  - l. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - m. Safe Air - Dowco
  - n. United Enertech Corp.
  - o. Vent Products Co., Inc
2. Performance:
  - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against 1 inch wg differential static pressure.
3. Construction:
  - a. Linkage out of airstream.
  - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
4. Frames:
  - a. Hat-shaped, 16-gauge- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized; 16 gauge thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - a. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
9. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: **0.5-inch** diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle, made of **3/32-inch**-thick zinc-plated steel, and a **3/4-inch** hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.3 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc; a DMI company
3. DynAir; a Carlisle Company
4. Elgen Manufacturing
5. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, LLC

B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.4 DUCT-MOUNTED DUCT SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. FläktGroup
2. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
3. IAC Acoustics

4. McGill AirFlow LLC
5. Metal Form Manufacturing LLC; United Enertech Corp.
6. Pottorff
7. Price Industries Limited
8. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
9. Vibro-Acoustics

B. General Requirements:

1. Factory fabricated.
2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials are to have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream are to comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
4. Bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for prefabricated silencer sound and air performance.

C. Shape:

1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
5. Rectangular transitional with splitters or baffles.

D. Rectangular/Elbow Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel, 0.040 inch thick.

E. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 galvanized sheet metal, 22 gauge thick, and with 1/8-inch-diameter perforations.

F. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.

G. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:

1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
2. Dissipative type with fill material.
  - a. Fill Material: Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material, packed under not less than 5 percent compression.
  - b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, heat-sealed before assembly.
3. Lining: None.

H. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.

1. Joints: Flanged connections.

2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

I. Accessories:

1. Factory-installed end caps to prevent contamination during shipping.

J. Source Quality Control:

1. Test in accordance with ASTM E477.
2. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least **2000 fpm** face velocity.

## 2.5 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following:

1. Aero-Dyne Sound Control Co.
2. CL WARD & Family Inc.
3. Ductmate Industries, Inc; a DMI company
4. Duro Dyne Inc.
5. DynAir; a Carlisle Company
6. Elgen Manufacturing
7. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, LLC

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Turning Vanes (in critical areas): Fabricate double-wall curved blades of galvanized steel.
2. Acoustic Turning Vanes (in critical areas): Fabricate airfoil-shaped galvanized steel with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction:

1. Wall: Double.

## 2.6 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Aire Technologies, Inc.; DMI Companies
  2. Arrow United Industries; Mestek, Inc.
  3. Cesco Products; MESTEK, Inc.
  4. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  5. Ductmate Industries, Inc; a DMI company
  6. Duro Dyne Inc.
  7. Elgen Manufacturing
  8. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc
  9. McGill AirFlow LLC
  10. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
  11. United Enertech Corp.
  12. Ventfabrics, Inc
  13. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, LLC
- B. General Requirements: Fabricate access doors in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
- C. Access Doors:
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Material matching duct material, with insulation fill matching duct insulation type and thickness, and access door wall thickness matching duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: **1-by-1-inch** butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Material matching door material, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm) Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.7 DUCT FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc; a DMI company
  3. Duro Dyne Inc.
  4. DynAir; a Carlisle Company
  5. Elgen Manufacturing
  6. Ventfabrics, Inc
  7. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, LLC



- B. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials are to have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream are to comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- E. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- F. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip **3-1/2 inches** wide attached to two strips of **2-3/4-inch-** wide, **0.028-inch** thick, galvanized sheet steel or **0.032-inch-** thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- G. Indoor System, Duct Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: **26 oz./sq. yd.**
  - 2. Tensile Strength: **480 lbf/inch** in the warp and **360 lbf/inch** in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: **Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.**
- H. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of **1/4-inch** movement at start and stop.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G90.**
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209/B209M, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, one-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with **ASTM B221**, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, **1/4-inch** minimum diameter for lengths **36 inches** or less; **3/8-inch** minimum diameter for lengths longer than **36 inches**.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS, INSULATED

- A. Standard: Product is to be UL 181 listed and bearing the UL label.
- B. Flexible Ducts, Insulated - Class 1, Two-Ply Vinyl Film Supported by Helically Wound, Spring-Steel Wire; Fibrous-Glass Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. ATCO Rubber Products, Inc.
    - b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc
    - c. JP Lamborn Co.
    - d. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company
  - 2. Pressure Rating: **10 inch wg** positive and **1.0 inch wg** negative.
  - 3. Maximum Air Velocity: **4000 fpm**.
  - 4. Temperature Range: **Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F**.
  - 5. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1 and minimum R8.
  - 6. Vapor-Barrier Film: Polyethylene, ASTM E96/E96M.

## 2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless steel band with stainless steel or zinc-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes **3 through 18 inches**, to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in

aluminum ducts.

- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full-system-design static pressure.
- E. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having a duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- F. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.
- H. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.
- I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 2. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 3. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
  - 4. For grease ducts, install at locations and spacing as required by NFPA 96.
  - 5. Control devices requiring inspection.
  - 6. Elsewhere as indicated.
- J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- K. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- L. Label access doors in accordance with Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of each access door.
- M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

- N. For fans developing static pressures of **5 inches wg** and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- P. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of **1/4-inch** movement during start and stop of fans.
- Q. Install flexible ducts in accordance with applicable details in the following publications:
  - 1. ADC's "Flexible Duct Performance & Installation Standards" for flexible ducts.
  - 2. NAIMA AH116.
  - 3. SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
  - 4. SMACNA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards" for fibrous-glass ducts.
- R. Install in indoor applications only. Do not install flexible duct in locations where it will be exposed to UV rays.
- S. Where flexible duct is to be installed in locations where it will be exposed to UV rays, install only duct that is specifically made for this use and is has been so marked by the manufacturer.
- T. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum **12-inch** lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- U. Connect diffusers and light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum **60-inch** lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- V. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- W. Installation of Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting must not exceed a minimum of one-duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
  - 6. Install in accordance with ADC instructions.
- X. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Support flexible duct at manufacturer's recommended intervals, but at no greater distance than **4 ft.** Provide sufficient support so that maximum centerline sag is **1/2 inch per ft.** between supports. A connection to rigid duct or equipment may be considered a support joint.
  - 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one-duct diameter from center line of the bend.
  - 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports must not exceed the maximum spacing in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

4. Vertically installed ducts must be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors, and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation, and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.
4. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

## SECTION 23 3346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Flexible ducts, insulated.
  - 2. Flexible duct connectors.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Flexible ducts, noninsulated.
  - 2. Flexible ducts, insulated.
  - 3. Flexible duct connectors.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of product.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- D. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations, mounting details, and attachment details.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials must be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- C. Comply with the Air Duct Council's (formerly, Air Diffusion Council) "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code - FD 72-R1" and "Flexible Duct Performance & Installation Standards."
- D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M.

## 2.2 FLEXIBLE DUCTS, NONINSULATED

- A. Standard: Product is to be UL 181 listed and bearing the UL label.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCTS, INSULATED

- A. Standard: Product is to be UL 181 listed and bearing the UL label.
- B. Flexible Ducts, Insulated - Class 1, Two-Ply Vinyl Film Supported by Helically Wound, Spring-Steel Wire; Fibrous-Glass Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. [ATCO Rubber Products, Inc.]
    - b. [Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc]
    - c. [JP Lamborn Co.]
    - d. [Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company]
    - e. <Insert manufacturer's name>
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 10 inch wg positive and 1.0 inch wg negative.
  - 3. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
  - 5. Insulation R-Value: [Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1][R4.2][R6][R8]<Insert value>.
  - 6. Vapor-Barrier Film: [Polyethylene][Aluminized].

## 2.4 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: [Stainless steel band with stainless steel or zinc-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action][Nylon strap] in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: [Adhesive][Liquid adhesive plus tape][Adhesive plus sheet metal screws].

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Install flexible ducts in accordance with applicable details in the following publications:
  - 1. ADC's "Flexible Duct Performance & Installation Standards" for flexible ducts.
  - 2. NAIMA AH116.
  - 3. SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
  - 4. SMACNA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards" for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Do not install flexible duct in locations where it will be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts[ directly or] with maximum [12-inch]<Insert dimension> lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers and light troffer boots to ducts[ directly or] with maximum [60-inch]<Insert dimension> lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with [adhesive][liquid adhesive plus tape][draw bands][adhesive plus sheet metal screws].
- F. Installation:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting must not exceed a minimum of one-duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
  - 6. Install in accordance with ADC instructions.
- G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Support flexible duct at manufacturer's recommended intervals, but at no greater distance than 4 ft.. Provide sufficient support so that maximum centerline sag is 1/2 in. per ft. between supports. A connection to rigid duct or equipment may be considered a support joint.
  - 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one-duct diameter from center line of the bend.
  - 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports must not exceed the maximum spacing in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 4. Vertically installed ducts must be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346



## SECTION 23 3400 - HVAC FANS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Fans, centrifugal, inline - square.
2. Ventilators, centrifugal - roof-mounted downblast.
3. Ventilators, centrifugal - roof-mounted upblast and sidewall mounted.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
  - b. Rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
  - c. Fans:
    - 1) Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    - 2) Certified fan sound-power ratings.
    - 3) Fan construction and accessories.
    - 4) Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
    - 5) Fan speed controllers.
  - d. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - e. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators [and seismic restraints]and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

##### C. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation[, supports,][and seismic restraints]

indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators[, supports,][, seismic restraints,][and for designing vibration isolation bases].

D. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans showing fan rooms and fan system layouts, reflected ceiling plans, and other drawings required to illustrate relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.

- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for fans, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- C. Startup service reports.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fans and ventilators, include the following:

1. Operation in normal and emergency modes.
2. Operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective coverage for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: [One]<Insert number> set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of unit components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation[, supports,][and seismic restraints], including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- F. Seismic Performance: Fans and ventilators are to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with [ASCE/SEI 7]<Insert requirement>. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified[ and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event]."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5][1.0].
  - 3. <Insert requirements for Component Amplification Factor and Component Response Modification Factor>.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - 1. Fan Type: [Centrifugal][Square, inline, centrifugal][Tubular, inline, centrifugal][Plenum][Plug][Utility set].
  - 2. Blade Type: [Forward curved][Backward inclined, airfoil][Backward inclined, curved][Backward inclined, flat].
  - 3. Airflow: <Insert **cfm**>.
  - 4. Total Static Pressure: <Insert **inches wg**>.
  - 5. Class: AMCA 99, Section 14, [Class I][Class II][Class III].
  - 6. Drive Arrangement: <Insert AMCA arrangement number>.
  - 7. Drive Type: [Belt][Direct].
  - 8. Discharge Arrangement: <Insert discharge arrangement configuration>.
  - 9. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel][Shaped fiberglass-reinforced plastic][Aluminum][Stainless steel].
  - 10. Housing Coating: [None][Thermoplastic vinyl][Epoxy][Synthetic resin][Phenolic][Hot-dip galvanized][Powder-baked enamel]<Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
  - 11. Wheel Size (Diameter): <Insert **inches**>.

12. Fan Diameter: <Insert inches>.
13. Wheel Material: [Steel][Aluminum][One-piece fiberglass-reinforced plastic][Stainless steel].
14. Wheel Coating: [None][Thermoplastic vinyl][Epoxy][Synthetic resin][Phenolic][Hot-dip galvanized][Powder-baked enamel]; <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
15. Brake Horsepower: <Insert number>.
16. Fan rpm: <Insert value>.
17. Outlet Velocity: <Insert fpm>.
18. Motor:
  - a. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof][Totally enclosed, fan cooled][Totally enclosed, air over][Explosion proof]<Insert motor enclosure type>.
  - b. Enclosure Materials: [Cast iron][Cast aluminum][Rolled steel].
  - c. Motor Bearings: <Insert requirements>.
  - d. Efficiency: Premium efficiency.
  - e. NEMA Design: <Insert designation>.
  - f. Service Factor: [1.15]<Insert number>.
  - g. Suitable for Use with Variable-Frequency Drive: [Yes][No].
  - h. Electrical Characteristics:
    - 1) Motor Size: <Insert horsepower>.
    - 2) Motor Rpm: <Insert number>.
    - 3) Volts: [120][208][230][460]<Insert number> V.
    - 4) Phase: [Single][Three].
    - 5) Hertz: 60 Hz.
    - 6) Full-Load Amperes: <Insert number> A.
    - 7) Minimum Circuit Ampacity: <Insert number> A.
    - 8) Maximum Overcurrent Protection: <Insert number> A.
19. Discharge Sound Power:
  - a. 1st Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - b. 2nd Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - c. 3rd Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - d. 4th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - e. 5th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - f. 6th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - g. 7th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - h. 8th Octave: <Insert dB>.
20. Inlet Sound Power:
  - a. 1st Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - b. 2nd Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - c. 3rd Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - d. 4th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - e. 5th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - f. 6th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - g. 7th Octave: <Insert dB>.
  - h. 8th Octave: <Insert dB>.

21. Vibration Isolators: [Spring][Restrained spring]<Insert type> isolators with a static deflection of [**1 inch**]<Insert deflection>.
22. Spark-Resistance Class: Classified in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 8, [Type A][Type B][Type C].

H. Service Conditions:

1. Ambient Temperature: <Insert number> **deg F**.
2. Altitude: <Insert number> **feet** above sea level.
3. Humidity: <Insert number> **deg F** wet bulb.

2.2 FANS, CENTRIFUGAL, INLINE - SQUARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:

1. [Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.]
2. [Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.]
3. [American Coolair Corporation]
4. [Canarm Ltd.]
5. [Carnes Company]
6. [FloAire National]
7. [Greenheck Fan Corporation]
8. [JencoFan]
9. [Loren Cook Company]
10. [PennBarry; division of Air System Components]
11. [Quietaire Inc.]
12. [Rupp Air Management Systems]
13. [S & P USA Ventilation Systems, LLC]
14. <Insert manufacturer's name>

B. Source Limitations: Obtain square inline centrifugal fans from single manufacturer.

C. Description: Square-housing in-line centrifugal fans.

D. Standards: Comply with UL 705.

E. Housing:

1. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel][Aluminum][Stainless steel][See schedule]<Insert material>.
2. Housing Coating: [None][Thermoplastic vinyl][Epoxy][Synthetic resin][Phenolic][Hot-dip galvanized][Powder-baked enamel][See schedule]<Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
3. Housing Construction: Side panels are to be easily removable for service. Include inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

F. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on

outside of fan housing[; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door].

- G. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosures around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- H. Fan Wheels: Aluminum airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- I. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof][Totally enclosed, fan cooled][Totally enclosed, air over][Explosion-proof]<Insert motor enclosure type>.
- J. Accessories:
  - 1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  - 2. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  - 3. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
  - 4. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
  - 5. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
  - 6. Motor: Epoxy-coated steel.
  - 7. Belt Guards: Fabricate of prime-coated steel to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements for motors with exposed drive belt. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
  - 8. Side Discharge: Flange connector and attachment hardware to provide right-angle discharge on side of unit.

## 2.3 VENTILATORS, CENTRIFUGAL - ROOF-MOUNTED DOWNBLAST

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. [Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.]
  - 2. [Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.]
  - 3. [Airmaster Fan; a brand of MAICO]
  - 4. [American Coolair Corporation]
  - 5. [Carnes Company]
  - 6. [FloAire National]
  - 7. [Greenheck Fan Corporation]
  - 8. [JencoFan]
  - 9. [Loren Cook Company]
  - 10. [New York Blower Company (The)]
  - 11. [Northern Blower, Inc.]
  - 12. [PennBarry; division of Air System Components]
  - 13. [Quietaire Inc.]
  - 14. [Rupp Air Management Systems]
  - 15. [S & P USA Ventilation Systems, LLC]

16. <Insert manufacturer's name>
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roof-mounted downblast centrifugal ventilators from single manufacturer.
- C. Standards: Comply with UL 705.
- D. Housing: Downblast; removable [spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle][extruded-aluminum rectangular top][galvanized-steel mushroom-domed top][spun aluminum]; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades[; spark-resistant construction classified in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 8,][Type A][Type B][Type C].
- F. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
  2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
  4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
  5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through [5]<Insert number> hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than [5]<Insert number> hp.
  6. Fan and motor are isolated from exhaust airstream.
- G. Accessories:
1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted [inside][outside] fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
  4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
  5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
  6. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
  7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
- H. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: [Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange][Built-in cant and mounting flange][Built-in raised cant and mounting flange][Manufactured to accommodate roof slope].
  2. Overall Height: [8 inches][9-1/2 inches][12 inches][16 inches][18 inches].
  3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
  4. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.

5. Burglar Bars: [~~1/2-inch-~~][~~5/8-inch-~~][~~3/4-inch-~~] thick steel bars welded in place to form ~~6-inch~~ squares.
6. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
7. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
8. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

2.4 VENTILATORS, CENTRIFUGAL - ROOF-MOUNTED UPBLAST OR SIDEWALL MOUNTED

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
1. [Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.]
  2. [Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.]
  3. [Airmaster Fan; a brand of MAICO]
  4. [American Coolair Corporation]
  5. [Canarm Ltd.]
  6. [Carnes Company]
  7. [FloAire National]
  8. [Greenheck Fan Corporation]
  9. [JencoFan]
  10. [Loren Cook Company]
  11. [New York Blower Company (The)]
  12. [PennBarry; division of Air System Components]
  13. [Quietaire Inc.]
  14. [Rupp Air Management Systems]
  15. [S & P USA Ventilation Systems, LLC]
  16. <Insert manufacturer's name>
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roof-mounted upblast or sidewall-mounted centrifugal ventilators from single manufacturer.
- C. Standards:
1. Comply with UL 705.
  2. Power ventilators for use with restaurant kitchen exhaust are to comply with UL 762.
- D. Configuration: Centrifugal [roof upblast][roof upblast, kitchen grease hood][sidewall] ventilator.
- E. Housing: Removable [spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle][extruded-aluminum rectangular top][galvanized-steel, mushroom-domed top][spun aluminum]; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
  2. [Provide grease collector.]



- F. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades[; spark-resistant construction classified in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 8,][Type A][Type B][Type C].
- G. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
  2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings; minimum ABMA 9, [L10 of 100,000 hours]<Insert life>.
  4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
  5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through [5]<Insert number> hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than [5]<Insert number> hp.
  6. Fan and motor are isolated from exhaust airstream.
- H. Accessories:
1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted [inside][outside] fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
  4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
  5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
  6. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
  7. Wall Mount Adapter: Attach wall-mounted fan to wall.
  8. Restaurant Kitchen Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air exhaust.
- I. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: [Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange][Built-in cant and mounting flange][Built-in raised cant and mounting flange][Manufactured to accommodate roof slope].
- J. Prefabricated Kitchen Exhaust Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; ventilation openings on all sides to ventilate curb interstitial space. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: [Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange][Built-in cant and mounting flange][Built-in raised cant and mounting flange][manufactured to accommodate roof slope].
  2. Overall Height: [8 inches][9-1/2 inches][12 inches][16 inches][18 inches].
  3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation[ and galvanized metal liner].
  4. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.
  5. Burglar Bars: [1/2-inch-][5/8-inch-][3/4-inch-] thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-

inch squares.

6. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
7. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
8. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
9. Vented Curb: For kitchen exhaust; 12-inch high galvanized steel; unlined, with louvered vents in vertical sides.
10. NFPA 96 code requirements for commercial cooking operations.
11. Kitchen Hood Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air.

## 2.5 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- B. Where variable-frequency drives are indicated or scheduled, provide fan motor compatible with variable-frequency drive.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. [AMCA Certification for Fan Sound Performance Rating: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 311.]
- B. [AMCA Certification for Fan Aerodynamic Performance Ratings: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.]
- C. [AMCA Certification for Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.]
- D. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install fans level and plumb.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Install floor-mounted fans on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2. Install roof-mounted fans on roof curbs or support steel. See Drawings for specific requirements.
  3. Unit Support: Install fans level on structural curbs. Coordinate with duct connections. [Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction.][Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.]
  4. Support duct-mounted and other hanging fans directly from the building structure, using suitable hanging systems as specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  5. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  6. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Curb Support, Prefabricated: Rail-type wood support provided by fan manufacturer.
- F. Unit Support: Install centrifugal fans level on structural [curbs][pilings]. Coordinate with duct connections. [Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction.][ Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.]
- G. Isolation Curb Support: Install centrifugal fans on isolation curbs, and install flexible duct connectors and vibration-isolation[ and seismic-control] devices.
1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  2. Comply with requirements in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- H. Install units with adequate clearances for service and maintenance.
- I. Label fans in accordance with requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- 3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS
- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Where installing ducts adjacent to fans, allow space for service and maintenance.
- 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS
- A. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.
- B. Install heat tracing on all drain piping subject to freezing temperature and as indicated on Drawings. Furnish and install heat tracing in accordance with Section 230533 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE:

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform][Perform] startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
  - 6. For belt-drive fans, disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 7. Adjust belt tension.
  - 8. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - 9. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  - 11. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and confirm proper

motor rotation and unit operation, adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.

12. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
13. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Lubricate bearings.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing and after completing startup service, clean fans internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: [Owner][Contractor] will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections[ with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative].
  1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
  3. Fans and components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train][Train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC fans.

END OF SECTION 233400

## SECTION 23 3600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Modulating, single-duct air terminal units.
  - 2. Casing liner.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation, and seismic restraints indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data.
  - 1. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, indicating the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For air terminal units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
  - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a Qualified Electrical Testing Laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."
- D. Delegated Design: design vibration isolation and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- E. Seismic Performance: Air terminal units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5][1.0].

#### 2.2 MODULATING, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the

following:

1. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
  2. Carnes Company
  3. Carrier Global Corporation
  4. [ENVIRO-TEC; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  5. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  6. Krueger-HVAC; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products
  7. METALAIRE, Inc
  8. Nailor Industries Inc
  9. Price Industries Limited
  10. Titus; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products
  11. Trane
  12. Tuttle & Bailey; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products
- B. Description: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- C. Casing: Minimum 20-gauge-- thick galvanized steel.
1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraphwith "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph.
  2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections, size matching inlet size.
  4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 1 percent of nominal airflow at **3-inch** wginlet static pressure.
- E. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- F. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. See M602 Sound Attenuator Schedule.
- G. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
1. Stage(s): One
  2. SCR controlled where mentioned on VAV Schedule on M601.
  3. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
  4. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).



5. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
6. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
7. Fan interlock contacts.
8. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
9. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

H.

1. Pneumatic Damper Actuator: [0 to 13 psig]<Insert range> spring range.
2. Pneumatic Thermostat: Wall-mounted pneumatic type [direct acting][and][reverse acting] with appropriate mounting hardware.
3. Pneumatic Air Volume Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to pneumatic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg; includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

I. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.
  - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
  - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
  - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
  - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controllers, integrated actuators, and room sensors to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Controls (DDC) for HVAC."

J. Control Sequence: See Drawing M702.

2.3 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Minimum Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- A. AHRI 880 Certification: Test, rate, and label assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for hangers and supports.
- B. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A.
- C. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

### 3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install field power to each air terminal unit electrical power connection. Coordinate with air terminal unit manufacturer and installers.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with drawing designation, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and coil type. Comply with requirements for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
  - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
  - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
  - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
  - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air terminal unit testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- D. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 233600

## SECTION 23 3713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ceiling diffusers - rectangular and square face.
2. Diffusers - linear bar.
3. Diffusers - ceiling-integral plenum slot.
4. Diffusers - induction underfloor air distribution, round.
5. Diffuser plenums - linear underfloor air distribution.
6. Diffusers - HEPA, laminar flow, filtered.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.
3. Section 233713.43 "Security Registers and Grilles" for security registers and security grilles.
4. Section 233716 "Fabric Air-Diffusion Devices" for continuous tubular diffusers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - b. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers with factory-applied color finishes. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  4. Ceiling-mounted items, including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS - RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE FACE

- A. Ceiling Diffuser - Rectangular and Square:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. [A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc]
    - b. [Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.]
    - c. [Carnes Company]
    - d. [Hart & Cooley, LLC]
    - e. [Kees, Inc]
    - f. [Krueger-HVAC; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products]
    - g. [METALAIRE, Inc]
    - h. [Nailor Industries Inc]
    - i. [Price Industries Limited]
    - j. [Raymon Company]
    - k. [Shoemaker Mfg. Co.]
    - l. [Titus; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products]
    - m. [Tuttle & Bailey; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products]
    - n. <Insert manufacturer's name>
  2. Description: [Square][Rectangular] ceiling diffuser with round or rectangular duct collar and a series of curved louvers to provide discharge parallel to ceiling surface.
  3. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
  4. Material: [Steel][Aluminum][Stainless steel].
  5. Finish: [Baked enamel, white][Baked enamel, color selected by Architect][Anodized aluminum]<Insert finish>.
  6. Face Size: [24 by 24 inches][20 by 20 inches][12 by 12 inches]<Insert dimensions>.
  7. Face Style: [Three cone][Four cone][Plaque].

8. Mounting: [Surface][T-bar][Snap in][Spline][Mounting panel].
9. Pattern: [Fixed][Two position][Adjustable].
10. Dampers: [Radial opposed blade][Butterfly][Combination damper and grid].
11. Accessories:
  - a. Equalizing grid.
  - b. Plaster ring.
  - c. Safety chain.
  - d. Wire guard.
  - e. Sectorizing baffles.
  - f. Manual remote balancing damper operator.
  - g. UL 5555C fire-rated assembly, including fire damper and insulating blanket.

## 2.2 DIFFUSERS - CEILING-INTEGRAL PLENUM SLOT

### A. Diffuser - Ceiling-Integral Plenum Slot:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - a. [Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.]
  - b. [Carnes Company]
  - c. [Hart & Cooley, LLC]
  - d. [Kees, Inc]
  - e. [Krueger-HVAC; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products]
  - f. [METALAIRE, Inc]
  - g. [Nailor Industries Inc]
  - h. [Price Industries Limited]
  - i. [Raymon Company]
  - j. [Shoemaker Mfg. Co.]
  - k. [Titus; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products]
  - l. [Tuttle & Bailey; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products]
  - m. <Insert manufacturer's name>
2. Description: Diffuser assembly with integral pattern controller, one or more linear discharge slots, and an integral plenum and duct collar. Assembly is to be installed in modular T-bar ceilings.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
4. Material:
  - a. Face: [Steel][Aluminum].
  - b. Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
  - c. Plenum: Steel[, internally insulated][, uninsulated].
  - d. Plenum Insulation: Comply with UL 181.
5. Finish:

- a. Face and Plenum: [Baked enamel]<Insert finish>.
  - b. Pattern Controller: [Baked enamel, black]<Insert finish>.
  - c. Tees: [Baked enamel, white][Baked enamel, color selected by Architect]<Insert finish>.
- 6. Slot Width: [ $\frac{1}{2}$  inch][ $\frac{3}{4}$  inch][1 inch][ $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches].
  - 7. Number of Slots: [One][Two][Three][Four]<Insert number>.
  - 8. Length: [24 inches][30 inches][36 inches][48 inches][60 inches].
  - 9. Accessories: [Plaster frame][T-bar slot][Center notch][T-bar on inlet side][T-bar on both sides][T-bar clip on one side][T-bar clips on both sides].
  - 10. Fire-Rated Construction: Integral fire damper and fire-rated assembly listing in the Underwriters Laboratory Fire Resistance Directory, tested in accordance with UL 263 and complying with NFPA 90A requirements.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers in accordance with ASHRAE 70.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF AIR DIFFUSERS

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13



## SECTION 23 3713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grilles - adjustable-blade face.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - b. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items, including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GRILLES

A. Grilles - Adjustable-Blade Face:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc
  - b. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
  - c. Carnes Company
  - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
  - e. Hart & Cooley, LLC
  - f. Kees, Inc
  - g. Krueger-HVAC; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products
  - h. METALAIRE, Inc
  - i. Nailor Industries Inc
  - j. Price Industries Limited
  - k. Raymon Company
  - l. Shoemaker Mfg. Co.
  - m. Titus; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white .
4. Face-Blade Arrangement: Face blades with adjustable angle to permit manual adjustment of discharge direction. Blades horizontally spaced > apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: All rear blades with adjustable angle to permit manual adjustment of air-discharge direction. Blades vertically spaced.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
8. Mounting: .

## 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles in accordance with ASHRAE 70.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF REGISTERS AND GRILLES

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel.

Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

## SECTION 23 3813 - COMMERCIAL-KITCHEN HOODS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial-kitchen hoods, Type I.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Listed Hood: A hood, factory fabricated and tested for compliance with UL 710 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standard Hood: A hood, usually field fabricated, that complies with design, construction, and performance criteria of applicable national and local codes.
- C. Type I Hood: A hood designed for grease exhaust applications.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at [Project site]<Insert location>.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Standard hoods.
2. Filters/baffles.
3. Fire-suppression systems.
4. Luminaires.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1. Shop Drawing Scale: **1/4 inch = 1 foot.**
2. Show plan view, elevation view, sections, roughing-in dimensions, service requirements, duct connection sizes, and attachments to other work.
3. Show cooking equipment plan and elevation to confirm minimum code-required overhang.
4. Indicate performance, exhaust and makeup air airflow, and pressure loss at actual Project-site elevation.
5. Show control cabinets.
6. Show fire-protection cylinders, piping, actuation devices, and manual control devices.
7. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
8. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
9. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

10. Duct Connections: Detail connections between ducts and hoods, including access doors and panels.
11. Piping Diagrams: Detail fire-suppression piping and components and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed piping. Include roughing-in requirements for drain connections. Show cooking equipment plan and elevation to illustrate fire-suppression nozzle locations.
  - a. Piping Diagram Scale:  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch = 1 foot

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Coordination Drawing Scale:  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch = 1 foot.
  2. Suspended ceiling assembly components.
  3. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  4. Roof framing and support members for duct penetrations.
  5. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Moldings on hoods and accessory equipment.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Submit certification that commercial-kitchen hoods, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Include the following:
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Grease Filters/Baffles: One complete set(s).

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D 1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports; and AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for joint and seam welding.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 HOOD MATERIALS

- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A666, Type 304.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: **0.050 inch**.
  - 2. Finish: Comply with SSINA's "Finishes for Stainless Steel" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
    - a. Finish shall be free from tool and die marks and stretch lines and shall have uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Grain shall run with long dimension of each piece.
  - 3. Concealed Stainless-Steel Surfaces: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2B finish (bright, cold-rolled, unpolished finish).
  - 4. Exposed Surfaces: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2B finish (bright, cold-rolled, unpolished).
  - 5. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
- B. Sealant: ASTM C920; Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. Elastomeric sealant shall be NSF certified for commercial-kitchen hood application. Sealants, when cured and washed, shall comply with requirements in 21 CFR 177.2600, for use in areas that come in contact with food.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene, in diameter larger than joint width.
- C. Sound Dampening: NSF-certified, non-absorbent, hard-drying, sound-deadening compound for permanent adhesion to metal in minimum **1/8-inch** thickness that does not chip, flake, or blister.
- D. Gaskets: NSF certified for end-use application indicated; of resilient rubber, neoprene, or PVC that is nontoxic, stable, odorless, nonabsorbent, and unaffected by exposure to foods and cleaning compounds, and that passes testing according to UL 710.

## 2.3 GENERAL HOOD FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Welding: Use welding rod of same composition as metal being welded. Use methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metal. Make ductile welds free of mechanical imperfections such as gas holes, pits, or cracks.
  1. Welded Butt Joints: Full-penetration welds for full-joint length. Make joints flat, continuous, and homogenous with sheet metal without relying on straps under seams, filling in with solder, or spot welding.
  2. Grind exposed welded joints flush with adjoining material and polish to match adjoining surfaces.
  3. Where fasteners are welded to underside of equipment, finish reverse side of weld smooth and flush.
  4. Coat concealed stainless-steel welded joints with metallic-based paint to prevent corrosion.
  5. After zinc-coated steel is welded, clean welds and abraded areas and apply SSPC-Paint 20, high-zinc-dust-content, galvanizing repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. For metal butt joints, comply with SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems & Food Service Equipment Guidelines."
- C. Where stainless steel is joined to a dissimilar metal, use stainless-steel welding material or fastening devices.
- D. Form metal with break bends that are not flaky, scaly, or cracked in appearance; where breaks mar uniform surface appearance of material, remove marks by grinding, polishing, and finishing.
- E. Sheared Metal Edges: Finish free of burrs, fins, and irregular projections.
- F. In food zones, as defined in NSF, fabricate surfaces free from exposed fasteners.
- G. Cap exposed fastener threads, including those inside cabinets, with stainless-steel lock washers and stainless-steel cap (acorn) nuts.
- H. Fabricate pipe slots on equipment with turned-up edges sized to accommodate service and utility lines and mechanical connections.
- I. Fabricate enclosures, including panels, housings, and skirts, to conceal service lines, operating components, and mechanical and electrical devices including those inside cabinets unless

otherwise indicated.

- J. Fabricate seismic restraints according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems & Food Service Equipment Guidelines," Appendix A, "Seismic Restraint Details."
- K. Fabricate equipment edges and backsplashes according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems & Food Service Equipment Guidelines."
- L. Fabricate enclosure panels to ceiling and wall as follows:

- 1. Fabricate panels on all exposed side(s) with same material as hood, and extend from ceiling to top of hood canopy and from canopy to wall.

## 2.4 EXHAUST HOOD FABRICATION, TYPE I HOOD

### A. Exhaust Hood Fabricators, Type I Hood:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CaptiveAire Systems
  - b. Carrier Global Corporation
  - c. Duke Manufacturing Company
  - d. Gaylord Industries, Inc
  - e. Giles Enterprises, Inc
  - f. Grease Master
  - g. Greenheck Fan Corporation
  - h. Halton Company
  - i. LCSsystems, Inc.
  - j. Sturdi-Bilt Restaurant Equipment

### B. Weld all joints exposed to grease with continuous welds, and make filters/baffles or grease extractors and makeup air diffusers easily accessible for cleaning.

- 1. Fabricate hoods according to NSF 2, "Food Equipment."
- 2. Hoods shall be listed and labeled, according to UL 710, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3. Hoods shall be designed, fabricated, and installed according to NFPA 96.
- 4. Include access panels as required for access to fire dampers and fusible links.
- 5. Duct Collars: Minimum ~~0.0598-inch~~ thick steel at least ~~3 inches~~ long, continuously welded to top of hood and at corners. Fabricate a collar with a ~~0.5-inch~~ wide duct flange.

### C. Hood Configuration: Exhaust only.

### D. Hood Style: Single-island canopy

- E. Filters/Baffles: Removable, [stainless-steel][aluminum][, with spring-loaded fastening]. Fabricate stainless steel for filter frame and removable collection cup and pitched trough. Exposed surfaces shall be pitched to drain to collection cup. Filters/baffles shall be tested



according to UL 1046, "Safety for Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts," by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Luminaires: Surface-mounted], LED luminaires and lamps with lenses sealed vapor tight. Wiring shall be in conduit on hood exterior. Number and location of luminaires shall provide a minimum of **70 fc** at **30 inches** above finished floor.

1. Light switches shall be mounted on front panel of hood canopy.
2. Luminaires: LED complying with UL 1598.

- G. Comply with hood control requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC".

- H. Hood Controls: Hood-mounting control cabinet, factory wired to control groups of adjacent hoods, and fabricated of stainless steel.

1. Exhaust Fan: On-off switches shall start and stop the exhaust fan. Interlock exhaust fan with fire-suppression system to operate fan(s) during fire-suppression-agent release and to remain in operation until manually stopped. Include red pilot light to indicate fan operation.
2. Exhaust Fan Interlock: Factory wire the exhaust fan VFD in a single control cabinet for adjacent hoods to operate together.
3. Photocell and Temperature Control, Variable Speed: Vary speed of exhaust-air fan with variable-frequency controllers, based on temperature at hood discharge and opacity of smoke in hood. Interlock fan control with fire-suppression system to operate at high speed during fire-suppression-agent release and to remain in high-speed operation until manually stopped. Provide air-purge fan and conduit to photocell and reflector to avoid grease accumulation that will negatively affect performance of system. Controller shall limit exhaust-duct velocity between 500 fpm and design Max. Min. Flow to be determined during testing and balancing.
4. High-Temperature Control: Alarm shall sound and cooking equipment shall shut down before hood discharge temperature rises to actuation temperature of fire-suppression system.

## 2.5 FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEM, WET CHEMICAL

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ansul; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
  2. Badger Fire Protection; a Carrier company
  3. Kidde; Carrier Global Corporation
  4. Pyro-Chem; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
- B. Description: Engineered distribution piping designed for automatic detection and release or manual release of fire-suppression agent by hood operator. Fire-suppression system shall be listed and labeled for complying with NFPA 17A, "Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems," by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Steel Pipe, **NPS 2** and Smaller: ASTM A53/A53M, Type S, Grade A, Schedule 40, plain ends.
2. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300.
3. Piping, fusible links and release mechanism, tank containing the suppression agent, and controls shall be factory installed. Controls shall be in stainless-steel control cabinet mounted on wall. Furnish manual pull station for wall mounting. Exposed piping shall be covered with chrome-plated aluminum tubing. Exposed fittings shall be chrome plated.
4. Liquid Extinguishing Agent: Noncorrosive, low-pH liquid.
5. Fire-suppression system controls shall be integrated with controls for fans, lights, and fuel supply and located in a single cabinet for each group of hoods immediately adjacent.
6. Wiring shall have color-coded, numbered terminal blocks and grounding bar. Spare terminals for fire alarm, optional wiring to start fan with fire alarm, red pilot light to indicate fan operation, and control switches shall all be factory wired in control cabinet with relays or starters. Include spare terminals for fire alarm, and wiring to start fan with fire alarm.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Coordinate equipment layout and installation with adjacent Work, including luminaires, HVAC equipment, plumbing, and fire-suppression system components.
- B. Complete field assembly of hoods where required.
  1. Make closed butt and contact joints that do not require filler.
  2. Grind field welds on stainless-steel equipment smooth, and polish to match adjacent finish. Comply with welding requirements in "General Hood Fabrication Requirements" Article.
- C. Install hoods and associated services with clearances and access for maintaining, cleaning, and servicing hoods, filters/baffles, grease extractor, and fire-suppression systems according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Make cutouts in hoods where required to run service lines and to make final connections, and seal openings according to UL 1978.

- E. Securely anchor and attach items and accessories to walls, floors, or bases with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install hoods to operate free from vibration.
- G. Install seismic restraints according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems & Food Service Equipment Guidelines," Appendix A, "Seismic Restraint Details."
- H. Install trim strips and similar items requiring fasteners in a bed of sealant. Fasten with stainless-steel fasteners at **48 inches** o.c. maximum.
- I. Install sealant in joints between equipment and abutting surfaces with continuous joint backing unless otherwise indicated. Provide airtight, watertight, vermin-proof, sanitary joints.
- J. Install lamps, with maximum recommended wattage, in equipment with integral lighting.
- K. Set initial temperatures, and calibrate sensors.
- L. Set field-adjustable switches.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to hoods, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Connect ducts according to requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." Install flexible connectors on makeup air supply duct. Weld exhaust-duct connections with continuous liquidtight joint.
- C. Install fire-suppression piping for remote-mounted suppression systems according to NFPA 17A, "Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each equipment item for proper operation. Repair or replace equipment that is defective, including units that operate below required capacity or that operate with excessive noise or vibration.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Perform hood performance tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Perform fire-suppression system performance tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.

- D. Commercial-kitchen hoods will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial-kitchen hoods.

END OF SECTION 233813

## SECTION 23 7313.16 - INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Indoor, semi-custom air-handling units.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
5. Fans:
  - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
  - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
  - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
8. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, semi-custom air handling unit.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and [mounting][attachment] details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, semi-custom air-handling units, as well as procedures and diagrams.
4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation, supports, and seismic restraints indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators, supports, and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for air-handling units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  4. Restraint of internal components.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Startup service reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, semi-custom air-handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-

handling units and components.

- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- F. Structural Performance: Casing panels are to be self-supporting and capable of withstanding positive/negative **8-inch wg** of internal static pressure, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of **0.0042 inch/inch** of panel span.
- G. Casing Leakage Performance: ASHRAE 111, Class 6 leakage or better at plus or minus **8 inch wg**
- H. Seismic Performance: Air-handling units are to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with [ASCE/SEI 7]<Insert requirement>. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5][1.0].

## 2.2 INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Daikin Applied
  - 2. Trane
  - 3. YORK; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America
- B. Unit Casings:
  - 1. Frame: Modular and providing overall structural integrity without reliance on casing panels for structural support.
  - 2. Base Rail:
    - a. Material: Galvanized steel
    - b. Height: **6 inches**
  - 3. Casing Joints: Hermetically sealed at each corner and around entire perimeter.
  - 4. Double-Wall Construction:
    - a. Outside Casing Wall:

- 1) Material, Galvanized Steel: Minimum 18 gauge thick.
- b. Inside Casing Wall:
  - 1) Material, Galvanized Steel: [Solid][Perforated], minimum 18 gauge
5. Floor Plate:
  - a. Material, Galvanized Steel: Treadplate, minimum 18 gauge thick.
6. Casing Insulation:
  - a. Materials: Injected polyurethane foam insulation.
  - b. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-11 .
  - c. Insulation Thickness: 2 inches.
  - d. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream are to comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Static-Pressure Classifications:
  - a. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 4-inch wg.
  - b. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 2-inch wg.
9. Panels, Doors, and Windows:
  - a. Panels:
    - 1) Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
    - 2) Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement is to allow panels to be opened against airflow
    - 3) Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - 4) Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit.
  - b. Doors:
    - 1) Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
    - 2) Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do not open uncontrollably.
    - 3) Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - 4) Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing .
10. Condensate Drain Pans:



- a. Construction:
    - 1) Single-wall, stainless steel sheet.
  - b. Drain Connection:
    - 1) Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
    - 2) Minimum Connection Size: **NPS 1**
  - c. Slope: Minimum **0.125-in./ft.** slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
  - d. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face.
  - e. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
  - f. Depth: A minimum of **2 inches** deep.
- C. Fan, Drive, And Motor Section:
- 1. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
  - 2. Fans: Centrifugal, galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
    - a. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
      - 1) Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
    - b. Shaft Bearings:
      - 1) Prelubricated and Sealed, Ball Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of 200,000 hours in accordance with ABMA 9.
    - c. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
      - 1) Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
    - d. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
    - e. Plenum Fan Arrays: Contained as defined in AHRI 430. Steel or aluminum frame with inlet cone and structural framing around each fan built into an array of multiple fans. Provide [backdraft][motorized] dampers at each fan to prevent short circuiting of flow if one fan is not operating.
    - f. Backward-Inclined, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
  - 3. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
  - 4. Motors:

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors.
  - b. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - c. Enclosure Type: Open, dripproof.
  - d. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  - e. Motor Bearings:
  - f. Efficiency: Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - g. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
  - h. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
5. Comply with Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."
6. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Serving each fan individually in fan array.
- a. Manufactured Units: Pulse-width modulated; constant torque and variable torque for motors.
  - b. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
  - c. Unit Operating Requirements:
    - 1) Internal Adjustability:
      - a) Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
      - b) Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
      - c) Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9seconds.
      - d) Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9seconds.
      - e) Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
    - 2) Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
      - a) Surge suppression.
      - b) Loss of input signal protection.
      - c) Under- and overvoltage trips.
      - d) Variable-frequency motor controller and motor-overload/overtemperature protection.
      - e) Critical frequency rejection.
      - f) Loss-of-phase protection.
      - g) Reverse-phase protection.
      - h) Motor-overtemperature fault.
    - 3) Bidirectional autospeed search.
    - 4) Torque boost.
    - 5) Motor temperature compensation at slow speeds.
      - a) Panel-mounted operator station.
      - b) Historical logging information and displays.
      - c) Digital indicating devices.
    - 6) Control Signal Interface: Electric.

- 7) Proportional Integral Directive (PID) control interface.
- 8) DDC system for HVAC Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135.

d. Line Conditioning:

- 1) Input line conditioning.
- 2) Output filtering.
- 3) EMI/RFI filtering.

e. Bypass Systems:

- 1) Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual.
- 2) Bypass Controller, Three-Contactor Style: With bypass and input and output isolating contactors[ and isolating switch].

D. Coil Section:

1. General Requirements for Coil Section:

- a. Comply with AHRI 410.
- b. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
- c. For multizone units, provide air deflectors and air baffles to balance airflow across coils.
- d. Coils are not to act as structural component of unit.

2. Cooling Coils:

a. Refrigerant Coil:

- 1) Tubes: Copper.
- 2) Fins:
  - a) Material: Aluminum
  - b) Fin Spacing: Maximum 12 fins per inch.
- 3) Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
- 4) Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
- 5) Frames: Stainless steel.
- 6) Coatings: Corrosion-resistant coating.
- 7) Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated in accordance with ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a) Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

E. Air Filtration Section:

1. Panel Filters:

- a. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.

- b. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
- c. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
- d. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.

F. Dampers:

- 1. Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Steel:

- 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
- 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.

B. Stainless Steel:

- 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
- 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.

C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

D. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 5000hour salt-spray test in accordance with ASTM B117.

- 1. Standards:
  - a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.
  - b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
  - c. ASTM B3359 for cross hatch adhesion of 5B.
- 2. Application: Spray.
- 3. Thickness: 1 mil.
- 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units and their components in accordance with AHRI 430.
- B. AHRI 1060 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units that include air-to-air energy recovery devices in accordance with AHRI 1060.
- C. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Sound Performance Rating Certification: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA 311.
- D. Fan Aerodynamic Performance Rating: Factory test and rate fan performance for airflow,

pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency in accordance with AMCA 210.

- E. Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test in accordance with AMCA 210 and rate in accordance with AMCA 99, AMCA 207, and AMCA 208.
- F. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.
- G. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig internal pressure and to minimum 300-psig internal pressure while underwater, in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Elevated Units: Support units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.
- E. Install filter-gauge, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gauges on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gauges on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.
- F. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using **NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B88, Type M** copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written

- instructions.
  - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
  - 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations.
  - 5.
  - 6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
  - 7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
  - 8. Install new, clean filters.
  - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.
- B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:
- 1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm.
  - 2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
  - 3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: [Owner][Contractor] will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and

inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313.16



SECTION 23 8123.12 - LARGE CAPACITY (7 TONS (25 KW) AND LARGER), COMPUTER-ROOM  
AIR-CONDITIONERS, FLOOR-MOUNTED UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Large capacity (7 tons (25 kW) and larger), computer-room air-conditioners, floor-mounted units.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. COP: Coefficient of performance.
- B. EER: Energy efficiency ratio.
- C. SCR: Silicon controlled rectifier.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for computer-room air-conditioning units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For computer-room air conditioners.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for computer-room air conditioners, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For computer-room air conditioners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of computer-room air conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Warranty Period for Humidifiers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
  3. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LARGE CAPACITY (7 TONS (25 KW) AND LARGER), COMPUTER-ROOM AIR-CONDITIONERS, FLOOR-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Compu-Aire, Inc]
  2. [Data Aire Inc]
  3. [Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.]

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Computer-room air conditioners shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 .
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."

- D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water-cooled condenser shell to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.

## 2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Description: Self-contained, factory assembled, prewired, and prepiped; consisting of cabinet, fan, filters, and controls; for vertical floor mounting in upflow or downflow configuration.
- B. Cabinet and Frame: Welded tubular-steel frame with removable single-thick steel panels and insulated with 1-inch-thick duct liner.
  1. Floor Stand: Welded tubular steel, 6 inches high, with adjustable legs and vibration isolation pads.
  2. Unit with three-way, powder-coated insulated air distribution plenum.
- C. Supply-Air Fan:
  1. Plenum, single inlet, direct drive, electronically commutated, and variable speed.
- D. Refrigeration System:
  1. Compressor: Digital scroll, with oil strainer, internal motor overload protection, resilient suspension system, and crankcase heater.
  2. Refrigeration Circuit:
    - a. Two independent circuits with hot-gas mufflers.
    - b. Low-pressure switch.
    - c. Manually reset, high-pressure switch.
    - d. Thermal-expansion valve with external equalizer.
    - e. Sight glass with moisture indicator.
    - f. Service shutoff valves.
    - g. Charging valves.
    - h. Hot-gas bypass.
    - i. Refrigerant charge.
  3. Refrigerant Evaporator Coil: Direct-expansion coil of seamless copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins, with two circuits, each with solenoid valve.
  4. Remote Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condenser:
    - a. Integral, copper-tube aluminum-fin coil.
    - b. Condenser with surge protection device (SPD) and locking disconnect in the enclosed electrical panel section.
  5. Fan:
    - a. Direct-drive, Electronically Commuted (EC) Motor Fan

6. Split system shall have suction- and liquid-line compatible fittings and refrigerant piping for field interconnection.
- E. Remote Refrigerant Cooler:
1. Corrosion-resistant cabinet.
  2. Copper-tube aluminum-fin coil.
  3. Direct-drive propeller fan with fan guards.
  4. Single-phase motors with internal overload protection.
  5. Disconnect Switch: Non-automatic, molded-case circuit breaker with handle accessible when panel is closed and capable of preventing access until switched to off position.
- F. Electric-Resistance Reheat Coil:
1. Finned-tube electric elements with contactor and high-temperature-limit switches.
  2. SCR to proportionally control the reheat elements providing precise temperature control.
- G. Pre-Filter: 2-inch-thick, disposable, pleated, glass-fiber media.
- H. Electrode Steam Humidifier: Self-contained, microprocessor-controlled unit with disposable, polypropylene-plastic cylinders and having field-adjustable steel electrodes and stainless-steel steam dispersion tube.
1. Plumbing Components and Valve Bodies: Plastic, linked by flexible rubber hosing, with water fill with air gap and solenoid valve incorporating built-in strainer, pressure-reducing and flow-regulating orifice, and drain with integral air gap.
  2. Control: Fully modulating to provide gradual modulation from zero to 100 percent capacity with field-adjustable maximum capacity; with high-water probe.
  3. Drain Cycle: Field-adjustable drain duration and drain interval.
- I. Disconnect Switch:
1. Locking disconnect with handle accessible with the door closed.
  2. Non-locking, non-automatic, molded-case circuit breaker with handle accessible when panel is closed and capable of preventing access until switched to off position.
- J. Control System:
1. Microprocessor unit-mounted panel.
  2. Fan contactor.
  3. Compressor contactor.
  4. Compressor start capacitor.
  5. Control transformer with circuit breaker.
  6. Solid-state temperature- and humidity-control modules.
  7. Humidity contactor.
  8. Time-delay relay.
  9. Heating contactor.
  10. Smoke sensor.
  11. High-temperature thermostat.
  12. Solid-state, wall-mounted control panel with start-stop switch, adjustable humidity set

- point, and adjustable temperature set point.
13. Remote panel to monitor and change temperature and humidity set points and sensitivities of the unit and unit alarms.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where computer-room air conditioners will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Layout and install computer-room air conditioners and suspension system coordinated with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install computer-room air conditioners coordinated with computer-room access flooring Installer.
- C. Install computer-room air conditioners level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- D. Computer-Room Air-Conditioner Mounting: Install using elastomeric pads . Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 1. Minimum Deflection: **1 inch**.
- E. Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condenser Mounting: Install using elastomeric pads on concrete base. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 1. Minimum Deflection: **1 inch**.

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to computer-room air conditioners, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Water and Drainage Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 221116

"Domestic Water Piping." Provide adequate connections for water-cooled units, condensate drain, and humidifier flushing system.

- D. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Provide shutoff valves and piping.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 2. After installing computer-room air conditioners and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Computer-room air conditioners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. After startup service and performance test, change filters and flush humidifier.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain computer-room air conditioners.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY  
Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS  
a NOVUS architects company

END OF SECTION 238123.12

LARGE CAPACITY (7 TONS (25 KW) AND  
LARGER), COMPUTER-ROOM AIR-  
CONDITIONERS, FLOOR-MOUNTED UNITS  
Construction Documents

238123.12 - PAGE 7 OF 7  
4/26/2024

## SECTION 23 8126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Split-system air-conditioners.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard



for Refrigeration Systems."

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. For Compressor: One] year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Samsung HVAC
  - 2. SANYO North America Corporation
  - 3. [
- B. Indoor Units (5 tons (18 kW) or Less):
  - 1. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
    - a. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
    - b. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
    - c. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
    - d. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than **0.1 inch**; leak tested to **300 psig** underwater; with a two-position control valve.
    - e. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in

magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.

f. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.

g. Fan Motors:

- 1) Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements.
- 2) Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- 3) Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

h. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

i. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.

j. Condensate Drain Pans:

- 1) Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.

a) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1

b) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

- 2) Single-wall, galvanized]-steel sheet.

- 3) Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.

a) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1

- 4) Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

- 5) Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2. Floor-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

a. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.

- 1) Discharge Grille: Steel with surface-mounted frame
- 2) Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
- 3) Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated.

b. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.

c. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in

magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.

d. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.

e. Fan Motors:

- 1) Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified.
- 2) Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

f. Air Filtration Section:

1) General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

- a) Comply with NFPA 90A.
- b) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- c) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

C. Outdoor Units (5 tons (18 kW) or Less:

1. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

- a. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
- b. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  - 1) Compressor Type: Scroll.
  - 2) Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
  - 3) Refrigerant: R-410A.
  - 4) Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
- c. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
- d. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
- e. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to **45 deg F**.
- f. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

A. Install units level and plumb.

- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
  - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- D. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - 1. Remote, Water-Cooled Condenser Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and

equipment.

- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

## SECTION 26 0519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
3. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
4. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable

C. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated, and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Encore Wire Corporation.
4. Okenite Company (The).

5. Southwire Company, LLC.

## C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

## D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

## E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

## 2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

## A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Okenite Company (The).
2. Service Wire Co.
3. Southwire Company, LLC.
4. WESCO.

## C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

## D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

## E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

## F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

## G. Conductor Insulation:

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

H. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

### 2.3 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. CommScope, Inc.
3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
4. PYROTENAX; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
5. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
6. West Penn Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.

B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, no less than No. 18 AWG.

D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

### 2.4 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. 3M Electrical Products.
2. ABB, Electrification Business.
3. Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
4. ILSCO.
5. Ideal Industries, Inc.
6. NSi Industries LLC.
7. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.



- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
  - 1. Material: Copper.
  - 2. Type: Two holes with long barrels.
  - 3. Termination: Compression.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
  - 1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits:
  - 1. Copper, Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

#### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Comply with NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway.
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system must be installed in a dedicated pathway system.
    - a. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
  - 3. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is not permitted.
  - 4. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables may be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- F. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1 inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than un spliced conductors. Make splices and taps in accessible locations.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 26 0526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding and bonding conductors.
2. Grounding and bonding clamps.
3. Grounding and bonding bushings.
4. Grounding and bonding hubs.
5. Grounding and bonding connectors.
6. Intersystem bonding bridge grounding connector.
7. Grounding and bonding busbars.
8. Grounding (earthing) electrodes.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product indicated.

##### B. Shop Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Test wells.
2. Rod electrodes.

##### C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

##### A. Equipment Grounding Conductor:

1. General Characteristics: 600 V, THHN/THWN-2, copper wire or cable, green color, in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

##### B. ASTM - Bare Copper Grounding and Bonding Conductor:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - b. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
2. Referenced Standards: Complying with one or more of the following:
  - a. Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B3
  - b. Concentric-Lay Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B8.
  - c. Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B33.
  - d. 19-Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B787/B787M.

## 2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING CLAMPS

- A. Description: Clamps suitable for attachment of grounding and bonding conductors to grounding electrodes, pipes, tubing, and rebar. Grounding and bonding clamps specified in this article are also suitable for use with communications applications. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Listing Criteria:
    - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
    - b. Grounding and Bonding Equipment for Communications: UL CCN KDSH; including UL 467.
    - c.
- B. UL KDER and KDSH - Hex-Fitting-Type Pipe and Rod Grounding and Bonding Clamp:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - d. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
    - e. ILSCO.
    - f. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    - g. Panduit Corp.
  2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Two pieces with zinc-plated bolts.

- b. Clamp Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
- c. Listed for outdoor use.

C. UL KDER and KDSH - U-Bolt-Type Pipe and Rod Grounding and Bonding Clamp:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - e. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
  - f. ILSCO.
  - g. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - h. Panduit Corp.
2. General Characteristics:
  - a. Clamp Material: Aluminum.
  - b. Listed for outdoor use.

D. UL KDER and KDSH - Strap-Type Pipe and Rod Grounding and Bonding Clamp:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - b. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - c. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - d. Panduit Corp.

E. UL KDER - Beam Grounding and Bonding Clamp:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Panduit Corp.
  - d. Penn-Union Corp.; subsidiary of Nesco, Inc.
2. General Characteristics: Mechanical-type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions; with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

F. UL KDER - Exothermically Welded Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Continental Industries; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - f. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
2. General Characteristics: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.3 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSHINGS

- A. Description: Bonding bushings connect conduit fittings, tubing fittings, threaded metal conduit, and unthreaded metal conduit to metal boxes and equipment enclosures, and have one or more bonding screws intended to provide electrical continuity between bushing and enclosure. Grounding bushings have provision for connection of bonding or grounding conductor and may or may not also have bonding screws.
- B. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Listing Criteria:
    - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
- C. UL KDER - Bonding Bushing
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - c. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    - d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    - e. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  2. General Characteristics: Threaded bushing with insulated throat.
- D. UL KDER - Grounding Bushing
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.



- b. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - c. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - e. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
2. General Characteristics: Threaded bushing with insulated throat and mechanical-type wire terminal.

## 2.4 GROUNDING AND BONDING HUBS

- A. Description: Hubs with certified grounding or bonding locknut.
- B. Performance Criteria:
- 1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Listing Criteria:
    - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
- C. UL KDER - Grounding and Bonding Hub:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Arlington Industries, Inc.
    - c. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    - d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - e. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    - f. Penn-Union Corp.; subsidiary of Nesco, Inc.
  - 2. General Characteristics: Insulated, gasketed, watertight hub with mechanical-type wire terminal.

## 2.5 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONNECTORS

- A. Performance Criteria:
- 1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2. Listing Criteria:

- a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
- b. Grounding and Bonding Equipment for Communications: UL CCN KDSH; including UL 467.

## B. UL KDER - Pressure-Type Grounding and Bonding Busbar Cable Connector:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
2. General Characteristics: Copper or copper alloy, for compression bonding of one or more conductor directly to copper busbar. Listed for direct burial.

## C. UL KDER - Lay-In Lug Mechanical-Type Grounding and Bonding Busbar Terminal:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
  - d. Greaves Corp.; Essex Products Group, Inc.
  - e. ILSCO.
2. General Characteristics: Mechanical-type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.

## D. UL KDER - Crimped Lug Pressure-Type Grounding and Bonding Busbar Terminal:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
  - d. ILSCO.
2. General Characteristics: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals; with long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8 or 1 inch centers for two-bolt connection to busbar.

## E. UL KDER - Crimped Pressure-Type Grounding and Bonding Cable Connector:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.

- c. ILSCO.
  - d. allG Fabrication (formerly ALT).
- 2. General Characteristics: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to conductor when connector is compressed around conductor.
  - a. Tinned copper, C and H shaped.

## 2.6 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSBARS

- A. Description: Miscellaneous grounding and bonding device that serves as common connection for multiple grounding and bonding conductors.
- B. Performance Criteria:
  - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Listing Criteria:
    - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
- C. UL KDER - Equipment Room Grounding and Bonding Busbar:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Burndy; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    - b. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
    - c. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    - d. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
    - e. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
    - f. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
    - g. ILSCO.
    - h. Panduit Corp.
  - 2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Bus: Rectangular bar of annealed copper.
    - b. Mounting Stand-Off Insulators: Lexan or PVC.
      - 1) Comply with UL 891 for use in 600 V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
  - 3. Options:
    - a. Dimensions: 1/4 by 4 inch in cross section; length as indicated on Drawings. Required.

- b. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide 4 inches clearance to access rear of bus. Brackets and bolts must be stainless steel.

D. UL KDER - Rack and Cabinet Bonding Busbar:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
  - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - c. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
  - d. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - e. Panduit Corp.
2. General Characteristics:
  - a. Bus: Rectangular bar of hard-drawn solid copper.
  - b. Horizontal Mounting Dimensions: Designed for mounting in 19 inches wide equipment racks or cabinets.
  - c. Vertical Mounting Dimensions: Designed for mounting in 72 inches high equipment racks or cabinets.
  - d. Predrilled Hole Pattern: Accepts connectors for grounding and bonding conductor sizes 14 AWG to 2/0 AWG.
  - e. Mounting Hardware: Stainless steel or copper-plated, for attachment to rack.

2.7 GROUNDING (EARTHING) ELECTRODES

- A. Description: Grounding electrodes include rod electrodes, ring electrodes, metal underground water pipes, metal building frames, concrete-encased electrodes, and pipe and plate electrodes.
- B. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Listing Criteria:
    - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
- C. UL KDER - Rod Electrode:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    - b. Continental Industries; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    - c. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.

- d. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
- e. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
- 2. General Characteristics: Copper-clad steel;

D. UL KDER - Plate Electrode:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ALLTEC LLC.
  - b. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
- 2. General Characteristics: 1/4 inch thick, hot dip galvanized.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.
- B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of electrical service equipment connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of electrical service equipment only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 SELECTION OF BUSBARS

- A. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inch minimum from wall, 6 inch above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

#### 3.3 SELECTION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Custom-Length Insulated Equipment Bonding Jumpers: 6 AWG, 19-strand, Type THHN.

- C. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
- D. Bonding Conductor: 4 AWG or 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
- E. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- F. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- G. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, 2/0 AWG minimum.
  - 1. Bury at least 30 inches below grade.
  - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inch above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

### 3.4 SELECTION OF CONNECTORS

- A. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor and install in conduit.
  - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Techniques:
  - 1. Conductors:
    - a. Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

2. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - a. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - b. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - c. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - d. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - e. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
  - f. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
    - 1) Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate adjacent parts.
    - 2) Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
    - 3) Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if disconnect-type connection is required, use bolted clamp.
  - g. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
    - 1) Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use bolted clamp connector or bolt lug-type connector to pipe flange by using one of lug bolts of flange. Where dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
    - 2) Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with bolted connector.
    - 3) Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
  - h. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
  - i. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 ft apart.
3. Electrodes:

- a. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1) Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
    - 2) Use exothermic welds for below-grade connections.
  - b. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to service grounding electrode conductor.
  - c. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and must be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
    - 1) Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
  - d. Concrete-Encased Electrode (Ufer Ground):
    - 1) Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 70; use minimum of 20 ft of bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG.
      - a) If concrete foundation is less than 20 ft long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
      - b) Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
    - 2) Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least 20 ft long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create required length.
4. Grounding at Service:
- a. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors must be connected to ground bus. Install main bonding jumper between neutral and ground buses.
5. Grounding Underground Distribution System Components:
- a. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inch above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
  - b. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
  - c. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above



finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inch above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

- d. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions with splicing and termination kits.
- e. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ring electrode around pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than 2 AWG for ring electrode and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ring electrode not less than 6 inches from foundation.

6. Equipment Grounding:

- a. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with feeders and branch circuits.
- b. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1) Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2) Lighting circuits.
  - 3) Receptacle circuits.
  - 4) Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5) Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6) Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7) Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
  - 8) Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
  - 9) X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- c. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- d. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- e. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from

raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

- f. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure and install separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- g. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- h. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
  - 1) Grounding Conductor: Bare, tinned copper, not less than 8 AWG.
  - 2) Gates: Must be bonded to grounding conductor with flexible bonding jumper.
  - 3) Barbed Wire: Strands must be bonded to grounding conductor.

7. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 ft except as follows:

- a. Fences within 100 ft of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 ft.
  - 1) Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
    - a) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
    - b) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
- b. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at maximum distance of 150 ft on each side of crossing.
- c. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive grounding rod vertically until top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
- d. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- e. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground fence and bond fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.

## B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with calibrated torque wrench in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells. Make tests at ground rods before conductors are connected.
  - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
  - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method in accordance with IEEE Std 81.
  - c. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to record of tests and observations. Include number of rods driven and their depth at each location and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

## C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective components and retest.

## D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

1. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - a. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10  $\Omega$ .

## 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect grounding and bonding cables and equipment from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 26 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment supports assemblies.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Welding certificates.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

##### A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings from an applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

#### 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

##### A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch on center in at least one surface.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - c. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - d. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.

- e. Flex-Strut Inc.
    - f. Haydon Corporation.
    - g. Unistrut; Atkore International.
  2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. The body must be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Hilti, Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - 2) Empire Industries, Inc.
  - 3) Hilti, Inc.
  - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural elements.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325.
  6. Toggle Bolts: Stainless steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

### 2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SELECTION

- A. Comply with the following standards for selection and installation of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  1. NECA NEIS 101
  2. NECA NEIS 102.
  3. NECA NEIS 105.
  4. NECA NEIS 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and ERM as scheduled in NECA NEIS 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be 1/4 inch in diameter.

- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

- 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
  - 6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- D. Drill holes for expansion anchor in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.

END OF SECTION 260529

## SECTION 26 0533.13 - CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type HDPE and Type EPEC duct raceways and fittings.
3. Type FMC-S and Type FMC-A duct raceways.
4. Type IMC duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Type LFNC duct raceways.
7. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
8. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
9. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
10. Solvent cement.

B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage for Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (Type NUCC).
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior duct banks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Conduit: A structure containing one or more duct raceways.

B. Duct Raceway: A single enclosed raceway for conductors or cable.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type HDPE and Type EPEC duct raceways and fittings.
3. Type FMC-S and Type FMC-A duct raceways.
4. Type FMT duct raceways.
5. Type IMC duct raceways.
6. Type LFMC duct raceways.
7. Type LFNC duct raceways.



8. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
9. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
10. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
11. Solvent cement.

B. Sustainable design submittals.

1. Solvent cement.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type HDPE and Type EPEC duct raceways and fittings.
3. Type FMC-S and Type FMC-A duct raceways.
4. Type IMC duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Type LFNC duct raceways.
7. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
8. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
9. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
10. Solvent cement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TYPE EMT-S DUCT RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FJMX; including UL 797.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL FJMX - Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.

- b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
- c. Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
- d. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
- e. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
- f. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
- 2. Material: Steel.
- 3. Options:
  - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
  - b. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
  - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
  - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.2 TYPE ENT DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

### A. Performance Criteria:

- 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
- 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKHU; including UL 1653.

### B. Source Quality Control:

- 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
- 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

### C. UL FKHU - Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT) and Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Cantex Inc.
  - c. JM Eagle.
- 2. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
  - b. Fittings:
    - 1) Mechanically Attached Fittings: UL 1653.
    - 2) Solvent-Attached Fittings: UL 651.

## 2.3 TYPE HDPE AND TYPE EPEC DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN EAZX; including UL 651A.
- B. Source Quality Control:
1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
  2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL EAZX - Schedule 40 Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (HDPE-40):
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Blue Diamond Industries, LLC.
    - b. JM Eagle.
    - c. Petroflex North America.
    - d. Prysmian Cables and Systems; Prysmian Group North America.
    - e. Southwire Company, LLC.
  2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
  3. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
- D. UL EAZX - Schedule 80 Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (HDPE-80):
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Blue Diamond Industries, LLC.
    - b. JM Eagle.
    - c. Petroflex North America.
    - d. Prysmian Cables and Systems; Prysmian Group North America.
    - e. Southwire Company, LLC.
  2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
  3. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
- E. UL EAZX - Type A Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-A):
1. Dimensional Specifications: Type A.
  2. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
- F. UL EAZX - Type B Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-B):

1. Dimensional Specifications: Type B.
2. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

## 2.4 TYPE FMC-S DUCT RACEWAYS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXUZ; including UL 1.

### B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

### C. UL DXUZ - Steel Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC-S):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Anaconda Sealtite; Anamet Electrical, Inc.
  - c. Electri-Flex Company.
  - d. International Metal Hose Co.
  - e. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
  - b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.5 TYPE IMC DUCT RACEWAYS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYBY; including UL 1242.

### B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DYBY - Steel Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - c. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
  - d. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
  - e. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
2. Options:
  - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
  - b. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
  - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
  - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.6 TYPE LFMC DUCT RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXHR; including UL 360.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DXHR - Steel Liquid tight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Anaconda Sealtite; Anamet Electrical, Inc.
  - c. Electri-Flex Company.
  - d. International Metal Hose Co.
2. Material: Steel.

## 3. Options:

- a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
- b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.7 TYPE LFNC DUCT RACEWAYS

## A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXOQ; including UL 1660.

## B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

## C. UL DXOQ - Layered (Type A) Liquid tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (LFNC-A):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; Atkore International.
  - b. Electri-Flex Company.
  - c. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Additional Criteria: Type A conduit with smooth seamless inner core and cover bonded together with one or more reinforcement layers between core and cover.
3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
  - b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Markings: Outdoor.

## D. UL DXOQ - Integral (Type B) Liquid tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (LFNC-B):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cambridge Resources.
  - b. Electri-Flex Company.
  - c. Superflex Ltd.
  - d. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Additional Criteria: Type B conduit with smooth inner surface with integral reinforcement within conduit wall.

## 3. Options:

- a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
- b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.
- c. Markings: 80 deg C dry.

## 2.8 TYPE PVC DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

## A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DZYR; including UL 651.

## B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

## C. UL DZYR - Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
  - c. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
  - d. NAPCO; Westlake Chemical Corp.
  - e. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
  - f. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
  - b. Markings: For directional boring applications.

## D. UL DZYR - Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
  - c. JM Eagle.
  - d. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).

- e. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
  2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
  3. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
    - b. Markings: For directional boring applications.
- E. UL DZYZR - Type A Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Conduit (PVC-A) and Fittings:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Southern Pipe, Inc.
  2. Dimensional Specifications: Type A.
  3. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
- F. UL DZYZR - Type EB Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Underground Conduit (PVC-EB) and Fittings:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. JM Eagle.
    - b. Southern Pipe, Inc.
  2. Dimensional Specifications: Type EB.
  3. Options:
    - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 78 (trade size 3) FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE
- G. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Source Quality Control:
  1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
  2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- I. UL DWTT - Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type HDPE, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Duct Raceways:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:



## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- a. ABB, Electrification Business.
- b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
- c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
- d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
- e. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
- f. Southwire Company, LLC.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.
3. Options:
  - a. Material: Steel.
  - b. Coupling Method: Raintight compression coupling with distinctive color gland nut
  - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

### J. UL FKAV - Fittings for Type EMT Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - c. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - f. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - g. Southwire Company, LLC.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKAV; including UL 514B.
3. Options:
  - a. Material: Steel.
  - b. Coupling Method: Setscrew coupling. Setscrew couplings with only single screw per conduit are unacceptable.
  - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

### K. UL ILNR - Fittings for Type FMC Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Fittings Corp. (AMFICO).
  - b. Liquid Tight Connector Co.
  - c. Southwire Company, LLC.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN ILNR; including UL 514B.

### L. UL DXAS - Fittings for Type LFMC and Type LFNC Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Liquid Tight Connector Co.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXAS; including UL 514B.

## 2.9 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FOIZ; including UL Subject 2419.

### B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

### C. UL FOIZ - Electrically Conductive Corrosion-Resistant Compound for Threaded Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.

## 2.10 SOLVENT CEMENTS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.

### B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Sustainable Design Submittals: Prepare and submit the following documentation:
3. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

- C. UL DWTT - Solvent Cements for Type PVC Duct Raceways and Fittings:

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SELECTION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of duct raceways. Consult Engineer for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Special Instructions Regarding HDPE Conduits: Although Article 353 of NFPA 70 permits use of HDPE conduits where encased in concrete aboveground, UL CCN EAZX listing requirements state that HDPE and EPEC underground conduits are intended only for use where direct buried with or without being encased in concrete. Specified Type HDPE underground conduits are not permitted to be used aboveground on Project.
- C. Outdoors:
1. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERM C.
  2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERM C.
    - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
  3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: ERM C.
  4. Concealed Aboveground: IM C.
  5. Direct Buried: PVC-80.
  6. Concrete Encased Not in Trench: PVC-40.
  7. Concrete Encased in Trench: PVC-40
  8. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
1. Type EMT-S: Article 358 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
  2. Type HDPE and Type EPEC: Article 353 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
  3. Type ERM C-A: Article 344 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
  4. Type ERM C-S: Article 344 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
  5. Type FMC-S: Article 348 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
  6. Type FMC-A: Article 348 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
  7. Type IM C: Article 342 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
  8. Type LFMC: Article 350 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.

9. Type LFNC: Article 342 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
10. Type PVC: Article 356 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
11. Expansion Fittings: NEMA FB 2.40.
12. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Installation Techniques:

1. General Requirements for Installation of Duct Raceways:

- a. Complete duct raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- b. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of 2 ft above finished floor.
- c. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends in conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which no more than equivalent of two 90-degree fewer bends are permitted. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- d. Make bends in duct raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- e. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- f. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- g. Install duct sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed duct raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install duct sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
- h. Install devices to seal duct raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of duct raceways at the following points:
  - 1) Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2) Where an underground service duct raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3) Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  - 4) Conduit extending into pressurized duct raceway and equipment.
  - 5) Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
  - 6) Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- i. Do not install duct raceways or electrical items on "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- j. Do not install conduits within 2 inches of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- k. Keep duct raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal duct raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- l. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits metric designator 53 (trade size 2) and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.

- m. Install pull wires in empty duct raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200 lb. tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground duct raceways designated as spare above grade alongside duct raceways in use.
- n. Install duct raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.
  - 1) Termination fittings with shoulders do not require two locknuts.
- o. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to metric designator 35 (trade size 1-1/4) and insulated throat metal bushings on metric designator 41 (trade size 1-1/2) and larger conduits terminated with locknuts.
- 2. Types ERM and IMC:
  - a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of duct raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's published instructions.
- 3. Type ERM-S-PVC:
  - a. Follow manufacturer's installation instructions for clamping, cutting, threading, bending, and assembly.
  - b. Provide PVC-coated sealing locknut for exposed male threads transitioning into female NPT threads that do not have sealing sleeves, including transitions from PVC couplings/female adapters to Type ERM-S-PVC elbows in direct-burial applications. PVC-coated sealing locknuts must not be used in place of conduit hub. PVC-coated sealing locknut must cover exposed threads on Type ERM-S-PVC duct raceway.
  - c. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated duct raceway with manufacturer-approved corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- 4. Types FMC, LFM, and LFNC:
  - a. Provide a maximum of 72 inch of flexible conduit for recessed and semi recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
- 5. Types PVC, HDPE, and EPEC:
  - a. Do not install Type PVC, Type HDPE, or Type EPEC conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 122 deg F. Conductor ratings must be limited to 75 deg C except where installed in a trench outside buildings with concrete encasement, where 90 deg C conductors are permitted.
  - b. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions for solvent welding and fittings.

6. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
  - a. Provide EMT, IMC, or ERM C for duct raceways.
  - b. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
7. Duct Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:
  - a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than 4 AWG.
8. Duct Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
  - a. ERM C-S-PVC: Provide only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Provide sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. EMT: Provide setscrew, fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  - c. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
9. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - a. Install in runs of aboveground ERM C and EMT conduit that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that have straight-run length that exceeds 100 ft.
  - b. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for the following locations:
    - 1) Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - 2) Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - 3) Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - 4) Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
  - c. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
  - d. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  - e. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit support to allow for expansion movement.

10. Duct Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements: Seal duct raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty or firestopping.
11. Identification: Provide labels for conduit assemblies, duct raceways, and associated electrical equipment.
  - a. Provide warning signs.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Coordinate with Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for installation of firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Coordinate with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduit hangers and supports.

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533.13

## SECTION 26 0533.16 - BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
2. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
3. Cover plates for device boxes.

B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
2. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
3. Cover plates for device boxes.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Shop drawings for floor boxes.

C. Sustainable design submittals.

1. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
2. Cover plates for device boxes.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions:

1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
2. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
3. Cover plates for device boxes.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

## A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCIT; including UL 514A.

## B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
3. Samples:
  - a. Floor Box Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and flooring inserts for each type of floor box.
  - b. Recessed Access-Floor Box Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and flooring inserts for each type of floor box.

## C. UL QCIT - Metallic Outlet Boxes and Covers:

1. Description: Box having pry out openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
2. Options:
  - a. Material: Sheet steel.
  - b. Sheet Metal Depth: Minimum 1.5 inch.
  - c. Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb.

## D. UL QCIT - Metallic Conduit Bodies:

1. Description: Means for providing access to interior of conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ABB, Electrification Business.
- b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
- c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
- d. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
- e. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
- f. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
- g. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
- h. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

## E. UL QCIT - Metallic Device Boxes:

1. Description: Box with provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
  - d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - f. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - g. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - h. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - i. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
3. Options:
  - a. Material: Sheet steel.
  - b. Sheet Metal Depth: minimum 1.5 inch.

## F. UL QCIT - Metallic Extension Rings:

1. Description: Ring intended to extend sides of outlet box or device box to increase box depth, volume, or both.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.

- f. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
- g. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
- h. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.

G. UL QCIT - Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:

- 1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Arlington Industries, Inc.
  - c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
  - d. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - f. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - g. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - h. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - i. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
  - j. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.

H. UL QCIT - Metallic Recessed Access-Floor Boxes and Recessed Floor Box Covers:

- 1. Description: Floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below floor surface and floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within floor box.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. FSR Inc.
  - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - d. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

2.2 JUNCTION BOXES AND PULL BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN BGUZ; including UL 50 and UL 50E.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Sustainable Design Submittals: Prepare and submit the following documentation for adhesive solvents:
3. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL BGUZ - Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Adalet.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. FSR Inc.
  - e. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  - f. Hubbell Industrial Controls; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - g. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - h. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
3. Options:
  - a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.

D. UL BGUZ - Indoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Adalet.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.

## 3. Options:

- a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.

## E. UL BGUZ - Outdoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Adalet.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
3. Options:
  - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

## 2.3 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES

## A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCIT or UL CCN QCMZ; including UL 514D.
3. Wall plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wall plate finish.

## B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Sustainable Design Submittals: Prepare and submit the following documentation for adhesive solvents:
  - a.
3. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

## C. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.

- c. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - f. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - g. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - h. Panduit Corp.
  - i. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
  - j. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
2. Options:
- a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
  - b. Wall plate Material: As indicated on architectural Drawings.
- D. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Nonmetallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
  - d. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - e. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - f. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - g. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - h. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - i. Panduit Corp.
  - j. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
2. Options:
- a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
  - b. Wall plate Material: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device.
  - c. Color: White.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Shop Drawings: Prepare and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings for Floor Boxes: Show that floor boxes are located to avoid interferences and are structurally allowable. Indicate floor thickness at location where boxes are embedded in concrete floors and underfloor clearances where boxes are installed in raised floors.

### 3.2 SELECTION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Degree of Protection:
  1. Outdoors:
    - a. Type 3R.
    - b. Locations Exposed to Hose down: Type 4.
    - c. Locations in-Ground or Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
  2. Indoors:
    - a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Surface Mounted in Kitchens and Other Locations Exposed to Oil or Coolants: Type 12.
    - c. Flush Mounted in Kitchens and Other Locations Exposed to Oil or Coolants: Type 12.
    - d. Locations Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
    - e. Locations Exposed to Spraying Oil or Coolants: Type 13.
- C. Exposed Boxes Installed Less Than 2.5 m (8 ft) Above Floor:
  1. Provide cast-metal boxes.
  2. Provide exposed cover. Flat covers with angled mounting slots or knockouts are prohibited.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
  1. Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Article 314 of NFPA 70.
  2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Installation Techniques:

1. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.
2. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If the mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to bottom of box unless otherwise indicated.
3. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.
4. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.
5. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
6. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.
7. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.
8. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
9. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
10. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
11. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
12. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.
13. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
  - a. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
  - b. Provide gaskets for wall plates and covers.
14. Identification: Provide labels for boxes and associated electrical equipment.
  - a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components.
  - b. Provide warning signs.
  - c. Label each box with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect boxes from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 260533.16



## SECTION 26 0543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EPEC raceways and fittings.
2. Type ERMCS raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
3. Type IMC raceways.
4. Type PVC raceways and fittings.
5. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
6. Threaded metal joint compound.
7. Solvent cement.
8. Duct accessories.
9. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground wiring.
10. Manholes for exterior underground wiring.
11. Duct sealing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage for Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (Type NUCC).

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

B. Preinstallation Coordination Meeting(s): For underground ducts and raceways. Conduct meeting(s) at Project site before Roughing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
2. Ducts, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes.
4. Underground-line warning tape.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Precast or Factory-Fabricated Concrete Structures:

- a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including attachments to other Work.
    - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes, and methods and materials for waterproofing duct entry locations.
    - c. Include reinforcement details.
    - d. Include frame and cover design and manhole chimneys.
    - e. Include grounding details.
    - f. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, sumps, and other accessories.
    - g. Include joint details.
  2. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
    - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
    - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes, and methods and materials for waterproofing duct entry locations.
    - c. Include cover design.
    - d. Include grounding details.
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
1. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TYPE EPEC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

#### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 651A and UL CCN EAZX.

#### B. Schedule 40 Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-40):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Blue Diamond Industries, LLC.
  - b. JM Eagle.
  - c. Petroflex North America.
  - d. Prysmian Cables and Systems; Prysmian Group North America.
  - e. Southwire Company, LLC.
2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
3. Options:

- a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

C. Schedule 80 Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-80):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Blue Diamond Industries, LLC.
  - b. JM Eagle.
  - c. Petroflex North America.
  - d. Prysmian Cables and Systems; Prysmian Group North America.
  - e. Southwire Company, LLC.
2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

2.2 TYPE ERM-C-S RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 6 and UL CCN DYIX.

B. Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERM-C-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - b. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - c. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - d. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
  - e. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
  - f. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
  - g. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
  - h. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
2. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
3. Options:
  - a. Interior Coating: Zinc.
  - b. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
  - c. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.3 TYPE IMC RACEWAYS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 1242 and UL CCN DYBY.

### B. Steel Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - c. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
  - d. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
  - e. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
  - f. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
2. Options:
  - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
  - b. Interior Coating: Zinc.
  - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
  - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 TYPE PVC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

### A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 651 and UL CCN DZYR.

### B. Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
  - c. JM Eagle.
  - d. NAPCO; Westlake Chemical Corp.
  - e. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
  - f. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
3. Options:

- a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
- b. Markings: For directional boring applications.

C. Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
  - c. JM Eagle.
  - d. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
  - e. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
- 2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
- 3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
  - b. Markings: For directional boring applications.

D. Type A Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Conduit (PVC-A) and Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Southern Pipe, Inc.
- 2. Dimensional Specifications: Type A.
- 3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

E. Type EB Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Underground Conduit (PVC-EB) and Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. JM Eagle.
  - b. Southern Pipe, Inc.
- 2. Dimensional Specifications: Type EB.
- 3. Options:
  - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 53 (trade size 2) FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

F. Performance Criteria:

- 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.

G. Metallic Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
  - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
  - e. Penn Aluminum Conduit & EMT; Penn Aluminum International LLC; Berkshire Hathaway.
  - f. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - g. Southwire Company, LLC.
  - h. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL CCN DWTT.
3. Options:
  - a. Material: Steel.
  - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
  - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

2.5 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL Subject 2419 and UL CCN FOIZ.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.

2.6 SOLVENT CEMENTS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: As recommended by conduit manufacturer in accordance with UL 514B and UL CCN DWTT.

B. Solvent Cements for Type PVC Raceways and Fittings:

## 2.7 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
  - c. Cantex Inc.
  - d. IPEX USA LLC.
  - e. PenCell Plastics; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: In accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 2.8 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

- A. Performance Criteria:
- 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. General Characteristics:
    - a. ASTM C858 for design and manufacturing processes.
    - b. SCTE 77.
- B. Source Quality Control:
- 1. Precast Concrete Utility Structures: Test and inspect in accordance with ASTM C1037.
  - 2. Polymer Concrete and Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototypes: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests must be for specified tier ratings of products supplied. Testing machine pressure gages must have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.
    - a. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers must be by an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer must certify tests by manufacturer.
- C. Precast Concrete Handholes and Boxes:
- 1. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. The frame and cover must form the top of enclosure and must have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
    - b. Oldcastle Infrastructure Inc.; CRH Americas.
    - c. Riverton Concrete Products.
    - d. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
    - e. Utility Vault Co.
    - f. Wausau Tile, Inc.
  3. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have an open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Frame and Cover:
    - a. Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
    - b. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
    - c. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
  5. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
    - a. Extension must provide increased depth of 12 inch.
    - b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure and arranged to provide closure.
  6. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at installation location with ground-water level at grade.
  7. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus additional 12 inch vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
  8. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
  9. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- D. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover:
1. Description: Molded of sand, concrete, and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or combination.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armorcast Products Company; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    - b. MacLean Highline.
    - c. NewBasis.
    - d. Oldcastle Infrastructure Inc.; CRH Americas.



- e. Quazite; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 3. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have an open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and installed location.
    - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
    - b. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
  - 5. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings must mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 6. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings must mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 7. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
  - 8. Options:
    - a. Color: Gray.
- E. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Frame and Cover:
- 1. Description: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armorcast Products Company; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    - b. NewBasis.
    - c. Oldcastle Infrastructure Inc.; CRH Americas.
    - d. Quazite; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 3. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have an open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
    - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
    - b. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
  - 5. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings must mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 6. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
  - 7. Options:
    - a. Color: Gray.

## F. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes:

1. Description: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers made of reinforced fiberglass.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MacLean Highline.
  - b. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
  - c. Oldcastle Infrastructure Inc.; CRH Americas.
  - d. Quazite; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
3. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have an open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
  - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  - b. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
5. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings must mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
6. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
7. Options:
  - a. Color: Gray.

## 2.9 MANHOLES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

## A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics:
  - a. ASTM C858 for design and manufacturing processes.
  - b. SCTE 77.

## B. Precast Concrete Manholes:

1. Description: One-piece units and units with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Carder Concrete Products.
  - b. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.

- c. Oldcastle Infrastructure Inc.; CRH Americas.
  - d. Rinker Group, Ltd.
  - e. Riverton Concrete Products.
  - f. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
  - g. Utility Vault Co.
  - h. Wausau Tile, Inc.
3. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus additional 12 inch vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
  4. Duct Entrances in Manhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
  5. Ground Rod Sleeve: Provide 3 inch PVC sleeve in manhole floors 2 inch from wall adjacent to, but not underneath, duct entering structure.
  6. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at installation location with ground-water level at grade.
  7. Source Quality Control: Test and inspect in accordance with ASTM C1037.

C. Cast-In-Place Concrete Manholes:

1. Description: Underground utility structures, constructed in place, complete with accessories, hardware, and features. Include concrete knockout panels for duct entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
2. Additional Criteria: Comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

## 2.10 DUCT SEALING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Gardner Bender.
  3. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  4. NSi Industries LLC.
  5. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Duct-Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F. Compound must be capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduit, conduit and duct coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals. Duct sealing compounds must be removable without damaging ducts or cables.
- C. Inflatable Duct-Sealing System: Wraparound inflatable bladder that seals ducts that are empty or containing conductors against air and water infiltration. The system is suitable for use in steel, plastic, or concrete ducts and penetrations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in field. Notify Architect if there is conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

### 3.2 SELECTION OF UNDERGROUND DUCTS

- A. Duct for Electrical Feeders: PVC-40, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: PVC-40, direct buried unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Bored Underground Duct: EPEC-80 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths: PVC-40.
- E. Underground Ducts Crossing Roadways: PVC-40, encased in reinforced concrete.
- F. Stub-ups: Concrete encased, PVC-40.

### 3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Restore area after construction vehicle traffic in immediate area is complete.
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures in accordance with "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF DUCTS AND DUCT BANKS

#### A. Reference Standards:

1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NEMA TCB 2 for installation of underground ducts and duct banks.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

#### B. Special Techniques:

1. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
2. Steel raceway, bends, and fittings in on Project must be of same type.
3. Slope: Pitch duct minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from high point between two manholes to drain in both directions.
4. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole.
5. Install expansion fitting near center of straight-line duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch.
6. Curves and Bends:
  - a. Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with minimum radius of 48 inch, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements, except bends over 45 degrees must be made with minimum radius of 48 inch. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved. Use PVC heating bender for bending PVC conduit.
  - c. Duct must have maximum of 180 degrees of bends between pull points.
7. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in nonmetallic duct and fittings and make watertight in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose and encase coupling with minimum 3 inch of concrete for minimum of 12 inch on each side of coupling.
  - a. Install insulated grounding bushings on steel raceway terminations that are less than 12 inches below grade or floor level and do not terminate in hubs.
8. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing duct will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 104 deg F. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 104 deg F, and anywhere duct crosses above underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate duct bank from steam line to maintain maximum environmental temperature of 104 deg F.

9. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inch O.C. for 5 inch duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
  - a. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 ft from end bell, without reducing duct slope and without forming trap in line.
  - b. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
10. Duct Terminators for Entrances to Cast-in-Place Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced approximately 6 inch O.C. for 4 inch duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
  - a. Begin change from regular spacing to terminator spacing 10 ft from terminator, without reducing duct line slope and without forming trap in line.
11. Building Wall Penetrations: Make transition from underground duct to steel raceway at least 10 ft outside building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from building and without forming trap in line. Use fittings manufactured for transition to steel raceway type installed. Install steel raceway penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
12. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15 psig hydrostatic pressure.
13. Pulling Cord: Install 200 lb. test nylon cord in empty ducts.
14. Concrete-Encased Ducts and Duct Bank:
  - a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes 6 inch or less in nominal diameter.
  - b. Width: Excavate trench 3 inch wider than duct on each side.
  - c. Depth: Install so top of duct envelope is at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated. Install so top of duct envelope is below local frost line.
  - d. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
  - e. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 ft of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie the entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  - f. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and communications ducts.
  - g. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment base.

- 1) Stub-ups must be minimum 4 inch above finished floor and minimum 3 inch from conduit side to edge of slab.
  - h. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally minimum of 60 inches from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
    - 1) Stub-ups must terminate in coupling installed flush with finished floor and no less than 3 inches from conduit side to edge of slab.
  - i. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct where crossing disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  - j. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
  - k. Concrete Cover: Install minimum of 3 inch of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between duct of like services, and 4 inches between power and communications ducts.
  - l. Place minimum 6 inch of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct.
  - m. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between duct and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow around duct and rise up in middle, uniformly filling open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-installation applications.
15. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:
- a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inch in nominal diameter.
  - b. Width: Excavate trench 3 inch wider than duct on each side.
  - c. Depth: Install top of duct at least 36 inches below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Set elevation of top of duct bank below frost line.
  - e. Place minimum 3 inch of sand as bed for duct. Place sand to minimum of 6 inch above top level of duct.
  - f. Support ducts on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
  - g. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 ft of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Tie the entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  - h. Install duct with minimum of 3 inch between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and communications duct.

- i. After installing the first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfills to 4 inches over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
16. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury conducting underground line specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than 12 inches above concrete-encased duct and duct banks and approximately 12 inches below grade. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of centerline of duct bank. Provide additional warning tape for each 12 inches increment of duct-bank width over nominal 18 inch. Space additional tapes 12 inch apart, horizontally across width of ducts.
17. Ground ducts and duct banks in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

#### A. Reference Standards:

1. Precast Concrete Handholes: Comply with ASTM C891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

#### B. Special Techniques:

1. Cast-in-Place Manholes:
  - a. Finish interior surfaces with smooth-troweled finish.
  - b. Knockouts for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches thick, arranged as indicated.
  - c. Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete, formwork, and reinforcement.
2. Precast Concrete Handholes and Manholes:
  - a. Install units' level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
  - b. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on level bed of crushed stone or gravel graded from 1 inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
  - c. Field-cut openings for conduits in accordance with enclosure manufacturer's published instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.



3. Elevations:
  - a. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches below finished grade.
  - b. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch above finished grade.
  - c. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
  - d. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
  - e. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
4. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
5. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.
  - a. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
  - b. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings, and cast-iron frame to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight joints and waterproof grouting for the frame and chimney.
6. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. After the duct has been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
7. Damp proofing: Apply damp proofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Damp proofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071113 "Bituminous Damp proofing." After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
8. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
9. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inch for manholes and 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.
10. Ground manholes, handholes, and boxes in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide minimum 12 inch long

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.

3. Test manhole and handhole] grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

**B. Nonconforming Work:**

1. Underground ducts, raceways, and structures will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

**C. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.**

END OF SECTION 260543

SECTION 26 0544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Pourable sealants.
6. Foam sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROUND SLEEVES

A. Steel Wall Sleeves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC.
  - b. CCI Piping Systems.
  - c. Flexicraft Industries.
  - d. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
2. General Characteristics: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral water stop.

B. Round, Galvanized-Steel, Sheet Metal Sleeves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Benefast.
  - b. Specified Technologies, Inc.

2. General Characteristics: Galvanized-steel sheet; thickness not less than 0.0239 inch; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Advance Products & Systems, LLC.
  2. BWM Company.
  3. CALPICO, Inc.
  4. Flexicraft Industries.
  5. GPT; a division of EnPRO Industries.
  6. Metraflex Company (The).
  7. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. General Characteristics: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.
- C. Options:
  1. Sealing Elements: EPDM] rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel].
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  1. HoldRite; Reliance Worldwide Company.
- B. General Characteristics: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, water stop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit must have plastic or rubber water stop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  1. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. General Characteristics: Non-shrinking; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

#### A. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
  - a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor, so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4 inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless sleeve-seal system is to be installed.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

#### B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.

#### C. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

#### D. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve-seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

#### E. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations:

1. Install steel pipe sleeves with integral water stops. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system. Install sleeves during construction of floor or wall.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

**3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install them in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 260544

## SECTION 26 0548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Restraints - rigid type.
3. Restraints - cable type.
4. Restraint accessories.
5. Post-Installed concrete anchors.
6. Concrete inserts.

B. Related Requirements:

1. .
2. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load capacity for each seismic restraint device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic restraint component used.
3. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by **UL product listing**.
4. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detailed fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that require periodic follow-up inspections and have a listing directory available to the public. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic restraints for suspended electrical components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted components so that failure of a non-essential or essential component will not cause failure of any other essential building component.
- B. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and be so labeled.
- C. Component Supports:
  - 1. Load ratings, features, and applications of reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - f. Korfund.
    - g. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson.
    - h. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - i. Vibration Isolation.
    - j. Vibration Management Corp.
  - 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
  - 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
  - 5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.



## 2.3 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  4. Hilti, Inc.
  5. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  6. TOLCO Incorporated.
  7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of ANSI/AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

## 2.4 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  3. Gripple Inc.
  4. Loos & Co. Inc.
  5. VMC GROUP.
- B. Seismic Restraint Cables: ASTM A1023/A1023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic-restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket, or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.
- C. Restraint cable assembly and cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. Cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

## 2.5 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  3. Hilti, Inc.

4. Loos & Co. Inc.
5. Mason Industries, Inc.
6. TOLCO Incorporated.
7. Unistrut; Atkore International.

- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: [Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections] to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.
- C. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- D. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- E. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.6 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

### A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - b. Hilti, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Powers Fasteners.
  - e. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - f. Unistrut; Atkore International.
2. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

### B. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic and wind-load applications.

1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.

### C. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW) that is not vibration isolated.

1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

## 2.7 CONCRETE INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - 2. Hilti, Inc.
  - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Powers Fasteners.
  - 5. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 6. Unistrut; Atkore International.
- B. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
- C. Comply with MSS SP-58.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive seismic control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze members with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where required to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SEISMIC-RESTRAINT] DEVICES

- A. Provide seismic restraint devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic and Wind-Load Controls Schedule, where indicated on Drawings, where

the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.

1. Install equipment and devices to withstand the effects of earthquake motions.
- B. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Installation of seismic restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or conduits.
- D. Equipment Restraints:
  1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- E. Raceway, Cable, Wireway, Cable Tray, and Busway Support and Hanger Restraints:
  1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
  3. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  4. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- F. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- I. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:
  1. Identify the position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.

3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors must be installed with sleeves fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests must be witnessed by [Architect].
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  5. Test no fewer than [four] of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
  1. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260548

## SECTION 26 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Labels.
2. Bands and tubes.
3. Tapes and stencils.
4. Tags.
5. Signs.
6. Cable ties.
7. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use the same designations indicated on Drawings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 for color identification of hazards; 29 CFR 1910.145 for danger, caution, warning, and safety instruction signs and tags; and the following:

1. Fire-protection and fire-alarm equipment must be finished, painted, or suitably marked safety red.

B. Signs, labels, and tags required for personnel safety must comply with the following standards:

1. Safety Colors: NEMA Z535.1.
2. Facility Safety Signs: NEMA Z535.2.
3. Safety Symbols: NEMA Z535.3.
4. Product Safety Signs and Labels: NEMA Z535.4.
5. Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes for Temporary Hazards: NEMA Z535.5.

- C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, must comply with UL 969.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 1000 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage
- B. Color-Coding for Phase Identification, 1000 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded conductors.
  - 1. Color must be factory applied.
  - 2. Colors for 208Y/120 V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 480y/277 V Circuits:
    - 4. a. Phase A: Brown
    - 5. b. Phase B: Orange
    - 6. c. Phase C: Yellow
    - 7.
  - 8. Color for Neutral: White.
  - 9. Color for Equipment Grounds Green.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
  - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs must include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR A 3 FEET MINIMUM."
- E. Equipment Identification Labels:
  - 1. Black letters on white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. HellermannTyton.
  - d. Marking Services Inc.
  - e. Panduit Corp.
  - f. emedco.
- B. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. HellermannTyton.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Panduit Corp.
    - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3 mil (0.08 mm) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
    - c. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - d. LEM Products Inc.
    - e. Marking Services Inc.
    - f. Panduit Corp.
    - g. emedco.
  2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over legend. Labels sized such that clear shield overlaps entire printed legend.
  3. Marker for Labels:
    - a. .
    - b. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3 mil (0.08 mm) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Grafoplast Wire Markers.



- c. HellermannTyton.
- d. Ideal Industries, Inc.
- e. LEM Products Inc.
- f. Marking Services Inc.
- g. Panduit Corp.
- h. emedco.
2. Minimum Nominal Size:
  - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inch (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
  - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inch (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
  - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inch (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. HellermannTyton.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Panduit Corp.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Panduit Corp.

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - b. Champion America.
    - c. HellermannTyton.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- d. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  - e. Marking Services Inc.
  - f. Panduit Corp.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mil (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inch (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. emedco.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch (100 mm) wide black stripes on 10 inch (250 mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inch (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. HellermannTyton.
    - b. LEM Products Inc.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch (50 mm) wide, 5 mil (0.125 mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
  - 2. Tape:

- a. Recommended by manufacturer for method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
  - b. Printing on tape must be permanent and may not be damaged by burial operations.
  - c. Tape material and ink must be chemically inert and not be subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
3. Color and Printing:
- a. Comply with APWA Uniform Color Code using NEMA Z535.1 safety colors.
  - b. Inscriptions for Red Tapes: "CAUTION BURIED ELECTRIC LINE BELOW".
  - c. Inscriptions for Orange Tapes: "CAUTION BURIED COMMUNICATION LINE BELOW".
4. Tape Type IDE-601:
- a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of printed pigmented polyolefin film, solid aluminum-foil core, and clear protective film that allows inspection of continuity of conductive core; bright colored, compounded for direct-burial service.
  - b. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - c. Overall Thickness: 5 mil (0.125 mm).
  - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (8.9  $\mu$ m).
  - e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
  - f. Tensile in accordance with ASTM D882: 70 lbf (311.3 N) and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).
- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. The minimum letter height must be 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.6 TAGS

### A. Write-on Tags:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - b. LEM Products Inc.
  - c. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
3. Marker for Tags:
  - a. .
  - b. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.7 SIGNS

## A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. Marking Services Inc.
  - d. emedco.
2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inch (180 by 250 mm).

## B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Champion America.
  - c. Marking Services Inc.
  - d. emedco.
2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396 inch (1 mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inch (250 by 360 mm).

## C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. Marking Services Inc.
  - d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
  - e. emedco.
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
  - a. For signs up to 20 sq. inch (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inch (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
  - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - d. Self-adhesive.

- e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. HellermannTyton.
  - 2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Marking Services Inc.
  - 4. Panduit Corp.
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) in accordance with ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) in accordance with ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) in accordance with ASTM D638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
  - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
  - 5. Color: Black.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustic ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 1000 V: Identification must completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- I. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from floor.
- K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify cover of junction and pull box of the following systems with wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends must be as follows:

1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
2. "POWER."
3. "TELECOM"
4. "FIRE ALARM"
5. "SECURITY".

L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to location and substrate.

M. Snap-Around Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.

N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.

O. Self-Adhesive Labels:

1. Install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch (50 mm) high.

P. Snap-Around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.

Q. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.

R. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.

S. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.

1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for minimum distance of 6 inch (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply the last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.

T. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

U. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's instructions.

V. Underground Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 12 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in common trench exceeds 16 inch (400 mm) overall.
2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

W. Write-on Tags:

1. Place in locations with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using plenum-rated cable ties.

X. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on minimum 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inch (50 mm) high.

Y. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch (50 mm) high.

Z. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch (13 mm) high letters on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch (50 mm) high.

AA. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide a view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.



- C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify cover of junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends must be as follows:
1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  2. "POWER."
  3. ". FIRE ALARM"
  4. ". SECURITY"
  5. "TELECOM"
- D. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 1000 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive wraparound labels to identify phase.
1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50 ft (15 m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25 ft (7.6 m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- F. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with conductor designation.
- G. Conductors to Be Extended in Future: Attach marker tape to conductors.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- I. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- J. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in direction of access to live parts. Workspace must comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- K. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- a. Power-transfer switches.
- b. Controls with external control power connections.
- c. .

M. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.

N. Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs.

O. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.

P. Equipment Identification Labels:

- 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
- 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.

END OF SECTION 260553

## SECTION 26 0923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electronic time switches.
2. Outdoor photoelectric switches, solid state, flexible mounting.
3. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
4. Switchbox-mounted vacancy sensors.
5. Lighting contactors.
6. Conductors and cables.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
  - a. Occupancy sensors.
  - b. Vacancy sensors.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

A. Special Extended Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer warrant that installed lighting control devices perform in accordance with specified requirements and agree to repair or replace,

including labor, materials, and equipment, devices that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
2. Extended Warranty Period: Four year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELECTRONIC TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
  2. Intermatic, Inc.
  3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  4. NSi Industries LLC.
  5. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
  6. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Contact Configuration: SPST.
  3. Contact Rating: 30 A inductive or resistive, 240 V(ac).
  4. Programs:
    - a. Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
    - b. two channels; each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule with a skip-a-day weekly schedule.
  5. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
  6. Astronomic Time: All channels.
  7. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
  8. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

## 2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, SOLID STATE, FLEXIBLE MOUNTING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
  2. Intermatic, Inc.
  3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  4. NSi Industries LLC.
  5. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1000 W incandescent or 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lx), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
  3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
  5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with ANSI C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure from same source and manufacturer as switch.
  6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

## 2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
  2. Hubbell Control Solutions; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  3. Intermatic, Inc.
  4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  6. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  7. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
1. Wall Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
  2. Passive infrared Dual technology.
  3. Separate power pack.

4. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  5. Operation:
    - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor must be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  6. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
  7. Power: Line voltage.
  8. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20 A ballast or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac), for 13 A tungsten at 120 V(ac), and for 1 hp at 120 V(ac). The sensor has 24 V(dc), 150 mA, and a Class 2 power source.
  9. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position in a standard device box or outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13 mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  10. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
  11. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
  12. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lx); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch (150 mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch (23 200 sq. mm).
  2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96 inch (2440 mm) high ceiling.
  3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 ft. (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10 ft. (3 m) high ceiling.
- D. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch (150 mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch (23 200 sq. mm) and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inch (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inch/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96 inch (2440 mm) high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 sq. ft. (220 sq. m) when mounted 48 inch (1200 mm) above finished floor.

## 2.4 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
  2. Intermatic, Inc.
  3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  4. NSi Industries LLC.
  5. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
- B. Description: Combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting control unit. Switchbox-mounted, backlit LCD display, with selectable time interval in 10-minute increments.
1. Rated 960 W at 120 V(ac) for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V(ac) or 10 A at 277 V(ac) for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V(ac).
  2. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
  3. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
  4. Voltage: 120 V.
  5. Color: White.
  6. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

## 2.5 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. ASCO Power Technologies.
  3. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
  4. Eaton.
  5. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  6. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

- B. Description: Electrically operated and electrically held, combination-type lighting contactors with non-fused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  - 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
  - 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  - 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
  - 4. Provide control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

## 2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONTACTORS

- A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.



### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests must be witnessed by Architect.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to the Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and dead-band controls to suit Owner's operations.
3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

END OF SECTION 260923

## SECTION 26 2213 - LOW-VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution, dry-type transformers with nominal primary and secondary ratings of 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA.

B. Products Furnished, but Not Installed, under This Section:

C. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

D. Related Requirements:

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of field connections.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation **and testing** instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Transformer working clearances, anchoring, torque values, and insulation-resistance testing.

B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Acme Electric; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  3. Eaton.
  4. Federal Pacific.
  5. Hammond Power Solutions Inc.
  6. Mag-Tran; a division of Quality Transformer & Electronics.

### 2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60 Hz service.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
1. Comply with 10 CFR 431 (DOE 2016) efficiency levels.
  2. Marked as compliant with DOE 2016 efficiency levels by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.
1. One leg per phase.
- C. Coils: Continuous windings except for taps.
1. Coil Material: Copper.
  2. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
  3. Terminal Connections: Bolted.
- D. Encapsulation: Transformers smaller than 30 kVA must have core and coils completely resin encapsulated.
- E. Enclosure: Ventilated.

1. Core and coil must be encapsulated within resin compound to seal out moisture and air.
2. KVA Ratings: Based on convection cooling only and not relying on auxiliary fans.
3. Wiring Compartment: Sized for conduit entry and wiring installation.
4. Environmental Protection:
  - a. Indoor: UL 50E, Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor: UL 50E, Type 4X, Stainless Steel.

F. Taps for Transformers 3 kVA and Smaller: None.

G. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: One 5 percent tap above and one 5 percent tap below normal full capacity.

H. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.

I. Insulation Class, Smaller Than 30 kVA: 180 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with maximum of 115 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

J. Insulation Class, 30 kVA and Larger: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with maximum of 150 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

K. Grounding: Provide ground-bar kit or ground bar installed on inside of transformer enclosure.

L. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.

## 2.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Nameplates:

1. Engraved, laminated-acrylic or melamine plastic signs for distribution transformers, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Self-adhesive label for distribution transformers. Self-adhesive labels are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for transformers.
- B. Verify that field measurements areas needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's published instructions.

- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance must be 5  $\Omega$  at location of transformer.
- E. Environment: Enclosures must be rated for the environment in which they are located. Covers for UL 50E, Type 4X enclosures may not cause accessibility problems.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-mounted transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
  - 1. Coordinate installation of wall-mounted and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.
  - 2. Brace wall-mounted transformers as specified in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounted transformers in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolts inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- C. Secure transformer to concrete base in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
- D. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to reduce noise generation.
- E. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals in accordance with manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

- D. Provide flexible connections at conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to building structure.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

##### 1. Small (Up to 167 kVA Single-Phase or 500 kVA Three-Phase) Dry-Type Transformer Field Tests:

###### a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection.

- 1) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- 2) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
- 3) Verify that resilient mounts are free and that shipping brackets have been removed.
- 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
- 5) Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests recommended by manufacturer.
- 6) Verify that as-left tap connections are as specified.
- 7) Verify presence of surge arresters and that their ratings are as specified.

###### b. Electrical Tests:

- 1) Measure resistance at windings, taps, and bolted connections.
- 2) Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and windings-to-ground. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Verify correct secondary voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral, after energization and prior to loading.

#### B. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of units, attach dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested components.

#### C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Transformers will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

#### D. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING

#### A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262213

## SECTION 26 2416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Power panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

B. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Power panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
5. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detailed bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.



#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.
- B. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:
  - 1. Recommended procedures for installing panelboards.
  - 2. Recommended torque settings for bolted connections on panelboards.
  - 3. Recommended temperature range for energizing panelboards.
- C. Sample warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
  - 1. Extended Warranty Period: one years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.
- B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
  - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: two years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards in accordance with IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing agency recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.
    - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 4.
    - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 5.
  - 2. Height: 7 ft (2.13 m) maximum.
  - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. .
- F. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: Bottom
- G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. .
- H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with lug on neutral bar for each pole in panelboard.
  - 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with lug on bar for each pole in panelboard.
  - 4. Sub feed (Double) Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
  - 5. .
- I. Quality-Control Label: Panelboards or load centers must be labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- J. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers must have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:
  - 1. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

## 2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Eaton.
  3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
1. For doors more than 36 inch (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Eaton.
  3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

## 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Eaton.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
  - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
  - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
  - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
  - a. RMS sensing.
  - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
  - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
  - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
  - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event must be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused trip.
  - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
  - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
    - 1) Instantaneous trip.
    - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - 3) Long- and short-time adjustments.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240 V, single-pole configuration.
8. sub feed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
  - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - b. The breaker handle indicates tripped status.
  - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
  - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  - e. .
  - f. Shunt Trip: 120 V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.

- g. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.
- h. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Panelboards: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NEMA PB 1.1.
  - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Techniques:
  - 1. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Mount top of trim 7.5 ft (2.3 m) above finished floor or the operating handle of top-most switch or circuit breaker, in on position, is not higher than 79 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
  - 4. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
  - 5. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
    - a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 6. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
  - 7. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.
- E. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles must be located on interior of panelboard door.
- F. Breaker Labels: Faceplate must list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- G. Circuit Directory:
  - 1. Provide directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
    - a. The circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
  - 2. Provide computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
    - a. The circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
  - 3. Create directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Do not perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace them with new units and retest.
- D. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

- E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports, including certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- F. Manufacturer Services:
  - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support field tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 262416

## SECTION 26 2726 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
2. General-grade single straight-blade receptacles.
3. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
4. Receptacles with ground-fault protective devices.
5. Locking receptacles.
6. Special-purpose power outlet assemblies.
7. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for occupancy sensors, timers, control-voltage switches, and control-voltage dimmers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. Toggle switches.
2. Maintained-contact switches.
3. Rocker switches.
4. Dimmer switches.
5. Duplex straight-blade receptacles.
6. Receptacles with GFCI device.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL-USE SWITCHES, DIMMER SWITCHES, AND FAN-SPEED CONTROLLER SWITCHES

##### A. Toggle Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.



- b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
- 2. Regulatory Requirements:
  - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  - b. .
- 3. General Characteristics:
  - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.
- 4. Options:
  - a. Device Color: White
  - b. Configuration:
    - 1) General-duty, 120-277 V, 20 A, single pole.
- 5. Accessories:
  - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
  - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

B. Rocker Switch:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
- 2. Regulatory Requirements:
  - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  - b. .
- 3. General Characteristics:
  - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.

4. Options:

- a. Device Color: White
- b. Configuration:
  - 1) 120-277 V, 20 A, single pole.

5. Accessories:

- a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
- b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

C. Type I Dimmer Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
- b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
- c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- d. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
- e. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.

2. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.

3. General Characteristics:

- a. Reference Standards: UL CCN EOYX and UL 1472 Type I dimmer.

4. Options:

- a. Device Color: White
- b. Switch Style: Rocker.
- c. Dimming Control Style: Slide.

5. Accessories:

- a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
- b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

## 2.2 GENERAL-GRADE DUPLEX STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

## A. Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
2. Regulatory Requirements:
  - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
3. General Characteristics:
  - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
4. Options:
  - a. Device Color: White
  - b. Configuration:
    - 1) General-duty, smooth face, NEMA 5-15R NEMA 5-20R.
5. Accessories:
  - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
  - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

## B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
2. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
- 3. General Characteristics:
  - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
- 4. Options:
  - a. Device Color: White
  - b. Configuration:
    - 1) General-duty, smooth face, NEMA 5-20R.
- 5. Accessories:
  - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
  - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

## 2.3 EXAMINATION

### A. Receptacles:

- 1. Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are compatible with mating attachment plugs on equipment.

## 2.4 SELECTION OF GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. provide feed through GFCI receptacles.

## 2.5 INSTALLATION OF SWITCHES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

### B. Reference Standards:

- 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
- 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
- 3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

### C. Identification:

1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with white-filled lettering, and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.
  - b. Healthcare Facilities: Distinctively identify covers or cover plates of device boxes and outlet boxes that are supplied from life safety and critical branch power supplies following facility's standard practice.

## 2.6 INSTALLATION OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
3. Receptacle Orientation: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, orient receptacle to match configuration diagram in NEMA WD 6.
4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Identification:

1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with white-filled lettering, and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.
  - b. Healthcare Facilities: Distinctively identify covers or cover plates of device boxes and outlet boxes that are supplied from life safety and critical branch power supplies following facility's standard practice.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Do not install Type 3 SPD, including surge-protected relocatable taps and power strips, on branch circuit downstream of GFCI device.

## 2.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF SWITCHES

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Perform tests per the NETA requirements. Retain first paragraph below to require that field quality-control tests be witnessed. Local ordinance or custom may require that authorities having jurisdiction witness the testing.
- B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Perform tests and inspections in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- D. Nonconforming Work:
  1. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- E. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.

## 2.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  1. Perform tests per the NETA requirements.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Insert and remove test plug to verify that device is securely mounted.
  2. Verify polarity of hot and neutral pins.
  3. Measure line voltage.
  4. Measure the percent voltage drop.
  5. Measure grounding circuit continuity: impedance must be not greater than 2 ohms.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
  1. Device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.

## 2.9 PROTECTION

- A. Devices:
  1. Schedule and sequence installation to minimize risk of contamination of wires and cables, devices, device boxes, outlet boxes, covers, and cover plates by plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other materials.
  2. After installation, protect wires and cables, devices, device boxes, outlet boxes, covers, and cover plates from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 262726

## SECTION 26 2813 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
  - a. Control circuits.
  - b. Panelboards.
  - c. Enclosed switches.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Bussmann; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. Littelfuse, Inc.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
1. Type RK-1: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.



## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

#### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

## SECTION 26 2816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Non fusible switches.
3. Molded Case Circuit Breakers
4. Enclosures.

B. Related Requirements:

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. GFEP: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for equipment protection.

B. GFLS: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for life safety.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of enclosed switch, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Current and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranties.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  - 4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. Single throw.
  - 2. Three poles.
  - 3. 240 V(ac).
  - 4. 200 A and smaller.
  - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
  - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.

2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Eaton.
  3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.

## 2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business
  2. Eaton
  - 3.
  4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division
  5. Square D; Schneider Electric USA
  - 6.
- B. Circuit breakers must be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components must be completely isolated from handle and accessory mounting area.
- C. Circuit breakers must have toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. Circuit-breaker handle must be over center, be trip free, and reside in tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon must be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing

international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with push-to-trip button, located on face of circuit breaker to mechanically operate circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

- D. Maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings must be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. MCCBs must be equipped with device for locking in isolated position.
- E. Lugs must be suitable for 60 deg C rated wire on 125 A circuit breakers and below, 90 deg C rated wire, sized in accordance with 75 deg C temperature rating in NFPA 70.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with required interrupting capacity for available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, RMS sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - 1. Instantaneous trip.
  - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- L. GFLS Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).
- M. GFEP Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).
- N. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent

- lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
3. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  4. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
  5. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  6. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  7. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  8. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
  9. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key must be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

## 2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: Enclosure must be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (UL 50E Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: UL 50E Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures may not contain knockouts. UL 50E Types 7 and 9 enclosures must be provided with threaded conduit openings in both end walls.

## PART 3 - Operating Mechanism: EXECUTION

### 3.1 SELECTION OF ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.
- C. Wash-Down Areas: UL 50E, Type 4X, stainless steel.
- D. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 4.

- E. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 12.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Special Techniques:
  - 1. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
  - 2. Install individual wall-mounted switches with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - 4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
  - 5. Install fuses in fusible devices.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Preparation:
- B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.
- C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:

- 1) Use low-resistance ohmmeter.
    - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
  - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - a) Bolt-torque levels must be in accordance with the manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
  - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
  - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
  - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
  - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuse holder. Drop values may not exceed the high level of manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
  - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- D. Nonconforming Work:
1. Enclosed switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Include identification of each enclosed switch tested and describe test results.
  3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.



**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

F. Manufacturer Services:

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262816

## SECTION 26 3213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged engine generators used to supply prime power, with the following features:
  - 1. Diesel-engine driven generator sets
  - 2. Diesel engine.
  - 3. Diesel fuel-oil system.
  - 4. Control and monitoring.
  - 5. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
  - 6. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
  - 7. Outdoor engine generator enclosure
  - 8. Vibration isolation devices.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
  - 4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
  - 6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for engine generators and functional relationship between all electrical components.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for engine generator, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by the manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
  - 2. Cummins Power Generation.
  - 3. Kohler Power Systems.
  - 4. Rolls-Royce Solutions America Inc.

- B. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Caterpillar Diesel-Engine Generator or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Cummins Power Generation
  2. Kohler Power systems
  3. Rolls-Royce Solutions America, Inc.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Engine generator housing, subbase fuel tank, engine generator, batteries, battery racks, silencers, sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
- B. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.
- C. NFPA Compliance:
1. Comply with NFPA 37.
  2. Comply with NFPA 70.
  3. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 2 EPSS.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 3 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- F. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- G. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).
  2. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).
- H. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:
1. High salt-dust content in the air due to sea-spray evaporation.
  2. Wind pressure: 160 MPH

## 2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- C. Power Rating: Prime.
- D. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a Class 24 according to NFPA 110.
- E. Service Load: 500 KW.
- F. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.
- G. Frequency: 60 Hz.
- H. Voltage: 480-V ac.
- I. Phase: Three-phase, four wire, wye.
- J. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.
- K. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- L. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
- M. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
  - 2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of components.
- N. Engine Generator Performance:
  - 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
  - 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 15 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
  - 3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
  - 4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When a system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.

5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time:
  - a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.

## 2.4 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D975, diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.
  1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
  2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
  3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with UL 499.
- E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
  1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
  3. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  4. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
    - a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and non-collapsible under vacuum.

- b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
- 1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
  - 2. The sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.
- G. Air-Intake Filter: Standard-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- H. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.
- 1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
  - 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
  - 4. Battery: Sealed Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
  - 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
  - 6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F (10 deg C) regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
  - 7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
  - 8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
  - 9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
    - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. The unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 to 140 deg F (minus 40 to plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.

- c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
- d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
- e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
- f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 3R, wall-mounted cabinet.

## 2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 37.
- B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
  - 1. Tank level indicator.
  - 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 1000 gallons fuel storage capacity.
  - 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
  - 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
  - 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When the mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, the engine generator starts. The off position of the same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When the engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.



- B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts engine generator. The off position of the same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When the engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.
- C. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.
- D. Comply with UL 508A.
- E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. The mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. The panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- F. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel. The panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- G. Control and Monitoring Panel:
  - 1. Digital engine generator controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
  - 2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
    - a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
    - b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
  - 3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common alarm indication, including the following:
    - a. Cranking control equipment.
    - b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
    - c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
    - d. Over crank alarm.
    - e. Over crank shutdown device.
    - f. Low-water temperature alarm.
    - g. High engine temperature pre alarm.
    - h. High engine temperature.
    - i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
    - j. Overspeed alarm.
    - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
    - l. Low fuel main tank.

- 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for duration required.
  - m. Coolant low-level alarm.
  - n. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
  - o. EPS load indicator.
  - p. Battery high-voltage alarm.
  - q. Low cranking voltage alarm.
  - r. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
  - s. Battery low-voltage alarm.
  - t. Low-starting air pressure alarm.
  - u. Remote manual stop shutdown device.
  - v. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
  - w. .
- H. Remote Alarm Annunciator: An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. The silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.
1. Over crank alarm.
  2. Low water-temperature alarm.
  3. High engine temperature alarm.
  4. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
  5. Overspeed alarm.
  6. Low fuel main tank alarm.
  7. Low coolant level alarm.
  8. Low cranking voltage alarm.
  9. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
  10. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
  11. Air shutdown damper when used.
  12. Run-Off-Auto switch.
  13. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
  14. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
- I. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on the engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

## 2.7 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

### A. Description:

1. Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing; wind resistant up to 160 MPH. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.
    - a. Sound Attenuation Level: III.
  - B. Seismic Design: Comply with seismic requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - C. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.
  - D. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.
    1. Ventilation: Provide temperature-controlled exhaust fan interlocked to prevent operation when engine is running.
  - E. Provide a 30 Amp, 208/120 volt, 3 phase, 4 wire panel inside the enclosure to feed the generator block heater, lights, receptacles, and other generator auxiliary branch circuits.
- 2.8 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION
- A. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
    1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
    2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
    3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
    4. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with, control and monitoring panel.
- 2.9 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR
- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
  - B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
  - C. Electrical Insulation: Class H.
  - D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.
  - E. Range: Provide limited range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

- F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- G. Enclosure: Drip proof.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
  - 1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
  - 2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
  - 3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
  - 4. Maintain frequency within 5 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 5 seconds.
- I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

## 2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.
  - 2. Shore A Scale Durometer Rating: 50.
  - 3. Number of Layers: Two.
  - 4. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch (25 mm).
- B. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
  - 1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment-mounting and -leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch (25 mm).
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.

- D. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components, and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
  - 1. Tests: Comply with IEEE 115.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.
- B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolts inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- E. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble on the wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.
  - 1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
  - 2. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
  - 3. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- F. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40 black steel pipe with welded joints.
  - 1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

2. Drain piping valves, connectors, and installation requirements are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

- G. Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine generator and heat exchanger with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- E. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.
- H. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
    - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
    - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
  - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
    - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
      - a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp (150 kW): Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
      - b) Machines 200 hp (150 kW) or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.
    - 2) Test protective relay devices.
    - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
    - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
    - 5) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
  - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
  - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
  - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
  - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases and verify that performance is as specified.

7. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
  8. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations 25 feet (8 m) from edge of the generator enclosure [**on the property line**], and compare measured levels with required values.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
- D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
- E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
- G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.
- J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 263213.13



## SECTION 26 3353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Three-phase, on-line, double-conversion, static-type, UPS units with the following features:
  - a. Surge suppression.
  - b. Rectifier-charger.
  - c. Inverter.
  - d. Controls and indications.
  - e. Static bypass transfer switch.
  - f. Output distribution section.
  - g. Battery and battery disconnect device.
  - h. .

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of UPS.

##### B. Shop Drawings: For UPS.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Show access, workspace, and clearance requirements; details of control panels; and battery arrangement.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For UPS equipment, from manufacturer.

##### B. Product Certificates: For each product, from manufacturer.

##### C. Factory test reports.

##### D. Field quality-control reports.

##### E. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Battery Warranties: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace UPS system storage batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Special UPS Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within special warranty period.
  - 1. Special Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Automatic operation includes the following:
  - 1. Double Conversion, IGBT:
    - a. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output. High-efficiency carrier stored trench IGBT, in both rectifier-charger and inverter circuits, provides a minimum of 97 percent efficiency for the UPS system at full load and a minimum of 94 percent efficiency at 50 percent load.
    - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies energy to provide constant, regulated inverter power output to the load.
    - c. Power Failure: If normal power fails, the rectifier-charger and inverter use energy from the battery to supply constant, regulated power output to the load without switching or disturbance.
  - 2. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls shall automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the load. The rectifier-charger shall supply power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharge the battery.
  - 3. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger shall charge the battery. The rectifier-charger shall automatically shift to float-charge mode on reaching full charge.

4. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch shall switch the load to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
  5. The output power converters shall produce up to 300 percent of rated full-load current for short-circuit clearing. The inverter shall sustain steady-state overload conditions of up to 200 percent of rated full-load current for 60 seconds in normal operation.
  6. The inverter shall be capable of sustaining 150 percent of system capacity for 30 seconds while powered from the battery.
  7. Should overloads persist past the time limitations, the automatic static transfer switch shall switch the load to the bypass output of the UPS. When the fault has cleared, the static bypass transfer switch shall return the load to the UPS system.
  8. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS shall supply power to the load from the normal supply with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.
- B. Manual operation includes the following:
1. Turning the inverter off causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load directly to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
  2. Turning the inverter on causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load to the inverter.
- C. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch Operation: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated unless the static bypass transfer switch is in the bypass mode. Device provides manual selection among the three conditions described below without interrupting supply to the load during switching:
1. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. Normal UPS ac input circuit, static bypass transfer switch, and UPS load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
  2. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. UPS ac supply terminals are energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the load.
  3. Normal: Normal UPS ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied through the static bypass transfer switch and the UPS rectifier-charger and inverter, or the battery and the inverter.
- D. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability, except battery performance:
1. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C).
  2. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F (5 to 35 deg C).
  3. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
  4. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet (1220 m).

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: UPS shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled by an NRTL to comply with UL 1778.
- C. The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current, composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load with a maximum load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the following conditions:
  - 1. Inverter is switched to battery source.
  - 2. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 15 percent from nominal voltage.
  - 3. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal frequency.
  - 4. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
  - 5. Load is 30 percent unbalanced continuously.
- D. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full-load UPS current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is five minutes.
- E. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10 percent and minus 20 percent from nominal voltage.
- F. Overall UPS Efficiency: Equal to or greater than 94 percent at 100 percent load, 94 percent at 75 percent load, and 93 percent at 25 percent load.
- G. Maximum Acoustical Noise: ,65 dbA weighting, emanating from any UPS component under any condition of normal operation, measured 3 meters from nearest surface of component enclosure.
- H. Maximum Energizing Inrush Current: Eight times the full-load current.
- I. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Unbalanced: Maximum of plus or minus 2 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
- J. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Balanced: Maximum of plus or minus 1 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
- K. Output Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 0.1 percent over the full range of input voltage, load, and battery voltage.
- L. Limitation of harmonic distortion of input current to the UPS shall be as follows:

1. Description: Rectifier-charger circuits shall limit THD to 5 percent, maximum, at rated full-load UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30. Provide tuned harmonic filter if required to meet harmonic distortion limit.
- M. Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent rms for any single harmonic, for rated full load with THD up to 50 percent, with a load crest factor of 3.0.
- N. Minimum Overload Capacity of UPS at Rated Voltage: 125 percent of rated full load for 10 minutes, 200 percent for 60 seconds in normal operation, and 150 percent for 30 seconds in battery operating mode.
- O. Maximum Output-Voltage Transient Excursions from Rated Value: For the following instantaneous load changes, stated as percentages of rated full UPS load, voltage shall remain within stated percentages of rated value and recover to, and remain within, plus or minus 2 percent of that value within 50 ms:
  1. 50 Percent: Plus or minus 3 percent.
  2. 100 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.
  3. Loss of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
  4. Restoration of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- P. Input Power Factor: A minimum of 0.95 lagging when supply voltage and current are at nominal rated values and the UPS is supplying rated full-load current without additional filters.
- Q. Output Power Factor Rating: Loads with power factor of 0.9 leading to 0.8 lagging shall not require derating of the UPS. For loads with power factors outside this range, derate the UPS output as follows:
  1. Derate the UPS a maximum of 5 percent for 0.7 PF lagging.
  2. Derate the UPS a maximum of 10 percent for 0.6 PF lagging.
  3. Derate the UPS a maximum of 15 percent for 0.5 PF lagging.
  4. Derate the UPS a maximum of 20 percent for a range of 0.4 to 0.1 PF lagging.
- R. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC rules and regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A equipment.

## 2.3 UPS SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Self-contained, battery backup device and accessories that provides three-phase electrical power in the event of failure or sag in the normal power system.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. APC by Schneider Electric.
  3. Eaton.

4. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
  5. Mitsubishi Electric Automation, Inc.
- C. Electronic Equipment: Solid-state devices using hermetically sealed, semiconductor elements. Devices include rectifier-charger, inverter, static bypass transfer switch, and system controls.
- D. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Configuration: Field-assembled, multicabinet modular style units.
- F. Control Assemblies: Mount on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Seismic-Restraint Design: UPS assemblies, subassemblies, and components (and fastenings and supports, mounting, and anchorage devices for them) shall be designed and fabricated to withstand static and seismic forces.
- I. Output Circuit Neutral Bus, Conductor, and Terminal Ampacity: Rated phase current times a multiple of 1.73, minimum.

## 2.4 SURGE SUPPRESSION

- A. Protect internal UPS components from surges that enter at each ac power input connection including main disconnect switch, static bypass transfer switch, and maintenance bypass/isolation switch. Protect rectifier-charger, inverter, controls, and output components.
1. Use factory-installed surge suppressors tested according to IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category B.
  2. Additional Surge Protection: Protect internal UPS components from low-frequency, high-energy voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2. Design the circuits connecting with external power sources and select circuit elements, conductors, conventional surge suppressors, and rectifier components and controls so input assemblies will have adequate mechanical strength and thermal and current-carrying capacity to withstand stresses imposed by 400-Hz, 180 percent voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.

## 2.5 RECTIFIER-CHARGER

- A. Description: Voltage source converter, 12-pulse IGBT rectifier.
- B. Capacity: Adequate to supply the inverter during rated full output load conditions and simultaneously recharge the battery from fully discharged condition to 95 percent of full charge within 10 times the rated discharge time for duration of supply under battery power at full load.

- C. Output Ripple: Limited by output filtration to less than 0.5 percent of rated current, peak to peak.
- D. Control Circuits: Immune to frequency variations within rated frequency ranges of normal and emergency power sources.
  - 1. Response Time: Field adjustable for maximum compatibility with local generator-set power source.
- E. Battery Float-Charging Conditions: Comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current required for maximum battery life. The battery charger shall be matched to the battery type supplied.
- F. NiCd Battery Charger: Sense full charge by measuring the rate of temperature increase. Battery charging shall be terminated when the rate of temperature rise reaches 1.8 deg F (1 deg C) per minute. If the battery reaches 140 deg F (60 deg C) prior to reaching this rate of temperature rise, charging shall terminate. Chargers that determine full charge by voltage measurement to sense a 10-mV drop per cell when reaching full charge are also acceptable.

## 2.6 INVERTER

- A. Description: Pulse-width modulated, carrier stored trench IGBT with sinusoidal output. Include a bypass phase synchronization window adjustment to optimize compatibility with local engine-generator-set power source.

## 2.7 CONTROLS AND INDICATIONS

- A. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel on front of UPS enclosure.
- B. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls include those in lists below. Provide sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms include audible signals and visual displays.
- C. Indications: Labeled LED.
  - 1. Quantitative indications shall include the following:
    - a. Input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - b. Input current, each phase, line to line.
    - c. Bypass input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - d. Bypass input frequency.
    - e. System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - f. System output current, each phase.
    - g. System output frequency.
    - h. DC bus voltage.
    - i. Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).

- j. Elapsed time discharging battery.
2. Basic status condition indications shall include the following:
- a. Normal operation.
  - b. Load-on bypass.
  - c. Load-on battery.
  - d. Inverter off.
  - e. Alarm condition.
3. Alarm indications shall include the following:
- a. Bypass ac input overvoltage or undervoltage.
  - b. Bypass ac input over frequency or underfrequency.
  - c. Bypass ac input and inverter out of synchronization.
  - d. Bypass ac input wrong-phase rotation.
  - e. Bypass ac input single-phase condition.
  - f. Bypass ac input filter fuse blown.
  - g. Internal frequency standard in use.
  - h. Battery system alarm.
  - i. Control power failure.
  - j. Fan failure.
  - k. UPS overload.
  - l. Battery-charging control faulty.
  - m. Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
  - n. Input transformer overtemperature.
  - o. Input circuit breaker tripped.
  - p. Input wrong-phase rotation.
  - q. Input single-phase condition.
  - r. Approaching end of battery operation.
  - s. Battery undervoltage shutdown.
  - t. Maximum battery voltage.
  - u. Inverter fuse blown.
  - v. Inverter transformer overtemperature.
  - w. Inverter overtemperature.
  - x. Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
  - y. Inverter power supply fault.
  - z. Inverter transistors out of saturation.
  - aa. Identification of faulty inverter section/leg.
  - bb. Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.
  - cc. UPS overload shutdown.
  - dd. Inverter current sensor fault.
  - ee. Inverter output contactor open.
  - ff. Inverter current limit.
4. Controls shall include the following:
- a. Inverter on-off.
  - b. UPS start.



- c. Battery test.
- d. Alarm silence/reset.
- e. Output-voltage adjustment.

- D. Emergency Power off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation by external dry contacts.

## 2.8 STATIC BYPASS TRANSFER SWITCH

- A. Description: Solid-state switching device providing uninterrupted transfer with a contactor or electrically operated circuit breaker to automatically provide electrical isolation for the switch.
- B. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at the rated full-load UPS current, minimum.
- C. Input SPD: 80 kA.

## 2.9 BATTERY

- A. Description: Valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium units, factory assembled in an isolated compartment of UPS cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.
  - 1. Factory assembled in an isolated compartment of UPS cabinet.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. C&D Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. Exide Technologies.
  - 4. Schinsert manufacturer's name.
- C. Seismic-Restraint Design: Battery racks, cabinets, assemblies, subassemblies, and components (and fastenings and supports, mounting, and anchorage devices for them) shall be designed and fabricated to withstand static and seismic forces.

## 2.10 BASIC BATTERY MONITORING

- A. Description: Continuous, real-time capture of battery performance data.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. APC by Schneider Electric.
  - 2. BTECH, Inc.
  - 3. Eaton.
  - 4. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
  - 5. Midtronics, Inc.

- C. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.
- D. Battery compartment high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a temperature greater than 167 deg F (75 deg C) occurs within the compartment.
- E. Annunciation of Alarms: At UPS control panel and remotely.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test complete UPS system without actual batteries that are to be part of final installation before shipment. Include the following:
  - 1. Test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.
  - 2. Full-load test.
  - 3. Transient-load response test.
  - 4. Overload test.
  - 5. Power failure test.
- B. Report test results. Include the following data:
  - 1. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
  - 2. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.
  - 3. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of the UPS.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

- E. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- F. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- G. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated. Apply oxide inhibitor on battery terminals.
- H. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.2 GROUNDING

- A. Separately Derived Systems: If not part of a listed power supply for a data-processing room, comply with NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Separately Derived Systems: If part of a listed power supply for a data-processing room, comply with manufacturer's written instructions that include grounding requirements in excess of NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 BATTERY EQUALIZATION

- A. Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual-cell voltages.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:
    - a. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
    - b. Component type and labeling verification.
    - c. Ratings of installed components.
  - 2. Test electrical and mechanical interlock systems for correct operation and sequencing.

3. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:
  - a. Use of low-resistance ohmmeter according to Section 7.22.2.2 of NETA ATS.
  - b. Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or Table 100.12 of NETA ATS.
  - c. Perform thermographic survey according to Section 9 of NETA ATS.
4. Test static transfer from inverter to bypass and back. Use normal load, if possible.
5. Test dc undervoltage trip level on inverter input breaker. Set according to manufacturer's published data.
6. Verify synchronizing indicators for static switch and bypass switches.
7. Test insulated-case and molded-case breakers.
  - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with the circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 of NETA ATS.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring for ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation.
  - c. Use primary current injection to determine long time and short time, ground fault, and instantaneous pickup. Use secondary current injection to test trip functions.
  - d. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data.
  - e. Verify operation of charging mechanism.
  - f. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, antipump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators.
8. Test automatic transfer switches.
  - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter, if applicable, according to Section 7.22.3.1 of NETA ATS.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring for ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components or for control devices that cannot tolerate the applied voltage, follow manufacturer's recommendation.
  - c. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test.
  - d. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
  - e. Calibrate and set all relays and timers according to Section 7.9 of NETA ATS.
  - f. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
  - g. Perform automatic transfer tests.
    - 1) Simulate loss of normal power.

- 2) Return to normal power.
  - 3) Simulate loss of emergency power.
  - 4) Simulate all forms of single-phase conditions.
- h. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
  - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
  - 2) Time delay on transfer.
  - 3) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
  - 4) Automatic transfer operation.
  - 5) Interlocks and limit switch function.
  - 6) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
9. Test direct current system's batteries.
  - a. Verify adequacy of battery support racks, mounting, anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
  - b. Verify all charger functions and alarms.
  - c. Measure each cell voltage and total battery voltage with charger energized and in float mode of operation.
  - d. Perform a load test according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.
  - e. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage levels. Adjust to battery manufacturer's recommended settings.
  - f. Test values.
    - 1) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 2) Charger float and equalize voltage levels shall be according to battery manufacturer's published data.
    - 3) The results of charger functions and alarms shall be according to manufacturer's published data.
    - 4) Cell voltages shall be within 0.05 V of each other or according to manufacturer's published data.
    - 5) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 6) Cell internal ohmic values (resistance, impedance, or conductance) shall not vary by more than 25 percent between identical cells that are in a fully charged state.
    - 7) Results of load tests shall be according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.
10. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.
- D. Seismic-restraint tests and inspections shall include the following:

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

1. Inspect type, size, quantity, arrangement, and proper installation of mounting or anchorage devices.
2. Test mounting and anchorage devices according to requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- E. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections, including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria. Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the UPS.

END OF SECTION 263353

## SECTION 26 3600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less.
- B. The automatic transfer switches shall be provided by the generator set manufacturer to provide a single source of responsibility for all the products provided.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
  - 2. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

- C. Comply with NFPA 110.
- D. Comply with UL 1008 unless the requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
  - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
  - 2. Short time withstand capability for 30 cycles.
- G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- J. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.
- L. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable shrinkable sleeve markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
  - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
  - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
  - 4. Accessible via front access.
- M. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.



## 2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
  3. Cummins Power Generation.
  4. Eaton.
  5. Russelectric, Inc.
- B. Comply with Level 2 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
  2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
  3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
  4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
  7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
  8. Ground bar.
  9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
  2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
  3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
  4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.

- F. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- G. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
  2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
  3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
  4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
  5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
  6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
  7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
    - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
  8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
  9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
  10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
  11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
  12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
  13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for a 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
    - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.

- c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for legally required systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
    - a. Overvoltage.
    - b. Undervoltage.
    - c. Loss of supply voltage.
    - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
    - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
    - f. Temperature rise.
    - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
    - h. Overload.
    - i. Contact opening.
    - j. Endurance.
    - k. Short circuit.
    - l. Short-time current capability.
    - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
    - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
  - 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - 3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolts inserts into bases.
  - 4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
- F. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. and Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems." Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- G. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- H. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquid tight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.

- d. Verify that the unit is clean.
  - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
  - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
  - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
  - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
    - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
    - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
  - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
  - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
  - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
  - l. Inspect control power transformers.
    - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
    - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
    - 3) Verify correct functioning of draw out disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
  - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
  - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
  - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
  - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
  - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
  - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
    - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
    - 2) Engine start sequence.
    - 3) Time delay on transfer.
    - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
    - 5) Automatic transfer operation.
    - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
    - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
    - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

- a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
  - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
  - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
  - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
4. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
  - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
  - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
  - c. Verify time-delay settings.
  - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
  - e. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microohms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
  - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
- B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- D. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
  3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

**3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

## SECTION 26 4113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes lightning protection system for the following:

1. Ordinary structures.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be used in the installation.
2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and terminations, including concealment requirements.
4. Calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of metal bodies.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Lightning protection system Shop Drawings, drawn to scale, coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- C. Product certificates.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

- B. Completion Certificate:

1. UL Master Label Certificate.



1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: UL-listed installer, category OWAY.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
  2. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
  3. National Lightning Protection.
  4. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
  5. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.
  6. VFC Lightning Protection.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with UL 96A requirements for Class II **buildings**.
- B. Lightning Protection Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as complying with UL 96 and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Air Terminals:
1. Aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
  2. 3/8-inch (10-mm) diameter by 24 inches (610 mm)> long.
  3. Rounded tip.
  4. Integral base support.
- B. Class I Main Conductors:
1. Aluminum: 98,600 circular mils in diameter.
- C. Secondary Conductors:
1. Aluminum: 41,400 circular mils in diameter.
- D. Ground Loop Conductor: Tinned copper.
- E. Ground Rods:
1. Material Copper-clad steel.
  2. Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm).

3. Rods shall be not less than 120 inches (3050 mm) long.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A
- B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less than 90 degrees and 8 inches (203 mm) in radius and narrow loops.
- C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building. Comply with requirements for concealed installations in UL 96A.

#### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.
- B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed and labeled for the purpose: crimp.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

END OF SECTION 264113

SECTION 26 4313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL  
POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Type 1 surge protective devices.
2. Type 2 surge protective devices.
3. Enclosures.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262416 "Panelboards" for integral SPDs installed by panelboard manufacturer.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A.  $I_n$ : Nominal discharge current.

B. Voltage Protection Rating (VPR): A rating selected from UL 1449 list of preferred values assigned to each mode of protection.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Include electrical characteristics, specialties, and accessories for SPDs.
  - b. Certification of compliance with UL 1449 by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction including the following information:
    - 1) Tested values for VPRs.
    - 2)  $I_n$  ratings.
    - 3) MCOV, type designations.
    - 4) OCPD requirements.
    - 5) Manufacturer's model number.
    - 6) System voltage.
    - 7) Modes of protection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranty.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that SPDs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of SPDs that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
1. Initial Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for labor, materials, and equipment.
  2. Follow-On Extended Warranty Period: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for materials only, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 TYPE 1 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
  2. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
  3. DITEK Surge Protection.
  4. Eaton.
  5. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
  6. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain devices from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. General Characteristics:
1. Reference Standards: UL 1449, Type 1.
  2. MCOV: Not less than 125 percent of nominal system voltage for 208Y/120 V and 120/240 V power systems, and not less than 115 percent of nominal system voltage for 480Y/277 V power systems.
  3. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase must not be less than 160 kA. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of the ratings of individual MOVs in a given mode.
  4. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits must not exceed the following:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    - b. Line to Line: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
  5. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits must not exceed the following:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
    - b. Line to Line: 1200 V.

6. SCCR: Not less than 100 kA.
7.  $I_n$  Rating: 20 kA.

D. Options:

1. Include integral disconnect switch.
2. Include internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Include indicator light display for protection status.
4. Include audible alarm.
5. Include surge counter.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor Enclosures: Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide OCPD and disconnect for installation of SPD in accordance with UL 1449 and manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and the Specifications.
  2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
  3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's installation requirements.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
  1. SPDs that do not pass tests and inspections will be considered defective.
  2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests; reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

END OF SECTION 264313

## SECTION 26 5119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Downlight.
2. Linear industrial.
3. Recessed, linear.
4. Strip light.
5. Surface mount, linear.
6. Suspended, linear.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by the manufacturer.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Product test reports.
- E. Sample warranty.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as

defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step Macadam's Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C).
  - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- C. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.



- D. California Title 24 compliant.

## 2.3 DOWNLIGHT.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Architectural Lighting Works.
2. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
3. Edge Lighting.
4. Edison Price Lighting.
5. Elite Lighting Corporation.

- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac

- C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 1000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to zero percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear anodized finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

- F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Fixed lens.
2. Medium light distribution.
3. Clear glass.
4. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

5. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.4 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
2. Lighting Science Group.
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
4. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
5. RAB Lighting.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum 5,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61].

6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. painted finish.

D. Housing and Heat Sink Rating:

1. IP 66.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic glass.

2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. With integral mounting provisions.

H. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

## 2.5 LOWBAY.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
2. GE Current, a Daintree company; American Industrial Partners (AIP).
3. Lighting Science Group.
4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 10,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Internal driver.
6. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
7. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear glass.

2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.6 RECESSED, LINEAR.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Architectural Lighting Works.
2. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
3. Elite Lighting Corporation.
4. GE Current, a Daintree company; American Industrial Partners (AIP).
5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 3,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to zero percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic glass.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

2.7 STRIP LIGHT.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
2. GE Current, a Daintree company; American Industrial Partners (AIP).
3. Lighting Science Group.
4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
5. OSRAM SYLVANIA.
6. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 750 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Internal driver.
6. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
7. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping of luminaire without use of tools.

Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.8 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Architectural Lighting Works.
2. Axis Lighting, Inc.
3. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
4. Elite Lighting Corporation.
5. Lighting Science Group.
6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
7. OSRAM SYLVANIA.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.Lamp:

1. Minimum 750 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Internal driver.
6. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61
7. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.

3. With integral mounting provisions.
  - D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.
  - E. Diffusers and Globes:
    1. Prismatic acrylic.
    2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - F. Standards:
    1. ENERGY STAR certified.
    2. RoHS compliant.
    3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
- 2.9 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    1. Architectural Lighting Works.
    2. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
    3. Edge Lighting.
    4. Elite Lighting Corporation.
    5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac
  - C. Lamp:
    1. Minimum 750 lm.
    2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
    3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
    4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
    5. Internal driver.
    6. User-Replaceable Lamps:
      - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
      - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
    7. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear glass.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.10 SUSPENDED, LINEAR.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Architectural Lighting Works.
2. Axis Lighting, Inc.
3. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
4. Edge Lighting.
5. Elite Lighting Corporation.
6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 3,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Internal driver.
6. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
7. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.



D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic glass.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.11 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

## 2.12 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.13 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and re lamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

## 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

#### B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

#### C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 265119

## SECTION 26 5213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting.
2. Exit signs.
3. Materials.
4. Luminaire support components.

B. Related Requirements:

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
  - c. Battery and charger for light units.
  - d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty for Batteries for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Manufacturer warrants that batteries for emergency luminaires and exit signs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of batteries that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; prorated coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 101.
- C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- D. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.
- E. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- F. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with LED driver.
  1. Emergency Connection: Operate LED lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1400 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire LED driver.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. The lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, the relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  6. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Characteristics: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Luminaire:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Architectural Lighting Works.
  - b. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
  - c. Dual-Lite; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - d. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - e. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
2. Options:
  - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
  - b. Internal emergency power unit.
  - c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
  - d. UL 94 5VA flame rating.

## 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Sign:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
  - b. Hubbell Lighting; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - c. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - d. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
2. Options:
  - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
  - b. Lamps for AC Operation:
    - 1) LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

2. Sheet metal components must be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit re lamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded aluminum housing.
2. Clear powder coat finish.

E. Conduit: EMT, minimum metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

## 2.5 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- C. Supports:
1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit] weight.

2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices must be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

D. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls>.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

E. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inch (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stems and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to outlet box, if provided.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.



## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:
  - 1. Inspect luminaires. Replace lamps, batteries, exit signs, and luminaires that are defective.
    - a. Parts and supplies must be the manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 265213

## SECTION 26 5613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.
- C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- D. Standard: See "Pole."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Detail fabrication and assembly of poles and pole accessories.
  4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of installation.
  5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
  6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements according to AASHTO LTS-6-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.

- B. Material test reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample warranty.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of pole(s) that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within a specified warranty period. Manufacturers may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs from special warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Foundation and pole shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
  - 3. .
- B. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- C. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- D. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2200 N) distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- E. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.
- F. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
  - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 160 mph.
    - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
    - c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.

- G. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- H. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 STEEL POLES

- A. <Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American LitePole.
  - 2. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
  - 3. H.E. Williams.
  - 4. Hapco.
  - 5. Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 6. Kim Lighting; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 7. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
- C. Poles: Comply with ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig (317 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.
  - 1. Shape: round, straight].
  - 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- D. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- E. Fasteners: Stainless steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
  - 1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
  - 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.
- G. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

- H. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported load multiplied by a 5.0 safety factor.
- I. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
  - 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
  - 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

## 2.3 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

## 2.4 MOUNTING HARDWARE

- A. Anchor Bolts: Manufactured to ASTM F1554, Grade 55, with a minimum yield strength of 55,000 psi (380 000 kPa).
  - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C.
  - 2. Threading: Uniform National Coarse, Class 2A.
- B. Nuts: ASTM A563, Grade A, Heavy-Hex.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C.
  - 2. Two nuts provided per anchor bolt.
- C. Washers: ASTM F436, Type 1.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C.
  - 2. Two washer(s) provided per anchor bolt.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 POLE FOUNDATION

- A. Direct-Buried Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than as indicated. To ensure a plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while tamping.
  - 1. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
  - 2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days and finish in a dome above finished grade.
  - 3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
  - 4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
- B. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied template, uniformly spaced.

#### 3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
- D. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

#### 3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use it in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum using insulating fittings or treatment.

- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

### 3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground Nonmetallic Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
  - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
  - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundation.

END OF SECTION 265613

## SECTION 26 5619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 265613 "Lighting Poles and Standards" for poles and standards used to support exterior lighting equipment.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.
1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports.



1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale and coordinated.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Luminaire.
- D. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
  - 2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project, use manufacturers' codes.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

## 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.
- F. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
- G. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- H. Nominal Operating Voltage 277 V ac.
- I. In-line Fusing: Separate in-line fuse for each luminaire.
- J. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use.
- K. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.

## 2.3 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Area and Site:
  - 1. Luminaire Shape: Round
  - 2. Mounting: Pole with round arm, in length.
  - 3. Luminaire-Mounting Height: 25 feet.

## 2.4 Distribution: Type as indicated on drawings. MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re lamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re lamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

- D. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- G. Housings:
  - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
  - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.

## 2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to a minimum 1/8 inch (3 mm) backing plate attached to wall structural members.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use it in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
  - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
    - a. IES LM-5.
    - b. IES LM-50.
    - c. IES LM-52.
    - d. IES LM-64.
    - e. IES LM-72.
  - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to the lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires.

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

END OF SECTION 265619

## SECTION 27 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Underground-line warning tape.
2. Bands and tubes.
3. Cable ties.
4. Miscellaneous identification products.
5. Labels.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Identification Schedule:

1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
2. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
3. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA 606-B.
- B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

#### 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Champion America.
    - c. HellermannTyton.
    - d. Marking Services Inc.
    - e. Panduit Corp.
    - f. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.4 SIGNS

- A. Laminated-Acrylic or Melamine-Plastic Signs:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. Marking Services Inc.
    - d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
    - e. emedco.
  2. Engraved legend.
  3. Thickness:
    - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
    - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
    - c. Engraved legend with white letters on a dark gray background.
    - d. Self-adhesive.
    - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment to applicable equipment.

## 2.5 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. HellermannTyton.
  2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  3. Marking Services Inc.
  4. Panduit Corp.



- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Verify the identity of each item before installing identification products.
- C. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- D. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- E. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.
- F. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- G. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
  - 3. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.
- H. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.

2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide a view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.
  1. System legends shall be as follows:
    - a. Telecommunications.
- D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, numbered clockwise when entering room from primary egress, composed of the following, in the order listed:
  1. Wiring closet designation.
  2. Colon.
  3. Faceplate number.
- E. Equipment Room Labeling:
  1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.
  2. Patch Panels: Label individual rows in each rack, starting at top and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
  3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label indicating the following, in the order listed:
    - a. Room number being served.
    - b. Colon.
    - c. Faceplate number.
- F. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label snap-around label indicating the following, in the order listed:
  1. Room number.
  2. Colon.
  3. Faceplate number.
- G. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- H. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: Baked-enamel warning signs.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

### I. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Indoor Equipment: Baked-enamel signs.
2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
  - a. Communications cabinets.
  - b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
  - c. Fire-alarm and suppression equipment.
  - d. Egress points.
  - e. Power distribution components.
  - f. .

END OF SECTION 270553

## SECTION 27 1513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
2. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs and jacks.
3. Cable management system.
4. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.

#### 1.2 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. The horizontal cabling system shall provide interconnections between Distributor A, Distributor B, or Distributor C, and the equipment outlet, otherwise known as "Cabling Subsystem 1," in the telecommunications cabling system structure. A cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.

1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.

- B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft., and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.

- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. System Labeling Schedules:
  - a. Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.

3. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment.

C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.

D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

B. Source quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607- C

## 2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:
  - 1. Communications, Plenum Rated:
    - a. Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway.
  - 2. Communications, Non-Plenum Rated:
    - a. Type CMP or Type CMR in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings from an applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. RoHS compliant.

## 2.3 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. 3M.
  - 2. Belden Inc.
  - 3. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
  - 4. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
  - 5. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
  - 6. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Blue thermoplastic.

## 2.4 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M.
  2. Belden Inc.
  3. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
  4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
  5. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
  6. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
- C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
  2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
  3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as twisted pair cable, from single source.
- E. Connecting Blocks:
1. 110-style IDC for Category 6.
  2. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
1. Features:
    - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
    - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
    - c. Replaceable connectors.
    - d. 48 ports.
  2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch equipment racks.
  3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
  - 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
  - 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
  - 1. Male; eight positions; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
  - 2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
  - 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
  - 1. Female; eight positions; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
  - 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or cover plate.
  - 3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
  - 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- K. Cover Plate:
  - 1. Two port, vertical single gang cover plates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
  - 2. Plastic Cover Plate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
  - 3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
    - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
- L. Legend:
  - 1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.

## 2.5 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

- A. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database capabilities.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Telsoft Solutions.
  - 2. iTRACS Corporation.
- C. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.



- D. Information shall be presented in database view.
- E. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:
  - 1. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
  - 2. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.
- B. Routing: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.
- D. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1.
  - 2. Comply with BICSI's Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
  - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
  - 5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
  - 6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - 7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  - 8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - 9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - 10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before de-reeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.

11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
  12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- F. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
- 3.2 FIRESTOPPING
- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
  - B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
  - C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."
- 3.3 GROUNDING
- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
  - B. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."
  - C. Comply with TIA- 607 C and NECA/BICSI-607.
  - D. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 2/0 AWG grounding electrode conductor.
  - E. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using nothing smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
- 3.4 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

- B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration.
- C. Equipment grounding conductors.
- D. Cable and Wire Identification:
  - 1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
  - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
  - 4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
    - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
  - 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- E. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:
  - 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Preparation:
- B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
  - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
  - 3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

## WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem

Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

## SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

- D. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.
- E. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- F. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

## SECTION 28 4621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Addressable fire-alarm system.
2. Fire-alarm control unit (FACU).
3. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
4. System smoke detectors.
5. Duct smoke detectors.
6. Carbon monoxide detectors.
7. Multicriteria and multisensory fire detectors.
8. Fire-alarm notification appliances.
9. Fire-alarm remote annunciators.
10. Fire-alarm addressable interface devices.
11. Digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs).

B. Related Requirements:

#### 1.2 Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" or DEFINITIONS

A. DACT: Digital alarm communicator transmitter.

B. FACU: Fire-alarm control unit.

C. Voltage Class: For specified circuits and equipment, voltage classes are defined as follows:

1. Control Voltage: Listed and labeled for use in remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits supplied by a Class 2 or Class 3 power supply having rated output not greater than 150 V and 5 A, allowing use of alternate wiring methods complying with NFPA 70, Article 725.
2. Low Voltage: Listed and labeled for use in circuits supplied by a Class 1 or other power supply having rated output not greater than 1000 V, requiring use of wiring methods complying with NFPA 70, Article 300, Part I.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Approved Permit Submittal: Submittals must be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.

B. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.

C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including details of attachments to other Work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Annunciator panel details as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Detail assembly and support requirements.
6. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
7. Include battery-size calculations.
8. Include input/output matrix.
9. Include written statement from manufacturer that equipment and components have been tested as a system and comply with requirements in this Section and in NFPA 72.
10. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
11. Verify that each duct detector is listed for the complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
12. Provide control wiring diagrams for fire-alarm interface to HVAC; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
  - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
  - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
  - c. Locate detectors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Comply with "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

- b. Provide "Fire-Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" in accordance with "Completion Documents" Article in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
- c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between devices and equipment. Each conductor must be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
- d. Riser diagram.
- e. Device addresses.
- f. Air-sampling system sample port locations and modeling program report showing layout meets performance criteria.
- g. Record copy of site-specific software.
- h. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" in accordance with "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
  - 1) Equipment tested.
  - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
  - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
  - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
  - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
- i. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
- j. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at FACU and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

- 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
- 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media.
- 3. Device address list.
- 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

- 1. Personnel must be trained and certified by the manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- 2. Installation must be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.
- 3. Obtain certification by NRTL in accordance with NFPA 72.
- 4. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Seismic Conditions: Unless otherwise indicated on Contract Documents, specified Work in this Section must withstand the seismic hazard design loads determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7 for installed elevation above or below grade.

1. The term "withstand" means "unit must remain in place without separation of parts from unit when subjected to specified seismic design loads."

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail because of defects in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

- A. Description:

1. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice-and-strobe notification for evacuation.

- B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. Fire-Alarm Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a NRTL in accordance with NFPA 70 for use with selected fire-alarm system and marked for intended location and application.

2. General Characteristics:

- a. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- b. Fire-alarm signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and systems:

- 1) Manual stations.
- 2) Smoke detectors.
- 3) Duct smoke detectors.
- 4) Carbon monoxide detectors.
- 5) Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- 6) Fire standpipe system.
- 7) Dry system pressure flow switch.
- 8) .

- c. Fire-alarm signal must initiate the following actions:

- 1) Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.



- 2) Identify alarm and specific initiating device at FACU and remote annunciators.
  - 3) Transmit alarm signal to remote alarm receiving station.
  - 4) Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
  - 5) Activate voice/alarm communication system.
  - 6) Switch HVAC equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
  - 7) Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
  - 8) Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies, except for shutoffs serving legally required life-safety systems such as emergency generators.
  - 9) Record events in system memory.
- d. Supervisory signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
- 1) Valve supervisory switch.
  - 2) Zones or individual devices have been disabled.
  - 3) FACU has lost communication with the network.
  - 4) .
- e. System trouble signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
- 1) Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
  - 2) Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
  - 3) Loss of communication with addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator.
  - 4) Loss of primary power at FACU.
  - 5) Ground or single break in internal circuits of FACU.
  - 6) Abnormal ac voltage at FACU.
  - 7) Break in standby battery circuitry.
  - 8) Failure of battery charging.
  - 9) Voice signal amplifier failure.
- f. System Supervisory Signal Actions:
- 1) Initiate notification appliances.
  - 2) Identify specific device initiating event at FACU and remote annunciators.
  - 3) After time delay of 200 seconds, transmit trouble or supervisory signal to remote alarm receiving station.
  - 4) Transmit system status to building management system.
- g. Document Storage Box:
- 1) Description: Enclosure to accommodate standard 8-1/2-by-11 inch manuals and loose document records. Legend sheet will be permanently attached to door for system required documentation, key contacts, and system

information. Provide two key ring holders with location to mount standard business cards for key contact personnel.

- 2) Material and Finish: 18-gauge cold-rolled steel; four mounting holes.
- 3) Color: Red powder-coat epoxy finish.
- 4) Labeling: Permanently screened with 1 inch high lettering "SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENTS" with white indelible ink.
- 5) Security: Locked with 3/4 inch barrel lock. Provide solid 12 inch stainless steel piano hinge.

## 2.2 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT (FACU)

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
2. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
3. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
4. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
5. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
6. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
7. Silent Knight; Honeywell International, Inc.
8. Simplex: brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.

- B. Description: Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules.

- C. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with NFPA 72 and UL 864.
2. General Characteristics:
  - a. System software and programs must be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
  - b. Include real-time clock for time annotation of events on event recorder and
  - c. Provide communication between FACU and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
  - d. FACU must be listed for connection to central station signaling system service.
  - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. System must require no manual input to initialize in the event of complete power down condition. FACU must provide a minimum 500-event history log.
  - f. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: FACU must indicate which communication zones have been silenced and must provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
- 1) Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: FACU must be listed for releasing service.

- g. Fire-Alarm Annunciator: Arranged for interface between human operator at FACU and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and programming and control menu.
  - 1) Annunciator and Display: LCD, 80 characters, minimum.
  - 2) Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- h. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
  - 1) Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class B.
  - 2) Pathway Survivability: Level 1.
  - 3) Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
  - 4) Install fault circuit isolators to comply with circuit performance requirements of NFPA 72 or with manufacturer's written instructions, whichever is more conservative.
- i. Serial Interfaces:
  - 1) One dedicated RS 485 port for remote station operation using point ID DACT.
  - 2) One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module
  - 3) One USB port for PC configuration.
  - 4) One RS 232 port for air-aspirating smoke detector connection.
  - 5) One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- j. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
  - 1) Audible appliances must sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
  - 2) Visual alarm appliances must flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- k. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls must select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory and print out final adjusted values on system printer.
- l. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to remote alarm station.
- m. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as special module that is part of FACU.
- n. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of

announcements by use of central-control microphone. Amplifiers must comply with UL 1711.

- 1) Allow application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and simultaneously allow voice paging to other zones selectively or in combination.
  - 2) Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
  - 3) Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
  - 4) Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of FACU.
- o. Status Annunciator: Indicate status of various voice/alarm speaker zones.
  - p. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators must automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
  - q. Primary Power: 24 V(dc) obtained from 120 V(ac) service and power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, and supervisory and DACT must be powered by 24 V(dc) source.
  - r. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system must not exceed 80 percent of power-supply module rating.
  - s. Secondary Power: 24 V(dc) supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
  - t. Batteries: Sealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acid.

D. Accessories:

1. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind plastic or glass cover in stainless steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe functional operation of system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

## 2.3 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
2. Federal Signal Corporation.
3. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
4. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
5. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
6. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
7. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
8. Silent Knight; Honeywell International, Inc.

- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes must be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; must show

visible indication of operation; and must be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at top to permit lifting for access to initiate alarm. Lifting cover actuates integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
4. Material: Manual stations made of Lexan polycarbonate.
5. Able to be used in indoor areas.

## 2.4 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

### A. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
  - b. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - d. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - e. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - f. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
  - g. Silent Knight; Honeywell International, Inc.
2. Performance Criteria:
  - a. Regulatory Requirements:
    - 1) NFPA 72.
    - 2) UL 268.
  - b. General Characteristics:
    - 1) Detectors must be two-wire type.
    - 2) Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components must be mounted in twist-lock module that connects to fixed base. Provide terminals in fixed base for connection to building wiring.
    - 3) Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
    - 4) Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
    - 5) Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
    - 6) Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:

- a) Primary status.
  - b) Device type.
  - c) Present average value.
  - d) Present sensitivity selected.
  - e) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 7) The detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
  - 8) Color: White.
  - 9) Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors must be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at FACU for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by FACU.
  - 10) Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
  - 11) Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

## 2.5 DUCT SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
- 2. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
- 3. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
- 4. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
- 5. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
- 6. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
- 7. Silent Knight; Honeywell International, Inc.

- B. Description: Photoelectric-type, duct-mounted smoke detector.

- C. Performance Criteria:

- 1. Regulatory Requirements:
  - a. NFPA 72.
  - b. UL 268A.
- 2. General Characteristics:
  - a. Detectors must be two-wire type.
  - b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
  - c. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  - d. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.

- e. Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
- f. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - 1) Primary status.
  - 2) Device type.
  - 3) Present average value.
  - 4) Present sensitivity selected.
  - 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- g. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
- h. Each sensor must have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
- i. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
- j. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.6 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- 1. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.

- B. Description: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.

- C. Performance Criteria:

- 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. NFPA 72
- b. NFPA 720.
- c. UL 2075.

- 2. General Characteristics:

- a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
- b. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into sensing cell.
- c. Detector must provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
- d. Detectors must send trouble alarms when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
- e. Locate, mount, and wire in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- f. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
- g. The test button simulates alarm condition.

## 2.7 MULTICRITERIA AND MULTISENSOR FIRE DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
  2. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
  3. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
  4. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  5. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  6. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
  7. Silent Knight; Honeywell International, Inc.
- B. Description: Fire-sensing detectors using multiple means of detection.
- C. Performance Criteria:
1. Regulatory Requirements:
    - a. NFPA 72.
  2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
    - b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
    - c. Automatically adjusts its sensitivity by means of drift compensation and smoothing algorithms. Detectors must send trouble alarm if it is incapable of compensating for existing conditions.
    - d. Test button tests sensors in detector.
    - e. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:
      - 1) Primary status.
      - 2) Device type.
      - 3) Present sensitivity selected.
      - 4) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
    - f. The detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
    - g. Color: White.
    - h. Comply with UL requirements.
    - i. Sensors (Multi-sensor Type): Detector must be comprised of four sensing elements including smoke sensor, carbon monoxide sensor, infrared sensor, and heat sensor.
      - 1) Smoke sensor must be photoelectric type as described in "System Smoke Detectors" Article.
      - 2) Carbon monoxide sensor must be as described in "Carbon Monoxide Detectors" Article.



- 3) Heat sensor must be as described in "Heat Detectors" Article.
- 4) Each sensor must be separately listed in accordance with requirements for its detector type.

## 2.8 FIRE-ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

### A. Fire-Alarm Audible Notification Appliances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
  - b. Federal Signal Corporation.
  - c. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - d. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - e. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
  - f. Simplex; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
  - g. Wheelock, Life Safety and Mass Notification; Eaton, Electrical Sector.

### B. Fire-Alarm Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
  - b. Federal Signal Corporation.
  - c. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - d. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - e. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
  - f. Simplex; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
  - g. Wheelock, Life Safety and Mass Notification; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
2. Description: Notification appliances capable of outputting voice evacuation messages.
3. Performance Criteria:
  - a. Regulatory Requirements:
    - 1) NFPA 72.
    - 2) UL 1480.
  - b. General Characteristics:
    - 1) Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide intelligibility requirements of "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
    - 2) Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
    - 3) Mounting: semi-recessed.

- 4) Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.
- 5) Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

C. Fire-Alarm Visible Notification Appliances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
  - b. Federal Signal Corporation.
  - c. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - d. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - e. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
  - f. Simplex: brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
  - g. Wheelock, Life Safety and Mass Notification; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
2. Performance Criteria:
  - a. Regulatory Requirements:
    - 1) NFPA 72.
    - 2) UL 1971.
  - b. General Characteristics:
    - 1) Rated Light Output:
      - a) 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in field.
    - 2) Clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on aluminum faceplate.
    - 3) Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
    - 4) Flashing must be in temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
    - 5) Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
    - 6) Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.

2.9 FIRE-ALARM REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Bosch Security Systems, Inc.
  2. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
- B. Performance Criteria:
  1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. NFPA 72.
  - 2. General Characteristics:
    - a. Annunciator functions must match those of FACU for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions must match those of FACU, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
      - 1) Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights must match those of FACU. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.
- 2.10 FIRE-ALARM ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICES
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Bosch Security Systems, Inc.
    - 2. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - B. Performance Criteria:
    - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
      - a. NFPA 72.
    - 2. General Characteristics:
      - a. Include address-setting means on module.
      - b. Store internal identifying code for control panel use to identify module type.
      - c. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
      - d. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
      - e. Integral Relay: Capable of providing direct signal to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.
        - 1) Allow control panel to switch relay contacts on command.
        - 2) Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
      - f. Control Module:
        - 1) Operate notification devices.
        - 2) Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.
      - g. Fiber Optic Modules:
        - 1) Plug-in fiber loop modules.
        - 2) Single channel to transmit or receive communications.

- 3) Network Interface Card communication circuit.
- 4) Common communication link on a fiber-optic network

## 2.11 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTERS (DACTs)

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bosch Security Systems, Inc.
2. Edwards; Carrier Global Corporation.
3. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.

- B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. NFPA 72.

2. General Characteristics:

- a. DACT must be acceptable to remote central stations and must be listed for fire-alarm use.
- b. Functional Performance: Unit must receive alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from FACU and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial preset number for remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals must be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter must initiate local trouble signal and transmit signal indicating loss of telephone line to remote alarm receiving station over remaining line. Transmitters must automatically report telephone service restoration to central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter must initiate local trouble signal.
- c. Local functions and display at DACT must include the following:
  - 1) Verification that both telephone lines are available.
  - 2) Programming device.
  - 3) LED display.
  - 4) Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
  - 5) Communications failure with central station or FACU.
- d. Digital data transmission must include the following:
  - 1) Address of alarm-initiating device.
  - 2) Address of supervisory signal.
  - 3) Address of trouble-initiating device.
  - 4) Loss of ac supply.
  - 5) Loss of power.
  - 6) Low battery.
  - 7) Abnormal test signal.

- 8) Communication bus failure.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Comply with NECA 305, NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
  - 1. Devices placed in service before other trades have completed cleanup must be replaced.
  - 2. Devices installed, but not yet placed, in service must be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage in accordance with manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
  - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in normal path of egress within 60 inches of exit doorway.
  - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on background of contrasting color.
  - 3. Operable part of manual fire-alarm box must be between 42 and 48 inches above floor level. Devices must be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- and Heat-Detector Spacing:
  - 1. Comply with "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
  - 2. Smooth ceiling spacing must not exceed 30 ft..
  - 3. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas must be determined in accordance with Annex A or Annex B in NFPA 72.

4. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
  5. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover must remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inch long must be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detectors in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with device-operating mechanism concealed behind grille. Install devices at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below ceiling. Install devices at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near device they monitor.

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
1. Nameplate must be laminated with acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Nameplate must be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.

### 3.5 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways must be installed in EMT.
- B. Exposed EMT must be painted red enamel.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
  - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with supervised interface devices to the following devices and systems. Install interface device less than 36 inch from device controlled. Make addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at device or system being controlled.
  - 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
  - 2. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
  - 3. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
  - 4. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
  - 5. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
  - 6. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
  - 7. .

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in location visible from FACU.

### 3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground FACU and associated circuits in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Ground shielded cables at control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    - a. Inspection must be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    - b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in "Inspection" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only installed components.
  - 2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" table in "Testing" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 3. Test audible appliances for public operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Perform test using portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ASA S1.4 Part 1/IEC 61672-1.
  - 4. Test audible appliances for private operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 5. Test visible appliances for public operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 6. Factory-authorized service representative must prepare "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and "Inspection and Testing Form" in "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- E. The fire alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.



- G. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system. Provide video recording of training to Owner.

### 3.11 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service must include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies must be the manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 1. Include visual inspections in accordance with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Perform tests in "Test Methods" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 3. Perform tests per "Testing Frequencies" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

### 3.12 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, the service agreement must include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from the date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software must include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

END OF SECTION 284621.11

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Sections, apply to this section.
- B. Examine all drawings and all other sections of the specifications for requirements therein affecting the work of this section.
- C. Coordinate Work with that of all other trades affecting or affected by the work of this section. Cooperate with such trades to assure the steady progress of all Work under the contract.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes all work required to construct the facilities shown on the Drawings.
- B. Earthwork includes, but is not limited to:
  - 1. Topsoil stripping.
  - 2. Proof rolling.
  - 3. Rough grading and shaping.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Site Preparation - Section 311001

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies: Perform excavation work in compliance with applicable requirements of governing authorities and codes having jurisdiction.
- B. Reference Specifications and Standards:
  - 1. ASTM: D2922 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1556 (sand-cone method).
  - 2. ASTM: D3017 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1557 Moisture-Density Relations of Soils, using 10-lb. Rammer and 18-inch Drop.
  - 3. ASTM: D2937, "Density of Soil in Place by the Drive-Cylinder Method."

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SOIL MATERIALS - GENERAL**

- A. On-site materials: Materials obtained by selective stockpiling of excavated soils. Stockpile only materials acceptable to Soils Engineer.
  - 1. Free of all vegetation, roots, and organic matter, root mat, muck and construction debris as shown on plans.
- B. Borrow materials: Approved materials obtained from a borrow site approved by the Owner.

1. Use only non-expansive clean earth and granular materials, free of vegetation, roots and organic matter, muck, root mat and debris.
2. All material brought on-site must be approved by the Owner.

## **2.2 SOIL MATERIALS FOR SITE GRADING**

- A. Use approved on-site or borrow materials.
- B. All soils at or within 12 inches of the surface in areas which are to be landscaped or sodded shall conform to the following:
  1. All soil materials shall be subject to approval by the Engineer.
  2. Satisfactory soil materials are defined as those complying with the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) M145, soil classification groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5 and A-3.
  3. Unsatisfactory soil materials are those defined in AASHTO M145 soil classifications groups A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6 and A-7; also, peat and other highly organic soils.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSPECTION**

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which earthwork is to be performed and notify the Owner, in writing, of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of work

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Layout Work and Reference Points:
  1. Before starting layout work, check through and verify all principal governing dimensions and make a general check of elevations and grades called for on the Drawings.
  2. Locate benchmarks, monuments and other reference points for elevation and location of new work. Notify the Owner of any apparent discrepancies in indicated locations.
  3. Protect reference points from dislocation or damage. Contractor shall notify the Owner's project manager immediately in the event of damage to any reference point. Contractor shall repair or replace the reference point at the expense of the Contractor.
  4. Accurately locate new work on site according to Contract Documents.
  5. Erect batter boards and set grade stakes securely to remain in place until corners and heights are permanently established.
  6. Denote areas allocated for storage of various materials. Select storage and working areas to avoid interference with subsequent operations.
  7. Do not proceed with construction work until reference points and layout work have been verified.

**3.3 EXCAVATION**

- A. Excavation consists of removal and disposal of material of every nature encountered when establishing required grade elevations.
- B. Earth excavation includes removal and disposal of pavements and other obstructions visible on ground surface, underground structures and utilities indicated to be demolished and removed.
- C. Unauthorized excavation consists of removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without specific direction of Owner. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Owner, and as recommended by Soils Engineer, shall be at the Contractor's expense.
- D. Additional excavation:
  - 1. When excavation has reached required subgrade elevations, notify the Design Engineer, who will make an inspection of conditions. Do not excavate below indicated depths.
  - 2. If inspection indicates unsuitable material and conditions, additional excavation and corrective work will be paid for by means consistent with terms of Contract conditions.

**3.4 DEWATERING**

- A. All work areas occurring below the groundwater level shall be drained, dewatered and maintained in stated condition while work is taking place at those elevations.
- B. Dewatering methods shall be those selected by the Contractor, subject to approval by the Owner.
- C. Be responsible for maintaining dry excavations and subgrades continuously while work in each area is being done. Water level shall be reduced to sufficient depth to assure that bottom soils are not saturated or develop a quick condition.
- D. Contractor is responsible for obtaining any dewatering permits that may be required.
- E. Take all measures necessary to prevent subsidence of adjacent property, including but not limited to, groundwater recharge swales.

**3.5 FILL, BACKFILL AND COMPACTION**

- A. Backfill consists of bedding, backfill and restoration of the surface.
- B. Compaction:
  - 1. Proof roll existing ground and bring each 12 inch lift to optimum moisture content before compaction. Add water by uniform sprinkling.
  - 2. When moisture content and condition of each layer is satisfactory, compact to not less than 95 percent of maximum density, or as elsewhere specified.
    - a. Compact areas not accessible to motor-driven equipment with mechanical or heavy hand tampers.

3. Rework compacted areas failing to meet specified maximum density as determined by tests. Re-compact and re-test as required to achieve 95 percent maximum density.
4. Correct unauthorized excavation made below depth indicated, as acceptable to Soils Engineer, at no additional cost to Owner.
5. Landscape areas: Compaction below all landscape, planting or sod areas shall be 90 percent of maximum density for the full depth of fill.
6. Minor structures: Catch basins, and other minor structures shall be supported on bottom and all sides by soils compacted to 95 percent of maximum density.

### 3.6 GRADING

#### A. General:

1. Uniformly grade areas within limits of grading and adjacent transition areas as work included in this Section. Smooth finished surface within specified tolerances. Compact with uniform levels or slopes between points where elevations are shown or between such points and existing grades.
2. Allowable tolerances for grades:
  - a. All cuts and fills shall be graded to necessary subgrade elevations within a tolerance of 0 below to 0.10 feet above grades indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Structures at or on grade shall be within 0.02 feet.
  - c. All elevations and contours shown on the Drawings are to finish grade unless otherwise indicated, and allowance shall be made for pavement thickness and sodding.

B. Grade areas adjacent to pavement lines to drain away from pavement and to prevent ponding. Finish surfaces free from irregular surface changes.

C. Grading Surface of Fill Under Pavement: Grade smooth and even, free of voids, compacted as specified and to required elevation.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. General

1. All frequency of testing requirements shall be per the geotechnical engineer.

#### B. Test methods:

1. Maximum density of backfill materials will be determined by ASTM D3017 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1557 Method A (5-layer method) or ASTM D2937.
2. Field density tests will be determined by ASTM D2922 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1556 (sand-cone method), unless other applicable method is approved.

#### C. Required tests:

1. Backfill material: Determine suitability of backfill material not previously evaluated.

2. Maximum density tests: Determine optimum moisture content and maximum density of backfill materials placed and compacted.
3. Compaction inspection: Determine degree of backfill compaction.
4. Bedding conditions: Determine and evaluate condition of bedding to receive utility lines.

D. Inspections and controls:

1. General inspection of stripping of surfaces and removal of root mat, peat, clay and other unsuitable materials or conditions.
2. Detailed inspection of exposed subgrades prior to finishing or placing compacted fills.
3. Continuous control of placing and compacting all compacted fills.
4. Observation and consultation in processes of embankment shaping, safety in excavations, dewatering and identification of materials encountered.

### 3.8 DAMAGED WORK AND REPAIRS

- A. Repairs: Sections of curbing, concrete and asphalt paving and other permanent features which have been damaged during and as a result of construction operations in connection with this Contract shall be removed and the full section between joints shall be replaced at no additional cost to Owner.
- B. Replacement of grass, shrubs or trees: All grass areas, shrubs or trees which have been rutted or damaged or broken during and as a result of construction operations in connection with this Contract shall be removed and replaced. This shall apply to the grass, shrubs and trees outside the Contract limits as shown on the Drawings.
- C. Protection of graded areas:
1. Protect newly graded areas from traffic and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
  2. Repair and re-establish grades in settled, eroded and rutted areas to specified tolerances.
- D. Reconditioning compacted areas: Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent construction operations or adverse weather, scarify surface, reshape and compact to required density prior to further construction.
- E. Removal from Owner's property: During construction, debris shall be removed from site as soon as practical. See Section for specific removal instructions.

END OF SECTION 310000

---

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section is intended to include the provisions necessary to accomplish all site preparation work required by the Work.
- B. The types of work include, but are not limited to:
  - 1. Clearing, grubbing and disposal of materials and debris resulting from this work.
  - 2. Removing and disposing of above and below grade existing improvements.
  - 3. Tree salvage by Owner.
  - 4. Removal and lawful disposal of existing improvements to be removed or demolished for the Work.
- C. The area requiring site preparation work includes all areas within the Work limits as shown on the Drawings.
- D. Definitions:
  - 1. Clearing: The removal of trees, stumps, downtimber, shrubs, bushes, rubbish and other objectionable matter found at or above original ground level. Should Owner desire selective clearing, other than that shown on the Drawings, Owner will select and mark, or otherwise designate, the trees or ornamentals to remain standing at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 2. Grubbing: The removal of stumps, roots, boards, logs and other objectionable debris found at or below original ground level.

### 1.2 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Protection:
  - 1. Initiate and be responsible for all precautions reasonably necessary for the protection of the Work, protection of areas adjacent to, but outside the Work limits and for the protection of any persons whose injury might result from the failure to take such precautions.
  - 2. Protect improvements at adjoining areas. Provide barricades, coverings or other types of protection necessary to prevent damage to existing improvements indicated to remain in place.
  - 3. Provide for the protection of tops, trunks and roots of existing trees and flora that are to remain on Work site. Do not permit heavy equipment or stockpiles within branch spread.
  - 4. Take all steps necessary to facilitate drainage and prevent water ponding in tree save areas.
  - 5. Water grass, trees and other vegetation which are to remain within the limits of the Contract Work as required to maintain their health during the course of construction operations.
  - 6. Restore any improvements damaged by this Work to their original or better condition, and repair or replace trees and vegetation damaged by construction operations in a manner acceptable to the Owner.

---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Provide all materials, equipment and appurtenances required for completion of clearing work, including that required for protection of vegetation and other improvements that are to remain.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PERFORMANCE**

- A. General:
  - 1. Remove all vegetation, improvements or obstructions in the areas indicated on the Drawings. Remove such items elsewhere on the site or premises as specifically indicated. Removal includes stumps and roots.
  - 2. Verify if the Owner desires to remove any trees prior to clearing.
- B. Clearing and grubbing:
  - 1. Clear and grub the site at new construction areas of all surface vegetation, roots, stumps, rubbish, and objectionable debris.
  - 2. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material.
  - 3. Remove all stumps, roots and matted roots to a depth of 12 inches
- C. Removal of Improvements: Remove above-grade and below-grade improvements necessary to permit construction and other work as indicated.
- D. Disposal
  - 1. Remove waste, unsuitable and excess materials from the site daily and dispose of legally at approved locations. Tree material may be kept on-site for up to five days.
  - 2. Burning is not permitted on the property without Owner's written approval.
- E. Selective Clearing and/or Grubbing
  - 1. Special attention shall be given by the Contractor to saving, protecting, and preserving any existing trees, shrubs or other vegetation so designated by the Owner. Selective clearing and/or grubbing shall be performed in locations indicated on the Drawings and other areas specified by the Owner at no additional cost to the Owner. The Owner or his representative will select and mark, or otherwise designate, trees, ornamentals or other vegetation to be preserved outside of the tree save areas shown in the Drawings. Contractor shall install and maintain, until directed otherwise by Owner, a temporary fence around such designated vegetation for a minimum of 10 feet beyond the drip line of the trees, ornamentals, or other vegetation to be preserved. Clearing limits must be approved by the Owner prior to beginning clearing operations.



WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS

a NOVUS architects company

311001 - 3

- 
2. Many improvements located within tree saves will require selective clearing and grubbing within the tree save areas. These improvements include hardscape utilities, drainage, etc. These items are shown on the Drawings as to general location. However, exact locations will be determined by the Owner in the field. Vegetation remaining after these operations shall be protected by temporary fence and hay bales/silt fence in the same manner as the original exterior of the tree save area.

END OF SECTION 311001

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes all work required to complete, as indicated by the Contract Documents, and furnish all supplementary items necessary for the proper dewatering, excavating, shoring, sheeting, bracing, trenching, backfilling and all other earthwork operations required for utility and other underground lines and appurtenances.

### **1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Earthwork - Section 310000
- B. Potable and Reuse Water Distribution Systems - Section 331110

### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

#### **A Tests and inspections:**

- 1. Required tests:
- 2. Backfill material: Determine suitability of backfill and bedding material not previously evaluated.
- 3. Maximum density tests: Determine optimum moisture content and maximum density of backfill and bedding materials placed and compacted.
- 4. Bedding conditions: Determine and evaluate condition of bedding to receive utility lines.
- 5. Compaction inspection: Determine degree of backfill compaction.

#### **B Reference Specifications and Standards:**

- 1. ASTM D1557 Moisture-Density Relations of Soils, using 10 lb. Rammer and 18 inches Drop.
- 2. AASHTO: T-180 (Modified Proctor).

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 BACKFILL MATERIAL**

#### **A. TYPE A BACKFILL:**

- 1. Select bedding material shall be clean, well-graded, rounded coarse aggregate or crushed rock of 3/4-inch maximum size and 3/8-inch minimum size. When tested in accordance with ASTM D422 it shall conform to the following gradation requirements:

Passing a 1-inch sieve	-	100 Percent
Passing a 3/4-inch sieve	-	90-100 Percent
Passing a 3/8-inch sieve	-	20-55 Percent

---

Passing a No. 4 sieve - 0-10 Percent

**B. TYPE B BACKFILL:**

1. Type B backfill shall be a select granular material, free from organic matter and of such size and gradation that desired compaction can readily be attained. When tested in accordance with ASTM D422, it shall conform to the following gradation requirements.

Passing a 1-1/2 inch sieve	-	95 Percent (Min.)
Passing a No. 200 sieve	-	10 Percent (Max.)
Coefficient of Uniformity	-	6 or Greater
Sand Equivalent	-	35 Percent or Greater

2. The maximum aggregate size shall not exceed 3 inches. This material may be clean natural sand or gravel, imported quarry waste or select excavated material, provided that such material consists of loam, sand, sandy clay loam, gravel or other materials of the GM/GC classification, as classified in accordance with ASTM D2487. The Contractor shall submit soil reports ten (10) days in advance of intended use for approval by the Engineer and the Owner.

**C. ORDINARY BACKFILL:**

1. Ordinary backfill shall be material obtained from the Contractor's excavations. Such materials shall be free of debris, deleterious materials, broken concrete or paving materials, root masses, organic materials, boulders, rocks or stones larger than 3 inches and expansive soils.

**D. DEFICIENCY OF BACKFILL:**

1. Where excavated material is indicated as backfill (ordinary backfill) on the Drawings or specified herein, and there is a deficiency due to the rejection of part of the material, the required quantity of sand, gravel or other approved backfill material (Type A or B backfill) shall be obtained from a source secured by the Contractor and approved by the Owner.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect from damage, all existing on-site features scheduled or indicated to remain, including trees and other flora.
  1. Do not allow earthmoving equipment within the branch spread perimeter (drip line) of existing trees.
  2. Do not cut tree roots over 2 inches in diameter without prior approval.
  3. Support trees during excavation in an approved manner.

- 
- B. Where utility line excavation occurs in lawn, grassed or landscaped areas, carefully remove and stockpile sod and plants to preserve them for transplanting.
1. Excavated material from trenches may be placed on the lawn or grass provided a drop cloth or other approved method is employed to protect the lawn or grass from permanent damage. Do not keep stockpiled materials on lawn or grass for more than 72 hours.
  2. Immediately after completion of backfilling and testing of utility lines, replace sod and replant plants in a manner so as to restore the lawn, grass and landscaping to its original condition. Replace damaged landscaping as part of the work of this Section.
- C. Where utility line excavation occurs in paved areas, saw-cut the existing pavement along straight, uniform lines such that the amount of pavement cut and removed shall be the minimum consistent with safe excavation practices.
1. Do not use removed pavement or base material as backfill.
  2. Replace removed pavement with new pavement to match existing in accordance with the Drawings and these Specifications.
- D. Maximum length of open trenches: 350 feet. Cover or barricade all open trenches during work hours and at the close of each work day. All guest areas shall be separated from open trenches by construction fencing at all times.
- E. Utilities:
1. Where excavation for utility lines occurs near existing utilities, whether indicated or not on the Drawings, the Contractor shall be responsible to maintain existing utility services fully operational. Protect and support utility lines in a manner to prevent any damage. Method of protection is subject to utility's approval.
  2. In the event that damage does occur, make repairs or replacement immediately in an approved manner, as part of work of this Section.
  3. Remove abandoned lines encountered during excavating and dispose of off site.

### 3.2 PIPELINE TRENCH CONSTRUCTION

- A. Trench excavating and backfilling, including sheeting, shoring, bracing, dewatering, foundation, bedding and compaction, and the furnishing and disposal of material shall be performed in such a manner as to promote the safe and expedient execution of the work.
1. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to contact utilities not less than five (5) working days prior to the commencement of trenching and excavation to obtain an excavation permit and to locate and flag all existing underground utilities at the work site.
  2. The excavation and preparation of trenches shall not proceed in advance of pipe installation more than 100 feet, except as approved by the Owner. Trenching shall not, under any conditions, exceed the quantity of pipe that can be bedded, inspected, tested, backfilled and compacted in one working day.
  3. All excavations shall be made by open cut unless indicated otherwise in these Specifications or on the Drawings.

4. Excavation in close proximity to existing utilities shall be performed in such a manner, so as to prevent damage to the lines.
5. The sides of trenches shall be kept as nearly vertical as possible from the trench bottom to a level 1 foot above the top of the pipe.
6. The trench bottom shall be excavated to true line and grade and shall not be less than 18 inches wide nor more than 24 inches wider than the outside diameter of the pipe, so that a clear space of from 9 to 12 inches is provided on each side of the pipe.
7. The minimum trench width for pipe 6 inches and smaller shall not be less than 24 inches.
8. When obstructions that are not shown on the Drawings are encountered during the progress of the work that interfere such that a revision to the Drawings is required, the Engineer, with the approval of the utility, will revise the Drawings, or order the removal, relocation or reconstruction of the obstruction.
9. Excavated material shall not be placed in any manner that will obstruct the Work or endanger the workmen, obstruct sidewalks, entrances, streets or structures. Excavation and placement of excavated materials shall comply with all federal, state and local regulations.
10. Removal of pavement and roadway surfaces shall be a part of the trench excavation. Pavement shall be saw cut to insure the breaking of the pavement along straight lines. Broken pavement and unsuitable soils from the excavation shall be removed from the work site.
11. Roadway cuts shall be made between the hours of 2 a.m. and 6 a.m. to minimize disruption of traffic. Roadways shall be in safe operating condition no later than 7:00 a.m. The Contractor shall provide safe, temporary detours for traffic during open cut construction.
12. When the subgrade is found to contain materials such as ashes, cinders, refuse, broken concrete, logs, root masses, organic material or other unsuitable or unstable material, the Contractor shall remove all such material to a minimum of 6 inches below the trench bottom elevation, and replace with clean stable backfill material.
13. Blasting and the use of explosives shall not be permitted.
14. Boring and jacking, where required, shall be conducted with no interference with traffic, even if this should require that the work be done between the hours of 2 a.m. and 6 a.m.
15. Trees, shrubs, fences, structures and other property shall be protected during construction unless their removal or demolition is shown on the Drawings or called for in the Specifications.
  - a. Cutting of tree roots or branches shall be performed only as specified and approved by the Owner.
  - b. Temporary support, adequate protection and maintenance of all underground and surface structures, drains, sewers, water mains, force mains, electrical and communications and other obstructions encountered in the progress of the work shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
  - c. All properties that have been disturbed in the course of the work shall be restored to their original condition.

### 3.3 SHEETING, SHORING AND BRACING

- A. The Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain sheeting, bracing and shoring required to support the sides of the excavation, and to prevent any movement which may damage adjacent

utilities, pavements or structures, damage or delay the work or endanger life and health. All voids outside the supports shall be immediately filled and compacted.

- B. All sheeting, bracing and shoring to be used shall be designed by a Registered Professional Engineer, and shall be in accordance with OSHA Standard 1926-606, Subpart P, Excavation, Trenching and Shoring and the Trench Safety and Health Act.
- C. Where it is impractical to remove shoring and bracing, obtain approval to leave it in place. Record locations of such "in place" shoring and bracing on project record documents.
- D. Wood sheeting left in place shall be pressure treated. Prior to abandonment, the sheeting shall be cut to a level at least 30 inches below finished grade.
- E. Steel sheeting left in place shall be as specified in ASTM A328. Prior to abandonment, the sheeting shall be cut to a level at least 30 inches below finished grade.

### **3.4 DEWATERING AND DRAINAGE**

- A. All piping shall be laid "in the dry" unless otherwise approved by the Owner. All dewatering shall conform to the requirements of Dewatering Specification.

### **3.5 TRENCH STABILIZATION**

- A. When the trench bottom is found to contain unsuitable material which is unstable to such a degree that in the judgment of the Engineer it cannot be removed, a foundation for the pipe, structure and/or appurtenance shall be constructed using piling, treated timber, concrete or other material approved by the Engineer.
  - 1. Unsuitable materials are soils, exposed at the trench bottom that are compressible, expansive, contain extraneous rubble, offer uneven foundation support, or have a natural moisture content 3 percent in excess of the soils optimum moisture content.
  - 2. Unsuitable materials/soils shall include, but not be limited to, muck, peat, expansive clays, boulders, soils in a quick condition, rubble, any portion of trees, roots or similar vegetation, wood or other unyielding material.
- B. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer immediately when unstable material is encountered. The Engineer will investigate the questionable material to determine its stability.
  - 1. Where the Engineer determines that unstable material is present below the pipe envelope which will not provide adequate support for the pipe, the Contractor shall remove the unstable material and replace with a minimum of 6 inches of Type A backfill up to the bottom of the pipe envelope.

### **3.6 BACKFILLING, COMPACTION AND TESTING**

- 
- A. The Contractor shall not perform any backfilling operations other than those that are necessary to hold the pipe in place until soil test samples have been taken, locations recorded, the pipeline tested, inspected and released for backfilling.
- B. BEDDING:
1. See specific utility sections for bedding details.
- C. HAUNCHING:
1. After the pipe has been properly bedded and inspected, ordinary backfill, as specified in 2.01C. of this Section, as available, or Type B backfill shall be carefully placed and compacted, under and around the pipe, up to the springline of the pipe.
    - a. Ordinary or Type A or B backfill material shall be placed in loose horizontal lifts equally on both sides of the pipe. Lifts shall not exceed 6 inches in loose depth.
    - b. The backfill material shall be spaded, walked-in and compacted with hand tampers to obtain a relative density of not less than 95 percent of the maximum density as determined by ASTM D1557.
    - c. When one lift is completed and compacted on both sides of the pipe, subsequent lifts shall be placed and compacted up to the springline of the pipe.
- D. PIPE ENVELOPE:
1. After haunching has been placed, compacted, inspected, tested and accepted, ordinary backfill (as available) or Type A or B backfill shall be carefully placed around and over the pipe in loose horizontal lifts not to exceed 12 inches in depth.
    - a. The backfill material shall be walked-in and compacted with tampers to obtain a relative density of 90 percent of the maximum density. Where trench depths are 6 feet or less to the top of the pipe, the minimum allowable relative density shall not be less than 95 percent of the maximum density.
    - b. When the first lift is compacted and complete, subsequent lifts shall be placed and compacted until the pipe envelope is complete to 1 foot above the pipe.
- E. BACKFILL AND COMPACTION:
1. Above the level of the pipe envelope, the trench shall be backfilled with ordinary backfill, placed in horizontal lifts and compacted by power operated tampers or vibratory equipment. The Contractor shall compact each successive lift to the specified relative density prior to placing subsequent 1 foot maximum lifts.
  2. The Contractor shall not achieve compaction by the use of heavy rolling equipment or by running heavy construction equipment on or in the trench. Backfilling and compaction shall have been completed, tested and the degree of compaction verified before heavy equipment is operated over the trench.
  3. Compaction tests shall, at a minimum, be conducted every 100 feet.
  4. Puddling or flooding with water to achieve compaction shall not be permitted.

5. When unsatisfactory compaction is revealed, the Contractor shall immediately re-excavate the trench from the unsatisfactory area to the nearest points of satisfactory compaction testing, replace and re-compact the backfill to the required relative densities over the entire depth of the trench.

F. PARTIAL BACKFILL DURING TESTING:

1. When conditions require that pipe testing should be accomplished before completion of backfilling or with pipe joints accessible for examination, sufficient backfill material shall be placed over the pipe barrel, between the joints to prevent pipe movement.

**3.7 ADJUSTMENT AND CLEANING**

A. Surface restoration:

1. Restore surfaces areas over trenches equal to conditions which existed prior to start of work or better.
2. Reconstruct surfaces in accordance with applicable sections of the Specifications.

B. Disposal:

1. Debris: Remove and dispose of all rubbish, debris, and vegetation as they accumulate.
  - a. Dispose of debris off site.
  - b. Excess soil: Stockpile on a site approved by the Engineer and Owner

END OF SECTION 312334



---

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes all work required to complete, as indicated by the Contract Documents, and furnish all supplementary items necessary for the proper installation of the structure subgrade.
- B. Section includes:
  - 1. Excavating, backfilling and compacting for structures.
  - 2. Restore grades to required elevations.
  - 3. Remove excess materials from site.
  - 4. Pumping and dewatering.
  - 5. Sheeting of excavations.

**1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Earthwork - Section 310000
- B. Excavating and Backfilling for Utilities - Section 312334

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test methods:
    - a. Maximum density of backfill materials will be determined by ASTM D1557 Method A (5-layer method), unless other applicable method is approved.
    - b. Field density tests will be determined by ASTM D2922 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1556 (sand-cone method), unless other applicable method is approved.
  - 2. Required tests:
    - a. Backfill material: Determine suitability of backfill and bedding material not previously evaluated.
    - b. Maximum density tests: Determine optimum moisture content and maximum density of backfill and bedding materials placed and compacted.
    - c. Compaction inspection: Determine degree of backfill compaction.
- B. Reference specifications and standards:
  - 1. ASTM: D2922 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1556 (sand-cone method).
  - 2. ASTM D1557 Moisture-Density Relations of Soils, using 10 lb. Rammer and 18 inches Drop.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. On-site and borrow materials:
  - 1. Conforming to these specifications.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect public and adjacent properties, on and off site, in accord with applicable laws and ordinances. Protect and provide fencing as detailed in the drawings
- B. Protect from damage, all existing on-site features scheduled or indicated to remain, including flora scheduled to remain.
  - 1. Do not allow earthmoving equipment within the branch spread perimeter (drip line) of existing trees.
- C. Utilities:
  - 1. Protect and support active utility lines in a manner to prevent damage. Methods subject to Owner's approval.
  - 2. Remove abandoned lines encountered during excavation and dispose of off-site.
    - a. Report unidentified lines to Owner for determination as to "dry" or "abandoned" prior to removal.
  - 3. Capping and rerouting of indicated active utility lines encountered during grading operations will be performed as part of the work of this section.
- D. Cribbing and shoring:
  - 1. Provide temporary or permanent cribbing, sheeting and shoring as necessary to safely retain earth banks and protect excavations from caving or other damage.
  - 2. Be responsible for design, installation and maintenance of cribbing, sheeting and shoring. Remove temporary cribbing and shoring after use.

### **3.2 STRIPPING**

- A. Stockpile materials from excavations suitable for use in fill and backfill.
- B. Materials not approved for use as topsoil, fill or backfill, and excess excavating materials shall be removed from site and disposed of properly, subject to Owner's written approval.

### **3.3 EXCAVATING**

- A. Excavate materials of every nature to dimensions and elevations indicated. Use equipment of

suitable type for materials and conditions involved.

- B. Extend excavation a sufficient distance from walls to allow for forming and shoring, application of waterproofing, installation of services and approvals. Do not excavate below indicated depths.
- C. Correct unauthorized excavation made below depths indicated, as recommended by soils engineer at no additional cost to Owner.

### **3.4 FILL, BACKFILL AND COMPACTION**

A. Fill and backfill:

- 1. Place fill and backfill in layers that will uniformly compact to the required densities, but not in loose layers more than 12-15 inches thick.
  - a. Place backfill only after walls are supported by completion of interior floor systems or are braced to resist the imposed loading.
  - b. Place backfill against walls below grade after waterproofing systems have been completed and approved.
  - c. Protect waterproofing systems during backfill operations.
  - d. If waterproofing is damaged, do not continue backfilling until damage is repaired as approved by Owner.
- 2. Restore grades to indicated elevations.

B. Compaction:

- 1. Proof roll existing ground prior to filling.
- 2. Bring each layer to optimum moisture content before compaction. Add water by uniform sprinkling.
- 3. When moisture content and condition of each layer is satisfactory, compact to not less than 95% of maximum density.
  - a. Compact areas not accessible to motor-driven equipment with mechanical or heavy hand tampers.
- 4. Rework compacted areas failing to meet specified maximum density, as determined by tests. Re-compact and re-test as required to achieve 95% maximum density.

END OF SECTION 312335

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 DESCRIPTION**

#### **A. Erosion and sedimentation control requirements:**

1. All erosion, sedimentation and water pollution control features shall be in place or relocated as designated on the plans prior to the start of any clearing, grubbing, grading or construction. Contractor shall be responsible for the installation and maintenance of all temporary erosion control features.
2. Location of the control features shall be in accordance with the Drawings or as required to facilitate drainage and control erosion and sedimentation within and adjacent to the site.
3. Control features are defined as, but not limited to, swales, berms, silt fences, silt barriers and temporary fences.

### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product data: Manufacturers literature, application instructions and samples.
- B. List of materials and their characteristics for other erosion control items.
- C. Erosion control plan.

### **1.3 CONTROL OF CONTRACTOR'S OPERATIONS WHICH MAY RESULT IN WATER POLLUTION**

- A. Take sufficient precautions to prevent pollution of streams, canals, lakes, reservoirs, wetlands and other sensitive areas with silt, sediment, fuels, oils, bitumens, calcium chloride, or other harmful materials. Conduct and schedule operations so as to avoid or otherwise minimize pollution or siltation of such streams, etc. and to avoid interference with movement of migratory fish. Do not dump the residue from dust collectors or washers into any water body.
- B. Construction operations in rivers, streams, lakes, tidal waters, reservoirs, canals, and other impoundments shall be restricted to those areas where it is necessary to perform filling or excavation to accomplish the work shown in the Contract Documents and to those areas which must be entered to construct temporary or permanent structures. As soon as conditions permit, promptly clear rivers, streams, and impoundments of all obstructions placed therein or caused by construction operations.
- C. Except as necessary for construction, do not deposit excavated material in rivers, streams, canals, or impoundments, or in a position close enough thereto, to be washed away by high water or run-off.

- D. Where pumps are used to remove highly turbid waters from enclosed construction areas such as cofferdams or forms, treat the water prior to discharge into waterways. Pump the water into grassed swales, appropriately vegetated areas, or sediment basins, or confine it by an appropriate enclosure such as siltation curtains when other methods are not considered appropriate. Do not contaminate waterways.
- E. Do not disturb lands or waters outside the limits of construction, unless approved in advance and in writing by the Owner. No operations within non-permitted wetlands or upland buffers are allowed.

## 1.4 START OF WORK

- A. Do not start work until erosion control measures are in place.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### A. Silt Barriers:

1. Two types of silt barriers shall be installed in accordance with the plans: silt barriers installed on the ground and floating silt barriers.
2. Silt barriers (filter fabric) shall be synthetic and contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of six (6) months of expected usable construction life at a temperature range of 0 to 120 degrees F.
3. Filter fabric shall be a pervious sheet of propylene, nylon or polyester and shall be certified by the manufacturer or supplier to conform to the following specifications:
  - Filter efficiency (Test VTM-51): 75 percent.
  - Minimum tensile strength at 20 percent elongation (Test ASTM D 5034 and 5035): 120 pounds.
  - Tear strength: 50 pounds.
4. Contractor shall submit filter fabric material specifications and installation configuration prior to start of construction.
5. Silt barriers shall be maintained in place and shall become the property of Owner.
6. Filter fabric shall be purchased in a continuous roll cut to the length of the barrier to avoid the use of joints. When joints are necessary, filter fabric shall be spliced together only at a support post, with a 6 inch overlap, and securely sealed.
7. The following items shall be installed and maintained in accordance with the applicable sections of the FDOT and local government Standard Specifications:
  - a. Temporary silt fences and staked silt barriers
  - b. Floating silt barrier
8. Temporary Fence
  - a. Brightly colored fence as manufactured by Mirafi, product Mirasafe, or approved equal.

- b. Material shall be 4 feet high, attached to 6 feet metal posts at 12 feet centers. Posts shall be driven 18 inches into ground.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Temporary erosion control features shall consist of, but not be limited to, temporary grassing, temporary sodding, temporary mulching, sandbagging, slope drains, sediment basins, artificial coverings, berms, baled hay or straw, floating silt barriers, staked silt barriers and staked silt fences. Design details for some of these items may be found in the Water Quality Section of the applicable edition of the FDOT Roadway and Traffic Design Standards. All of these items shall be constructed in accordance with applicable sections of the FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction.
- B. Incorporate permanent erosion control features into the Work at the earliest practical time. Correct conditions, using temporary measures, that develop during construction to control erosion prior to the time it is practical to construct permanent control features.
- C. Construct temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control measures and maintain them to prevent the pollution of adjacent water ways in conformance with the laws, rules and regulations of Federal, State and local agencies.
- D. Copies of approved permits will be provided to the Contractor for his review and use. Contractor shall be required to comply with all General and Special Conditions noted within the permit by the particular permitting agency. The Contractor shall maintain copies of these permits on the job site at all times.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. The following items shall be installed in accordance with the FDOT Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge and Utility Construction. The procedures are only generally described herein.
  - 1. Temporary Grassing: This work shall consist of furnishing and placing grass seed.
  - 2. Temporary Sod: This work shall consist of furnishing and placing sod.
  - 3. Temporary Mulching: This work shall consist of furnishing and applying a two-inch to four-inch thick blanket of straw or hay mulch and then mixing or forcing the mulch into the top two inches of the soil in order to temporarily control erosion. Only undecayed straw or hay, which can readily be cut into the soil, shall be used. Other measures for temporary erosion control such as hydro-mulching, chemical adhesive soils stabilizers, etc., may be substituted for mulching with straw or hay with the approval of the Owner. When permanent grassing operations begin, temporary mulch materials shall be plowed under in conjunction with preparation of the ground.

- 
4. Sandbagging: This work shall consist of furnishing and placing sandbags in configurations, so as to control erosion and siltation.
  5. Slope Drains: This work shall consist of constructing slope drains, utilizing pipe, fiber mats, rubble, cement concrete, asphaltic concrete plastic sheeting, or other acceptable materials, in accordance with the FDOT Roadway and Traffic Design Standards or as may be approved as suitable to adequately perform the intended function.
  6. Sediment Basins: Sediment basins shall be constructed in accordance with the details shown in FDOT Roadway and Traffic Design Standards or as suitable to adequately perform the intended function. Sediment basins shall be cleaned out as necessary.
  7. Artificial Coverings: This work shall consist of furnishing and applying fiber mats, netting, plastic sheeting, or other approved covering to the earth surfaces.
  8. Berms: This work shall consist of construction of temporary earth berms to divert the flow of water from an erodible surface.
    - a. This work shall consist of construction of baled hay or straw dams or earth berms to protect against downstream accumulations of silt. The baled hay or straw dams shall be constructed in accordance with the details shown in FDOT Roadway and Traffic Design Standards.
    - b. The berm or dam shall be placed so as to effectively control silt dispersion under conditions present on this Work. Alternate solutions and usage of materials may be used if approved.

### **3.3 SILT BARRIERS**

- A. Silt barriers shall be installed and maintained at the locations shown on the plans. The Contractor is required to prevent the possibility of silting onto any adjacent parcel.
- B. Silt barrier shall be of the staked type and stakes shall be installed as indicated in the drawings.
- C. The height of the silt barrier fabric shall be a minimum of 42 inches.
- D. The stakes shall be 2 inch x 4 inch wood, 5 feet long and shall be spaced a maximum of 10 feet apart at the barrier location and driven securely into the ground.
- E. A trench shall be excavated approximately 4 inches wide by 4 inches deep along the line of stakes. The filter fabric shall be tied or stapled to the wooden stakes and 8 inches of fabric shall be extended into the trench. The staples shall be heavy duty wire and at least 1/2 inch long. The trench shall then be backfilled and the soil compacted over the filter fabric.

### **3.4 FLOATING SILT BARRIERS**

- A. Floating silt barriers shall be located as shown on the Drawings and shall be in place prior to the start of any construction or grading.

- B. Floating silt barriers shall meet or exceed the FDOT Roadway and Traffic Design Standards, Index No. 103, Floating Silt Barrier. Contractor shall submit filter fabric material specifications and installation configuration for approval prior to the start of construction.

### **3.5 TEMPORARY FENCE**

- A. Furnish, install and maintain on wetland lines, buffer lines, tree save lines and otherwise as shown on plans. Attach silt barrier to the temporary fence.
- B. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations.

### **3.6 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Silt barriers and temporary fences shall be inspected immediately after each rainfall and at least once a day during periods of prolonged rainfall. Any repairs shall be made immediately.
- B. Should the fabric on a silt barrier or temporary fence decompose or become ineffective, the installation shall be repaired or replaced immediately at no additional cost to the Owner. If the Contractor fails to repair or replace the items as above, the Owner shall have the right to stop work without additional cost to the Owner until such time as the repair or replacement has been made.
- C. Sediment deposits shall be removed after each storm event. The Contractor will repair and restore the installations to a working and effective condition to the satisfaction of the Owner.
- D. At the completion of all work, the silt barriers and the temporary fences will be removed and disposed by the Contractor if directed by the Owner.
- E. Any sediment deposits in place after the silt fence or filter barrier is no longer required shall be dressed to conform to the existing grade and prepared for seeding or sodding.

### **3.7 PROTECTION DURING SUSPENSION OF CONTRACT TIME**

- A. In the event that it is necessary that the construction operations be suspended for any appreciable length of time, shape the top of the earthwork in such a manner as to permit run-off of rainwater and construct earth berms along the top edges of embankments to intercept run-off water. Provide temporary slope drains to carry run-off from cuts and embankments which are located in the vicinity of rivers, streams, canals, lakes and impoundments. Should such preventative measures fail, immediately take such other action as necessary to effectively prevent erosion and siltation.

END OF SECTION 312500



## SECTION 31 3116 - TERMITE CONTROL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Soil treatment.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and profiles for termite control products.
2. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of termite control product.

C. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Moisture content of soil before application.
3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
6. Areas of application.
7. Water source for application.

D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Soil Treatment:

- 1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Related Work: Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites , including Formosan termites (*Coptotermes formosanus*). If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

- 1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide BASF; Termidor HE or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Bayer Environmental Science.
    - b. Ensystex, Inc.
    - c. Master Builders Solutions; brand of MBCC Group.
    - d. Syngenta Crop Protection, LLC.
  - 2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than ten years against infestation of subterranean termites.

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare work areas according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application and installation of termite control treatment(s). Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
  - 1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.
  - 1. Slabs-on-Grade and Ground Level Slabs: Underground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
  - 2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
  - 3. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.
- B. Post warning signs in areas of application.

- C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- B. Protect termiticide solution dispersed in treated soils and fills from being diluted by exposure to water spillage or weather until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

### 3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of termite-control-treatment Installer. Include quarterly maintenance as required for proper performance according to the product's EPA-Registered Label and manufacturer's written instructions. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
- B. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: Provide from termite-control-treatment Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.
  - 1. Include annual inspection for termite activity and effectiveness of termite treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 31 3116

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes all work required to complete, as indicated by the Contract Documents, and furnish all supplementary items necessary for the proper installation of the site concrete.
- B. Site concrete work includes:
  - 1. Subgrade preparation.
  - 2. Concrete pavement, equipment pads and housing pads.
  - 3. Meandering concrete footpath, walkways and joints
  - 4. Concrete curbs and, gutters
  - 5. Light pole bases, complete with anchor bolts, leveling nuts and grout
  - 6. Reinforcing steel.
  - 7. Concrete work associated with Site and street furnishings
  - 8. Concrete utilities structures (catch basins, manholes, Inlet structures, junction Boxes, switching stations and similar.), and grout base /fillets.
  - 9. Post footings (concrete only), for Fences, Signage and miscellaneous items (thrust blocks, isolated pipe supports etc.)
  - 10. Built-in bolts, anchors, frames and all other embedments.

### **1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A Reference Specifications and Standards:

ACI: 305 Hot Weather Concreting.

ACI: 306 Recommended Practice for Cold Weather Concreting.

- B Allowable tolerances: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

- C. Site mock-ups

- 1. Provide for approval, a 4 feet x 4 feet x 4 inches thick minimum job site cast and finished sample panel for each type concrete finish. Cure samples as specified.
  - a. Include in each panel, all joint types which will occur in each type finish work.
- 2. Cast samples on grade at locations as directed by Owner/Engineer.
- 3. If first samples are not approved, prepare additional samples until approval is obtained.
- 4. Sample panels will be used to judge final finish work.
- 5. Protect samples during course of work, remove them when directed to do so by Owner/Engineer.

- D. Provide concrete test cylinders. Monitor slump and 28 day compressive strength. Samples to be taken at a rate of one per four cubic yards of concrete.

---

### 1.3 SITE CONDITIONS

A. Weather limitations:

1. Do not place concrete when the atmospheric temperature is as low as 35°F or expected to go below that temperature within 24 hours.
2. Do not place concrete during any rain that will cause surface damage to the concrete.
3. Hot weather concreting: In accordance with ACI 305.
4. Cold weather concreting: In accordance with ACI 306.

B. Traffic control:

1. Maintain vehicular and pedestrian traffic control during concrete operations.
2. Provide flagmen, barricades, warning signs, and warning lights for movement of traffic and safety, and to cause the least interruption of work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Minimum acceptable Concrete Compressive Strength shall be as indicated on the Drawing.

B. Formwork and finishing: Shall be in accordance with local building code regulations

C. Reinforcement: Shall be in accordance with local building code regulations: Reinforcing Steel.

D. Joint materials:

1. Expansion joint filler: In accordance with FDOT Specifications Section 932-1.1, Preformed Joint Filler for Pavement and Structures.
2. Expansion joint sealant: In accordance with FDOT Specifications Section 932-1.2, Joint Sealer for Pavement and Structures.

E. Liquid bonding agent:

1. Weld-crete by Larsen Products Corp.
2. Lambco Latex 460 by Lambert Corp.
3. Hornweld, by A.C. Horn, Inc.
4. Sonocrete, by Sonneborn Building Products.

F. Curing and protection paper: Sisalkraft Orange Label, by Sisalkraft Division, St. Regis Paper Co., or equivalent which complies with ASTM C171.

1. Where concrete will be exposed and be subjected to abrasion, such as floor slabs, use non-staining paper equivalent to Sisalkraft "Seekure 896", or other reinforced paper faced with polyethylene film.

G. Liquid Curing agents:

1. Curing compound:

- a. West Chemical Floor Treatment by West Chemical Products, Inc.
- b. Horncure 30C by A.C. Horn, Inc.
- c. Hunt Process TLF by Hunt Process Co., Inc.
- d. Lambco 64B by Lambert Corp.
- e. Hydrocide Curing Compound by Sonneborn Building Products.

2. Combination curing and hardening compound.

- a. Ashford Formula by U.S. Permaseal Inc.
- b. West Chemical Floor Treatment by West Chemical Products, Inc.
- c. Horn Clean Seal by A.C. Horn, Inc.
- d. Sika Cure/Hard by Sika Chemical Co.
- e. Crystal Clear Seal (interior) Crystal Gard Seal (Exterior by Lambert Corp.
- f. Kure-N-Seal by Sonneborn Building Products.

3. Chemical for hardener - fluosilicate type - delayed application:

- a. Ashford Formula by U.S. Permaseal Inc.
- b. Lapidolith by Sonneborn, Division of Contech, Inc.
- c. Saniseal by Master Builders Co.
- d. Permalith by L.M. Scofield Co.
- e. Solidus by Lambert Corp.
- f. Hornolith by A.C. Horn, Inc.

H. Slip resistant abrasive aggregate: Aluminum oxide, 14/36 grading, manufactured by:

1. Carborundum Company.
2. Norton Company.
3. A-H Products, Division of Anti-Hydro Waterproofing Company.
4. L.M. Scofield Company.
5. Burke Concrete Accessories, Inc.

I. Integral mineral coloring pigments:

1. L.M. Scofield Company, "Chromix".
2. Davis, Colors.
3. Lambert Corporation, Colors.
4. Landers - Segal Color Company, Inc.

- 
- J. Curing materials for non colored concrete: In accord with FDOT Specifications Section 925, Curing Materials for Concrete.
- K. Borrow material (for fill): Clean earth and granular material free of roots and organic materials, not more than 10 percent passing a No. 200 sieve. No rocks or lumps larger than 6 inches in any dimension will be permitted.
- L. Extra Heavy-Duty, Processed Iron Aggregate Topping
1. Anvil-Top 300" manufactured by Master Builders, processed size graded aggregate, (not a naturally occurring mineral aggregate), cement, and technical components, necessary to produce screedable, metallic floor topping. Manufacturer shall certify he has a minimum of 20 years' experience in manufacturing iron aggregate floor toppings, and can document success. Material shall be ready to use and require only addition of water at jobsite, shall be sealed in moisture resistant 55 lbs. (25kg) bags, or 3,300 lb. (1497 kg) bulk bags. Material shall be formulated and processed under stringent quality control, free from non-ferrous particles rust and material intended to disguise rust.
  2. Material shall be applied at the rate of 18.0 lb/sq. ft. (87.8 kg./m<sup>2</sup>) for specified 1" thickness (25mm), in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instruction applied over concrete properly roughened and bonded or over fresh, plastic concrete. (Under no circumstances should less than a 1/2" (13mm) thickness be used).
  3. Curing Material for topping shall be "Masterseal W," manufactured by Master Builders, shall exceed moisture retention requirements of ASTM-C 309-81, when used at a rate of coverage recommended by the manufacturer.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION OF SUBGRADE**

- A. Compaction: Compact top 12 inches subgrade to 95% maximum density in accordance with ASTM D3017 (Nuclear method), or ASTM D1557 Method A (5-layer method).
- B. Do not allow traffic over prepared subgrade.
- C. Uniformly moisten subgrade at time concrete is placed. Uniformly apply water ahead of concrete placement.
- D. Accurately trim to required elevations.
- E. Allow for full thickness concrete.



---

### **3.2 SITE STRUCTURES**

- A. Construct catch basins, manhole bases, junction boxes, inlets, and other similar site structures to conform to requirements of FDOT SPECIFICATIONS Section 425, Inlets, Manholes and Junction Boxes.

### **3.3 JOINTS**

- A. Pour joints:
  - 1. Construct pour joints (construction joints) at any break in concrete placement lasting more than 1 hour.
  - 2. Construct pour joints as indicated at color changes.
  - 3. Except at expansion joints, key pour joints.
- B. Expansion joints:
  - 1. Construct expansion joints at locations indicated.
  - 2. Seal expansion joints with sealer as specified.
- C. Control joints:
  - 1. Construct control joints (contraction joints) at locations indicated.
  - 2. Pour joints may be substituted for control joints at Contractor's option.

### **3.4 CURING FORMED SURFACES**

- A. Commence curing formed concrete surfaces with water as quickly as formwork is loosened or removed.
- B. Thoroughly saturate concrete surfaces and maintain them uniformly wet for a period of not less than 14 days after concrete has been placed.
  - 1. During the curing period, soak the surfaces as often as necessary to maintain thoroughly saturated condition.
  - 2. It is mandatory that water curing be continued as a case of emergency during holidays and weekends.

### **3.5 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES**

- A. Finish all surfaces of formed concrete which will remain exposed in the finish work, both interior and exterior, including surfaces which will be painted. Provide surfaces uniform for the intended texture; free from imperfect joints, fins, "honeycombing", air pockets or "bug" holes, or other such imperfections.

- 
- B. Remove rough spots, stains and hardened mortar or grout from intended smooth surfaces by rubbing such surfaces lightly with fine carborundum stone. Use liberal amounts of water and rub sufficiently to remove defects without changing texture of concrete.
- C. If intended smooth surfaces are not of uniform texture, treat as follows.
1. Prepare a mix consisting of one-part portland cement, 1-1/2 parts fine sand, and sufficient water to produce a grout of the consistency of thick paint.
  2. Wet surface to be treated and apply grout uniformly with a brush, completely filling air holes. Immediately float, scouring the surface vigorously. Allow cement grout to partially set for an hour or two depending on weather.
  3. When grout has sufficiently hardened so it can be scraped from surface with the edge of a steel trowel without removing grout from small air holes, cut-off all that can be removed with a trowel, allow surface to dry thoroughly, then rub vigorously with burlap to completely remove surplus.
  4. Further finish exposed intended smooth surfaces, if necessary, by means of honing with a carborundum stone to uniform surfaces as directed by Owner.
  5. Complete entire operation of any area the day it is started.
  6. Do not use dry cement sacking.

### 3.6 FINISHING AND CURING FLAT WORK

A. Finishing:

1. Tamp freshly placed concrete with approved metal grid tampers not less than 12 inches x 12 inches in size so as to bring fines to top, then rod to uniform surfaces at required levels.
  - a. Float and trowel finish as soon as surface becomes workable.
  - b. Provide slopes as indicated on Drawings, or as directed by Owner.
2. Provide fog-spray equipment for use during finishing to maintain adequate surface moisture and reduce plastic shrinkage.
  - a. Immediately after fresh concrete has been brought to a flat surface, a shiny film of moisture will appear on top. As soon as the shiny surface disappears, it must be restored and maintained until troweling, by providing a light film of moisture with an atomizing type fog-sprayer.
  - b. Use frequent light applications of moisture rather than excessive wetting. Temperature, humidity and wind conditions will dictate the amount of spray required for proper control.
3. Work and measure concrete flatwork until it is level to within 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

B. Surface finish textures:

1. Brush or broom finish: Use for inclined ramps, and all other exterior locations.

- a. Apply color pigment uniformly and at a rate to achieve the color selected and approved by Owner. Apply in accordance with pigment manufacturer's instructions.
- b. Apply sealer over finished surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- c. The brush or broom finish is achieved by drawing a push broom across the still plastic surface to create uniform striations.
- d. In some instances, if directed by Owner, striations may be zig-zag type.
- e. In some instances, if directed by Owner, create texture striations by use of a stiff fiber bristle broom.

C. Curing:

1. Cure flat slabs with combination curing and hardening compounds.
  - a. Apply compound in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations immediately following final finishing operations.
2. Cure all concrete not otherwise specified, with liquid curing compound.
  - a. Caution: Some waterproofing materials are not compatible with some curing compounds. Verify compatibility of materials before curing concrete slabs which will receive direct applied waterproofing.

### 3.7 EXTRA HEAVY-DUTY TOPPING

A. Application of Extra Heavy-Duty, Iron Aggregate Topping

1. Manufacturer's representative shall be present during initial stages of installation. Installer shall consult with manufacturer's representative during bidding and prior to installation on correct use of the product. Deviation from the manufacturer's recommendations will be responsible of the installer.

Minimum Slump	-	not less than 5" (127 mm).
Maximum Slump	-	not to exceed 7" (178 mm).

B. Surface Preparation: Mixing and Placing of Topping

1. Preparation of base concrete, mixing of materials and application of the topping shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer' procedures, as indicated in current product data and direction sheets and/or as described by manufacturer's rep. DO NOT OVER FINISH.

C. Curing and Protection

1. WET CURE FOR MIN. OF 48 HOURS, PRIOR TO APPLYING CURING COMPOUND.
2. Concrete finished with Anvil-Top 300, processed iron aggregate topping, shall be cured with Masterseal W, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Manufacturer of the iron aggregate topping shall provide, at no cost, services of a trained, full-time employee,

**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

320523 - 8

---

during periods of critical installation. A minimum of three (3) days' notice shall be given by the contractor, to the manufacturer, prior to initial use of the product.

END OF SECTION 320523

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 COMPOSITION**

- A. Coarse aggregate shall consist of naturally occurring materials such as gravel, or resulting from the crushing of parent rock, to include natural rock, slags, expanded clays and shales (lightweight aggregates) and other approved inert materials with similar characteristics, having hard, strong, durable particles, conforming to the specific requirements of this Section.
- B. Coarse aggregate for use in nonstructural concrete applications or hot bituminous mixtures may also consist of reclaimed Portland cement concrete meeting the requirements of Part 5. Washing of this material will not be required if the requirements of Section 1.2 for maximum percent of material passing the No. 200 sieve can be met without washing.
- C. Materials substantially retained on the No. 4 sieve, shall be classified as coarse aggregate.
- D. Approval of mineral aggregate sources shall be in accordance with specification.

**1.2 DELETERIOUS SUBSTANCES**

- A. All coarse aggregates shall be reasonably free of clay lumps, soft and friable particles, salt, alkali, organic matter, adherent coatings, and other substances not defined which may possess undesirable characteristics. The weight of deleterious substances shall not exceed the following percentages:

Coal and lignite (AASHTO T 113).....	1.00
Soft and friable particles (AASHTO T 112)*.....	2.00
Clay lumps (AASHTO T 112)* .....	2.00
Plant root matter (visual inspection in AASHTO T 27)**** .....	0.005
Wood and wood matter (visual inspection in AASHTO T 27)**** .....	0.005
Cinders and clinkers.....	0.50
Free shell** .....	1.00
Total Material passing the No. 200 sieve (FM 1-T 011) At Source with Los Angeles Abrasion less than or equal to 30 .....	2.50
At Source with Los Angeles Abrasion greater than 30.....	1.75
At Point of Use.....	3.75
Fine-Grained Organic Matter (AASHTO 194).....	0.03
Chert (less than 2.40 specific gravity SSD) (AASHTO T-113)*** .....	3.00

\*The maximum percent by weight of soft and friable particles and clay lumps together shall not exceed 3.00.

\*\*Aggregates to be used in asphalt concrete may contain up to 5% free shell. Free shell is defined as that portion of the coarse aggregate retained on the No. 4 sieve consisting of loose, whole, or broken shell, or the external skeletal remains of other marine life, having a ratio of the maximum length of the particle to the shell wall thickness exceeding five to one. Coral, molds, or casts of other shells, and crushed clam and oyster shell indigenous to the formation will not be considered as free shell.

\*\*\*This limitation applies only to coarse aggregates in which chert appears as an impurity. It is not applicable to aggregates which are predominantly chert.

\*\*\*\*Plant root matter, and wood and wood matter shall be considered deleterious when any piece exceeds two inches in length or 1/2 inch in width.

### 1.3 PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

- A. Coarse aggregates shall meet the following physical property requirements, except as noted herein:

Los Angeles Abrasion (FM 1-T 096).....	Maximum loss 45%
Soundness (Sodium Sulfate) AASHTO T104.....	Maximum loss 12% *
Flat or elongated pieces** .....	Maximum 10%

\*For source approval - Aggregates exceeding soundness loss limitations will be rejected unless performance history shows that the material will not be detrimental for Portland Cement Concrete or other intended usages.

\*\*A flat or elongated particle is defined as one having a ratio between the maximum and the minimum dimensions of a circumscribing prism exceeding five to one.

### 1.4 GRADATION:

- A. Coarse aggregates shall conform to the gradation requirements of Table 1, when the stone size is specified. However, Table 1 is waived for those aggregates intended for usage in bituminous mixtures, provided the material is graded on sieves specified in production requirements contained in this specification, and meets uniformity and bituminous design requirements.

TABLE 1 Standard Sizes of Coarse Aggregate								
Amounts Finer than Each Laboratory Sieve (Square Openings), weight percent								
Size No.	Nominal Size Square Openings	4 inches	3 1/2 inches	3 inches	2 1/2 inches	2 inches	1 1/2 inches	1 inch
1	3 1/2 to 1 1/2 inches	100	90 to 100	-	25 to 60	-	0 to 15	-
2	2 1/2 inches to 1 1/2 inches	-	-	100	90 to 100	35 to 70	0 to 15	-
24	2 1/2 inches to 3/4 inch	-	-	100	90 to 100	-	25 to 60	-
3	2 inches to 1 inch	-	-	-	100	90 to 100	35 to 70	0 to 15
357	2 inches to No. 4	-	-	-	100	95 to 100	-	35 to 70
4	1 1/2 inches to 3/4 inch	-	-	-	-	100	90 to 100	20 to 55
467	1 1/2 inches to No. 4	-	-	-	-	100	95 to 100	-
5	1 inch to 1/2 inch	-	-	-	-	-	100	90 to 100
56	1 inch to 3/8 inch	-	-	-	-	-	100	90 to 100
57	1 inch to No. 4	-	-	-	-	-	100	95 to 100
6	3/4 inch to 3/8 inch	-	-	-	-	-	-	100
67	3/4 inch to No. 4	-	-	-	-	-	-	100
68	3/4 inch to No. 8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	1/2 inch to No. 4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
78	1/2 inch to No. 8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
8	3/8 inch to No. 8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
89	3/8 inch to No. 16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
9	No. 4 to No. 16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
10	No. 4 to 0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

TABLE 1 (Continued) Standard Sizes of Coarse Aggregate								
Amounts Finer than Each Laboratory Sieve (Square Openings), weight percent								
Size No.	Nominal Size Square Openings	3/4 inch	1/2 inch	3/8 inch	No. 4	No. 8	No. 16	No.50
1	3 1/2 inches to 1 1/2 inches	0 to 5	-	-	-	-	-	-
2	2 1/2 inches to 1 1/2 inches	0 to 5	-	-	-	-	-	-
24	2 1/2 inches to 3/4 inch	0 to 10	0 to 5	-	-	-	-	-
3	2 inches to 1 inch	-	0 to 5	-	-	-	-	-
357	2 inches to No. 4	-	10 to 30	-	0 to 5	-	-	-
4	1 1/2 inches to 3/4 inch	0 to 15	-	0 to 5	-	-	-	-
467	1 1/2 inches to No. 4	35 to 70	-	10 to 30	0 to 5	-	-	-
5	1 inch to 1/2 inch	20 to 55	0 to 10	0 to 5	-	-	-	-
56	1 inch to 3/8 inch	40 to 85	10 to 40	0 to 15	0 to 5	-	-	-
57	1 inch to No. 4	-	25 to 60	-	0 to 10	0 to 5	-	-
6	3/4 inch to 3/8 inch	90 to 100	20 to 55	0 to 15	0 to 5	-	-	-
67	3/4 inch to No. 4	90 to 100	-	20 to 55	0 to 10	0 to 5	-	-
68	3/4 inch to No. 8	90 to 100	-	30 to 65	5 to 25	0 to 10	0 to 5	-
7	1/2 inch to No. 4	100	90 to 100	40 to 70	0 to 15	0 to 5	-	-
78	1/2 inch to No. 8	100	90 to 100	40 to 75	5 to 25	0 to 10	0 to 5	-
8	3/8 inch to No. 8	-	100	85 to 100	10 to 30	0 to 10	0 to 5	-
89	3/8 inch to No. 16	-	100	90 to 100	20 to 55	5 to 30	0 to 10	0 to 5
9	No. 4 to No. 16	-	-	100	85 to 100	10 to 40	0 to 10	0 to 5
10	No. 4 to 0	-	-	100	85 to 100	-	-	-



**WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY**

Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI

PROJECT #510-21-1

**SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS**

a NOVUS architects company

321123 - 5

---

NOTE: The gradations in Table 1 represent the extreme limits for the various sizes indicated, which will be used in determining the suitability for use of coarse aggregate from all sources of supply. For any grade from any one source, the gradation shall be held reasonably uniform and not subject to the extreme percentages of gradation specified above.

---

## **PART 2 - NATURAL STONES**

### **2.1 NATURAL STONES**

- A. Course aggregate may be processed from gravels, granites, limestones, dolomite, sandstones, or other naturally occurring hard, sound, durable materials meeting the requirements of this Section.

### **2.2 GRAVELS**

- A. Gravel shall be composed of naturally occurring quartz, free from deleterious coatings of any kind. The minimum dry-rodded weight AASHTO T 19 shall be 95 lb/ft<sup>3</sup>.
- B. Crushed gravel shall consist of a minimum of 85%, by weight, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve, having at least three fractured faces.

### **2.3 GRANITES**

- A. Coarse aggregate produced from the crushing of granites shall be sound and durable. For granites to be used in bituminous mixtures and surface treatments, the Los Angeles Abrasion requirement of 901-1.3 is modified to permit a maximum loss up to 50 (FM 1-T 096). Maximum amount of mica schist permitted is 5% (FM 5-584).

### **2.4 LIMESTONES, DOLOMITE AND SANDSTONE**

- A. Coarse aggregates may be produced from limestone, dolomite, sandstones, and other naturally occurring hard, durable materials meeting the requirements of this Section.
- B. Pre-Cenozoic limestones and dolomite shall not be used as crushed stone aggregates either coarse or fine for Asphalt Concrete Friction Courses, or any other asphalt concrete mixture or surface treatment serving as the final wearing course. This specifically includes materials from the Ketone Dolomite (Cambrian) Newala Limestone (Mississippian), and Northern Alabama and Georgia.
- C. As an exception to the above up to 20% fine aggregate from these materials may be used in asphalt concrete mixtures other than Friction Courses which serve as the final wearing course.

### **2.5 CEMENTED COQUINA ROCK**

- A. For Cemented Coquina Rock to be used in bituminous mixtures, the Los Angeles Abrasion requirement of 901-1.3 is modified to permit a maximum loss up to 50 (FM 1-T 096) provided that the amount of material finer than No. 200 generated during the Los Angeles Abrasion test is less than 18%.

## **PART 3 - MANUFACTURED STONES**

### **3.1 SLAGS:**

- A. Coarse aggregate may be produced from molten nonmetallic by-products consisting essentially of silicates and aluminosilicates of calcium and other bases, such as air-cooled blast-furnace slag or phosphate slag, provided it is reasonably uniform in density and quality, and reasonably free from deleterious substances as specified in 901-1.2. In addition, it must meet the following specific requirements:

Sulphur content .....not more than 1.5%  
 Dry rodded weight AASHTO T 19..... minimum 70 lb/ft<sup>3</sup>  
 Glassy Particles.....not more than 10%  
 Slag shall not be used as an aggregate for Portland cement concrete.

- B. For Air-Cooled Blast Furnace Slag, the Los Angeles Abrasion requirement of 901-1.3 is modified to permit a maximum loss up to 50 (FM 1-T 096) provided that the amount of material finer than No. 200 sieve generated during the Los Angeles Abrasion test is less than 18%.

## **PART 4 - LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATES**

### **4.1 LIGHTWEIGHT COARSE AGGREGATE FOR BITUMINOUS CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Lightweight coarse aggregate may be produced from naturally occurring materials such as pumice, scoria and tuff or from expanded clay, shale or slate fired in a rotary kiln. It shall be reasonably uniform in quality and density, and free of deleterious substances as specified in 901-1.2, except that the term cinders and clinkers shall apply to those particles clearly foreign to the extended aggregate in question.

In addition, it must meet the following specific requirements:

Material passing the No. 200 Sieve .....maximum 3.00%, (FM 1-T 011)  
 Dry loose weight (AASHTO T 19)\*..... 33-55 lb/ft<sup>3</sup>  
 Los Angeles Abrasion (FM 1-T 096) .....maximum 35%  
 Ferric Oxide (ASTM C 641)..... maximum 1.5 mg

\*Source shall maintain dry-loose unit weight within  $\pm 6\%$  of Quality Control average. Point of use dry-loose unit weight shall be within  $\pm 10\%$  of Source Quality Control average.

### **4.2 LIGHTWEIGHT COARSE AGGREGATE FOR STRUCTURAL CONCRETE**

- A. The requirements of 901-4.1 are modified as follows:

Aggregates shall not be produced from pumice and scoria.  
 Los Angeles Abrasion (FM 1-T 096, Section 12) shall be 45%, maximum.  
 Gradation shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 195 for 3/4 inch, 1/2 inch and 3/8 inch.

## **PART 5 - RECLAIMED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE**

- 
- 5.1** The reclaimed Portland cement concrete shall be from a source which was produced and placed in accordance with applicable Specifications. The material shall be crushed and processed to provide a clean, hard, durable aggregate having a uniform gradation free from adherent coatings, metals, organic matter, base material, joint fillers, and bituminous materials.
- 5.2** The Contractor's (Producer's) crushing operation shall produce an aggregate meeting the applicable gradation requirements. The physical property requirements of 901-1.3 for Soundness shall not apply and the maximum loss as determined by the Los Angeles Abrasion (FM 1-T 096) is changed to 50.
- 5.3** The sources of reclaimed Portland cement concrete will be treated as a mine and subject to the requirements of Section 6 and Section 105.

**PART 6 - EXCEPTIONS, ADDITIONS AND RESTRICTIONS**

- 6.1** Pertinent specification modifications, based on material usage, will be found in other Sections of the specifications.

END OF SECTION 321123

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, apply to work of this Section.

### **1.2 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Stabilize the designated portions of the pavement subgrade in both cut and fill sections to provide a firm and unyielding subgrade to the uniformity, density, bearing value, lines, grades and thicknesses herein specified or shown in the Drawings. The work includes mixing, compacting and grading for a complete job.
- B. Related Work Specified Elsewhere
  - 1. Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Section 321130

## **PART 2 - MATERIALS**

- 2.1 Local Materials: High bearing-soils or sand clay material. The materials passing the #40 mesh sieve shall have a liquid limit not greater than 30, and a plasticity index not greater than 10. Blending materials to meet these requirements will not be permitted unless authorized by the Engineer. When so permitted, the blended material shall be tested and approved before spreading.
- 2.3 Crushed Shell: Mollusk shell, but not steamed shell, (i.e., oysters, mussels, clams, cemented coquina, etc.). Gradation shall be such that at least 97% by weight of the total material passes a 1" sieve, and at least 50% by weight is retained on the #4 sieve. Not more than 20% by weight of the total material shall pass (by washing) the #200 sieve.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 Compaction: Compact the stabilized subgrade in both cuts and fills to a minimum density of 95% of maximum (AASHTO T-180) density. The subgrade shall be shaped to within 1/4 inch of the grades shown in the Drawings.
- 3.2 Maintenance: After the subgrade has been prepared as specified, Contractor shall maintain it free from ruts, depressions and all damage resulting from hauling or handling of any materials, equipment, tools, etc. All work which may become necessary in order to recompact the subgrade shall be at contractor's expense.
- 3.3 Testing: Provide density and bearing value tests at intervals not to exceed 250 feet for roadways or 10,000 square feet for parking areas.

WTJX BROADCASTING FACILITY  
Haypiece Hill- Parcels 158A and 158 Rem  
Submarine Base, St Thomas USVI  
PROJECT #510-21-1

SPRINGLINE ARCHITECTS  
a NOVUS architects company

321130 - 2

---

END OF SECTION 321130

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes all work required to complete, as indicated by the Contract Documents, and furnish all supplementary items necessary for the proper installation of the asphalt concrete paving, as required for the completion of the Work and/or restoration of existing asphalt pavement.
- B. Asphalt concrete paving, includes:
  - 1. Subgrade preparation.
  - 2. Aggregate base.
  - 3. Tack coat.
  - 4. Asphaltic concrete leveling course.
  - 5. Asphaltic concrete surface course.

### **1.2 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Defective asphaltic paving: Consider defective any portion of the asphalt paving in which creeping, shoving, cracking, raveling, softening or other defects occur during Warranty period. Patch or replace as specified, and as approved by Owner.

### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Reference Specifications and Standards:
  - 1. FDOT (FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION): Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction.
- B. Tests and inspections:
  - 1. Provide inspecting and monitoring for work specified under Article, "Field Quality Control".
  - 2. In addition to tests and requirements of FDOT, (FDOT- 200-7) conduct a water floods test of critical areas as directed.
  - 3. Completed surfaces: Free of standing water when flood tested. Remove and replace to proper grade with materials in compliance with Specifications.

### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Procedures: In accord with Division I.
- B. After award of contract and prior to start of work submit job mix formula, and hot-mix design data sheet, for each type mix used.

---

## 1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Procedures: In accord with FDOT (FLORIDA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION) Specifications.

## 1.6 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Weather limitations:
1. Apply bituminous prime coat only when the ambient temperature is 50°F. and rising and when the temperature has not been below 35°F. for 12 hours immediately prior to application.
  2. Do not apply when the base surface is wet or contains an excess of moisture which would prevent uniform distribution and the required penetration.
  3. Base course may be placed when air temperature is not below 30°F.
  4. Construct asphalt concrete surface course only in dry weather when temperature is above 40°F.
- B. Grade control: Establish and maintain the required lines and grades, including crown and cross-slope, for each course during construction operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt concrete: Type SP-12.5 or as noted on Drawings. Conform to 2014 edition of the FDOT Specifications Section 331.
1. Provide plant mixed asphalt concrete in accord with methods and operations requirements of FDOT Sections 320 and 330-1 to 330-6.
- B. Prime coat: Cut-back asphalt, grade RC-70, conforming to FDOT Specifications Section 300.
- C. Tack coat: Asphalt emulsion (SS-1H) or (RS-2) grade conforming to FDOT Specifications Section 300.
- D. Seal coat: Seal coat is not required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION AND PREPARATION

- A. Examine all surfaces over which asphalt is to be applied.



1. Insure that no defects, low sections, depressions or holes are present which would jeopardize the standard of finish specified.

- B. Proof roll subgrade using heavy, rubber-tired rollers. Check for unstable areas. Check for areas requiring additional compaction or replacement.

### 3.2 STABILIZATION OF SUBGRADE

- A. Areas designated to be paved or to be restored to their preconstruction condition and having a soil-cement base shall be stabilized as indicated on the drawings to the depth shown from the grades indicated in accord with FDOT Standard Specification Section 160.

### 3.3 AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

- A. Minimum compacted thickness: 8 inch or as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Spread soil-cement in accordance with FDOT Standard Specifications Sections 200-4, 200-5.1 and 200-5.2.
- C. Compaction of soil-cement shall be accomplished in conformance with Section 200-6 of the FDOT Standard Specifications.

### 3.4 PRIMING AND MAINTAINING

- A. Priming: The prime coat shall be applied only when the base meets the specified density requirements and the moisture content in the top half of the base does not exceed 90 percent of the optimum moisture of the base material. At the time of priming, the base shall be firm, unyielding and in such condition that no undue distortion will occur.
- B. Maintaining: The Contractor will be responsible for assuring that the true crown and templet are maintained, with no rutting or other distortion, and that the base meets all the requirements, at the time the surface course is applied.

### 3.5 TACK COAT

- A. When new asphalt is to be placed against existing or new concrete or asphalt surfaces, such as curbs, gutters, walls, structures, or other paving, coat such surfaces with a tack coat of asphaltic emulsion before the new paving is placed.
- B. Apply tack coat by fogging method; no exceptions allowed.

### 3.6 ASPHALT CONCRETE

- A. Provide transportation, placing and compacting of asphalt concrete, preparation of application surfaces, joints, tolerances and protection of the finished asphalt in accord with FDOT Section 330.

- 
1. Refer to Division I for testing.
  - B. Spread asphaltic concrete from a slow moving spreading machine to assure that mix is properly tamped.
    1. Roll asphaltic concrete surface source with single pass while material is over 185°F.
  - C. Spread asphaltic concrete in such a manner as to assure that transverse joints created by stopping and restarting paving equipment will be smooth and cause no objectionable visual defects or perceptible interruption that would be detected in a normal ride over the surface.

### 3.7 PATCHING

- A. Remove and replace defective areas.
- B. Cut-out and fill with fresh, hot asphalt concrete.
- C. Compact by rolling to specified surface density and smoothness.
- D. Remove deficient areas for full depth of course.
- E. Cut sides perpendicular and parallel to direction of traffic with edges vertical.
- F. Apply tack coat to exposed surfaces before placing new asphalt concrete mixture.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Receive approval from Engineer, prior to starting of Work, of all paving equipment:
  1. Paving equipment to be in accord with submittals furnished.
  2. Correct all deficiencies in equipment not meeting manufacturer's specifications prior to starting Work.
- B. Provide Engineer with certified evidence, prior to starting work, that source of material, job mix formula, and hot mix design is in accord with submittals furnished.
- C. Verify that all paving equipment is cleaned, in accord with equipment manufacturer's recommendations, at the end of each days paving operations.
- D. Material testing engineer or technician to visually observe and monitor placement and construction of soil-cement base material. Surface of the soil-cement shall be tested per FDOT Standard Specification Section 200-7.
  1. Verify that depth of base course meets or exceeds Work specifications.
- E. Material testing engineer to perform the following:

1. Visual observations of uniformity and moisture condition of base material at arrival on site.
2. Random depth checks both before and after final compaction to assure minimum compacted thickness as shown on the Drawings.
3. Field density tests to assure uniform and satisfactory compaction in excess of 98% Maximum Density Value.

### **3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Cleaning: After completion of paving operations, clean surfaces of excess or spilled asphalt materials. The cleaning process used may include sand blasting or other methods at the direction of the Owner. This work shall be at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on asphalt concrete pavement until it has cooled and hardened, and in no case sooner than as permitted by FDOT Section 330.

END OF SECTION 321216

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract apply to work of this Section 321216.

### **1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. Pavement markings.
  - 1. Provide marking paint for perimeter and marking outside traffic flow patterns or in areas where existing markings have been disturbed.

### **1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE**

- A. Asphalt concrete paving - Section 321216

### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Procedure: Submit in accord with General Conditions.
- B. Product data: Submit manufacturer's detailed literature.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Pavement Marking Paint
  - 1. Conform to the requirements of FDOT Specifications Section 971.
  - 2. Color
  - 3. White - Code T1
  - 4. Yellow - Code T2
  - 5. Acceptable
    - a. Tnemec's Traffic Paint
    - b. Glidden-Durkee's Romark Traffic
    - c. PPG's Traffic and Zone Marking
- B. Thermoplastic Compound
  - 1. Conform to the requirements of FDOT Specifications Section 711

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PAINT MARKINGS APPLICATION**

- A. Obtain approval of marking layouts prior to paint application.
- B. Traffic line markings: 4 inches wide unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Machine apply in strict accord with recommendations of paint manufacturer.
- D. Apply two coats or more as required for complete opacity.
  - 1. Apply first coat after all paved surfaces to be painted are dry and cured for a minimum of 48 hours.
  - 2. Apply second or final coat prior to completion of project.
- E. Paint directional lettering, arrows and other markings by similar methods with same paint. Use stencils and masking tape as required to achieve required designs.

END OF SECTION 321723

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. The Work included in this section shall pertain to the identification of potable water, industrial water, chilled water supply/return and gas buried piping in the site. The work shall include but not be limited to the installation of identification/warning tape, copper tracing wire, and color coding on pipe.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 IDENTIFICATION/WARNING TAPE**

- A. All utility piping shall be installed with 3 inch wide metallic or vinyl continuous tape, for identification and warning purposes, buried directly above the centerline of the pipe at a maximum depth of 18 inches or as approved by the Work's engineer of record.
- B. The identification/warning tape shall be colored and labeled as follows:
1. Potable Water Main Tape.
    - a. Color: Blue with Black Lettering
    - b. Lettering: "CAUTION: WATER LINE BURIED BELOW" or similar wording.
  2. Reuse Water Main Tape.
    - a. Color: Purple with Black Lettering
    - b. Lettering: "CAUTION: REUSE WATER LINE BURIED BELOW" or similar wording.
  3. Brine Water Main Tape.
    - a. Color: Orange with Black Lettering
    - b. Lettering: "CAUTION: BRINE WATER LINE BURIED BELOW" or similar wording.
  4. Gas Main Tape.
    - a. Color: Yellow with Black Lettering
    - b. Lettering: "CAUTION: GAS MAIN BURIED BELOW" or similar wording.
  5. Raw Water Main Tape.
    - a. Color: Green with Black Lettering
    - b. Lettering: "CAUTION: RAW WATER MAIN BURIED BELOW" or similar wording.
  6. Sewer Main Tape.
    - a. Color: Brown with White Lettering
    - b. Lettering: "CAUTION: SEWER MAIN BURIED BELOW" or similar

wording.

- 7. Force Main Tape.
  - a Color: Brown with White Lettering
  - b Lettering: "CAUTION: FORCE MAIN BURIED BELOW" or similar wording.

C. All lettering shall appear legibly on the tape and shall run the entire length of the pipe.

## 2.2 COPPER IDENTIFICATION WIRE

- A. All non-metallic pipe shall be installed with a continuous, insulated 14 gauge copper wire installed directly on top of the centerline of the pipe for location piping.

## 2.3 PIPE COLOR IDENTIFICATION

- A. All potable water, industrial water, chilled water and gas main utility piping shall be marked with a continuous minimum 2" paint stripe located at the 12'o clock position or the pipe shall be a solid color as follows:

1. Potable Water Line Stripe or Pipe Color:	Blue
2. Reuse Line Stripe or Pipe Color:	Purple
3. Brine Water Line Stripe or Pipe Color:	Orange
4. Gas Main Stripe or Pipe Color:	Yellow
5. Raw Water Main Stripe or Pipe Color:	Green
6. Force Main Stripe or Pipe Color:	Brown
7. Sewer Water Main Stripe or Pipe Color:	Brown

- B. Backfill shall not be placed for 30 minutes following paint application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPE WRAPPING

- A. All reinforced concrete pipes and corrugated high density polyethylene pipes must be wrapped securely to ensure the joints are not exposed to the elements.
- B. There must be no dirt allowed in the system or the wrapping.

END OF SECTION 330526

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. This Section shall include, but not be limited to, all labor, equipment, tools, materials and all incidentals required for the construction, installation, testing and disinfection of a potable and reuse water distribution systems, including all appurtenances as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein. All references to and requirements for “potable water” or “water” systems contained in this section shall also apply to the industrial water system.
- B. The work shall include but not be limited to, ductile iron pipe, PVC pipe, high density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe, valves, air release and vacuum valves, pressure reducing or sustaining valves, ductile iron fittings, strainers, tapping tees and sleeves, tapping saddles, cast iron valve boxes, backflow preventers, master meters, valve vaults and boxes, all restrained joints as required for all types of piping, all excavation, sheeting, shoring and bracing, dewatering, jacking and boring, where required, slope protection, backfilling, grading and drainage, concrete work, rip-rap, compaction, grass restoration, pavement restoration, where required, and all other work necessary to complete the construction, installation, testing and disinfection of the potable water distribution system.

### **1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Soils Report and Other Information
- B. Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
- C. Site Preparation
- D. Excavating and Backfilling for Utilities

### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

#### **A. Reference Standards:**

DIPRA Handbook of Ductile Iron Pipe.  
Uni-Bell Handbook of PVC Pipe.  
Recommended Standards for Water Works, (Ten-State Standards)  
Florida Department of Environmental Protection, F.A.C. 62-500.  
Canadian International Standard (ISO)

#### **B. Reference Specifications:**

- 1. This standard references the following documents, which forms a part of this standard to the extent specified herein. In any case of conflict, the most restrictive standard shall prevail. For all reference specifications, the latest edition shall apply.
  - a. ASTM D746 (ANSI/AWWA C151/21.51) Ductile Iron Pipe.
  - b. ASTM A536 (ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53) Compact Ductile Iron Fittings.



- 
- c. (ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10) Ductile Iron Fittings, 3 inches through 48 inches, for Water and Other Liquids.
  - d. (ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4) Cement Mortar Lining For Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings For Water.
  - e. (ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11) Rubber Gasket Joints For Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings.
  - f. AWWA C600, Installation of Ductile Iron Water Mains and Appurtenances.
  - g. ANSI/AWWA C105/A21.5, Polyethylene Encasement For Ductile Iron Piping For Water and Other Liquids.
  - h. ASTM D1784, Rigid Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly Vinyl Chloride (CPVC) Compounds.
  - i. ASTM D2241 (AWWA C900), Standard Specification for Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe.
  - j. ASTM F477, Elastomeric Seals for Joining Plastic Pipes.
  - k. ASTM D3139, Specification for Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.
  - l. ANSI/AWWA C500, Standard For Gate Valves For Water and Sewage Systems.
  - m. ANSI/AWWA C509, Standard For Resilient Seated Gate Valves For Water and Sewage Systems.
  - n. ANSI/AWWA C504, Standard For Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves.
  - o. AWWA C503, Standard For Wet Barrel Fire Hydrants.
  - p. AWWA C906-90, Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water Distribution
  - q. ASTM C478, Precast Concrete Valve Boxes and Vaults.
  - r. ASTM C94, Concrete, Type II.

#### C. INSPECTION AND CERTIFICATION OF PIPE AND FITTINGS:

- 1. All pipe fittings and appurtenances to be installed under this Section may be inspected and tested for compliance with these Specifications at the manufacturer's facility by an independent testing laboratory selected by the Contractor. The manufacturers' cooperation shall be required in these inspections.
- 2. The Contractor shall obtain from the pipe manufacturer a certificate of inspection stating that the pipe and fittings supplied for this Work has been inspected and tested at the point of origin, and that they meet or exceed the requirements set forth in these Specifications.
- 3. The costs of the inspections and tests shall be borne by the Contractor. Letters of certification shall be furnished for all inspections and tests prior to the installation of the pipe, fittings and appurtenances.

#### E. INSPECTION UPON DELIVERY:

- 1. All pipe fittings and appurtenances shall be subject to visual inspection at the point of delivery and again just before being lowered into the trench. All materials found to be defective due to manufacture, or damaged in transit shall be rejected and shall be immediately removed by the Contractor from the job site.
- 2. The Owner or the Utility may perform or cause to be performed all tests as specified in the applicable AWWA Standards, to ensure conformance with the standard. In the case

of failure of the pipe or appurtenances to comply with such standards, the responsibility for replacement of the defective materials becomes that of the Contractor.

3. The entire product of any manufacturer may be rejected when, in the opinion of the Design Engineer or the Utility Owner, the methods of manufacture fail to secure uniform results, or where the materials are such as to produce pipe and/or fittings of inferior quality.

#### 1.4 EXPERIENCE

- A. The Contractor shall be a firm with not less than five (5) years of successful experience in the installation and construction of pipelines incorporating products and materials similar to those specified herein.

#### 1.5 HANDLING AND STORAGE OF PIPE FITTINGS AND APPURTENANCES

- A. All pipe, fittings and appurtenances shall be loaded and unloaded by lifting with hoists or skidding in order to avoid shock or damage.
  1. Pipe, fittings and appurtenances shall not be dropped, rolled or skidded into or against pipe, fittings or other construction products on the ground.
  2. Slings, hooks, pipe tongs and other lifting devices shall be padded and used in such a manner as to prevent damage to pipe or construction products.
  3. Stored materials shall be kept safe from damage. The interior of all pipe, fittings and appurtenances shall be kept free from dirt, oil, grease and foreign matter at all times.
- B. Pipe shall not be stacked higher than recommended by the manufacturer or the limits shown in the following table, whichever is most stringent.

##### MAXIMUM STACKING HEIGHTS FOR PIPE

##### NOMINAL PIPE

SIZE (INCHES)	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18
20 24 30 36 42	36	42						
NUMBER OF TIERS	16	13	11	10	9	8	7	6
6 5 4 4 3								

The bottom tier shall be kept off of the ground on timbers. Pipe in tiers shall be alternated, i.e., bell, plain end; bell, plain end, etc. No less than two rows of timbers shall be placed between tiers. Chocks shall be affixed to each, in order to prevent movement. The timbers shall be large enough to prevent contact between pipe in adjacent tiers.

- C. The Contractor shall cover stored PVC and polyethylene pipe to prevent exposure to ultraviolet radiation.
- D. Pipe gaskets shall be used in the work on a first-in, first-out basis.

1. Gaskets for mechanical joint and push-on joint ductile iron pipe and fittings shall be stored in a cool, dry location, out of direct sunlight.
  2. Gaskets shall be stored in such a manner so as to prevent coming into contact with petroleum products.
- E. Mechanical joint bolts and locking segments for push-on joints shall be handled and stored in such a manner that will ensure proper use with respect to pipe types and sizes.

## 1.6 **TESTING AND INSPECTION**

- A. Refer to Division I.
- B. TEST METHODS AND INSPECTIONS:
1. Maximum density and optimum moisture content of soils in place and field density of soils in place shall conform to Section Excavation and Backfill for Utilities.
  1. Hydrostatic pressure and leakage testing of potable water mains in accordance with AWWA C600, latest edition, and in accordance with Part 3.09 of this Section.
  2. Disinfection and testing of potable water pipelines in accordance with AWWA C651, latest edition, AWWA Manual M12, and Part 3.10 of this Section.

## 1.7 **REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Unless indicated otherwise in the Drawings or as specified herein, the minimum cover for potable water mains shall not be less than 36 inches.
- B. Potable water mains shall be laid in the dry. All work occurring at trench depths below groundwater level shall be dewatered and maintained in a dry condition continuously while work is taking place at those elevations. All dewatering shall conform to the requirements of Section Dewatering.
- C. Where Ductile Iron Pipe are to be laid in or at the surface of brackish ground water the pipes shall be protected with polyethylene encasement in accordance with AWWA C105, from the adverse external aggressive soil and or ground water conditions.
- D. Potable water mains and appurtenances shall be constructed using the materials indicated on the Drawings and as specified herein, substitutions shall not be made without the expressed approval of the Engineer or Owner and the Utility.
- E. The Contractor shall not cover lines until they have been inspected and approved, and all required testing has been performed and passed.
- F. Conflict encasement shall be in accordance with the Drawings.
- G. Air relief manholes and air and vacuum relief valves shall be installed as indicated on the Drawings. Air relief manholes and valves shall be in accordance with 2.01 G. of this Section.

---

## 1.8 SUBMITTALS

### A. PROCEDURES:

1. Submit product data, shop drawings, samples, testing laboratory reports, etc. in a timely manner and in accordance with the general requirements of Division I: Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples.

### B. PRODUCT DATA:

1. Submit manufacturer's detailed product literature, which shall include, where applicable, mill test reports, equipment capacity data, manufacturer's literature that notes compliance with the reference standards including, but not limited to, product type, pressure rating, schedule, class, grade, and all other information pertinent to the installation.
2. The data to be submitted shall include, but not be limited to:
  - a. Ductile iron pipe and fittings.
  - b. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pressure pipe.
  - c. Elastomeric seals for ductile iron and PVC pipe joints.
  - d. Polyethylene pipe and fittings.
  - e. Resilient seated gate valves.
  - f. Air and vacuum relief valves.
  - g. Tapping tees and tapping sleeves.
  - h. Cast iron valve boxes.
  - i. Precast concrete valve vaults.
  - j. Valve operators.
  - k. Mechanical joint retainer glands. (UL/FM)
  - l. Corrosion protection materials.
  - m. Underground marker tape.
  - n. Underground tracer wire and appurtenances.
  - o. Fire hydrants and fittings.
  - p. Pressure reducing or sustaining valves.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile iron pipe (DIP) and fittings for potable water service shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51.
  1. Ductile iron pipe shall have a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 p.s.i. with a minimum yield strength of 42,000 p.s.i.
  2. Pipe thickness shall be in accordance with Table 50.12, ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50 and shall be Pressure Class 350.

3. Ductile iron pipe for potable water main service shall have a cement mortar lining and a bituminous seal coat in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4 and a minimum 1.0 mil bituminous coating on the pipe exterior in accordance with ANSI 21.51.
4. Unless specifically required by the Drawings, Ductile iron pipe shall be supplied in lengths not in excess of a nominal 20 feet, and unless otherwise specified, shall have mechanical joints conforming to Table 10.1 ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10. Single gasket push-on joints on mechanical joints conforming to ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C111 shall be used on all ductile iron pipe except where restrained joints are required.
5. High strength, low alloy mechanical joint T-bolts and nuts conforming to ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11.
6. Mechanical joint gaskets shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11, latest revision.
7. Where called for on the Drawings, polyethylene encasement for ductile iron pipe shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C105/A21.5.
8. Acceptable manufacturers:
  - a. U.S. Pipe.
  - b. American.
  - c. Clow.

**B. COMPACT DUCTILE IRON FITTINGS:**

1. Potable water distribution pipe fittings shall be ductile iron conforming to ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53.
  - a. Rubber gasket joints shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11.

**C. FLANGED DUCTILE IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS WITH THREADED FLANGES:**

1. Flanged ductile iron pipe and fittings, where called for on the plans, shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C115/A21.15.
2. Flanges shall be furnished flat faced and drilled to 125-pound template in accordance with B16.1 full-faced gaskets.
3. Acceptable manufacturers:
  - a. U.S. Pipe.
  - b. American.
  - c. Clow.

**D. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pressure pipe and fittings for potable water service, in sizes 4-inch through 12-inch shall conform to AWWA C900, latest revision.**

1. Laying lengths shall be 20 feet  $\pm$  1 inch for all sizes.
2. PVC pipe shall be Class 150 (SDR 18) with cast iron outside dimensions.
3. PVC pipe joints shall have an integral wall-thickened bell end with gasket seal conforming to ASTM D3139. Solvent weld joints will not be permitted.
4. All PVC pipe shall be identified on the exterior of the pipe with the following information:

- 
- a. Nominal pipe size and O.D. base.
    - b. Material code designation number.
    - c. Dimension ratio number.
    - d. AWWA pressure class.
    - e. AWWA designation.
    - f. Pipe manufacturers name and production code.
    - g. All PVC pipe shall be UL-FM approved.
  5. PVC pipe smaller than 4-inch in size shall be 200 psi, (SDR-14) in I.P.S. dimensions, manufactured from 1120 resin.
  6. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - a. Johns Manville.
    - b. Certainteed.
    - c. H&W.
    - d. Clow.
  - E. Polyethylene pipe pressure pipe and fittings for potable water service, in sizes 4-inch through 63-inch shall conform to AWWA C906, latest revision.
    1. Polyethylene pipe shall have a minimum pressure rating of 150 psi.
    2. Size of pipes as shown on the plans refer to minimum inside diameter of pipes. Exceptions may be made on a case by case basis.
  - F. Resilient seated wedge gate valves for potable water service shall conform or exceed all applicable requirements of AWWA C509.
    1. All resilient seated wedge gate valves shall have non-rising stems fitted with O-Ring seals for counter clockwise operation and a 2-inch square operating nut.
    2. All resilient seated wedge gate valves shall be bubble tight at 200 psi.
    3. Each valve shall have the manufacturer's name, pressure rating, the year of manufacture, and an arrow to indicate the direction of opening cast into the valve body.
    4. The interior of the valve body and bonnet shall have a factory applied 2-part thermo setting epoxy resin lining equal to Endurall 3300.
    5. Each valve shall be hydrostatically tested to a pressure equal to twice the specified working pressure prior to shipment from the factory. The manufacturer shall certify each valve.
    6. Acceptable manufacturers:
      - a. American Flow Control (Series 2500)
      - b. Or Approved Equal
  - G. AIR RELEASE VALVES for potable water service shall be installed as shown on the Drawings. The valves shall be constructed with a cast iron body, cover and baffle, stainless steel float, bronze water diffuser, BUNA-N or viton seat and stainless steel trim.
    1. Valves shall be provided with a vacuum check to prevent air from re-entering the line. All fittings shall be threaded.

- 
2. Air release valves shall be Model 200 as manufactured by Apco Valve and Primer Corporation, Schaumburg, Illinois.
- H. CORPORATION STOPS: The use of direct tapping into pipe using corporation stops for water service connections will not be approved.
1. All service taps shall be made using approved type service saddles.
  2. Service saddles shall not be less than 2 inches.
- I. SERVICE SADDLES OR TAPPING SLEEVES
1. Size-on-size taps using tapping saddles or sleeves will not be permitted.
  2. Where size-on-size outlets are required, a tee shall be installed in lieu of a tapping saddle or sleeve. Tapping saddles and tapping sleeves will only be permitted on lines that are at least one nominal pipe size or diameter larger than the proposed tap.
  3. Tapping saddles and tapping sleeves shall be ductile iron and shall be epoxy, nylon or PE coated (min. 10 mils).
  4. Approved manufacturers:
    - a. Rockwell.
    - b. Mueller.
    - c. Ford.
    - d. Romac.
    - e. Cascade.
  5. Tapping sleeves for use on pipe 14 inches and larger in diameter shall be ductile iron with mechanical joint.
  6. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - a. Clow.
    - b. Mueller.
    - c. American.
    - d. Dresser.
  7. Tapping sleeves for use on water mains 12-inches in diameter and smaller shall be fabricated of 18-8 stainless steel for corrosion resistance. The outlet of the tapping sleeve may be either extruded or welded to the tapping sleeve. All welds shall be fully passivated to restore the stainless steel quality and characteristics. The flange shall be stainless steel with a recess to accept standard tapping valves. The flange shall conform to AWWA C-207, Class D, ANSI 150 lb. drilling. Bolt holes shall straddle the pipe centerline.
  8. The sleeve shall be equipped with a 3/4 inch NPT 18-8 stainless steel plug with a standard square head for testing. The gasket shall be of 360-degree design, and manufactured of gridded virgin GPR (Ground Penetrating (Probing) Radar) compounded for water service and complying with ASTM D-2000-80M 4AA607. An 18-10 stainless steel armor shall be vulcanized to the gasket, to bridge the gap between the securing lugs.
  9. All bolts and nuts shall be 18-8 stainless steel with 5/8 inch NC threads. The lifter bar shall be of adequate design to provide a heavy bearing surface for all nuts. Bolt threads shall be

fluorocarbon coated to prevent galling. Nylatron G.S. washers shall be provided for lubrication.

#### J. TAPPING VALVES

1. Valves for use with tapping sleeves shall meet or exceed all provisions of AWWA C509.
2. Valves for use with tapping sleeves shall be resilient seated wedge gate type and shall be designed for use with tapping equipment. The valves shall have non-rising stems and shall have an alignment ring to prevent misalignment with the tapping sleeves.
3. The valves shall close clockwise (right) and open counter clockwise (left), and shall be equipped with a standard 2-inch square operating nut. Valve outlets shall have a flanged by mechanical joint.

#### K. PIPE RESTRAINT:

1. Mechanical pipe restraining mechanisms for push-on or mechanical joints shall be used where indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer.
2. Restraining glands, tie rods, clamps or other components of dissimilar metals shall be protected against corrosion by the application of a suitable coating at the direction of the Engineer.
3. Mechanical restraints shall be sized for the working pressure plus surge allowance, or a test pressure of 200 psi, whichever is greater. Adequate factors of safety shall be employed.
4. Mechanical joint restraint shall be incorporated in the design of the follower gland and shall include a restraining mechanism which, when actuated, imparts multiple wedging action against the pipe, increasing its resistance as the pressure increases. Flexibility of the joint shall be maintained after burial. Glands shall be manufactured of ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536. Restraining devices shall be of ductile iron heat treated to a minimum hardness of 370 BHN. Dimensions of the gland shall be such that it can be used with the standard mechanical joint bell and tee-head bolts conforming to ANSI A21.11 and ANSI/AWWA C 153/A21.53. Twist-off nuts shall be used to ensure proper actuating of the restraining devices.
5. The minimum number of restrained joints required for resisting forces at fittings and changes in direction of pipe shall be determined from the length of restrained pipe on each side of fittings and changes in direction necessary to develop adequate resisting friction with the soil.
6. As a minimum, ductile iron pipe joints shall be restrained each side of the fitting for a continuous distance as shown on the Drawings. The lengths shall be increased by 25 percent for pipe that is encased in polyethylene. Where conditions do not provide adequate soil friction, the required lengths may be increased.
7. Bolts and nuts for restrained joints shall be corten, low alloy, high strength steel conforming to AWWA standards.
8. Restrained glands shall be MegaLug or approved equal.

#### L. VALVE BOXES:

1. All buried valves shall have cast iron two- or three piece valve boxes with cast iron covers.



2. Valve boxes shall be provided with suitable heavy bonnets and to extend to such elevation at or slightly above the finished grade surface. The barrel shall be one or two piece, screw type, having 5 ¼ inch shaft.
3. All valves shall have actuating nuts extended to within six inches of the top of the valve box cover.
4. Valve boxes shall be provided with concrete bases.

#### M. FIRE HYDRANTS

1. Fire hydrants must be in accordance with AWWA C502.
2. Hydrants should have 2 – 2 ½ “ outlet nozzles and 1 – 4 ½”, pumper nozzle with standard hose threads. Caps must be provided on nozzles and attached by chains.
3. Hydrants should be installed with break-away flange at base
4. Two operating keys shall be provided with each hydrant installed.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPELINE TRENCH CONSTRUCTION

- A. Refer to Section Excavating and Backfilling for Utilities.

#### 3.2 SETTING VALVE VAULTS

- A. The soil foundation beneath the precast unit shall be stabilized and compacted to 95 percent of the maximum density as determined by ASTM D1557 and ASTM D1556.
  1. The precast valve vaults shall be carefully placed on the prepared foundation so as to be fully and uniformly supported in true alignment, making certain that the pipe can pass through on the designed line and grade.
  2. Precast valve vaults shall be handled by lifting rings only.
  3. Precast valve vaults and manholes shall be placed and aligned to provide vertical alignment with not more than 1/8 inch maximum tolerance for 5 feet of depth. The completed unit shall be rigid, true to dimensions and alignment.

#### 3.3 LAYING POTABLE WATER MAINS

- A. Potable water mains shall be laid in accordance with the details shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.
  1. The trench bottom shall be graded to the proposed elevation of the pipeline and the bottom shaped to fit the lower quadrant of the pipe. Holes shall be excavated at each bell so the pipe will be uniformly supported along the entire length of the barrel only. Pipe bedding shall be in compliance with Section Excavation and Backfilling for Utilities and as specified herein.
  2. Pipe installation and jointing shall be in strict accordance with the pipe manufacturer's specifications and instructions for the type of pipe used and the applicable standards of the Utility.

3. Any pipe having a defective joint, bell or spigot shall be rejected, removed from the work site and replaced with a sound unit.
4. All pipe shall be installed to the homing mark on the spigot. On field cut pipe, the Contractor shall provide a homing mark on the spigot end in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
5. All pipe shall be retained in position so as to maintain alignment and joint closure until sufficient haunching and backfill has been placed to adequately hold the pipe in place.
6. Foreign materials shall be prevented from entering the pipe while pipe is being placed in the trench. No debris, tools, articles of clothing or other materials shall be placed in the pipe at any time.
7. At all times when pipe laying is not in progress for ten (10) minutes or more, the open ends of the pipe shall be closed by a watertight plug or other approved means to insure that absolute cleanliness is maintained inside the pipe at all times
8. Laying conditions for potable water systems shall be in accordance with ASTM D746.
  - a. Ordinary bedding conditions, having a load factor of 1.5 shall be used for 16 inch diameter pipe and smaller.
  - b. First Class bedding conditions, having a load factor of not less than 1.5 shall be used for 18 inch to 30 inch pipe.
  - c. Pipe 36 inches and larger shall have first class bedding with a load factor of not less than 1.9.

### 3.4 JOINTING POTABLE WATER MAINS

- A. Pipe installation and jointing shall be in strict accordance with the pipe manufacturer's specifications and instructions for the type of pipe used and the applicable standards of the Utility. Joints shall be in strict accordance with AWWA C600, latest revision.
- B. The Contractor shall take all reasonable precautions to provide assurance that the interior of the pipe and the jointing seal shall be free from sand, dirt, trash or other foreign material before installation in the line. Any pipe or fitting that has been installed containing dirt or other detrital material shall be removed, cleaned and relaid. Extreme care shall be taken to keep the bells of the pipe free from sand, dirt or rocks so that the joint may be properly assembled without over stressing the bells.
- C. All pipe shall be installed to the homing mark on the spigot. When field cutting of pipe is required, cutting shall be done by machine, leaving a smooth cut at right angles to the axis of the pipe. Cut ends of pipe to be used with push-on bell shall be beveled to conform to the manufacturers spigot end. Care shall be taken to prevent damage to linings.
- D. Deflection at pipe joints shall not exceed one half (1/2) the maximum pipe deflection recommended by the pipe manufacturer. If at any time joint deflections exceed one half (1/2) the manufacturer's maximum recommended pipe deflections, an appropriate fitting shall be used.

### 3.5 BACKFILLING, COMPACTION AND TESTING

- A. Refer to Section Excavation and Backfilling for Utilities.

- B. The Contractor shall not perform any backfilling operations other than those that are necessary to hold the pipe in place until soil test samples have been taken, locations recorded, the pipeline tested, inspected and released for backfilling.

### **3.6 CONNECTIONS FROM NEW TO EXISTING WATER MAINS**

- A. No connections will be allowed from new to existing potable water mains not shown on the Drawings without written approval from the Owner and utility owner, as applicable.
  - 1. Approval will be made only after a request form for alteration or connection has been submitted with approved plans.
  - 2. The use of fire hydrants by other than authorized persons is prohibited. The Owner may permit the use of water from a fire hydrant for construction or other purposes provided the applicant shall properly meet the conditions of these Specifications and as shown in the appropriate standard. The installation shall be under the supervision of a representative of the Owner.
  - 3. Valves shall not be operated by any person other than Owner's or utility owner's personnel, as applicable.

### **3.7 FLUSHING**

- A. Foreign material left in the pipelines during installation often result in valve and fire hydrant seat leakage during hydrostatic pressure testing. The Contractor shall make every effort to ensure that lines are kept clean during installation.
- B. Thorough flushing is required prior to hydrostatic pressure testing; flushing shall be accomplished by partially opening valves and fire hydrants several times under actual line pressures with pipeline velocities of not less than 3.0 feet per second in the largest line size to be flushed.
  - 1. The pipelines shall be flushed full bore and shall not be less than three (3) times the total volume of the section being tested.

### **3.8 PRESSURE AND LEAKAGE TESTING:**

- A. Hydrostatic pressure and leakage testing of water mains shall be performed by the Contractor in accordance with the latest jurisdiction having authority specifications. All testing shall be made using water. Air testing shall not be permitted.
  - 1. The Contractor shall furnish all gauges, meters, pressure pumps, and all other equipment required to pressure test the main at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 2. All sections which fail to meet the tests shall be repaired and the leakage eliminated, regardless of the total leakage as shown by the test.
  - 3. All lines which fail to meet the tests shall be repaired and retested as necessary until the test requirements are complied with, at no additional cost to the Owner or the Utility. All

defective materials, pipes, valves, and appurtenances shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

4. If the Engineer agrees that further construction works are believed to have affected the integrity of a previously tested section, that section shall be re-tested at the Contractor's expense.

B. The required pressure for the field hydrostatic pressure test shall be as follows.

1. The Contractor shall provide all temporary plugs and blocking necessary to maintain the required test pressure. Corporation cocks, service saddles, pipe risers and angle globe valves shall be provided at each dead-end in order to bleed air from the main. The cost of these items shall be included as part of the testing.
2. The duration of the pressure test shall be a minimum of two (2) hours. The costs of all required items shall be included as part of the testing.

C. TEST PRESSURE RESTRICTIONS:

1. Test pressures shall not exceed the pipe or thrust-restraint design.

D. PRESSURIZATION OF THE LINES:

1. Each valved section of the pipe shall be slowly filled with water and pressurized to the specified test pressure based on the elevation of the lowest point of the line or section under test, and corrected to the elevation of the test gauge by means of a force pump connected to the pipe in a manner satisfactory to the Utility.

E. AIR REMOVAL BEFORE TESTING:

1. Prior to applying the specified test pressure, all air shall be expelled from the pipe, valves and hydrants.
2. If permanent air relief valves or air vents are not located at all high points, the Contractor shall install corporation cocks at such points so that all air can be expelled as the line is filled with water.
3. After all air has been expelled from the line, the corporation cocks shall be closed and the test pressure applied.

F. EXAMINATION UNDER PRESSURE:

1. All exposed pipe, fittings, valves, hydrants, joints, etc. shall be carefully examined during the test. Defective or damaged pipe, fittings, valves or other appurtenances that are discovered following the pressure test shall be repaired or replaced with sound material, and the test shall be repeated until satisfactory to the Utility.

G. ACCEPTANCE OF THE INSTALLATION:

1. Zero leakage is allowed for the entirety of the two-hour test.

2. If any test discloses leakage greater than the amount specified above, the Contractor shall, at his own expense, locate and make repairs as necessary until the leakage is within the specified allowance. All visible leaks shall be repaired regardless of the amount of leakage.

### 3.9 DISINFECTION OF POTABLE WATER PIPELINES

- A. Prior to placing the water system in service, all potable water pipelines shall be chlorinated by in accordance with AWWA C-651, latest edition "AWWA Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains".
- B. The Contractor shall notify the Utility not less than five (5) working days prior to commencement of disinfection of the lines and shall present his plan for chlorination to the Engineer for approval.
- C. The location of the sampling points and chlorination points shall be determined by the Engineer and shall include all locations referenced in the required permits. All taps for chlorination and sampling shall be uncovered and backfilled by the Contractor at no additional expense to the Owner.
- D. After the line has been tested and accepted, the corporation cocks shall be removed and plugged, or left in place at the discretion of the Utility. The Contractor shall repair any damage to pipe exterior coating prior to acceptance.
- E. General procedure for disinfection of potable water systems.
  1. Prevent contaminating materials from entering the water main during construction, repair or storage.
  2. Remove by flushing any detrital material that may have entered the water main during construction.
  3. Chlorinate any residual contamination that may remain in the lines through a tap at one end of the line.
  4. Flush chlorinated water from the main after the required minimum detention time of 24 hours.
  5. Determine the bacteriological quality of the water by laboratory examination in accordance with "Standard Methods For the Examination of Water or Wastewater" or AWWA Manual M12.
- F. FILLING AND CONTACT:
  1. When installation has been completed, and flushed clean, the Contractor shall fill the main with water from the existing water distribution system or other approved source of supply and the water mains shall be made to flow at a constant measured velocity no greater than 1.0 foot per second into the newly laid water main. The Contractor shall furnish a water meter or other approved device for measuring the rate of flow at no additional cost to the Owner.
    - a. At a point not more than 2.0 feet downstream from the beginning of the new main, the entering water shall be dosed with a 1.0 percent chlorine solution, fed at a constant rate,

such that the water will have a free chlorine residual of not less than 25 mg/ℓ at the end of a 24-hour holding period.

- b. To assure that this concentration is provided, the Contractor shall provide testing services to measure the chlorine concentration at regular intervals, in accordance with the procedures described in the current edition of "Standard Methods For the Examination of Water or Wastewater", or AWWA Manual M12. Approved standard chlorine test kits may be used.
- c. The following table gives the amount of chlorine required for each 100-feet of pipeline of various diameters. Solutions of 1-percent may be prepared using sodium hypochlorite or calcium hypochlorite. (Note: Calcium hypochlorite requires one pound of CaCl<sub>2</sub> to 8 gallons of water to provide the required chlorine concentration.)

CHLORINE REQUIRED TO PRODUCE 25mg/L CONCENTRATION IN 100-FT. OF PIPE BY DIAMETER		
PIPE DIA. (INCHES)	100% CHLORINE (lbs./100 Feet Pipe)	1.0% CHLORINE SOLUTION (lbs. NaOCl/Gal.) Water)
4	0.013	0.16
6	0.030	0.36
8	0.054	0.65
10	0.085	1.02
12	0.120	1.44
16	0.217	2.60
24	0.411	4.90

- d. During the application of chlorine, valves shall be positioned and operated so that the strong chlorine solution in the main being treated will not flow into connecting water mains that are in active service.
- e. Chlorine application shall not cease until the entire main is filled with heavily chlorinated water. The chlorinated water shall be retained in the main for not less than 24 hours, during which time all valves, hydrants and appurtenances in the treated section shall be operated to insure complete disinfection. At the end of the 24 hour period, the treated water in all portions of the main shall have a residual of not less than 10 mg/ℓ of free chlorine.
- f. Hypochlorite solutions shall be applied to the water main using a gasoline powered or electrically powered chemical-feed pump designed for feeding chlorine solutions at a controlled rate of flow. Feed lines shall be of such material and strength as to safely withstand the corrosion caused by the concentrated chlorine solutions and the pressures created by the pumps. All connections shall be checked for tightness before solution is applied to the main.

#### G. FINAL FLUSHING:

- After the 24-hour retention period, the heavily chlorinated water shall be flushed from the main until the chlorine residual measurements show that the concentration in the water does not exceed 3.0 mg/ℓ, but is not less than 0.5 mg/ℓ.

#### H. DISPOSING OF HEAVILY CHLORINATED WATER :

- Heavily chlorinated water shall not be discharged into lakes, ponds, reservoirs, canals or streams. The environment to which the chlorinated water is to be discharged shall be inspected and approved by the Utility prior to discharge of chlorinated effluent. If there is any question that the chlorinated discharge will cause damage to the environment, then a dechlorinating agent shall be applied to the water to be wasted to neutralize the chlorine residual remaining in the water.
- The chlorine residual of water being disposed of shall be neutralized by treating with one of the chemicals listed in the following table:

POUNDS OF CHEMICALS REQUIRED TO REDUCE AND NEUTRALIZE VARIED RESIDUAL CHLORINE CONCENTRATIONS IN 100,000 GALLONS OF WATER. *				
RESIDUAL CHLORINE (mg/□)	SULFUR DIOXIDE (SO <sub>2</sub> )	SODIUM BISULFATE (NaHSO <sub>3</sub> )	SODIUM SULFITE (Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub> )	SODIUM THIOSULFATE (Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub> 5H <sub>2</sub> O)
1	0.8	1.2	1.4	1.2
2	1.7	2.5	2.9	2.4
10	8.3	12.5	14.6	12.0
50	41.7	62.6	73.0	60.0

\*With the exception of chlorine residual, in mg/l, or P.P.M., all amounts shown above are in pounds.

#### 3. STANDARD CONDITIONS:

- After final flushing and before the water main is placed in service, Contractor shall arrange for samples to be collected from the end of the line and shall have them tested for bacteriological quality in accordance with "Standard Methods For the Examination of Water and Wastewater", and shall show the absence of chloroform organisms. A standard plate count shall be required.
- Sampling: At least two samples shall be collected from the new main and two from each branch. In the case of extremely long mains (not greater than 1000 linear feet), it is required that samples be collected along the length of the line as well as at its end. The total number of samples and the locations of sampling points shall be as directed by the Engineer, all regulatory agencies as well as the Utility.

- 
- c. Special Conditions: If, during construction, trench water has entered the main, or if in the opinion of the Engineer, excessive quantities of dirt and debris have entered the main, bacteriological samples shall be taken at intervals of not more than 200 feet and shall be identified by station or location. Samples shall be taken of water that has been standing in the main for at least 16 hours after final flushing has been completed.
  - d. Sampling Procedures: Samples for bacteriological analysis shall be collected in sterile bottles treated with sodium thiosulfate as required by "Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater". Hoses and fire hydrants shall not be allowed in the collection of bacteriological samples. Approved sampling points shall be corporation cocks with gooseneck assemblies and terminal blow-off/sampling tap only.

J. RECHLORINATION

- 1. Should the initial disinfection fail to produce satisfactory bacteriological samples, the main shall be rechlorinated by the continuous feed method until satisfactory results are obtained.
- 2. Should positive bacteriological samples continue to be recorded, the situation shall be evaluated by the Engineer to determine corrective action, and daily samples recorded.
- 3. All retesting shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

- K. Prior to placing the water system in service, the water system shall be cleared for use, in writing, by the Design Engineer and Owner.

END OF SECTION 331110



---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

A. Gravity sanitary sewerage collection system including:

1. Gravity sanitary sewer pipe.
2. Manholes.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Alteration of existing sewerage structures.

### **1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Tests and inspections:

1. Procedure: In accord with Division 1.
2. Required tests:
  - a. After alignment tests have been completed, and before flows are allowed in the line, conduct leakage tests.
  - b. Test entire system for exfiltration in presence of engineer. Limit leakage to 100 gal. per inch of pipe dia. per mile of length per 24 hr..
  - c. Limit leakage to stated maximum limit, except that an allowance of an additional 10% of gallonage will be allowed for each additional 2 ft. of head over a basic 2 ft. minimum above all pipe soffits.
  - d. Pay for all leakage tests and required repairs and reconstruction.

B. Reference specifications and standards:

1. AASHTO: Specifications for Highway Bridges.
2. AASHTO: M198 Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe Using Flexible Watertight Gaskets
3. ASTM: A48 Gray Iron Castings.
4. ASTM: A74 Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
5. ASTM: A746 (ANSI/AWWA C151/21.51) Ductile Iron Pipe.
6. ASTM: C94 Ready-Mix Concrete.
7. ASTM: C150 Portland Cement.
8. ASTM: C443 Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets.
9. ASTM: C478 Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections.
10. ASTM: C923 Watertight Resilient Connectors for Manhole to Pipe Seal.
11. ASTM: D1248 Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials.

12. ASTM: D1784 Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.
  13. ASTM: D2122 Determining Dimension of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings.
  14. ASTM: D2321 Underground Installation of Flexible Thermoplastic Sewer Pipes.
  15. ASTM: D2412 Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-Plate Loading.
  16. ASTM: D3034 Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.
  17. ASTM: D3212 Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.
  18. ASTM: F477 Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.
  19. ANSI/AWWA: C105/A21.5 Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Piping for Water and Other Liquids.
  20. ANSI/AWWA: C111/A21.11 Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.
  21. ANSI/AWWA: C150/A21.50 Thickness Design of Ductile-Iron Pipe.
  22. ANSI/AWWA: C151/A21.51 Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast for Water or Other Liquids.
- C. Allowable tolerances for manhole frames:
1. Horizontal location: Within  $\pm 3$  in., in any direction, of horizontal location indicated on Drawings.
  2. Vertical alignment: Not greater than 1/8 in. maximum tolerance for 6 ft. of depth.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procedure: In accord with Division 1 Specifications.
- B. Product data: Manufacturer's detailed technical materials, fabrication, and installation data, including technical bulletins, drawings, guides, and manuals, as applicable to the work of this Project.
- C. Certifications: Manufacturer's certification that pipe and fittings have been inspected and tested at the point of origin, and are in compliance with specified requirements.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Pipe and fittings:
  1. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe and fittings for mainlines 15 in. and smaller: Conform to ASTM D3034, SDR 35.
    - a. Manufacture pipe from approved, Type 1, Grade 1, PVC 12454-C conforming to ASTM D1784 and meeting requirements of ASTM D2122 and ASTM D2412.

- 
- b. Pipe shall have integral wall thickened bells or extruded couplings with gasket seals. Solvent weld joints will not be permitted.
  - c. Pipe joints shall be gasket push-on type complying with ASTM D3212 and ASTM F477.
  - d. Pipe shall be UL/FM approved.
  - e. Fittings shall conform to the same specifications as pipe in which they are to be installed.
  - f. Pipe shall be identified on the exterior of the pipe with the following information:
    - (1) Nominal pipe size and o.d. base.
    - (2) Material code designation number (12454C).
    - (3) Dimension ratio number (SDR 35).
    - (4) Pipe Stiffness Designation (PS46).
    - (5) ANSI/ASTM Designation (D3034).
    - (6) Pipe manufacturer's name and production code.
  - g. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - (1) Clow.
    - (2) H and W.
    - (3) Certainteed.
    - (4) J-M Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - (5) Robintech.
2. Ductile iron pipe (DIP) and fittings: Conform to ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51.
- a. Pipe shall have a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 psi with a minimum yield strength of 42,000 psi.
  - b. Pipe thickness shall be in accord with Table 50.12, ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50, and shall be Class 50.
  - c. Ductile iron pipe and fittings shall have a minimum of 40 mils thick polyethylene lining in accord with ANSI/AWWA C151/A 21.51 and ASTM D1248. Polyethylene lining shall have sufficient carbon black added to resist ultraviolet rays during storage. Protecto 401 Ceramic Epoxy Lining (by Indurall Coatings, Inc., Birmingham, AL) may be used in lieu of polyethylene lining.
  - d. Pipe shall be supplied in lengths not in excess of a nominal 20 ft., and shall be single gasket, push-on joints (American Fastite or Owner-approved equivalent) conforming to ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11.
  - e. Pipe shall have a minimum 1 mils bituminous coating on pipe exterior in accord with ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51.
  - f. Polyethylene encasement, where required, shall be in accord with ANSI/AWWA C105/21.51. Polyethylene tubing shall conform to ASTM D1248.
  - g. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - (1) U.S. Pipe.

- 
- (2) American.
  - (3) Clow.
  - 3. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings: Conform to ASTM A74, service weight bell and spigot pipe with the following acceptable gasket types:
    - a. Dual Tite.
    - b. Rich-Seal.
    - c. Ty-Seal.
  - B. Precast concrete manhole sections: Precast manhole base sections, barrel sections, eccentric or concentric cone sections, and grade rings shall conform to ASTM C478.
    - 1. Concrete for manhole sections shall be Class A concrete with a compressive strength of 4,000 psi at 28 days conforming to ASTM C94, using ASTM C150 Type II Portland cement.
    - 2. Cure manhole sections by an approved method for a minimum of 4 days prior to painting and shall not be shipped for a minimum of 3 days after having been painted. Manhole sections shall not be shipped for a minimum of 7 days after removal from forms.
    - 3. Interior and mating surfaces shall have a protective coal tar epoxy coating having a minimum dry film thickness of 16 mils. The exterior surfaces shall have a protective coal tar epoxy coating with a minimum dry film thickness of 9 mils.
      - a. Coatings shall be applied by precast manufacturer in accord with coating manufacturer's recommendations.
      - b. Acceptable coating:
        - (1) Carboline (Kop-Coat) Bitumastic 300M.
        - (2) Karlee's Perma-Bar.
        - (3) Owner-approved equivalent.
    - 4. Clearly mark or impress date of manufacture of manhole sections and name or trademark of manufacturer on exterior of each precast section when form is removed and on interior after section has been painted.
    - 5. Cast precast manhole sections with tongue and groove joints, and sealed with Ramnek™ sealant by the T.K. Snyder Company of Houston, TX or Owner-approved equivalent. Joint sealant shall meet or exceed all requirement of Federal Specifications SS-S-210A and AASHTO M198. Do not use rubber ring manhole joint seals.
    - 6. Precast manhole bases with invert channels cast or formed directly into standard precast concrete manhole bases shall be used except at junctions with existing sewer mains.
      - a. Bench shall be formed smooth and brush finished, and shall slope smoothly and evenly downward at a minimum slope of 3/4 in. per ft. from manhole wall to flow channel. Size and shape of flow channel shall conform to lower 8/10 dia. of inlets and outlets.
      - b. When flow line directional changes occur which exceed 45°, an additional flow line drop of 1/10 ft. across manholes shall be provided.
      - c. Precast manhole base units shall be of the Moore Base design or Tru-Contour design.
    - 7. Acceptable manufacturers:

- 
- a. Atlantic Precast Concrete, Inc., Sarasota, FL.
  - b. Mack Concrete Industries, Inc., Apopka, FL.
  - c. Southern Precast, Inc., Alachua, FL.
  - d. Taylor Precast, Inc., Deland, FL.
8. Shallow or flat top manholes, where depth of cover is less than 4 ft., shall have vertical walls with a flat precast top slab. Precast top slab shall be capable of supporting the overburden plus a live load equivalent to H-20 loading in accord with AASHTO Specifications for Highway Bridges.
  9. Do not use brick manholes.
  10. Manholes receiving force main discharges shall have a PVC or fiberglass liner.
  11. Precast manhole sections shall have a wall thickness conforming to ASTM C478.
  12. Manhole base sections shall be not less than 8 in. thick and shall be reinforced with No. 5 steel reinforcing bars spaced at 9 in. o.c. each way and shall have No. 4 steel reinforcing steel bars around each opening.
  13. Precast concrete shall be wet cast. Do not use dry casting or low slump concrete.
  14. All precast concrete manhole bases shall have a minimum of three proper lifting loops in the base slabs.
  15. Do not use penetrating lifting holes in any structure. Where non-penetrating lifting holes are approved, their use will not be permitted within 8 in. of joint or pipe penetration.
  16. Where pipes enter or exit manholes, a neoprene rubber connector shall be used to provide a resilient watertight connection for the penetration into manhole. Watertight resilient manhole connectors shall conform to ASTM C923.
    - a. Resilient connector shall be Kor-N-Seal molded neoprene boot by National Pollution Control Systems, Inc. of Nashua, NH or A-Lok resilient pipe connector by A-Lok Products, Inc. of Tullytown, PA, or Owner-approved equivalent.
    - b. Resilient pipe connectors shall be supplied and installed by manufacturer of precast products.
  17. Precast concrete grade rings for manhole adjustment shall conform to ASTM C478. Grade rings shall be a minimum of 2 in. thick, a maximum of 5 in. thick, and be reinforced with No. 6 gauge or thicker reinforcing wire. Do not use brick for manhole adjustment.
  18. Drop manholes shall be provided where pipes enter manhole at an elevation 24 in. or more above invert of receiving manhole.
  19. Pipe penetrations into manhole walls shall be precast or corebored by mechanical means. Do not use concrete chisels or hand tools.
  20. Manholes shall be precast units with integral slab and lower ring. Cast-in-place base slab with precast ring walls shall not be approved, except at junctions with existing storm sewers, where saddle manholes are specified, or at locations as directed by Owner.
- C. Manhole frame, cover, and adjustment rings: Gray iron castings conforming to ASTM A48 Class 30 and ASTM C478.
1. Lifting or pick holes shall be non-penetrating.

2. Frames and covers shall be traffic bearing and capable of supporting H-20 loadings in accord with AASHTO Specifications for Highway Bridges.
3. The manhole frame, cover, and adjustment rings shall be as indicated on Drawings.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION/PERFORMANCE**

- A. Excavating, trenching, backfilling, and compacting: In accord with Section Excavating and Backfilling.
- B. Setting manholes:
  1. Carefully place precast manhole base section on prepared foundation so as to be fully and uniformly supported in true alignment, ensuring that penetrating pipes can be installed at proper line and grade.
    - a. Handle precast manhole units by lifting rings only.
    - b. Place and adjust first precast section to true grade and alignment. Install inlet pipes to form an integral watertight unit. Uniformly support sections upon the base structure, and without any bearing directly on penetrating pipes.
    - c. Place and align precast manholes to provide horizontal location and vertical elevations as indicated on Drawings. Installed manhole shall be rigid, true to dimensions and alignment, and watertight.
  2. Fully bed manhole frame and cover in mortar, with precast concrete grade rings placed between manhole cone and manhole frame.
    - a. Precast concrete grade rings shall conform to the specifications for precast concrete sections as designated in ASTM C478.
    - b. Precast concrete grade rings shall have a minimum depth of 2 in. and a maximum depth of 5 in.
    - c. Precast concrete grade rings shall not be used for more than 19 in. of vertical adjustment.
    - d. Do not use brick for manhole adjustment.
- C. Pipe laying: Lay pipe as indicated on Drawings, as specified herein, and in compliance with applicable portions of ASTM D2321.
  1. Grade trench bottom to indicated elevation of pipeline and shape bottom to fit lower quadrant of pipe. Excavate holes at each bell hub such that pipe will be uniformly supported along entire length of barrel only.
  2. Pipe installation and jointing shall be in accord with pipe manufacturer's specifications and instructions for type of pipe used and applicable requirements specified herein. All pipe having a defective joint, bell, or spigot is unacceptable, shall be rejected, removed from site, and replaced with an acceptable unit.
  3. Commence pipe laying in finished trench at lowest point, or from a point designated by Owner, and lay upgrade from point of connection with all bell ends forward.

4. Install pipe to homing mark on spigot. On field cut pipe, provide a homing mark on spigot end in accord with manufacturer's recommendations.
5. Maintain pipe alignment and joint closure until sufficient haunching and backfill is in place to adequately hold pipe in position.
6. Prevent foreign materials from entering pipe while it is being placed in trench. Do not place debris, tools, articles of clothing, or other materials in pipe at any time.
7. As each length of pipe is placed in trench, assemble joints and bring pipe to intended line and grade. Bed and secure pipe in place.
8. When pipe laying is delayed for 10 min. or more, close open ends of pipe using a watertight plug or other approved means to ensure that absolute cleanliness is maintained inside pipe.
9. At penetrations of manhole and similar structures, smoothly cut penetrating ends of pipe parallel to interior surface of structure. Maximum interior protrusion of pipe shall be the minimum necessary for proper sealing of pipe connection to structure. Use resilient connector when indicated on Drawings.

D. Pipe jointing:

1. Pipe installation and jointing shall be in accord with pipe manufacturer's specifications and instructions for type of pipe used and applicable requirements specified herein.
2. Ensure that interior of pipe and jointing seal is free of sand, dirt, trash, or other foreign materials before installation. All pipe or fitting that has been installed containing dirt or other deleterious material shall be removed, cleaned, and relaid. Extreme care shall be taken to keep bells of pipe free from sand, dirt, or rocks so that joints may be properly assembled without overstressing bells.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Alignment: Inspect sanitary sewerage lines to determine if displacement of pipe has occurred during backfilling and compaction.
- B. Correct, at no additional cost, sections of piping that are deficient in material, alignment, grade, or joints.

END OF SECTION 333313

---

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes all work required to complete, as indicated by the Contract Documents, and furnish all supplementary items necessary for the proper installation of the storm sewerage system.
- B. Storm sewerage system includes:
  - 1. Storm drains.
  - 2. Catch basins.
  - 3. Manholes.
  - 4. Alteration of existing drainage structures.
  - 5. Retention trench and underdrains.

### **1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. Extent of storm sewage systems work is indicated on drawings and schedules, and by requirements of this section.

### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of storm sewage system's products of types, materials, and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.
- B. Installer's Qualifications: Firm with at least 3 years of successful installation experience on projects with storm sewage work similar to that required for project.
- C. Codes and Standards:
  - 1. Plumbing Code Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of Florida Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, 2014 Edition (FDOT 2014), pertaining to selection and installation of storm sewage system's materials and products.
- D. Environmental Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of the Environmental Impact Analysis applicable Water Management District and Local Storm Water Management Regulations

### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for storm sewage system materials and products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for storm sewage systems, showing piping materials, size,



locations, and inverts. Include details of underground structures, connections, and manholes. Show interface and spatial relationship between piping and proximate structures.

- C. Record Drawings: At project closeout, submit record drawings of installed storm sewage piping and products, in accordance with requirements of Division-1.
- D. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data and parts lists for storm sewage system materials and products. Include this data, product data, shop drawings, and record drawings in maintenance manual; in accordance with requirements of Division-1.

## 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM: C76 Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe.
- B. ASTM: C443 Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets.
- C. ASTM: C478 Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections.
- D. ASTM: C969-94 Standard Practice for Infiltration and Exfiltration Acceptance Testing of Installed Precast Concrete Pipe Sewer Lines.
- E. ASTM D-5034, ASTM D-5035, and ASTM D-3786, latest revisions: Filter Fabric Properties.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES AND PIPE FITTINGS

- A. General: Provide pipes of one of the following materials, of weight/class indicated. Provide pipe fittings and accessories of same material and weight/class as pipes, with joining method as indicated.
  - 1. Cast-Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM A 74, hub and spigot ends, service weight unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Fittings: Cast-iron hub and spigot complying with ASTM A 74; lead/oakum caulked joints, or compression joints with rubber gaskets complying with ASTM C 564.
  - 2. Reinforced Concrete Pipe: FDOT 2014 Section 556, Class III (of ASTM C76).
    - a. Fittings: Reinforced concrete, same strength as adjoining pipe, tongue-and-groove gasketed joints complying with ASTM C 443.
    - b. Rubber Gaskets: FDOT 2014 Section 942.
  - 3. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe: or ASTM D 3034, Type PSM, SDR 35.
    - a. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D 3034, elastomeric joints complying with ASTM D 3212 using elastomeric seals complying with ASTM F 477.

- 
4. High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Pipe
    - a. HDPE Pipe shall be produced from PE3408 pipe grade polyethylene resins, the resins shall meet the engineering requirements as defined by ASTM standard D-1248 for a Type III, Class C, Category 5, Grade P34 material.
    - b. Storm drainage piping shall be N-12, HDPE pipe as manufactured by Advance Drainage Systems, Inc., or approved equal. Pipe shall be corrugated with an integrally formed smooth interior. Pipe shall conform to AASHTO classification "Type S;" and AASHTO M252 and M294 for test methods, dimensions and markings.
  5. Corrugated Steel Pipe and Pipe Arch: FDOT 2014 SPECIFICATIONS 943, bituminous coated both sides.
  6. Corrugated Steel Pipe and Pipe Arch: Aluminum coated (Aluminized Type II): AASHTO M274 and AASHTO M36.
  7. Coupling/Corrugated Steel Pipe and Pipe Arch: AASHTO M36 with rubber or neoprene gaskets, FDOT 2014 SPECIFICATIONS 430-8.1 (all pipe).
  8. Corrugated Aluminum Pipe and Pipe Arch: AASHTO M196 and AASHTO M211.
  9. Corrugated Aluminum Pipe with Perforations (360 degree): AASHTO M196 and M211, ASTM B 209 for Alloy Alclade 3004-H34.
  10. Coupling/Corrugated Aluminum Pipe and Pipe Arch: AASHTO M196 and AASHTO M211 with asphaltic mastic sealant (performed plastic material), (all pipe).
  11. Filter Fabric: Spun bound polypropylene, "TYPAR," as manufactured by DuPont, Style 3401.
  12. Bituminous Coating: AASHTO M190.
  13. Non-shrinking Mortar: Embeco 167 or approved equal.
  14. Precast Circular Manholes: Precast reinforced concrete per C 478, except wall thickness shall be 1 inch per foot of inside diameter plus 1 inch but 5 inch minimum. All openings shall have minimum steel hoop of #4 wire. Cement shall be Portland Type II. Provide a 6-inch lip on the base.
  15. Concrete: FDOT 2014 Section 346 (except no pozzolon), 4, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12 and 13. Class II or Class III with minimum 28 day compressive strengths of 3400 psi and 5000 psi, respectively. Use Type II Portland Cement.
  16. Reinforcement: FDOT 2014 Section 415 (ASTM A615, Grade 60).
  17. Curing: FDOT 2014 SPECIFICATIONS 925.
  18. Brick: ASTM C 32, grade MC (hard brick).
  19. Mortar: For brick sections of manholes mix one (1) part Portland Cement Type II and three (3) parts of sand per FDOT 2014 Section 902-2.2. For mortar plaster use one (1) part cement, two (2) parts sand.
  20. Manhole Joint Sealer: Pre-formed plastic joint sealer per Federal Specification SS-S-00210 (GSA - PSS), "Ram-Nek" as manufactured by the K.T. Snyder Co., Inc., or approved equal, or Portland Cement mortar, 1/2 inch minimum thickness.
  21. Manhole Frame & Cover: Gray cast iron per ASTM A 48, Class 30 without perforations and suitable for addition of cast iron or steel rings for upward adjustment of top. The word "STORM" shall be cast into the face of the cover equal to that shown in the Standard Detail Drawings in 1-1/2 to 2 inch letters raised flush with the top of the cover. Frame and cover shall be approved equal to U.S. Foundry and Manufacturing Corp. No. 430 (old No. 32 with Type G cover). Frames and covers shall have machine ground seats and have a coating of

coal tar pitch varnish.

22. Where prefabricated adjustable frames are called for in the Drawings, they shall be approved equal to U.S. Foundry No 560 (old No. 23 with Type G Cover) and comply with the above requirements.
23. Inlet Gratings and Frames: Structural steel, FDOT 2014 Section 425-3.2, U.S. Foundry or equal; Gray Cast Iron, FDOT 2014 Section 962-4.1.
24. Bitumastic: Koppers No. 300M, or approved equal.
25. Non-shrink Mortar: Embeco 167 or approved equal.
26. Forms: Forms shall be either wood or metal, externally secured and braced when feasible, substantial and unyielding, and of adequate strength to contain the concrete and the additional force of vibration consolidation without bulging between supports and without apparent deviation from neat lines, contours and shapes shown in the Drawings.

## 2.2 UNDERDRAINS

### A. Filter Fabric:

1. All underdrain pipe shall be encased in filter fabric sock per FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge, 2014 Edition. Section 948-8.
2. Filter Fabric for use in underdrains shall be in accordance governing jurisdiction's specifications.

### B. Underdrain Aggregate:

1. Aggregate for underdrain material shall be clean, flowable, well drained sand with less than 5% by weight passing the 200 sieve.

### C. Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings

1. Corrugated polyethylene tubing for use as underdrain shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 252, latest edition. Polyethylene tubing shall be delivered in 20 foot lengths (minimum) and shall be fitted, prior to installation, with a filter fabric wrap as described in 2.01A of this Section. Perforations in the pipe shall be punched rather than slit in order to provide positive openings in the pipe.
2. The fittings shall not reduce or impair the overall integrity or function of the pipe line. Couplings shall provide sufficient longitudinal strength to preserve pipe alignment and prevent separation at the joints. Only fittings supplied or recommended by the pipe manufacturer shall be used.

### D. Clean-outs

1. Clean-outs for the underdrain system shall be furnished, as shown in the plans, and shall conform to the applicable details on the Drawings.

## 2.3 TRENCH DRAINS

- A. Trench Drains to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

- B. Approved Manufacturers: Zurn, ACO, ABT, or approved equal.
- C. Trench drains may be concrete, concrete polymer or plastic. Steel or aluminum trench drains will not be permitted.
- D. Grates are to be selected by landscape architect.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS**

- A. General: Trench excavation and backfill, including sheeting and bracing dewatering, foundation and bedding and furnishing and disposal of materials shall be as specified in Section 312334 of these Standard Specifications, "EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING FOR UTILITIES" with any additional requirements included herein.
- B. All pipe joints shall be wrapped in filter cloth fabric. Fabric shall be centered on joint and minimum of 24" wide with minimum 12" of overlap on the circumference.
- C. Laying Pipe: Pipe shall be laid "in the dry" true to the lines and grades given with hubs upgrade and tongue fully inserted into the hub. Provide recesses at each joint as required to establish continuous loading conditions along the pipe barrel. Maintain a clean interior as the work progresses. Adequate filtering methods shall be provided to prevent flushing debris and sediment into any receiving waters.
- D. Round Concrete Pipe: ASTM C443-85a.
  - 1. Seal all joints with round rubber gaskets. The gasket and the surface of the joints must be clean and free of grit, dirt and other foreign matter. To facilitate closure of the joint, apply a vegetable soap lubricant immediately prior to closing. Do not apply mortar, joint compound, or other filler which will restrict the flexibility of the gasket joint.
  - 2. Deviations from true alignment or grade, which result in a displacement from the normal position of the gasket of as much as 1/4 inch, or which produce a gap exceeding 1/2 inch between sections of pipe for more than 1/3 of the circumference of the inside of the pipe, will not be acceptable and where such occur the pipe shall be re-laid without additional compensation. Where minor imperfections cause a gap greater than 1/2 inch between pipe sections, the joint will be acceptable provided the gap does not extend more than 1/3 the circumference of the inside of the pipe.
- E. Oval Concrete Pipe: Seal all joints with round rubber gaskets. The gasket and the surface of the joints must be clean and free of grit, dirt and other foreign matter. To facilitate closure of the joint, apply a vegetable soap lubricant immediately prior to closing. Do not apply mortar, joint compound, or other filler which will restrict the flexibility of the gasket joint.
- F. Cast-Iron Soil Pipe: Install in accordance with applicable provisions of CISPI "Cast Iron Soil Pipe & Fittings Handbook."

- 
- G. Plastic Pipe: Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation recommendations, and in accordance with ASTM D 2321.
- H. Cleaning Piping: Clear interior of piping of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in line and pull past each joint as it is completed.
1. In large, accessible piping, brushes and brooms may be used for cleaning.
  2. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted conduit at end of day or whenever work stops.
  3. Flush lines between manholes if required to remove collected debris.
- I. Joint Adapters: Make joints between different types of pipe with standard manufactured adapters and fittings intended for that purpose.
- J. Closing Abandoned Utilities: Close open ends of abandoned underground utilities which are indicated to remain in place. Provide sufficiently strong closures to withstand hydro-static or earth pressure which may result after ends of abandoned utilities have been closed.
1. Close open ends of concrete or masonry utilities with not less than 8 inches thick brick masonry bulkheads.
- K. Interior Inspection: Inspect piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred.
1. Make inspections after lines between manholes, or manhole locations, have been installed and approximately 2 feet of backfill is in place, and again at completion of project.
  2. If inspection indicates poor alignment, debris, displaced pipe, infiltration or other defects, correct such defects, and reinspect.
- L. Lay pipe upgrade with the bell end of pipe section upgrade.
- M. During installation, close open ends of pipe with temporary, water-tight plugs to prevent earth, water and other material from entering the pipe.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERDRAINS

- A. The trench shall be excavated carefully, to such depth as is required to permit the pipe to be laid to the grade desired, and to the dimensions shown on the Drawings.
- B. The pipe with filter fabric sock installed, shall be bedded firmly in the filter aggregate to the correct line and grade. Installation of the pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM Recommended Practice D2321. The upper end of the run of pipe shall be plugged to prevent any filter aggregate from entering the pipe. Lateral connections shall be made with special fittings, as required.
- C. After the pipe has been laid to grade, the pipe shall be firmly held in place by mechanical means while the filter aggregate is placed to a maximum height of five (5) inches  $\square$  one inch (compacted) above the top of the pipe. After the first lift is compacted to the satisfaction of the Engineer,

additional aggregate shall be placed and compacted and the remainder of the trench shall be backfilled in lifts with underdrain aggregate. The minimum density of the compacted filter aggregate be 95 percent of the standard density as determined by AASHTO T99 (Method A). The excavation of the trench, the placement of the filter fabric, the installation of the pipe and the placement and compaction of the first lift of filter aggregate shall be accomplished in a single continuous operation.

### 3.3 STORM SEWER STRUCTURES

- A. Fabrication: All structures shall be constructed as shown in the Drawings or Standard Detail Indexes per FDOT SPECIFICATIONS Roadway and Bridge Design Standards 2014 Edition. Structures may be precast concrete or poured in place concrete.
- B. Foundation: Compact the soil beneath the structure to 95 percent of maximum (AASHTO T-180) density. Additionally provide 9 inches of gravel beneath structures with precast bases.
- C. Manhole Base: Construct per Standard Detail Drawings with Type II Portland Cement concrete, Class II or cast as an integral part of the precast section. If the base is poured, form a groove in the base with an accurate manhole ring, shape with a wood float and finish with a hard steel trowel prior to setting. The base shall set a minimum of 24 hours before the manhole construction proceeds. Precast base shall have a minimum of three lifting hooks set in. The base shall extend 6 inches on all sides of the structure.
- D. Joints - Precast Structures: Structures without precast integral bottoms shall be set in a bed of mortar to make a watertight joint at the base. Join precast sections with a minimum mortar thickness of 1/2 inch, maximum of 1 inch. Joint sealer may be used as an alternate.
- E. Structure Invert: the bottom of all drainage structures shall be filled with grout to the elevation of the lowest pipe invert entering/leaving the structure. Grout shall consist of a 3:1 sand-cement mixture, or any class concrete.
- F. Manhole Coating: Coat the exterior surface with one coat of Bitumastic at a minimum rate of 375 square feet per gallon, factory applied and "touched-up" in the field.
- G. Manhole Frames and Covers: Set manhole frames and covers to conform to the grades in the Drawings. Set all frames securely in a cement mortar bed and fillet. All covers shall be made flush with existing permanent surfaces except outside the limits of the traveled ways where they should be set approximately 0.2 foot above the existing ground unless otherwise noted in the Drawings.
- H. Manholes Watertightness: When tested by plugging all inlets and the outlet and filling the structure to within one foot of the cone section or top, with a minimum depth of 4 feet and maximum depth of 20 feet, the maximum allowable drop of the water surface shall be 1/2 inch per 15 minute interval. Contractor shall plug all leaks by method approved by the Engineer.
- I. Pipe Connections: Seal pipes into structure openings with non-shrinking mortar. Provide one joint immediately outside the structure wall. Openings into existing structures shall be cut with

---

a power driven abrasive wheel or saw.

### **3.4 BACKFILLING**

- A. General: Conduct backfill operations of open cut trenches closely following laying, jointing, and bedding of pipe, and after initial inspection and testing are completed.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Lamping: Lamp all sewers between manholes, and catch basins after the backfill has been compacted to determine that they are clear of debris and to the correct alignment. The concentricity of the lamp image received shall not vary in the vertical direction but may vary up to 20 percent in the horizontal direction.
- B. Inspection: Final visual inspection shall be made after all structures are raised to finished grade and the roadway installed. If the lines are unclean, clean-up and re-lamping shall be initiated. Contractor shall assist the engineer during this inspection.

END OF SECTION 334000